

Floyd L. Moreland  
and Rita M. Fleischer

# **Latin**

**An Intensive Course**



~~SECRET~~

71

~~SECRET~~

✓





**LATIN:** *An Intensive Course*



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2015

71

# LATIN

## *An Intensive Course*

by FLOYD L. MORELAND *and* RITA M. FLEISCHER  
*Brooklyn College of the City University of New York*

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA PRESS  
*Berkeley Los Angeles London*

University of California Press  
Berkeley and Los Angeles, California  
University of California Press, Ltd.  
London, England

Copyright © 1977 by

The Regents of the University of California

ISBN 0—520—03183—0

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 75—36500

Printed in the United States of America

9th Printing, with corrections, 1990

10 11 12

# CONTENTS

<b>PREFACE TO THE PRELIMINARY EDITION</b>	xī
<b>PREFACE TO THIS EDITION</b>	xiv
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	1
A. The Alphabet and Pronunciation	1
B. Syllabification	2
C. Accentuation	3
D. Word Order	4
<b>ABBREVIATIONS USED IN THIS BOOK</b>	7
<b>GRAMMATICAL REVIEW</b>	8
<b>A SELECTED GLOSSARY OF IMPORTANT TERMS</b>	12
<b>UNIT ONE</b>	20
A. The Verbal System	20
B. The Tenses of the Indicative	20
C. The Infinitive	22
D. The Four Conjugations	23
E. The Principal Parts	23
F. The Present Active Indicative System of the First Two Conjugations	23
G. The Irregular Verb <i>sum</i> , 'be'	25
H. The Noun System	26
I. The First Declension	27
<b>UNIT TWO</b>	35
A. The Perfect Active Indicative System of All Verbs	35
B. The Subjunctive Mood	36
C. Formation of the Subjunctive	36
D. Present Subjunctive of the Verb <i>sum</i>	37
E. Conditional Sentences	38
F. Genitive with Verbs of Accusing and Condemning	39

**UNIT THREE**

47

- A. Nouns of the Second Declension 47
- B. First-Second Declension Adjectives 48
- C. Noun-Adjective Agreement 49
- D. Adjectives Used as Nouns 49
- E. Ablative of Means (Instrument) 50
- F. Ablative of Manner (Modal Ablative) 50
- G. Clauses of Purpose; Sequence of Tenses 50
- H. Indirect Commands 52

**UNIT FOUR**

59

- A. The Present Active System of All Four Conjugations 59
- B. The Present Passive System of All Four Conjugations 62
- C. The Perfect Passive System of All Four Conjugations 64
- D. Review of Verb Conjugations 65
- E. Ablative of Personal Agent 65

**REVIEW: UNITS ONE TO FOUR**

74

**UNIT FIVE**

83

- A. Participles: Definition and Formation 83
- B. Some Uses of the Participle 84
- C. Periphrastics 87
- D. Dative of Agent with the Passive Periphrastic 88
- E. Dative of the Possessor 88
- F. The Verb *possum*, 'be able' 88
- G. Complementary Infinitive 89

**UNIT SIX**

97

- A. Nouns of the Third Declension 97
- B. Infinitives 99
- C. Indirect Statement: Subject Accusative and Infinitive 100
- D. The Irregular Noun *vis* 102
- E. Ablative of Separation 102
- F. Accusative of Place to Which 103
- G. The Locative Case 103

**UNIT SEVEN**

110

- A. Demonstrative Adjectives 110
- B. Personal Pronouns 111
- C. Possessive Adjectives 113
- D. Relative Pronoun 114
- E. Interrogative Adjective 115
- F. Interrogative Pronoun 115
- G. Ablative of Accompaniment 116
- H. Ablative of Time When or Within Which 116
- I. Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space 116
- J. Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement 116

**UNIT EIGHT**

126

- A. Adjectives of the Third Declension; Present Participles 126
- B. Fourth Declension Nouns 128
- C. Fifth Declension Nouns 128
- D. Ablative of Respect (Specification) 128
- E. The Irregular Verb *eō, ire, 'go'* 129
- F. The Present Imperative 129
- G. The Vocative Case 131
- H. Datives of Purpose (Service) and Reference: The Double Dative Construction 131

**REVIEW: UNITS FIVE TO EIGHT**

140

**UNIT NINE**

150

- A. Comparison of Adjectives 150
- B. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives 151
- C. Comparison with *quam*; Ablative of Comparison 152
- D. Ablative of Degree of Difference 152
- E. Adverbs and Their Comparison 152
- F. Irregular Comparison of Adverbs 153
- G. Partitive Genitive 154

**UNIT TEN**

162

- A. Ablative Absolute 162
- B. Adjectives with Genitive Singular in *-ius* 164
- C. Ablative of Cause 164
- D. Ablative and Genitive of Description 165
- E. The Irregular Verb *ferō* and Its Compounds 165

**UNIT ELEVEN**

176

- A. Deponent Verbs 176
- B. Semi-Deponent Verbs 178
- C. Subjective and Objective Genitive 178
- D. Predicate Genitive (Genitive of Characteristic) 179
- E. Infinitive As Subject 179
- F. The Irregular Verbs *volō, nōlō, mālō* 179

**REVIEW: UNITS NINE TO ELEVEN**

192

**UNIT TWELVE**

200

- A. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive 200
- B. Direct Questions 201
- C. Indirect Questions 202
- D. The Adjective *idem, eadem, idem, 'same'* 205
- E. The Pronoun and Adjective *quidam, 'certain'* 205
- F. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 'self, very'* 205
- G. The Demonstrative Adjective *iste, ista, istud, 'that (of yours)'* 206

**UNIT THIRTEEN**

217

- A. The Indefinite Pronouns **aliquis, quis, quisquam, quisque** 217
- B. Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs 218
- C. Impersonal Passives 219
- D. Dative with Compound Verbs 220
- E. The Verb **fiō**, 'be made, be done, happen, become' 220
- F. The Numerical Adjective **duo, duae, duo**, 'two' 221

**UNIT FOURTEEN**

232

- A. Clauses of Result 232
- B. Substantive Clauses of Result 233
- C. Relative Clauses of Characteristic (Generic Relative Clauses) 234
- D. Relative Clauses of Result 235
- E. Relative Clauses of Purpose and Purpose Clauses Introduced by Adverbs 236
- F. Indirect Reflexives 237

**UNIT FIFTEEN**

248

- A. **cum** Clauses 248
- B. **cum** Clauses and Ablatives Absolute 249
- C. Other Words Introducing Temporal, Causal, and Concessive Clauses 250
- D. Conjunctions with Indicative or Subjunctive 250
- E. Clauses of Proviso 252
- F. Accusative of Exclamation 252

**UNIT SIXTEEN**

265

- A. The Gerund 265
- B. The Gerundive 266
- C. The Gerund and Gerundive Used to Express Purpose 266
- D. Impersonal Verbs 267
- E. The Impersonals **interest** and **refert** 269

**UNIT SEVENTEEN**

279

- A. Clauses of Fearing 279
- B. Clauses of Doubting 279
- C. Clauses of Prevention 280
- D. The Supine 281

**UNIT EIGHTEEN**

291

- A. Subjunctive by Attraction 291
- B. **futūrum esse ut; fore ut** 291
- C. The Historical Infinitive 292
- D. Shortened or Syncopated Forms of the Perfect Active System of Verbs 292
- E. **-ēre** for **-ērunt** in the Third Person Plural, Perfect Active Indicative 293
- F. The Greek Accusative: Accusative of Respect or Accusative After Verbs in the Middle Voice 293



G. Adverbial Accusative	293
H. Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting	294
I. Genitive of Indefinite Value	294
J. Ablative of Price	294
K. <i>quod</i> , 'the fact that'	294

<b>REVIEW: UNITS TWELVE TO EIGHTEEN</b>	308
---	-----

<b>APPENDIX</b>	317
-----------------	-----

Nouns	317
Adjectives	321
Pronouns	325
Verbs	327
Formation of the Future Imperative	362
Review of the Syntax of Nouns	363
Review of the Syntax of Verbs	379
Participles	395
Gerunds	396
Gerundives	396
Supines	396
Conditions in Indirect Statement	397
Conditions in Other Subordinate Clauses	399
Additional Rules	400
Roman Names	401
A Note on Quantitative Rhythm	401
Numerals	405

<b>LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY</b>	411
---------------------------------	-----

<b>ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY</b>	434
---------------------------------	-----

<b>INDEX</b>	449
--------------	-----



# PREFACE

## *to the Preliminary Edition*

These materials have been written to meet the needs of students who desire a comprehensive, intensive introduction to Latin forms and syntax in a relatively short period of time. They were originally structured to fit the specific format of the Latin Workshop of the University of California at Berkeley and the Summer Latin Institute of Brooklyn College of the City University of New York. Both of these programs aim to provide a rapid introduction to Latin forms and syntax in a period of approximately four weeks of concentrated study, leading to an additional six weeks in which selected classical and medieval texts are treated in depth. However, this book may also be used, at a slower pace, by instructors of less intensive or regular classes.

The introduction of the subjunctive early in the course will permit the supplementary reading of real or slightly altered texts at an early point in the student's career, given substantial vocabulary and syntactical glosses. Selections of connected reading (real, doctored, or manufactured, as need requires) will be found at the end of each Unit. Notes which will aid in the memorization of vocabulary as well as present some of the rules for word formation are provided after each new vocabulary list. In addition, the book contains a complete appendix, divided into two parts:

1. **FORMS.** All paradigms are included in full for reference and review. This will be particularly helpful in those cases where paradigms are not written out in full in the body of the text (e.g., *iste, ista, istud*, Unit 12G). The future imperative, which has been omitted from the actual text because of its infrequent use, appears in the appendix for the first time.

2. **SYNTAX.** An outline of syntax is presented for reference and review. Each construction is illustrated with several examples and so should supplement amply the explanations and illustrations in the main body of the text. In addition, several constructions which do not appear earlier in the book are included so as to make the text a more useful tool for those students who plan to continue with their study of Latin.

Each Unit was originally designed to be covered in a single day of the Berkeley and Brooklyn intensive summer programs, although regular-paced classes

may wish to spend an entire week on each one. Drills which illustrate the new morphological and grammatical concepts are supplied in the text for each Unit. Wherever possible, the vocabulary used in these drills has been limited to words which have already been met, and so the drills may be done without knowledge of the new vocabulary in the Unit. The exercises, in whole or in part, should be prepared by the student at home, and the connected readings, with their ample glosses, provide an excellent opportunity for sight reading in class.

The review Units consist of sentences which illustrate the morphological and grammatical principles taught in the lessons being reviewed. In the first three review Units, these sentences are followed by two review tests which the student may work out on his own or with the aid of an instructor. The six sample review tests in the book are followed by answer keys so as to enable the student to use them as a means of self-review. Maximum benefits may be obtained in reviewing the last Units by reading and carefully parsing the selections from Caesar which form the last part of Unit 18. By this time, students should be able to handle, with the aid of vocabulary glosses, any piece of reasonably straightforward Latin prose.

It is the belief of the authors that the best way to understand the structure of Latin is first through literal English translations, then smoother ones. For this reason, literal translations of illustrative sentences are almost invariably given first, followed by smoother English variants. For example,

Fēmina ā militibus vīsa domum cucurrit.

The woman having been seen by the soldiers ran home; after she had been seen by the soldiers, the woman ran home; since she had been seen by the soldiers, the woman ran home, etc.

Dicit sē fēlicem esse.

He says himself to be happy; he says that he is happy.

In preparing these materials, the following works have been consulted:

Allen and Greenough, *New Latin Grammar* (Boston, 1903)

Gildersleeve and Lodge, *Latin Grammar* (London, 1957)

Krebs and Schmalz, *Antibarbarus der Lateinischen Sprache* (Basel, 1905)

Lane, *A Latin Grammar* (New York, 1898)

Woodcock, *A New Latin Syntax* (London, 1959)

Lewis and Short, *A Latin Dictionary* (Oxford, 1962) is the authority for the meanings of words; long quantities are for the most part based on those found in Walde-Hofmann, *Lateinisches etymologisches Wörterbuch* (Heidelberg, 1938).

For help with the present volume, we are grateful to Ms. Judith Rosner for her contributions to the initial stages of the project, to Mr. Robert E. Kenney

for his kind assistance with xeroxing and duplication, to Ms. Stephanie Russell for help with typing part of the manuscript, and especially to Professors William S. Anderson of the University of California at Berkeley and Charles William Dunmore of New York University for reading through segments of the manuscript and offering many constructive criticisms. In addition, Mr. August Frugé of the University of California Press has been most cooperative and helpful. To Brooklyn College and Professor Ethyle R. Wolfe, Dean of the School of Humanities, go our thanks for encouragement, the opportunity to bring the program to New York City, and for a grant in the summer of 1972 which enabled us to begin the project. Gratitude must also be expressed to those colleagues in the Departments of Classics and Comparative Literature who gave us support, in particular to Professor Anna Griffiths, who has helped us in many ways. Last but not least, it would be remiss of us to conclude without a very special vote of thanks to the department chairman when this was being written, Professor Dennis J. Spinger. If it were not for his eager support of the program, the chances of completing this project would have been diminished severely.

There is one additional group of people, many of whom must remain nameless, who deserve perhaps the most recognition of all — those who have played a role in building the intensive summer Latin programs which inspired this book and for which it was originally written. To Professors W. Ralph Johnson and Alain Renoir of the University of California at Berkeley, Mary-Kay Gamel Orlandi of the University of California at Santa Cruz, John Wyatt of Beloit College, Ms. Catherine R. Freis, current director of the Berkeley Latin Workshop, and Ms. Joan Plotnick and Professor Gail Smith of Brooklyn College go our thanks for their many explicit and implicit contributions to the program and all for which it stands. Most of all, however, we are indebted to the students who have participated in the Berkeley Latin Workshop and the Brooklyn Summer Latin Institute. Their patience and dedication, met only by that of superb teaching staffs, were vital to the success which both programs have enjoyed. It is to them, and to all those who follow them, that this book is dedicated.

Needless to say, the errors and infelicities of style which remain in the following pages are the result of our own short-sightedness and do not bear in the least on the people mentioned above. We hope to iron them out in the final version of the text.

FLOYD L. MORELAND

RITA M. FLEISCHER

*New York*  
*February, 1974*



# PREFACE

## *to this Edition*

Two summers and an academic year of use in beyond-the-intensive, intensive, accelerated, and regular courses have caused this book to be revised in a number of ways. Many errors have been eliminated and some sentences have been re-written to illustrate better the concepts under consideration as well as to bring them into line with correct Latin usage. Some of the Units have undergone revision, modification, or expansion in order to give a more complete picture of the various syntactical functions. Unit Seven has been reorganized in the interest of greater lucidity, and the treatment of clauses of result and characteristic has been considerably revamped. The Review Tests have been retitled "Self Review" and one of these has been added to the Review of Units 12-18.

So as to make the book adaptable to regular-paced classes which meet three or four times per week, a group of Preliminary Exercises has been added for the first seventeen Units. These will permit breaking down each Unit into two or more manageable parts. Several users have suggested the following arrangement for presentation: the first day is spent rendering (at sight) the reading selections from the previous Unit, while the vocabulary for the new Unit is assigned for homework. On the second day, the first segment of the new Unit is presented and the Preliminary Exercises are assigned. The third day is spent presenting the second segment of the new Unit and then assigning selected sentences from the Unit Exercises. Grammatical principles can be reinforced at any time by going through the Unit Drills. A fourth day can be used doing additional sentences from the Exercises, or the vocabulary for the next Unit might be assigned while the readings are done at sight in class. Of course, other arrangements may be preferred and some instructors will find it useful to spend more time on some Units than on others. The initial four Units, for example, are extremely compact and may well require more time.

A substantial number of the sentences beyond Unit Seven have been built around phrases or thought-patterns from the ancient authors (although references are consistently not given). They have been adapted (in some cases, very slightly) to fit the controlled vocabulary and to afford concentrated practice with new forms and syntax. The problem of including "real" Latin in a begin-

xiv

ner's text is a massive one, particularly in the light of the authors' efforts to control the vocabulary and the constructions. Selections with glosses have, however, been included in most of the Units for the benefit of those who prefer that their students have contact with the original sources at an early stage. These selections have been coordinated as much as possible to the forms and syntax of the Unit.

The introduction of the subjunctive and some sophisticated constructions near the beginning of the course will permit reading of unaltered texts early in the term. Rather than include a greater variety of suggested readings in the book, we felt it more useful to leave it to the individual instructor to provide the students with sight material which he or she deems appropriate and interesting. We have found that several of the poems of Catullus are easy to handle from Unit Seven onwards, but others will have different preferences.

There continue to be more than ample exercises and opportunity for practice. The Unit Drills do not, where possible, use the new vocabulary for the Unit and so they permit the drilling of new syntactical functions before the student has mastered the vocabulary. The Preliminary Exercises and the Exercises do use the new vocabulary and provide more than enough practice on forms and syntax. The readings (after Unit Five) attempt to integrate the material of the Unit with actual (or slightly altered) selections from the authors and so a consistent progression from grammar and forms, to practice with synthetic or slightly altered Latin, to exposure to actual excerpts is maintained.

Throughout this book, every attempt has been made to present the grammar in as lucid and clear a way as possible while not oversimplifying it. The exercises and readings tend to be complex from the beginning so as not to give the student a false sense of confidence, but rather to minimize the traditionally difficult transition into the continuous reading of ancient texts. The book does not presume to be a definitive grammar and so many points have of necessity been omitted in order not to overburden the student with a plethora of exceptions and alternate ways of expressing ideas. A great deal about the function of independent subjunctives in hypotaxis, for example, has been omitted on the assumption that this kind of information and analysis can either be supplied by the instructor or might profitably be delayed until such time as the student begins to read continuously and so to expand his or her knowledge of syntax and style.

The book has a complete appendix of morphology and syntax which not only reviews in capsule form the material included in the main text, but also includes other constructions and terms to aid the student as he or she goes on to read. In the few instances where complete paradigms are not included in the body of the text, they will appear in full in the Appendix. The vocabularies at the end are geared to the exercises in the book and by no means are to be considered complete either in their inclusiveness or in the definitions of words.

Users have stated that the book has proved useful both as a beginner's text and as a review text for intermediate Latin classes. The Appendix will be especially valuable as a reference for the latter.

Detailed notes and suggestions submitted by Professors John R. Clark, J. B. Clinard, Elizabeth Constantinides, Gerald M. Quinn, Mr. Steven Lund, Ms. Stephanie Russell, and others have proved most valuable and have caused us to rethink and revise many things; but we have remained stubborn about others. The difficulties involved in editing a text of this kind and in attempting to achieve some degree of consistency in the presentation were greater than we could possibly have imagined. The patient, efficient services of Ms. Susan Peters of the University of California Press and the trained eye and skill of our copy editor, Ms. Ramona Michaelis, have been indispensable in this regard. To them and to other colleagues, students, and friends, we extend our gratitude, not only for whatever polish this edition has acquired over the preliminary one, but also for the opportunity afforded us to reassess our own notions and to learn a great deal more about this language.

F.L.M.

R.M.F.

*New York**January, 1976***An Additional Note:**

In using the book at the Latin Institute of the City University of New York, we have found that the following poems of Catullus integrate nicely with the Units of the book as indicated below. We provide this information for the reference of instructors who may be looking for appropriate original material to supplement the exercises in the Units.

Unit 8, Catullus 13

Unit 9, Catullus 51

Unit 10, Catullus 9

Unit 11, Catullus 12

Unit 13, Catullus 41 and 43

Unit 14, Catullus 42

Unit 15, Catullus 5 and 7

Unit 16, Catullus 101

Unit 17, Catullus 8

Unit 18, Catullus 11



# INTRODUCTION

## A. The Alphabet and Pronunciation

There are twenty-four letters in the Latin alphabet. These are the same as in the English alphabet, except that there is no *j* or *w*. The letters *i* and *u* were used as both vowels and consonants (*u*, when used as a consonant, is written *v* in this book). The sounds for the letters correspond roughly to the sounds in English, but the following observations should be noted.

**VOWELS:** All vowels are either long or short by nature.

ā (as in <i>father</i> )	frāter, hās
a (as in <i>alike</i> )	multa, parentum
ē (as in the <i>a</i> in <i>save</i> )	valē, tētē
e (as in <i>bet</i> )	vectus, mūnere
ī (as in <i>machine</i> )	prīscō, dormīre
i (as in <i>is, it</i> )	mortis, miser
ō (as in <i>oh, Ohio</i> )	frāternō, mōre, dōnārem
o (as in <i>often</i> )	locus, adloquerer
ū (as in <i>rude</i> )	flētū, fortūna
u (as in the <i>oo</i> in <i>look</i> )	vectus, ut

**DIPHTHONGS:** (A diphthong occurs when two vowels are pronounced together as one sound.)

ae (as <i>i</i> in <i>alike</i> )	haec, aequora
au (as <i>ou</i> in <i>foul</i> )	laudō, aut
ei (as in <i>rein</i> )	deinde
eu (a combination of <i>e</i> as in <i>bet</i> and an <i>oo</i> sound as in <i>food</i> )	heu
oe (as <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i> )	coepit, proelium
ui (as in <i>twin</i> )	huic, cui

## CONSONANTS:

b	(+ s, pronounced like <i>p</i> ; otherwise like English <i>b</i> )	abstulit, barbarus, urbs
c	(always hard, like a <i>k</i> )	accipe, haec, cinerem
g	(always hard, as in get)	gentēs
h	(always pronounced as an aspirate, as in hat)	huius, haec, huic
i	(consonantal; pronounced like <i>y</i> in yes)	Iūnō, iūdex (In some texts, consonantal <i>i</i> is written as <i>j</i> .)
q(u)	(pronounced like <i>kw</i> as in <i>quick</i> )	aequora, nēququam
s	(always a sibilant, as in seek)	inferiās, abstulit, tristi
t	(always as in tell)	abstulit, tristi, trādita, mānantia
v	(pronounced like <i>w</i> )	avē atque valē; adveniō, vivit (In some texts, <i>v</i> is written as <i>u</i> . This is called consonantal <i>u</i> .)
x	(pronounced like <i>ks</i> )	dixit
ch	(pronounced like the <i>k h</i> in park here)	character, charta
ph	(pronounced like the <i>p h</i> in top hat)	philosophia
th	(pronounced like the <i>t h</i> in hot head)	theātrum
gu	(pronounced like <i>gw</i> )	lingua

Every letter in a Latin word is pronounced; there are no silent letters.

## B. Syllabification

Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. In dividing a word into syllables, a consonant after a vowel goes with the following syllable:

mū/tam; ta/men

When a vowel or diphthong is followed by two or more consonants, the first consonant goes with the first syllable, the remainder with the next syllable:

for/tū/na; ad/lo/que/rer

Thus:

fortūna	3 syllables
mānantia	4 syllables
atque	2 syllables (que = qve)
nunc	1 syllable
mūtam	2 syllables
cinerem	3 syllables
tamen	2 syllables
postrēmō	3 syllables
inferiās	4 syllables

### C. Accentuation

Every Latin word has one syllable which is slightly stressed over the others. In order to illustrate the rule by which accentuation is determined, it will be necessary to present some terminology.

*ultima* (**syllaba ultima**, 'last syllable') = the last syllable

*penult* (**syllaba paene ultima**, 'almost

last syllable') = the second syllable from the end

*antepenult* (**syllaba ante paene ultima**,

'before the almost last syllable') = third syllable from the end

The only two syllables in a Latin word which may receive accent are the *penult* and the *antepenult*. Accent is determined by applying the *law of the penult*:

In words of two syllables, the *penult* receives the accent:

múltās      géntēs      véctus

In words of more than two syllables, the *penult* receives the accent *if it is long*; *if the penult is short*, the accent is placed on the *antepenult*.

A syllable can be long in one of two ways:

1. *Length by nature*. If the syllable contains a long vowel or a diphthong, it is said to be long *by nature*.
2. *Length by position*. If the syllable contains a vowel which is followed by two consonants, it is said to be long *by position*. *x* (= *ks*) is said to be a double consonant.

postrēmō	aéquora	áccipe
paréntum	frátérnō	múnere

Read the following poem aloud, applying the rules for pronunciation, syllabification, and accentuation that have just been presented:

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora vectus  
 adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad inferiās,  
 ut tē postrēmō dōnārem mūnere mortis  
 et mūtā nēquiquam adloquerer cinerem,  
 quandoquidem fortūna mihi tētē abstulit ipsum,  
 heu miser indignē frāter adempte mihi.  
 Nunc tamen intereā haec, priscō, quae mōre parentum  
 trādita sunt tristī mūnere ad inferiās,  
 accipe frāternō multum mānantia flētū,  
 atque in perpetuum, frāter, avē atque valē.

(Catullus 101)

#### D. Word Order

The meaning of an English sentence is often dependent on the order of its words. For example, in the sentence:

*Maria sees Anna*

the word order tells us clearly that “Maria” is the subject of the verb “sees”, while “Anna” is its object. Switch the words around, and we have altered the sense:

Anna sees Maria.

And, given English idiom, other arrangements are not possible:

Sees Anna Maria   Maria Anna sees   Sees Maria Anna

Latin word order is far more flexible, for the order of words does not rigidly determine their grammatical relationship. Latin nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs are *inflected*; that is, they change their form, usually at the end of the word, to show their grammatical relationship to other words around them. The word *bends* (*flectere*, ‘to bend’) away from its original form in order to assume different grammatical relationships. The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and one is said to *conjugate* a verb. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *declension*, and one is said to *decline* these words.

Thus, if we translate the sentence “Maria sees Anna” into Latin, we have **Marīa videt Annam**. The **-m** ending of **Annam** indicates that this word *must* function as the object of the verb **videt**. The words can appear in any order, but the basic meaning will still be clear:

Marīa Annam videt.  
 Annam videt Marīa.  
 Videt Annam Marīa.  
 Videt Marīa Annam.  
 . . .etc.

This does not mean that the order of words in a Latin sentence is strictly fortuitous. Word order shifts because of *emphasis*. The two really emphatic positions in a Latin sentence or clause are the *first* and the *last*. Since the subject and the verb are usually the most emphatic words in a sentence, the normal word order is subject first, verb last. But variations occur. The following will give some idea of what shifts of emphasis can do.

Marīa videt Annam.	Maria sees Anna.	(both "Maria" and "Anna" mildly emphasized)
Marīa Annam videt.	Maria sees Anna.	(normal or neutral order: subject and verb in equal emphasis)
Annam Marīa videt.	Anna is the one whom Maria sees.	("Anna" emphasized)
Videt Annam Marīa.	Maria <i>sees</i> Anna.	("Maria" <i>actually sees</i> "Anna"; emphasis on the verbal action)

Of course, the exact thrust or nuance of the emphasis achieved by word order must also be determined from the context in which a given arrangement appears.

What may emerge from this brief illustration is the observation that the more *unusual* a position is for any word, the more *emphatic* it is for that word.

In order to apply this observation, the following remarks about word order are offered:

1. The *subject* of the sentence stands at the beginning of or early in the sentence.
2. The *verb* (or some important part of the predicate) usually comes at the end.  
*But* forms of the verb **sum**, 'be', when used as a link verb, rarely come last.
3. The accusative and dative, expressing the direct and indirect objects of the verb, usually come *before* the verb. Latin in this respect differs decidedly from English:

Ego	librum	filiō	dō.	I	give	the	book	to	(my)	son.
	{	{					{	{		
	accusative (direct object)	dative (indirect object)					accusative (direct object)	dative (indirect object)		



4. A genitive usually follows the word on which it depends:

librum *fēminae* (a, the) book *of* (a, the) woman; (a, the) woman's book

5. Adjectives, when used to describe or give an attribute of the noun, regularly come *after* the noun; but demonstratives, interrogatives, numerals, and adjectives denoting size or quantity regularly come *before* their nouns:

vir <b>bonus</b>	(a, the) <i>good</i> man	(attributive adjective)
puella <b>pulchra</b>	(a, the) <i>beautiful</i> girl	(attributive adjective)
<b>haec</b> urbs	<i>this</i> city	(demonstrative adjective)
<b>multī</b> hominēs	<i>many</i> men	(adjective denoting quantity)
<b>ūnus</b> vir	<i>one</i> man	(numerical adjective)
<b>quae</b> fēmina?	<i>which</i> woman?	(interrogative adjective)

6. Adverbs and their equivalents regularly precede the word or words they qualify:

Ille miles <b>diū</b> vixit.	That soldier lived <i>for a long time</i> .
Hominem <b>gladiō</b> interfēcit.	He killed the man <i>with a sword</i> .
<b>Tē nōn</b> amō.	I do <i>not</i> love you.

When writing sentences in Latin, we would suggest that, at the beginning, you observe the guidelines for word order listed above. As the course progresses, variations in word order will be called to your attention, and when your feel for Latin idiom and emphasis begins to grow, you will discover the multiple nuances you can create in a Latin sentence just by ordering its words skillfully and artistically.

# ABBREVIATIONS

*Used in This Book*

The following abbreviations appear throughout:

## *Case*

nom. (nominative)  
gen. (genitive)  
dat. (dative)  
acc. (accusative)  
abl. (ablative)

## *Tense*

pres. (present)  
imperf. (imperfect)  
perf. (perfect)  
pluperf. (pluperfect)  
fut. (future)  
fut. perf. (future perfect)

## *Parts of Speech*

pron. (pronoun)  
adj. (adjective)  
adv. (adverb)  
prep. (preposition)  
interj. (interjection)  
conj. (conjunction)

## *Number*

sing. (singular)  
pl. (plural)

## *Gender*

masc. or M. (masculine)  
fem. or F. (feminine)  
neut. or N. (neuter)

## *Mood*

indic. (indicative)  
subj. (subjunctive)

## *Other abbreviations:*

inf. (infinitive)  
lit. (literally)  
rel. (relative)

Note: A star (★) before a word denotes that the form is a hypothetical one.

# GRAMMATICAL REVIEW

There are eight parts of speech: *noun*, *pronoun*, *adjective*, *verb*, *adverb*, *conjunction*, *interjection*, *preposition*.

A *noun* is a word used to express the name of a person, place, or thing.

Examples: boy, dog, horses, Chicago, window, feet.

A *pronoun* is a word used in place of a noun.

Examples: he, she, it, we, us, them, ours, mine.

An *adjective* is a word used to describe a noun.

Examples: big, small, red, tall, new, old.

A *verb* is a word used to express action or a state of being.

Examples: run, walk, eat, sleep, cough, chew, am, is, are, stand, was, were, appear, seem.

An *adverb* is a word used to describe a verb, adverb, or an adjective.

Examples: quickly, very, beautifully, happily, too.

A *conjunction* is a word used to connect sentences, clauses, phrases, or words.

Examples: and, if, or, but, since, although.

An *interjection* is a word or sound which expresses an emotion.

Examples: oh, ouch, phew, damn!, ugh.

A *preposition* is a word placed before a noun or a pronoun which is used to indicate position, direction, time, or some other abstract relation.

Examples: by, from, to, with, at, in, on, for.

NOUNS and pronouns have the qualities of *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

There are three *genders*: masculine, feminine, and neuter. In English, nouns are feminine if they are the name of a female creature: "woman, girl, mare, ewe,



hen, doe, aviatrix, actress, sow, cow, bitch"; masculine if they are the name of a male creature: "man, boy, gander, stallion, actor, aviator, rooster, bull"; neuter if the noun is neither masculine nor feminine. Usually, we think of a neuter noun as an inanimate one: "window, blackboard, chalk, chair, table". However, in English, we sometimes personify a neuter noun and change its gender; for example, many people speak of their car (a neuter word) as a feminine creature. They will say of a new car: "She's a beauty. She gets 38 miles to the gallon," etc. Ships, too, are often referred to as females: "She was listing at a forty-five degree angle." In Latin, the gender of each noun must be memorized as each noun is learned, since its gender is not readily apparent in many instances.

In Latin, there are two *numbers*: singular and plural. Singular refers to one object, plural, to more than one. In English, for the most part, the plural is formed by adding -s to the singular form: "house, houses"; "dog, dogs"; "girl, girls". However, some words change their spelling altogether to indicate that they are plural: "mouse, mice"; "foot, feet"; "die, dice". These forms have to be learned; they cannot be guessed at.

English has three *cases*: subjective, possessive, and objective. The subjective case is used for the subject of a verb: "I, he, we". The objective case is used for the object (either of a verb or a preposition): "me, him, us". The possessive case is used to show possession: "Mary's, mine, his, ours". Latin has six cases and some words show a trace of a seventh case.

VERBS have the qualities of *person*, *number*, *tense*, *voice*, and *mood*.

By *person* is meant first, second, or third. The *first* person is "I" in the singular, "we" in the plural. The *second* person is "you". (Note that in Latin there is no special polite form for the pronoun "you"; the singular is used for one "you" and the plural is used for more than one "you".) The *third* person is "he, she, it" in the singular, "they" in the plural.

By *number* is meant singular and plural.

*Tense* indicates *time* and *aspect*; we speak of the present tense, past tense, and future tense. In addition, we speak of simple aspect, continuous (progressive) aspect, and completed aspect. In Latin there are six tenses.

Latin has two *voices*: active and passive. A verb in the *active* voice has a *subject* which is *doing* the action of the verb:

The pitcher *is throwing* the ball.

The dog *bit* the child.

*Will* the ball *break* the window?

A verb in the *passive* voice has a subject which is *not doing* the action of the verb, but which is *having the action* of the verb *done* to it:

The ball *is being thrown* by the pitcher.

The child *was bitten* by the dog.

Will the window *be broken* by the ball?

The *mood* of the verb expresses *how* the action of the verb is conceived. If the action is conceived of as a *command*, then the *imperative* mood will be used:

*Get* me a drink of water.

If the action is conceived of as a statement of *fact*, then the *indicative* mood will be used:

She *got* me a drink of water.

If the action is conceived of as an *idea* or a *possibility* (rather than an actual fact), then the *subjunctive* mood will be used:

If I *were* thirsty (but I'm not; therefore, it is not a fact), would you get me a drink of water?

In Latin there are three moods.

An ADJECTIVE may be used as a noun; when it is, it is called a *substantive*.

Examples:

Only *the brave* deserve *the fair*.

Blessed are *the meek*.

Fortune favors *the brave*.

In Latin when the substantive is *masculine*, it refers to *men*; when it is *feminine*, it refers to *women*; and when it is *neuter*, it refers to *things*.

Latin does not have an article; there is no word for "a, an", or "the". Latin uses far fewer words than English does: it can omit such words as "his, her, its", and the verb "to be" may be omitted frequently. There need not be a separate word to express the subject of a verb; the subject may simply be indicated in the verb itself. Thus, it is conceivable that the following is a complete Latin sentence:

Docent. They are teaching.

Latin is an inflected language. *Inflection* is the change made in the form of a word to show its grammatical relations. The inflection of a *noun*, *pronoun*, or *adjective* is called *declension*. The inflection of a *verb* is called *conjugation*. Inflection can be seen in English in the following ways:

boy	singular
boy's	singular possessive case
boys	plural
boys'	plural possessive case
I, he, she	subjective
me, him, her	objective

Note that, for nouns, -'s or -s' indicates possession.

In the conjugation of the verb "to be"

am  
are  
is

"am" is obviously first person singular and "is" is third person singular.

Inflection was more common in older English, where *-st* was the ending for the second person singular of the verb and *-th* was the ending for the third person singular present.

do	say
dost	sayest
doth	saith

Nowadays, the only remnant of inflection in most verbs is the final *-s* of the third person singular in the present tense.

say	want	see
says	wants	sees

# A SELECTED GLOSSARY

## *of Important Terms*

This glossary is provided as a reference for some of the basic terminology which a student of Latin will encounter. Presented from the point of view of English, it will serve as a partial review of grammatical terms and as a foundation on which one's study of Latin may be built. It should be used in conjunction with the main text and the appendix.

A nominative *absolute* is a participial construction which is not in close grammatical connection with the main sentence. Example:

*This being a legal holiday,* ("This" is in the nominative (subjective) case,  
I refuse to work. as is the participle "being", which agrees with  
it.)

An *abstract noun* is the name of a quality or a general idea. Examples:  
thoughtfulness, loyalty, freedom

*Agreement* is the correspondence in one or more categories between a noun and the adjective which describes it, a subject and its verb, or a pronoun and its antecedent. Examples:

<i>much</i> noise	(noun and adjective both singular)
<i>many</i> noises	(noun and adjective both plural)
he knows	(subject and verb both singular)
The <i>book which</i> he lost is mine.	(antecedent and pronoun both neuter)

*Antecedent.* The word for which the pronoun stands. Example:

The *man* whom you know is good.

*Apodosis.* The conclusion in a conditional sentence (cf. *Protasis*). Example:

If it should rain, *I'll take an umbrella.*

*Apposition.* A word placed next to another one which means or indicates the same thing. Example:

John, *the farmer*, is a good man.

The appositive must be in the same case as the word to which it refers.

*Aspect.* The category of the verb which indicates whether the action is simple, continuous (progressive), or completed. Examples from the point of view of present time:

he walks	(simple)
he is walking	(continuous or progressive)
he has walked	(completed)

*Attributive.* An attributive adjective is one which describes or modifies a noun (as opposed to a substantive adjective). An adjective is said to be in attributive position if, in English, it precedes the noun it modifies ("the *brave* man"). This is in contrast with the predicate adjective which, in English, comes after the linking verb ("he seems *brave*").

*Clause.* A group of words which contains a subject and a verb but is in itself not a complete sentence, but a part of a complex or compound sentence.

A *causal* clause is introduced by "since" or "because".

A *circumstantial* clause is introduced by "when" or "after" and stresses the circumstances in which the action occurs.

A *concessive* clause is introduced by "although, though, granted that".

A *temporal* clause indicates the time at which the action occurs and is introduced by "when, after, before, as, while".

A *collective noun* is a word in the singular which names a group of people. Examples:

group, crowd, populace, senate

The *comparative* degree of the adjective indicates an increased amount of the quality of the positive form of the adjective. In English, the comparative degree is shown by adding *-er* to the simple form of the adjective or by adding "more", "rather", or "too" to the positive degree. Examples:

fatter, more beautiful, rather pretty, too big

A *complementary infinitive* is used to complete the meanings of certain verbs such as "be able, try, ought". Example:

He ought *to go*.

A *complex* sentence is a sentence which contains at least one dependent and one independent clause. Example:

While we were away, our house was robbed.

A *compound* sentence is a sentence which contains two or more independent clauses. Example:

My sister went to the beach and I stayed home.



A *conditional* sentence is a sentence which contains two clauses: a protasis and an apodosis. Example:

If it should rain, I'll take an umbrella.

A *contrafactual* (contrary-to-fact) condition is a condition which is not true. Example:

If I were an elephant, I would have a trunk (but I'm not an elephant; therefore, I don't have a trunk).

A *coordinating conjunction* is a conjunction used to join two elements of a sentence without subordinating one to the other. Examples:

and, but, or

*Correlatives* are words regularly used together which balance each other. Examples:

both...and; either...or; the more...the....

A *demonstrative* is a word which points out something. Examples:

this, that, these, those

A *denominative* verb is a verb made from a noun. Examples:

broadcast, flag (i.e., flag down a train).

A *dependent* clause is a clause which does not make a complete statement by itself. Example:

because we are busy

*Diminutives* are nouns which indicate a small size, endearment, or contempt. Examples:

duckling, pussykin, pup

The most common diminutive endings in English are: *-et* (*-ette*), *-y*, *-ie*, *-ey*. Examples:

piglet, statuette, Bobby, bookie, lovey

*Ellipsis* is the omission of a word or words which are necessary for grammatical completeness. Example:

The man we saw was drunk. *instead of* The man whom we saw was drunk.

An *enclitic* is a word which in pronunciation is so closely connected to the preceding word that it loses its own accent. Examples:

give me (often pronounced "gimme"), want to (often pronounced "wanna"), should have (often pronounced "shoulda").

An *epexegetical* infinitive is an infinitive which depends on and limits an adjective. Example:

difficult *to imagine*

An *expletive* is a word which serves no grammatical function, but which fills up a sentence or gives emphasis. Example:

*There* are five people here.

A *finite* verb is a verb which is limited by person, number, tense, voice, and mood. Examples:

was, am, eats

The *frequentative* (iterative) aspect of a verb expresses repeated action. Example:

He keeps walking.

A *gerund* is a verbal noun. Example:

*Swimming* is good exercise.

*Hypotaxis* (subordination) is the subordination of one clause to another.

An *idiom* is an expression which is peculiar to a language. Example:

to be on the up and up

*Idiom* also refers to the characteristic modes of expression of a given language.

An *impersonal* verb is a verb which lacks a personal subject and is found only in the third person singular. Example:

It is raining.

The *inchoative* (inceptive) aspect of a verb expresses the beginning of an action. Example:

He is beginning to crawl.

An *indefinite* pronoun refers to a not specific person or thing. Examples:

someone, somebody, anyone, anybody

An *independent* clause is a main clause, one that is not subordinate.

An *indirect object* is found with verbs of giving, telling, and showing. Someone gives or tells or shows something *to somebody*; the "somebody" is the indirect object. Example:

John gave *Mary* the book.

*Indirect discourse* is of three types:

An *indirect statement*, regularly introduced by the subordinating conjunction *that*, expresses what someone says, thinks, feels, or believes without using a direct quotation. Example:

“I do not feel good.” (direct statement)

He says *that he does not feel good*. (indirect statement)

An *indirect question*, introduced by an interrogative word, expresses what someone asks, considers, wonders, or states without using a direct quotation. Example:

“Why did you do that?” (direct question)

I wonder *why you did that*. (indirect question)

An *indirect command* expresses what someone commands, urges, warns, or begs without using a direct quotation. Example:

“Don’t go.” (direct command)

I urge you *not to go*. (indirect command)

The *infinitive* is the form of the verb which is not limited by person or number. Example:

to see, to have done

*Inflection* is the change made in the form of a word to show its grammatical relationship to the other words around it.

The *intensive adjective* is used to emphasize the word it describes. Example:

He is the *very* man I meant.

An *interrogative* asks a question. An interrogative sentence is a sentence which asks a question. The interrogative pronoun in English is “who” or “what”; the interrogative adjective is “what, which”.

An *intransitive* verb is a verb which does not take a direct object. Examples:

fall, go, die

A *macron* is a mark (ˉ) placed above a long vowel to mark its quantity.

*Morphology* is the study of the basic formations of words.

The *object* receives the action of the verb. Example:

The child broke the *pitcher*.



A *paradigm* is a model or pattern which contains all the inflectional variations of a given word. Examples:

man, man's, men, men's; he, his, him, they, their (theirs), them

*Parataxis* (coordination) is the absence of subordination and the arrangement of several clauses side by side. Example:

We left; she stayed.

A *participle* is a verbal adjective. Example:

The *screaming* woman caught our attention.

*Periphrasis* (circumlocution) is a roundabout expression of a simple idea. Example:

Illumination is required to be extinguished *is a periphrasis for* Lights must be put out.

*Phonology* is the study of the sounds of a language.

A *phrase* is a group of words without a subject or verb. It may be used as an adjective or an adverb. Examples:

on time, without money, by whom

A *possessive* pronoun or adjective shows ownership. Example:

mine, yours, my, your, his

The *predicate*, in English, is the verb and the part of the sentence that comes after the verb. A *predicate nominative* is a noun or pronoun which follows a linking verb (such as the verbs "to be, seem, appear") and which is the same as the subject. Example:

Tom is a *farmer*.

The same case follows the linking verb as precedes it; the linking verb can *not* take an object. Thus, in the example given above, both "Tom" and "farmer" are in the nominative case. A *predicate adjective* is an adjective which follows a linking verb. Example:

Tom is *tall*.

Once again, "tall" is in the nominative case; the verb "to be" can *not* take an object.

*Protasis* is the clause containing the condition in a conditional sentence (cf. *Apodosis*). Example:

*If it should rain, I'll take an umbrella.*

*Proviso.* A clause of proviso expresses a conditional or a provisional idea.  
Example:

They will come, *provided that we invite them.*

A *reflexive* pronoun refers to the subject of the main verb. Example:

He cut *himself*.

A *relative* pronoun, “who, which, that”, introduces an adjectival clause which modifies the antecedent of that pronoun. Example:

The man *whom* we saw was very tall.

The relative pronoun has the same gender as its antecedent, but it takes its case from its use in its own clause.

The *root* of a word is the basic element that gives the meaning of the word.  
Examples:

*export, reporter, transportation*

A *sentence* is a group of words with a subject and a verb; it expresses a complete thought, feeling, question, or command.

The *stem* is that part of a word to which endings are added. Example:

*annihilated, annihilation*

The *subject* performs the action of the verb. Example:

The *pitcher* threw the ball.

A *subordinate* clause is a dependent clause.

A *subordinating conjunction* is a conjunction used to join two elements of a sentence in a way in which one will be subordinate to or dependent upon the other. Examples:

*since, when, although, that*

A *substantive* is an adjective or any other word or clause used as a noun.  
Example:

Blessed are *the meek*.

*What you have done* is troublesome to me.

It is also any noun.

The *superlative* degree of an adjective indicates the greatest amount of the quality of the positive form of that adjective. In English, the superlative degree is shown by adding *-est* to the simple form of the adjective, or by adding “most, very” or “extremely” to the positive degree. Examples:

youngest, most expensive, very tall, extremely handsome

A *synopsis* is a summary outline of a given verb that shows at a glance the major inflectional variations of that verb.

*Syntax* is the portion of grammar which deals with the relationship of words to each other in the sentence.

A *transitive* verb is a verb which may take an object. Examples:

see, eat, hit

# UNIT ONE

## A. The Verbal System

The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation*, and one is said to *conjugate* a verb. Finite verb forms have the qualities of person, number, tense, voice, and mood.

1. **PERSON:** The Latin verb form, without the aid of pronouns, indicates whether the subject is in the *first* ("I, we"), *second* ("you"), or *third* ("he, she, it, they") persons.
2. **NUMBER:** The inflection of a verb shows whether the subject is *singular* or *plural*.
3. **TENSE:** The tense of a verb tells us *when* the action occurs, has occurred, or will occur. The simplest categories of tense (time) are *present*, *past*, and *future*, but since there is the additional concern as to the completeness or the continuation of the stated act, some refinements of the present, past, and future divisions are required.
4. **VOICE:** There are two grammatical voices in Latin: the *active* indicates that the subject is the doer of the act; the *passive* shows the subject as the recipient of the verbal action.
5. **MOOD:** There are three moods or tones of verbal action. By mood we refer to the manner in which the speaker conceives of the action. The *indicative* mood is the mood of *fact* and is used for making direct statements and asking direct questions. The *subjunctive* is the mood used to express *idea*, *intent*, *desire*, *uncertainty*, *potentiality*, or *anticipation*. The *imperative* mood expresses the action as a *command*.

## B. The Tenses of the Indicative

There are six tenses in the indicative mood.

1. **PRESENT:** The present tense indicates an action which is going on now or is habitual.

optat he desires, he is desiring, he (always) desires, he does desire

NOTE: The Latin form makes no distinction between the simple present tense and the present progressive.

2. IMPERFECT: (**imperfectum** = 'not completed'): The imperfect describes an action which was going on or was habitual in the past. The imperfect is in some respects a motion picture of past action.

optābat he desired (continually, habitually), he was desiring, he used to desire, he kept on desiring

3. FUTURE: The future refers to an action which will occur at some later time.

optābit he will desire, he will be desiring

NOTE: Again, the Latin form makes no distinction between the simple future and the future progressive.

4. PERFECT (**perfectum** = 'completed'): The perfect tense describes one of two types of action:

- a. one which took place at some point in the past.

optāvit he desired

NOTE: This aspect of the perfect is most nearly equivalent to the English past tense. It is a snapshot of past action.

- b. one which is completed from the point of view of the present.

optāvit he has desired

NOTE: This aspect is most nearly equivalent to the English present perfect.

5. PLUPERFECT [PAST PERFECT] (**plūs quam perfectum** = 'more than completed'): This tense describes an action which was already completed at some time in the past.

optāverat he had desired

6. FUTURE PERFECT: The future perfect indicates an action which will be completed before some point of time in the future.

optāverit he will have desired (i.e., by next week)

The six Latin tenses in the indicative, then, express not only matters of *time* but also those of *aspect*. The following chart will illustrate the uses of the tenses in these terms.

		TENSES		
ASPECTS		Present	Past	Future
	Simple	optat he desires (Present)	optāvit he desired (Perfect)	optābit he will desire (Future)
	Continuous (Progressive)	optat he is desiring (Present)	optābat he was desiring (Imperfect)	optābit he will be desiring (Future)
	Completed	optāvit he has desired (Perfect)	optāverat he had desired (Pluperfect)	optāverit he will have desired (Future Perfect)

The tenses in the second vertical column, that is, all those which refer to past time, are called *secondary* tenses. Those in the first and third columns, which refer to present and future time, are called *primary* tenses.

#### PRIMARY TENSES OF INDICATIVE

Present

Future

Future Perfect

Perfect (when equivalent to  
English present perfect)

#### SECONDARY TENSES OF INDICATIVE

Imperfect

Perfect (when equivalent to English  
past tense)

Pluperfect

Both lists above will prove very valuable to you as you progress with your study of Latin. Refer to them frequently.

### C. The Infinitive

The verb forms discussed above are *finite* forms. The Latin word **finis** means 'boundary' or 'limit', and so finite forms are those which are bounded or limited by person, number, tense, voice, and mood. The infinitive is *not* limited as to person, number, and mood, but it does show tense and voice.

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	optāre to desire	optāri to be desired
Perfect	optāvisse to have desired	optātus esse to have been desired
Future	optātūrus esse to be going to desire	optātum iri to be going to be desired (this form is rare in classical Latin)

The infinitive is in fact an abstract verbal noun. **Optāre** can thus be translated not only as 'to desire' but as 'desiring' and so expresses a verbal activity.



### D. The Four Conjugations

With the exception of the verb "to be", every verb in Latin belongs to one of four classes or *conjugations*: the first, second, third, or fourth. These conjugations are distinguished from one another by the form of the present infinitive.

Verbs of the first conjugation have a present infinitive in **-āre**.

optāre to desire

Verbs of the second conjugation have a present infinitive in **-ēre**.

implēre to fill

Verbs of the third conjugation have a present infinitive in **-ere**.

incipere to begin

Verbs of the fourth conjugation have a present infinitive in **-īre**.

sentire to feel, perceive

### E. The Principal Parts

Most verbs in Latin have four principal parts. For example, the vocabulary entry for the verb **optō**, 'to desire', appears thus:

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus

The forms, written in full, are

optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus

and are explained as follows.

optō	first person singular, present active indicative	I desire
optāre	present active infinitive	to desire
optāvī	first person singular, perfect active indicative	I desired, I have desired
optātus	perfect passive participle	having been desired, de- sired

It is essential that the four principal parts for each verb be learned as part of the vocabulary, for without these parts it will not be possible to conjugate the verb fully. This fact will become obvious shortly.

### F. The Present Active Indicative System of the First Two Conjugations

1. A Latin verb usually consists of a stem, a tense sign, and an ending.
2. The stem for the present, imperfect, and future tenses is called the *present stem* and is derived from the second principal part of the verb, i.e., from the present infinitive: the **-re** ending is dropped. This is true for all four conjugations.

	STEM
optō, -āre	optā/re
impleō, -ēre	implē/re
incipiō, -ere	incipē/re
sentiō, -īre	sentī/re

3. The present tense has no tense sign. However, the tense sign of the imperfect for all conjugations is **-bā-**, and that of the future for the first and second conjugations is **-bi-**. These tense signs are added to the stem.

optō, optāre:

optā- (present), optābā- (imperfect), optābi- (future)

impleō, implēre:

implē- (present), implēbā- (imperfect), implēbi- (future)

4. Finally, the personal endings are added, indicating the person (first, second, or third) and number (singular or plural) of the verb. The endings for the active voice are as follows:

#### FIRST CONJUGATION:

##### SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Future
1 -ō or -m	optō	optābam*	optābō
2 -s	optās	optābās	optābis
3 -t	optat*	optābat	optābit

##### PLURAL

1 -mus	optāmus	optābāmus	optābimus
2 -tis	optātis	optābātis	optābitis
3 -nt	optant*	optābant	optābunt

\* Note that a long vowel is shortened before final **-m**, **-t**, or **-nt**.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION:

##### SINGULAR

	Present	Imperfect	Future
1 -ō or -m	impleō	implēbam	implēbō
2 -s	implēs	implēbās	implēbis
3 -t	implet	implēbat	implēbit

##### PLURAL

1 -mus	implēmus	implēbāmus	implēbimus
2 -tis	implētis	implēbātis	implēbitis
3 -nt	implent	implēbant	implēbunt

The only irregularities which are obvious above are really not problematic. In the first person singular of the first conjugation, the *-ā-* of the stem is absorbed into the *-ō* personal ending. This is true of all verbs of the first conjugation, but there is no trouble with this since the first person singular form is learned as a vocabulary item. Note that the *-ō* and *-m* endings for the first person singular are *not* interchangeable. The paradigms will illustrate which ending is to be used for each tense. (The future of the first and second conjugations and the present indicative of all conjugations use the *-ō* endings in the first person singular. All other tenses in the present system use the *-m* ending.)

In the future of the first two conjugations, the *-i-* of the tense sign is absorbed into the *-ō* personal ending and changes to *-u-* in the third person plural.

Therefore, in order to interpret a Latin verb form in the present system, one reads backwards:

optābant **-nt** = 'they'  
**-ba-** = imperfect tense  
 optā- = 'desire'

THEREFORE: 'they used to desire' (third person plural imperfect active indicative)

clāmābis **-s** = 'you' (sing.)  
**-bi-** = future tense  
 clāmā- = 'shout'

THEREFORE: 'you will shout' (second person singular future active indicative)

terrēmus **-mus** = 'we'  
 -- = present tense (no tense sign)  
 terrē- = 'frighten'

THEREFORE: 'we frighten' (first person plural present active indicative)

### G. The Irregular Verb *sum*, 'be'

As in all Indo-European languages, the verb "to be" is somewhat irregular and must be learned thoroughly. The present, imperfect, and future tenses of this verb are given below. Despite the irregularities, note that the personal endings are those which one would normally expect.

#### *sum, esse, fui, futurus, 'be'*

PRESENT		IMPERFECT		FUTURE	
SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
sum	sumus	eram	erāmus	erō	erimus
es	estis	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
est	sunt	erat	erant	erit	erunt

## H. The Noun System

The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *declension*, and such words are said to be *declined*.

Every Latin noun belongs to one of three grammatical *genders*: *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*. The gender of each noun must be learned as a vocabulary item, for it is important in the matter of noun and adjective agreement.

The inflection, or declension, of nouns shows the qualities of *number* and *case*. The case endings indicate the grammatical and syntactical relationship of the given noun to the other words in the sentence. Whereas English relies largely on word order to illustrate such relationships, Latin relies on its inflections. In addition, where the English uses a prepositional phrase, the Latin frequently needs only the one inflected word. See examples under GENITIVE and DATIVE below.

There is no definite or indefinite article in Latin. The articles “the, a, an” are frequently supplied in an English translation.

There are five cases which will be of concern to us at the present. These are: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Ablative. The basic uses of each case are described below.

1. NOMINATIVE: This is the case of the subject and the predicate nominative.

**Fēmina** optat.      *The woman* desires.

**Fēmina** est rēgīna.      *The woman* is a queen.

2. GENITIVE: In general, the genitive case is used for a noun which is dependent upon another noun and is often introduced by the preposition “of” in English (except where “of” means ‘concerning’).

patria **fēminae**      the native land *of the woman*, *the woman's* native land

timor **aquae**      fear *of water*

urna **pecūniae**      a jar *of money*

3. DATIVE: This case generally expresses the person (or thing), with the exception of the subject and object, *with reference to* whom (or what) the action or idea of the main verb is relevant. It is usually rendered in English by the prepositions “to” or “for”, and one of its uses includes the indirect object.

Taedam **fēminae** dat.      He gives the torch *to the woman*. (*Fēminae* is the *referent* of the action; that is, the action of the verb occurs *with reference to* her.)

Taedam **fēminae** optat.      He chooses a torch *for the woman*.

4. **ACCUSATIVE:** Essentially, the accusative case is used as the direct object of a verb or as the object of certain prepositions.

**Fēminam** videt.

He sees *the woman*.

Fēmina in **aquam** ambulābit. The woman will walk into *the water*.

5. **ABLATIVE:** The ablative generally expresses notions connected with the English prepositions “from, with, in”, and “by”. Sometimes prepositions are required to express these notions; other times the case ending alone serves this purpose. Distinctions will be pointed out in later Units.

Cum **fēminā** ambulat.

He walks with *the woman*.

Fēmina est in **aquā**.

The woman is in *the water*.

Nauta fēminam **taedā** terret. The sailor frightens the woman *with a torch*.

## I. The First Declension

There are five basic groups of nouns in Latin. Each of these is called a *declension*. These declensions are distinguished from one another by the ending of the genitive singular: for the first declension, this is **-ae**, for the second, **-ī**, for the third, **-is**, for the fourth, **-ūs**, and for the fifth, **-eī**. At present we shall be concerned only with the first of these groups, the first declension.

Noun entries in the vocabulary lists are given in three parts:

fēmina, -ae, F.

The first of these parts is the nominative singular form; the second indicates the ending of the genitive singular; the third reveals the gender of the noun (*M.* for masculine, *F.* for feminine, *N.* for neuter). Most nouns of the first declension are feminine, but there are a few which are masculine.

A noun form consists of a stem and a case ending. In order to arrive at the stem of any noun in Latin, take the full genitive singular form and drop the ending.

fēmin / ae

(stem) (ending)

For the first declension, it may seem pointless to go to the genitive form to arrive at the stem when the same results might be obtained by using the nominative form. But for many nouns the genitive form is significantly different from the nominative, so that the stem for all nouns can only be found by this procedure.

To this stem the endings of the particular declension are added. The endings for the first declension are:



## SINGULAR

Nominative	-a	fēmina	(the, a) woman (subject)
Genitive	-ae	fēminae	of (the, a) woman, (the, a) woman's
Dative	-ae	fēminae	to/for (the, a) woman
Accusative	-am	fēminam	(the, a) woman (object)
Ablative	-ā	fēminā	from/with/in/by (the, a) woman

## PLURAL

Nominative	-ae	fēminae	(the) women (subject)
Genitive	-ārum	fēminārum	of (the) women, (the) women's
Dative	-is	fēminis	to/for (the) women
Accusative	-ās	fēminās	(the) women (object)
Ablative	-is	fēminis	from/with/in/by (the) women

## UNIT ONE — VOCABULARY

<b>ambulō</b> (1)*	walk
<b>aqua</b> , -ae, F.	water
<b>clāmō</b> (1)	shout
<b>corōna</b> , -ae, F.	crown, wreath
<b>corōnō</b> (1)	crown
<b>cum</b> (prep. + abl.)	with
<b>cūra</b> , -ae, F.	care, concern, anxiety
<b>dē</b> (prep. + abl.)	concerning, about; (down) from
<b>dō</b> , dare, <b>dedī</b> , <b>datum</b>	give, grant
<b>dōnō</b> (1)	give, present, reward
<b>ē</b> , <b>ex</b> (prep. + abl.)	out of, from <sup>1</sup>
<b>enim</b> (postpositive conj.)	indeed, of course; for
<b>et</b> (conj.)	and
<b>et . . . et</b>	both . . . and
(adv.)	even
<b>fāma</b> , -ae, F.	talk, report, rumor, fame, reputation
<b>fēmina</b> , -ae, F.	woman
<b>fōrma</b> , -ae, F.	form, shape, figure, beauty
<b>habēō</b> , -ēre, <b>habuī</b> , <b>habitus</b>	have, hold, possess, consider
<b>impleō</b> , -ēre, <b>implēvī</b> , <b>implētus</b>	fill, fill up
<b>in</b> (prep. + acc.)	into, onto (motion toward)
(prep. + abl.)	in, on (place where)
<b>īnsula</b> , -ae, F.	island
<b>nauta</b> , -ae, M.	sailor



<b>-ne</b> (enclitic)	(added to the first word of an interrogative sentence or clause; it indicates a question) <sup>2</sup>
<b>nōn</b> (adv.)	not
<b>optō</b> (1)	desire, wish (for); choose
<b>patria, -ae, F.</b>	native land, country
<b>pecūnia, -ae, F.</b>	money
<b>poena, -ae, F.</b>	penalty, punishment
<b>poenās dare</b>	to pay a penalty
<b>poēta, -ae, M.</b>	poet
<b>porta, -ae, F.</b>	gate
<b>-que</b> (enclitic)	and <sup>3</sup>
<b>rēgina, -ae, F.</b>	queen
<b>sed</b> (conj.)	but
<b>sum, esse, fuī, futūrus</b>	be, exist
<b>taeda, -ae, F.</b>	torch
<b>terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus</b>	frighten, alarm, terrify
<b>timeō, -ēre, timuī, --</b>	fear, be afraid (of)
<b>turba, -ae, F.</b>	crowd, uproar
<b>via, -ae, F.</b>	way, road, path, street
<b>videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus</b>	see

\* The entry (1) after a verb indicates that the verb belongs to the first conjugation and has the regular principal parts in **-āre, -āvī, -ātus**.

<sup>1</sup> **ē** before a word beginning with a consonant; **ex** before a vowel or **h** and sometimes before a consonant.

<sup>2</sup> e.g., **Timetne?** Is he afraid?

**Fēmināsne vidēs?** Do you see the women?

<sup>3</sup> e.g., **poēta rēginaque** = **poēta et rēgina**

## UNIT ONE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Many verbs in Latin derive from nouns. For example, **corōnō, corōnāre, corōnāvī, corōnātus**, 'crown', comes from **corōna, corōnae, F.**, 'crown'. Such verbs are called denominatives.

The preposition **cum**, 'with', always takes the ablative case: **cum cūrā**, 'with care', **cum fēminā**, 'with a woman'.

Note that **dē** has both the meaning 'concerning' and 'down from'. It always takes the ablative case.

Although most first conjugation verbs follow the pattern **-āre, -āvī, -ātus**, the verb **dō, dare**, 'give', does not. The **-a-** in the infinitive is short and the other principal parts are **dedī, datus**. When an infinitive is used with this verb, it is best to use the meaning 'grant, allow' for **dō**. For example:

**Rēgina fēminās vidēre corōnam dat.** The queen grants (allows) the women to see (her) crown.

The first conjugation verb **dōnō**, 'give, present, reward', may govern an accusative and a dative *or* an accusative and ablative. In other words, with **dōnō**, one may present something to someone or present someone with something:

**Aquam nautis dōnābimus.** We shall give water to the sailors.

**Nautās aquā dōnābimus.** We shall present the sailors with water.

**Enim**, 'indeed, of course', is a postpositive conjunction. This means that it cannot be the first word of a clause. Usually, a word that is postpositive is placed as the second word of a clause. **Enim** generally introduces a statement which corroborates what precedes.

**Et** means 'and'. In a series, the first **et** means 'both'. For example:

**Et fēminae et nautae in viā ambulant.** Both the women and the sailors are walking in the street.

As an adverb, **et** means 'even':

**Et rēgina poenās dabat.** Even the queen was paying the penalty.

One cannot know for sure exactly what the principal parts of a verb in the second conjugation will be:

<b>habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus</b>	have
<b>impleō, implēre, implēvi, implētus</b>	fill
<b>videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus</b>	see

Thus, each verb must be learned thoroughly; one cannot simply guess at the principal parts.

The preposition **in** may take either the accusative or the ablative case, with a difference in meaning. The accusative case is used to express movement toward; thus **in** with the accusative means 'into' or 'onto': **in turbam**, 'into the crowd'. Sometimes this movement can be in a hostile sense, as 'The man led his troops against the sailors' (**in nautās**). The ablative case, on the other hand, is not associated with movement, but with location. Thus **in** with the ablative means 'in' or 'on': **in turbā**, 'in the crowd'.

A vowel before **-ns-** is long; thus, **īnsula, īnsulae**, F., 'island'.

Literally, the idiom **poenās dare** means 'to give punishments', but the actual meaning is the opposite, 'to pay a penalty'. Of course, the verb is conjugated:

**Poenās dabit.** He will pay the penalty.

Although most nouns of the first declension are feminine, **poēta, poētae**, 'poet', and **nauta, nautae**, 'sailor', are masculine. These words are declined in the same way as the feminine nouns of the first declension.

An enclitic is attached to the end of a word and is pronounced with it. In English we translate **-que**, 'and', *before* the word to which it is attached:

poëtae nautaeque	the poets and sailors
Fēminās vidēbunt rēginamque corōnābunt.	They will see the women and crown the queen.

The verb "to be" is irregular in most languages; Latin is no exception. Note that **est** may be translated 'there is' as well as 'he, she, it is'. Thus, **erat**, 'there was'; **erit**, 'there will be'. Since the verb "to be" cannot logically have a passive voice, it does not have a perfect passive participle (which, for most verbs, is given as the fourth principal part). In its place, the future active participle has been provided. Translate **futūrus** as 'going to be'. Of course the verb "to be" cannot take an object. When this verb is used as a "linking" verb, one finds the same case preceding and following it.

Nauta est poëta. The sailor is a poet.

**Timeō**, **timēre**, **timuī**, --, 'fear', lacks a fourth principal part. In order not to confuse the meanings of **terreō**, **terrēre**, **terruī**, **terrītus**, 'frighten', and **timeō**, remember that **terreō** means 'terrify' and that a timid person is one who is afraid.

Caesar's famous expression, **Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī**, 'I came, I saw, I conquered', is a very handy way of remembering the third principal parts of these verbs (**veniō**, 'come', Unit Two; **videō**, **vidēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsus**, 'see'; and **vincō**, 'conquer', Unit Fourteen).

Note that the **-ī-** in the perfect tenses of **videō** is long (**vīdī**). Very often in Latin the short vowel in the present stem lengthens in the perfect.

## UNIT ONE — DRILL

### I.

Translate:

1. Fēminae in viā ambulānt.
2. Fēminaene in viā ambulābunt?
3. Fēminae in viā nōn ambulābant.
4. Estne rēgina in insulā?
5. Rēgina in insulā nōn erat sed erit.
6. Pecūniam habētis? Nōn habēmus.
7. Pecūniam habēs? Nōn habeo.
8. Et pecūniam et fāmam habēbis.
9. Pecūniam habēbāmus sed fāmam habēbātis.

10. Pecūniam nōn habēbō sed fāmam habēbimus.
11. Turbamne terrēbās? Nōn terrēbam.
12. Aquam nautis dabitis?

## II.

- A. Decline **porta**, **turba**, and **rēgīna** fully.
- B. Change each of the following from the singular to the plural (in some instances there may be two possible answers):

- |            |           |          |
|------------|-----------|----------|
| 1. rēgīnam | 3. fēminā | 5. nauta |
| 2. fāmae   | 4. corōna |          |

## III.

Translate into Latin:

- |                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. with the queens | 6. I am                   |
| 2. to the poet     | 7. we shall shout         |
| 3. of women        | 8. they used to be afraid |
| 4. on the gates    | 9. you (pl.) are desiring |
| 5. crown (object)  | 10. to give               |

## UNIT ONE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D, E, F, G)

### I.

- A. What are the stems of **impleō**, **implēre**; **corōnō**, **corōnāre**; **dō**, **dare**; **videō**, **vidēre**?
- B. Conjugate **dōnō** in the imperfect active indicative.
- C. Conjugate **timeō** in the future active indicative.
- D. Conjugate **habeō** in the present active indicative.
- E. Give the second person singular of **clāmō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses, active indicative.

### II.

- A. Identify each of the following forms:

- |                |            |
|----------------|------------|
| 1. vidētis     | 6. es      |
| 2. vidēbās     | 7. erat    |
| 3. vidēbis     | 8. erit    |
| 4. clāmātis    | 9. est     |
| 5. ambulābātis | 10. habēre |

## B. Change from singular to plural:

- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| 1. ambulat | 6. implēs |
| 2. corōnō  | 7. optās  |
| 3. habēs   | 8. sum    |
| 4. erit    | 9. videt  |
| 5. est     | 10. erō   |

## UNIT ONE — EXERCISES

## I.

1. Nauta in patriā poenās rēgināe timet.
2. Poēta pecūniam fāmamque nōn optat.
3. Pecūniam poētārum habēmus.
4. Poētisne rēgina pecūniam dabit?
5. Rēginam insulae cum turbā nautārum vidēre optābāmus.
6. Fēminae enim poētās corōnis corōnābunt.
7. Fēminās in viīs vidēbātis, sed dē fōrmā nōn clāmābātis. Poenās dabitis.
8. Poētae rēginam patriae ē turbā fēminārum optant.
9. Est cūra dē poenā poētae.
10. Taedās in viā vidēre timēbō.
11. Taedamne in insulā vidētis?
12. Turbamne fēminārum in insulā vidēs (vidēbās)?
13. Cum poēta ē portis in viam ambulō (ambulābam).
14. Poētae et poenam et fāmam timent.
15. Viās turbā implēbunt.
16. Nautae fēminās taedis terrēbant.
17. a) Et pecūniam et corōnās poētis dōnābis.  
b) Et pecūniā et corōnis poētās dōnābis.
18. Erisne (eruntne, erantne, suntne) in insulā cum rēginā?
19. Fēminae est fōrma, fāma nautae; fēminis est fōrma, fāma nautis.
20. Poena nautārum erat cūra rēgināe.
21. Rēginaene corōnam vidēre optābās?
22. Rēgināe dē patriā cūram habent.
23. Nauta enim poenās dare nōn optat.
24. Ex aquā ambulāmus.
25. Patria poētae est insula.
26. Insulam esse patriam habēbat.
27. Vidēre taedās patriae est nautis cūra.



## II.

1. The poets will crown a queen from the women of the island.
2. Shall we be with the poet on the island?
3. The sailors kept on shouting about the punishment of the women.
4. We fear the reputation of the poet.
5. You [pl.] kept on giving money to the crowds of sailors.
6. We desire to see women in (our) native land.
7. The sailor was a poet, but he kept on fearing both money and fame.

## III. Reading

Poēta fābulam<sup>1</sup> nārrat<sup>2</sup> dē rēginā et nautā. Rēginā cum turbā incolārum<sup>3</sup> ē patriā exit<sup>4</sup> et ad<sup>5</sup> Africā<sup>6</sup> appropinquat.<sup>7</sup> Ibi<sup>8</sup> novam<sup>9</sup> patriam aedificābat<sup>10</sup> sed nōn timēbat. Subitō<sup>11</sup> nauta cum turbā et incolārum<sup>3</sup> et fēminārum ē patriā Trōiā<sup>12</sup> ad<sup>5</sup> rēginae patriam appropinquat.<sup>7</sup> In Africā<sup>6</sup> diū<sup>13</sup> manent.<sup>14</sup> Rēginā nautam amat<sup>15</sup> et nauta rēginam. Fāma enim rēginae nōn erat cūra. Postrēmō<sup>16</sup> nauta rēginam relinquit<sup>17</sup> et rēginā vitam.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> fābula, -ae, F., 'story'    <sup>2</sup> nārrō (1), 'tell'    <sup>3</sup> incola, -ae, M., 'inhabitant'    <sup>4</sup> exit, 'goes out' (3rd person sing.)    <sup>5</sup> ad (prep. + acc.), 'to, toward'    <sup>6</sup> Africa, -ae, F., 'Africa'    <sup>7</sup> appropinquō (1) (+ ad + acc.), 'approach'    <sup>8</sup> ibi (adv.), 'there'    <sup>9</sup> nova (adj.) 'new'    <sup>10</sup> aedificō (1), 'build'    <sup>11</sup> subitō (adv.), 'suddenly'    <sup>12</sup> Trōia, -ae, F., 'Troy'    <sup>13</sup> diū (adv.), 'for a long time'    <sup>14</sup> maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus, 'remain'    <sup>15</sup> amō (1), 'love'    <sup>16</sup> postrēmō (adv.), 'finally'    <sup>17</sup> relinquit, 'abandons' (3rd person sing.)    <sup>18</sup> vita, -ae, F., 'life'



# UNIT TWO

## A. The Perfect Active Indicative System of All Verbs

1. All verbs in Latin, regardless of the conjugation to which they belong, are formed identically in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses respectively. As in the present system, the verb form in these tenses usually consists of a stem, a tense sign, and an ending.
2. The perfect stem is derived by dropping the **-ī** from the third principal part of the verb.

		STEM
optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus	desire	
optāvī		optāv/ī
impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus	fill	
implēvī		implēv/ī
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	begin	
incēpī		incēp/ī
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus	feel, perceive	
sēnsī		sēns/ī

This process also applies to the few irregular verbs in Latin; irregularities do not appear in the perfect system.

3. There is a special set of personal endings which is used *only* for the perfect tense. These endings are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1	<b>-ī</b>	<b>-imus</b>
2	<b>-istī</b>	<b>-istis</b>
3	<b>-it</b>	<b>-ērunt</b>

The *perfect* tense is formed by adding these endings to the perfect stem. Note that there is no tense sign for the perfect.

4. The *pluperfect* tense is formed by adding the tense sign **-erā-** to the perfect stem and then adding the personal endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**. It is perhaps easier, however, to regard the formation of the pluperfect indicative as the perfect stem plus the forms of the imperfect indicative of the verb *sum*.

5. The *future perfect* tense is formed by adding the tense sign **-eri-** to the perfect stem and then the personal endings **-ō\***, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**. As in the pluperfect, it is easier to regard this formation as the perfect stem plus the forms of the future indicative of the verb **sum** (with **-erint** in the third person plural instead of **-erunt**). Thus:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
Perf.	Pluperf.	Fut. Perf.	Perf.	Pluperf.	Fut. Perf.
1 optāvi	optāveram	optāverō	optāvimus	optāverāmus	optāverimus
2 optāvisti	optāverās	optāveris	optāvistis	optāverātis	optāveritis
3 optāvit	optāverat	optāverit	optāverunt	optāverant	optāverint

- \* As with the future tense, the **-i-** in the first person singular is assimilated into the **-ō**. Thus, **optābō**, **optāverō**.

## B. The Subjunctive Mood

The indicative mood is used to make statements of fact or to ask direct questions. The subjunctive mood is connected with notions involving idea, intent, desire, uncertainty, potentiality, anticipation, or the like. There are many uses of the subjunctive which will be encountered as this course progresses. In this unit we shall be concerned with only one of these uses.

## C. Formation of the Subjunctive

While the indicative mood in Latin has six tenses, the subjunctive has only four: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. A subjunctive verb has no one equivalent in English and can only be translated according to the construction in which it occurs. By the same token, the translations of the tenses in the subjunctive do not necessarily correspond with those in the indicative.

### 1. PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

The conjugation of the present subjunctive is very similar to that of the present indicative. Begin with the present stem, change the **-ā-** to **-ē-**, and add the personal endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

optā- (stem)

optē- (mutated stem for present subjunctive)

optem      optēmus

optēs      optētis

optet      optent

### 2. IMPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

The imperfect subjunctive is easily formed for *all* verbs (including irregular verbs) by taking the full present active infinitive, lengthening the final **-e**, and

adding the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.** (Note that, as always, a long vowel is shortened before final **-m, -t, or -nt.**)

optāre/m	implēre/m	incipere/m	sentire/m
optārē/s	implērē/s	inciperē/s	sentirē/s
optāre/t	implēre/t	incipere/t	sentire/t
optārē/mus	implērē/mus	inciperē/mus	sentirē/mus
optārē/tis	implērē/tis	inciperē/tis	sentirē/tis
optāre/nt	implēre/nt	incipere/nt	sentire/nt

### 3. PERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

To the perfect stem, add **-eri-** and then the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.**

optāv/eri/m	implēv/eri/m	incēp/eri/m	sēns/eri/m
optāv/eri/s	implēv/eri/s	incēp/eri/s	sēns/eri/s
optāv/eri/t	implēv/eri/t	incēp/eri/t	sēns/eri/t
optāv/eri/mus	implēv/eri/mus	incēp/eri/mus	sēns/eri/mus
optāv/eri/tis	implēv/eri/tis	incēp/eri/tis	sēns/eri/tis
optāv/eri/nt	implēv/eri/nt	incēp/eri/nt	sēns/eri/nt

### 4. PLUPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

To the perfect stem, add the tense sign **-issē-** and then the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.**

optāv/isse/m	implēv/isse/m	incēp/isse/m	sēns/isse/m
optāv/issē/s	implēv/issē/s	incēp/issē/s	sēns/issē/s
optāv/isse/t	implēv/isse/t	incēp/isse/t	sēns/isse/t
optāv/issē/mus	implēv/issē/mus	incēp/issē/mus	sēns/issē/mus
optāv/issē/tis	implēv/issē/tis	incēp/issē/tis	sēns/issē/tis
optāv/isse/nt	implēv/isse/nt	incēp/isse/nt	sēns/isse/nt

### D. Present Subjunctive of the Verb *sum*

While the endings are what we should expect, the stem is irregular:

sim	sīmus
sis	sītis
sit	sint

The imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect subjunctives of this verb are formed according to the rules given under C above. The principal parts of the verb, it must be remembered, are **sum, esse, fui, futūrus.**

### E. Conditional Sentences

The sentence "If he works, he is happy" is a conditional sentence. It is composed of two clauses, the *if* clause (sometimes called the *protasis*) and the *concluding* clause (called the *apodosis*). The protasis is introduced in Latin by *sī*, 'if', or *nisi*, 'unless, if not'.

Conditional sentences may be broken up into three basic categories and are formed in Latin according to a specific formula for each category.

#### 1. SIMPLE (GENERAL) CONDITIONS

If (i.e., whenever) he works, he desires money.

Such conditions may also be expressed in past time:

If (i.e., whenever) he worked, he desired money.

FORMULA: Indicative in both clauses.

*Sī labōrat, pecūniam optat.*

*Sī labōrābat, pecūniam optābat.*

*Sī labōrāvit, pecūniam optāvit.*

#### 2. FUTURE CONDITIONS

##### a. MORE VIVID

If he works, he will desire money.

This type of condition is expressed in English by the present indicative in the *if* clause and the future in the concluding clause.

FORMULA: Future indicative in both clauses.

*Sī labōrābit, pecūniam optābit.*

NOTE: Occasionally, when the speaker wishes the implications of the condition to be exceptionally emphatic, the future perfect indicative is used in the protasis instead of the simple future.

*Sī labōrāverit, pecūniam optābit.*    *If he works (will have worked),  
he will desire money.*

In such cases it is emphasized that the action in the protasis *must* be completed in order for the action in the apodosis to occur. Frequently, in English, it is difficult to illustrate the difference between the future and the future perfect in such clauses, except by giving special intonation to the voice, or, in printing, by using italics.

##### b. LESS VIVID

If he should work, he would desire money.

These conditions, while they refer to future time, conceive of the future act less vividly, or less certainly, than future more vivid conditions.

FORMULA: Present subjunctive in both clauses. (In English, *should* ... *would* ....)

*Sī labōret, pecūniam optet.*

NOTE: Occasionally the perfect subjunctive is used instead of the present, but this is rare, and so its discussion has been omitted from these materials.

### 3. CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS

#### a. PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT

Contrary-to-fact conditions state something which is untrue and hypothesized.

If he were (now) working (but he is not), he would be desiring money (he would desire money).

FORMULA: Imperfect subjunctive in both clauses. (In English, *were* — *ing*, ... *would be* ... *ing* / *would* ...)

*Sī labōrāret, pecūniam optāret.*

#### b. PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT

If he had (in the past) worked (but he did not), he would have desired money.

FORMULA: Pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses. (In English, *had* ... *would have* ...)

*Sī labōrāvisset, pecūniam optāvisset.*

### 4. MIXED CONDITIONS

In addition to the strict formulae given above, occasionally one finds a mixed condition where the protasis and the apodosis belong to different categories. Such conditions are constructed as logical thought requires. For example:

If he had (in the past) worked (but he did not), he would (now) be desiring money (he would desire money).

This sentence is past contrafactual in the protasis, but the apodosis refers to present time. Consequently, the protasis must have its verb in the pluperfect subjunctive, while the verb of the apodosis will be imperfect subjunctive.

*Sī labōrāvisset, pecūniam optāret.*

### F. Genitive with Verbs of Accusing and Condemning

The genitive is used with verbs of accusing and condemning to express the charge or the penalty.



*Genitive of the charge:*

Puellam **cūrae** culpat. He blames the girl [*of*] *for (her) concern*.  
[**culpō** (1), 'blame']

*Genitive of the penalty:*

Nautam **pecūniae** dāmnāvit. He sentenced the sailor [*of money*] *to pay money*.

## UNIT TWO — VOCABULARY

<b>ā</b> , ab (prep. + abl.)	(away) from; by (only with living beings) <sup>1</sup>
<b>ad</b> (prep. + acc.)	to, toward
<b>anima</b> , -ae, F.	soul, spirit, life force
<b>āra</b> , -ae, F.	altar
<b>capiō</b> , -ere, cēpī, captus	take, capture
<b>cella</b> , -ae, F.	storeroom, (small) room
<b>cēlō</b> (1)	hide, conceal
<b>cōgitō</b> (1)	think, ponder, consider
<b>culpa</b> , -ae, F.	guilt, fault
<b>dāmnō</b> (1)	condemn, sentence
<b>dubitō</b> (1)	doubt, hesitate
<b>glōria</b> , -ae, F.	glory, renown
<b>incipiō</b> , -ere, incēpī, inceptus	begin
<b>incola</b> , -ae, M. (occasionally F.)	inhabitant
<b>incolō</b> , -ere, -uī, --	inhabit
<b>īnsidiae</b> , -ārum, F. (used only in pl.)	ambush, plot, treachery
<b>invidia</b> , -ae, F.	envy, jealousy
<b>labōrō</b> (1)	work
<b>lacrima</b> , -ae, F.	tear ( <i>as in</i> 'teardrop')
<b>lūna</b> , -ae, F.	moon, moonlight
<b>moneō</b> , -ēre, monuī, monitus	warn, remind
<b>mora</b> , -ae, F.	delay
<b>mūtō</b> (1)	change, exchange
<b>nātūra</b> , -ae, F.	nature
<b>neque</b> or <b>nec</b> (conj.)	and not, nor ( <i>replaces et...nōn</i> )
<b>neque</b> ( <b>nec</b> ) . . . <b>neque</b> ( <b>nec</b> )	neither . . . nor
<b>nihil</b> or <b>nīl</b> , N. (indeclinable noun)	nothing
<b>nisī</b> (conj.)	unless, if . . . not; except

<sup>1</sup> ā before a word beginning with a consonant; ab before a vowel or h



<b>noxa</b> , -ae, F.	harm, injury
<b>nunc</b> (adv.)	now
<b>pellō</b> , -ere, <b>pepulī</b> , <b>pulsus</b>	push, drive (off)
<b>expellō</b> , -ere, <b>expulī</b> , <b>expulsus</b>	push out, drive out
<b>per</b> (prep. + acc.)	through
<b>prōvincia</b> , -ae, F.	province
<b>puella</b> , -ae, F.	girl
<b>semper</b> (adv.)	always
<b>sententia</b> , -ae, F.	feeling, thought, opinion
<b>sentiō</b> , -īre, <b>sēnsī</b> , <b>sēnsus</b>	feel, perceive
<b>sī</b> (conj.)	if
<b>sub</b> (prep. + acc.)	under (i.e., going to a place under)
(prep. + abl.)	under (i.e., at or in a place under)
<b>superō</b> (1)	overcome, conquer
<b>taceō</b> , -ēre, <b>tacui</b> , <b>tacitus</b>	be (or keep) silent
<b>teneō</b> , -ēre, <b>tenuī</b> , <b>tentus</b>	hold, keep, possess
<b>terra</b> , -ae, F.	earth, land
<b>unda</b> , -ae, F.	wave
<b>veniō</b> , -īre, <b>vēni</b> , <b>ventus</b>	come
<b>vīta</b> , -ae, F.	life

## UNIT TWO — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The preposition **ā** (**ab**) is used only with the ablative case. It has two different meanings, 'away from' and 'by' ('through the agency of', *not* 'near'). It means 'by' only when it is used with words representing living beings, for example, **ā nautā**, 'by the sailor', **ā rēginā**, 'by the queen'; 'by tears' or 'by delay' would not use **ā** (**ab**), but simply the ablative case without a preposition.

Since **ad** means 'to' or 'toward', it governs the accusative case (the case which expresses movement toward). The preposition **per**, 'through', also provides the idea of motion toward and so takes the accusative.

**Incipiō**, **incipere**, **incēpī**, **inceptus** is a compound of the preposition **in-**, 'on', plus the verb **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**. The **-a-** of the uncompounded verb changes to **-i-** in compounds; this is always the case in Latin. It is very common for the **-a-** in a perfect passive participle to change to **-e-** when the verb is compounded. **Incipiō** means literally 'take on', thus, 'begin'. (Cf. He *takes on* a new task. He *begins* a new task.)

There are many compounds of **capiō**: **ad** + **capiō** is **accipiō**, 'take to (oneself), receive'. The prefix **re-** has the meaning 'back'; thus, **recipiō**, 'take back'. The imperative form **recipe** 'take back', is our English word "recipe". The Romans

used a line to indicate an abbreviation, and so the sign for a prescription **R** is not **Rx**, but an abbreviation for **recipe**, 'take back'. **Repellō** (**re-** + **pellō**, 'drive') means 'drive back'. A water-repellent raincoat drives back the rain so that it does not go through the coat. **Excipiō** (**ex** + **capiō**) means 'take out', and **sus-cipiō** (**sub**, 'under' + **capiō**) means 'undertake'.

**Cōgitō**, a first conjugation verb, means 'think, ponder, consider'. To *think about* something is **cōgitāre dē** (+ ablative) or **cōgitāre** (+ accusative).

**Dubitō** (1) means 'hesitate' when it is used with an infinitive, otherwise 'doubt'.

**Incolō**, **incolere**, **incoluī**, 'inhabit', is obviously related to **incola**, **incolae**, M. or F., 'inhabitant'; it lacks a fourth principal part.

**Insidiae**, **insidiārum**, F., 'ambush, plot, treachery', although plural in Latin and governing a plural verb, is translated as singular in English.

There is no distinction between **neque** and **nec**; either spelling may be used. **Neque...neque** means 'neither...nor': **Rēginam neque videt neque timet**, 'He neither sees nor fears the queen'. The sentence could also be written **Rēginam nec videt nec timet**.

In the same way, the spellings of the word 'nothing', **nihil** and **nīl**, are interchangeable.

**Pellō**, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsus**, 'push, drive off', forms its third principal part by the process of reduplication. Some verbs have such reduplicated third principal parts, which are formed by prefixing the word with the initial consonant, followed either by -e- or the vowel of the root. Some other examples of reduplicated perfects are:

canō, canere, cecinī, cantus	sing (of)
currō, currere, cucurri, cursus	run
poscō, poscere, poposci, --	beg, demand

**Expellō**, **expellere**, **expulī**, **expulsus** is a compound of **pellō** (**ex** + **pellō**) and so it means 'push out, drive out'. Often a verb that is compounded will lose its reduplicated form in the perfect (cf. **pepulī**, **expulī**).

Very frequently, first declension nouns that end in **-tia** come over into English with the spelling **-ce** or **-cy** (cf. **sententia**, 'sentence'; **grātia**, 'grace'; **diligentia**, 'diligence'; **beneficentia**, 'beneficence'; **cōstantia**, 'constancy').

The perfect forms of **sentiō**, **sentire**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**, 'feel, perceive', have a long **-ē-** because of the **-ns-** which follows.

**Sub** takes either the accusative or the ablative case depending upon whether the idea of movement toward or location is involved. In other words, if one were drilling down under the earth, in Latin **sub terram** would be used, but if one were to speak of the rock lying under the earth, **sub terrā** would be used.

Again notice the lengthening of the **-e-** in **veniō**, **venire** to **-ē-** in the perfect active, **vēnī**.

A good way of remembering the principal parts of verbs is to associate both the present stem and the perfect passive stem with English words. For example:

incipiō	<i>incipient</i>	<i>inception</i>
expellō	<i>expel</i>	<i>expulsion</i>
sentiō	<i>sentient</i>	<i>sensual</i>
veniō	<i>convene</i>	<i>convention</i>

## UNIT TWO — DRILL

### I.

Verb identification: Translate indicatives; identify subjunctives by so labeling them, and appending information as to person, number, tense, and voice.

1. ambulat, ambulāret, ambulāvit, ambulāverat
2. clāmābunt, clāmant; clāment, clāmāvērunt
3. vidērunt, viderant, viderint (two possibilities), vidissent
4. optāverās, optāveris (two possibilities), optēmus, optāvimus
5. timērēmus, timēmus, timuimus, timēbāmus
6. dedissem, dem, dabam, dedi

### II.

Translate:

1. Sī in insulā eritis, pecūniam habēre optābitis.
2. Sī in insulā sitis, aquam optētis.
3. Sī in patriā essētis, fēminās vidērētis.
4. Sī in patriā fuissētis, clāmāre timuissētis.
5. Sī fēminam vidēbit, clāmābit.
6. Sī fēminam viderit, clāmābit.
7. Sī fēminam vidēret, clāmāret.
8. Sī fēminam vidisset, clāmāvisset.
9. Sī fēminam optet, clāmet.
10. Sī taedam nautae det, portam vidēbō.
11. Sī taedam nautae dabit, portam vidēbō.
12. Sī taedam nautae dederit, portam vidēbō.
13. Sī taedam nautae dedisset, portam vidissem.
14. Sī taedam nautae daret, portam vidērem.

### III.

Ellipsis. Note the following progression, and how the verb “to be” is omitted.

Est fāma fēminis. Est fōrma fēminis.

Est fāma fēminis et est fōrma fēminis.

Est fāma fēminis et fōrma.

Fāma fēminis et fōrma.

## UNIT TWO — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D)

### I.

1. Incolaene dē glōriā patriae tacuērunt?
2. Rēginam dē incolārum insidiīs monui.
3. Glōriam enim optāverint.
4. Nīl nisi glōriam optāverō.
5. Puellae neque lacrimās neque culpam cēlāverant.
6. Sententiās dē animā mūtāre incēperāmus sed sententiās nōn mūtāverātis.
7. Invidiamne ex animā expulisti?
8. Noxam ab incolīs pepulerimus.
9. Per undās ad terram vēnistis, sed in patriā semper fuimus.
10. Pecūniam rēginae ē terrā cēperat.

### II.

A *synopsis* is a summary outline of a given verb that shows at a glance the major inflectional variations of that verb. In Latin, a synopsis gives all the forms of a given verb in a specified person and number. Writing synopses is an excellent way to solidify one's knowledge of the verbal system in Latin.

The following example is a synopsis of **cēlō** (1) in the third person singular:

**cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātus, 'hide, conceal'**

#### ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE MOOD	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
Present	cēlat	cēlet
Imperfect	cēlābat	cēlāret
Future	cēlābit	--
Perfect	cēlāvit	cēlāverit
Pluperfect	cēlāverat	cēlāvisset
Future Perfect	cēlāverit	--

Write synopses of the following verbs:

1. dubitō (1), second person plural; third person singular
2. labōrō (1), third person plural; first person singular

## UNIT TWO — EXERCISES

### I.

1. cum puellā; dē lūnā; ē cellis; in āram; in turbā; ab incolā; ā prōvinciā; ad undam; per terrās; sub portam; sub undis.



2. Sententiam mutābit. Sententiam mutāre dubitat. Sententiam mutāre incēperat. Sententiam mutāvit.
3. Nisi fēminae nautās, sentiārum dē incolis dāmnābunt (dāmnāverint), incolae in prōvinciā nōn labōrābunt.
4. Incolae si fēminās insulae dāmnārent, nautae ad terram venīre nōn dubitārent.
5. Incolae si insulae fēminās dāmnāvissent, nautae ad terram venīre nōn dubitāvissent.
6. Incolae si insulae fēminās insidiārum dāmnent, nautae ad prōvinciam venīre nōn dubitent.
7. Incolae si fēminās in turbā dāmnābunt, nautae ad insulam venīre nōn dubitābunt.
8. Incolae si fēminās invidiae dāmnāverint, nautae sententiam dē fāmā incolārum mutāre nōn dubitābunt.
9. Si nautae undās timēbunt, in terrā semper erunt.
10. Puella dē glōriā et fāmā poētārum cōgitat.
11. Nautae noxās ā puellis pepulerant (pepulērunt).
12. Si nautae noxās ā puellis pepulissent, et glōriam et fāmam cēpissent.
13. Dē nātūrā animae nec cum poētā sēnseram nec sententiam mutāre optāveram. [sentiō cum, 'agree with']
14. Terram si poētae incoluissent, nautās ē prōvinciā expulissent et nātūram patriae mutāvissent.
15. Si nautās rēginae superāvissem, prōvinciam tenērem.
16. Undae ārās cēlāre incēpērunt.
17. Si undae ārās cēlāre inciperent, incolās monērem.
18. Nautārum fāma sententiam dē insulārum incolis mutāverit.
19. Nisi in cellā labōrāvissētis, nautae ē prōvinciā puellās nōn pepulissent.
20. Si Hannibal ad portās prōvinciae vēnisset, incolās taedis monuissem. [Hannibal, nom., the name of a Carthaginian general]
21. Nisi pecūniam in cellā cēlāvissēs, rēgina nautās nec dāmnāvisset nec ē prōvinciā expelleret.
22. Et glōria incolīs prōvinciae et culpa, sed poēta dē nātūrā incolārum tacuit.
23. Nisi pecūniam optāvissent, nautae neque per prōvinciam vēnissent neque insulam nunc superārent.
24. Sub lūnā labōrāverāmus.
25. Sub portās ambulāre dubitābam.
26. Puella tacēbat, neque lacrimās cēlāvit.
27. Vīta rēginae nihil dedit nisi glōriam fāmamque.
28. Puellāsne dē morā nautārum monuistī? Puellās monui, sed nil timent.
29. Nisi insidiās incolārum nunc sentirent, incolās ē prōvinciā nōn expellerent.

## II.

1. If I had changed (my) opinion about the nature of the soul, I would have kept silent.
2. If they were changing (their) opinion about the nature of the soul, they would be keeping silent (they would keep silent).
3. If you are silent, I shall work.
4. You [pl.] had driven the poets from the island.
5. You [pl.] have filled the altar with (your) tears.
6. If they should hide the money, the queen would condemn the inhabitants for treachery.

## III. Reading

Aenēās,<sup>1</sup> id<sup>2</sup> enim nōmen<sup>3</sup> nautae fuit, dum<sup>4</sup> incoluit Africam cum rēginā incolās rēxit.<sup>5</sup> Patriam aedificāverunt.<sup>6</sup> Tum,<sup>7</sup> subitō,<sup>8</sup> deus<sup>9</sup> vēnit et nautam monuit: "Nāvigā<sup>10</sup> nunc," nārrāvit,<sup>11</sup> "antequam<sup>12</sup> rēgināe sit<sup>13</sup> ira.<sup>14</sup> Si nunc manēbis,<sup>15</sup> tē<sup>16</sup> semper manēre<sup>15</sup> optet." Nautam terruit et sub lūnā Aenēās<sup>1</sup> turbam monuit, "Sententiam mūtāvi. Parābimus<sup>17</sup> et ab Africā nāvigābimus."<sup>10</sup> Nōn fuit mora. Aenēās<sup>1</sup> pārūrunt<sup>18</sup> et nāvigāverunt.<sup>10</sup> Rēginā māne<sup>19</sup> lacrimāvit<sup>20</sup> quod<sup>21</sup> Aenēās<sup>1</sup> cum turbā incolārum patriam reliquerat.<sup>22</sup> Rēginā ira<sup>14</sup> implēvit. "Nisi manēre<sup>15</sup> optāverit, nil habēbō," Annae<sup>23</sup> nārrat.<sup>11</sup> "Vitam nōn optō sine<sup>24</sup> Aenēā.<sup>1</sup> Nisi mē<sup>25</sup> amat, esse nōn optō." Sic<sup>26</sup> nārrāvit<sup>11</sup> et sē<sup>27</sup> necāvit.<sup>28</sup> Anima rēgināe discessit.<sup>29</sup> Incolae Africae dē culpā nautae cōgitāverunt et lacrimāverunt.<sup>20</sup> Nautam noxae rēgināe dāmnāverunt. Dē insidiis cōgitābant. Ad ārās vēnērunt et deōs<sup>30</sup> poenās Aenēās<sup>1</sup> turbāque ōrāverunt.<sup>31</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Aenēās, -ae, M., 'Aeneas', a Greek name in the first declension    <sup>2</sup> id, pronoun in the neuter sing., 'this', referring to Aenēās and agreeing with nōmen    <sup>3</sup> nōmen (nom.), 'name'  
<sup>4</sup> dum (conj.), 'while'    <sup>5</sup> regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctus, 'rule'    <sup>6</sup> aedificō (1), 'build, establish'  
<sup>7</sup> tum (adv.), 'then'    <sup>8</sup> subitō (adv.), 'suddenly'    <sup>9</sup> deus (nom.), 'god'    <sup>10</sup> nāvigō (1), 'sail, set sail'. Nāvigā is the command (i.e., imperative), 'set sail!'    <sup>11</sup> nārrō (1), 'tell, speak'  
<sup>12</sup> antequam (conj.), 'before'    <sup>13</sup> sit, 'is'. This form is the 3rd person sing. present subjunctive because of the anticipation of the queen's anger.    <sup>14</sup> ira, -ae, F., 'anger'    <sup>15</sup> manēō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus, 'remain'    <sup>16</sup> tē (acc.), 'you'    <sup>17</sup> parō (1), 'get ready'    <sup>18</sup> pārēō, -ēre, -ui, -itus, 'obey' (+ dat.)    <sup>19</sup> māne (adv.), 'early in the morning'    <sup>20</sup> lacrimō (1), 'cry, weep, shed tears'    <sup>21</sup> quod (conj.), 'because'    <sup>22</sup> relinquo, -ere, reliqui, relictus, 'leave behind'    <sup>23</sup> Anna, -ae, F., 'Anna', the queen's sister    <sup>24</sup> sine (prep. + abl.), 'without'    <sup>25</sup> mē (acc.), 'me'    <sup>26</sup> sic (adv.), 'in this way'    <sup>27</sup> sē (acc.), 'herself'  
<sup>28</sup> necō (1), 'kill'    <sup>29</sup> discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, 'withdraw'    <sup>30</sup> deōs (acc.), 'gods'  
<sup>31</sup> ōrō (1), 'beg for' (with two accusatives: i.e., one begs someone in the accusative for something in the accusative)



# UNIT THREE

## A. Nouns of the Second Declension

Nouns of the second declension are distinguished by the genitive singular ending **-ī**.

nātus, -ī, M.	son, child
puer, puerī, M.	boy
saxum, -ī, N.	rock, stone

While most nouns of the first declension are feminine, most of the second declension are masculine or neuter.

In order to decline a noun of the second declension, add the case endings for this declension to the stem. As usual, the stem is found by dropping the ending from the full genitive singular form. The endings are:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASCULINE	NEUTER	MASCULINE	NEUTER
Nom.	<b>-us*</b>	<b>-um</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>-a</b>
Gen.	<b>-ī</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>
Dat.	<b>-ō</b>	<b>-ō</b>	<b>-īs</b>	<b>-īs</b>
Acc.	<b>-um</b>	<b>-um</b>	<b>-ōs</b>	<b>-a</b>
Abl.	<b>-ō</b>	<b>-ō</b>	<b>-īs</b>	<b>-īs</b>

\* The **-us** ending occurs for the masculine singular in most instances. Occasionally, however, nouns ending in **-r** or **-er** will occur, as will be seen in the vocabularies (e.g., **vir**, **puer**).

### NOTE CAREFULLY:

1. The neuter differs from the masculine of the second declension in three places:
  - a. nominative singular
  - b. nominative plural
  - c. accusative plural
2. In all neuter nouns in the language, the nominative and accusative forms of each number are *always* identical.

3. In all neuter nouns in the language, the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**.

By applying these rules we can decline **nātus**, **puer**, and **saxum** as follows:

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
Nom.	nātus	puer	saxum	nāti	puerī	saxa	
Gen.	nāti	puerī	saxī	nātōrum	puerōrum	saxōrum	
Dat.	nātō	puerō	saxō	nātis	pueris	saxis	
Acc.	nātum	puerum	saxum	nātōs	puerōs	saxa	
Abl.	nātō	puerō	saxō	nātis	pueris	saxis	

### B. First-Second Declension Adjectives

An adjective is a word which describes or modifies a noun. In Latin, adjectives must *agree* with the nouns they modify in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, and so adjectives, like nouns, are *declined*.

First-second declension adjectives utilize the case endings of the first two declensions. When the endings of the first declension are used, the adjective is said to be feminine and will modify feminine nouns; when the endings of the second declension are used, the adjective is said to be masculine or neuter and will modify masculine or neuter nouns respectively.

In the dictionary, the adjectival forms given are the nominative singular masculine, feminine, and neuter (in that order):

magnus, -a, -um large, big, great

The full forms are

magnus, magna, magnum

The entire declension is:

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	magnus	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna	
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum	
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnis	magnis	magnis	
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum	magnōs	magnās	magna	
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō	magnis	magnis	magnis	

Some first-second declension adjectives exhibit the **-er** ending in the masculine nominative singular (e.g., **dexter**, **dextra**, **dextrum**, 'right' [as opposed to left], 'favorable'). The stem in such words may be derived from the feminine nominative form by dropping its ending:

dextr/a

The entire declension will be formed on this stem:

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	dexter	dextra	dextrum
Gen.	dextrī	dextrae	dextrī
Dat.	dextrō	dextrae	dextrō
			...etc.

### C. Noun-Adjective Agreement

As noted under B above, an adjective must agree with the noun it modifies in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

'of a rock' (genitive) = saxī

'of a large rock' = magnī saxī

(The noun is neuter, singular, genitive; the adjective must be neuter, singular, genitive.)

'to/for a woman' (dative) = fēminae

'to/for a wretched woman' = fēminae miserae

(The noun is feminine, singular, dative; the adjective must be feminine, singular, dative.)

At first glance it may seem needless to go through the considerations of gender, number, and case, for agreement appears to be achieved simply by matching endings. But this is generally not true. Consider the following example:

poēta, -ae, M., 'poet'

'great poet' (nominative): The noun is masculine, singular, nominative; thus, the adjective must be *masculine*, singular, nominative.

Thus: poēta magnus

'great poets' (nominative): The noun is masculine, plural, nominative; thus, the adjective must be masculine, plural, nominative.

Thus: poētae magnī

More often than not, the endings of words which go together are *not* identical; therefore, one should not look for such correspondence.

### D. Adjectives Used As Nouns

As in English, an adjective may be used without a noun if that noun can be understood. Cf.:

The good (men) and the just (men) voted for freedom. Fortune favors the brave (men). Examples:

magnus (masculine)	a great man
magna (feminine)	a great woman
magnum (neuter)	a great thing
Magna optō.	I desire great things.
Multa bona habet.	He has many good things; he has many goods; he has much property.
Rōmānōs timet.	He fears the Romans.

### E. Ablative of Means (Instrument)

The ablative *without* a preposition is used to express the *means* or *instrument* by which something is done.

Nautae gladiīs pūgnant.	The sailors fight <i>with (by means of)</i> swords.
Oculis vidēmus.	We see <i>with (by means of)</i> [our] eyes.
Fēminās taedā terruit.	He frightened the women <i>with (by means of)</i> a torch.

### F. Ablative of Manner

The ablative case may be used *with* or *without* the preposition **cum** to denote the *way* or *manner* in which something is done. The **cum** is required in this construction when the noun in the ablative is *not* modified by an adjective; when it is modified, **cum** is optional.

Verba misera <b>cum</b> veniā audivisti.	You heard (my) wretched words <i>with indulgence (indulgently)</i> .
Verba misera magnā (cum) veniā audivisti.	You heard (my) wretched words <i>with great indulgence (very indulgently)</i> .

Note that phrases of this type can usually be translated by an English adverb ending in *-ly*.

### G. Clauses of Purpose; Sequence of Tenses

In the sentence "I fight to overcome the sailor," "to overcome the sailor" expresses the *purpose* for which the subject is fighting. Purpose is frequently expressed in English by the infinitive; in Latin a subordinate clause is normally required: "I fight in order that I may overcome the sailor". Purpose clauses are frequently introduced by the subordinating conjunctions **ut** (in this case, meaning 'in order that') or **nē** ('in order that . . . not'); they have their verbs in the subjunctive.

In Unit One the various tenses of the indicative were divided into two categories: primary and secondary. The tenses of the subjunctive, as well, may be so divided. The scheme follows:

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRIMARY TENSES	Present	Present
	Future	Perfect
	Perfect ("have" or "has")	
	Future Perfect	
SECONDARY TENSES	Imperfect	Imperfect
	Perfect (English past)	Pluperfect
	Pluperfect	

In most subordinate clauses in which the subjunctive is used, a system called *sequence of tenses* occurs. That is, if the verb of the main (independent) clause is in a primary tense, the verb of the subordinate (dependent) subjunctive clause must be primary. This is called *primary sequence*. Likewise, if the verb of the main clause is in a secondary tense, the verb of the subordinate clause must be secondary. This is called *secondary sequence*.

In primary sequence, the *present subjunctive* regularly denotes an action which occurs at the *same time* as that of the main verb or will occur at some time *subsequent* to that of the main verb. The *perfect subjunctive* denotes an action which occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb.

In secondary sequence, the *imperfect subjunctive* regularly denotes an action which occurs at the *same time* as that of the main verb or will occur at some time *subsequent* to that of the main verb. The *pluperfect subjunctive* denotes an action which occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb.

Thus:

Present and Imperfect Subjunctive — contemporaneous or subsequent action (with reference to the main verb)

Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive — prior action (with reference to the main verb)

It will be observed, then, that the tenses of the subjunctive frequently have no specific English tense values of their own but are *relative* to the tense of the main verb of a given sentence.

Since purpose clauses must logically refer to an action which will occur subsequent to the main verb, only the present and imperfect subjunctives are used in this construction.



## PRIMARY SEQUENCE :

Pūgnō <b>ut</b> nautam <b>superem</b> .	I fight <i>in order that I may overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnābō <b>ut</b> nautam <b>superem</b> .	I shall fight <i>in order that I may overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnāvī <b>ut</b> nautam <b>superem</b> .	I have fought <i>in order that I may overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnāverō <b>ut</b> nautam <b>superem</b> .	I shall have fought <i>in order that I may overcome</i> the sailor.

## SECONDARY SEQUENCE :

Pūgnābam <b>ut</b> nautam <b>superārem</b> .	I was fighting <i>in order that I might overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnāvī <b>ut</b> nautam <b>superārem</b> .	I fought <i>in order that I might overcome</i> the sailor.
Pūgnāveram <b>ut</b> nautam <b>superārem</b> .	I had fought <i>in order that I might overcome</i> the sailor.

Negative purpose clauses are introduced by the subordinating conjunction **nē** instead of **ut**.

Pūgnō <b>nē</b> nauta fēminam <b>superet</b> .	I fight <i>in order that the sailor may not overcome</i> the woman.
Pūgnābam <b>nē</b> nauta fēminam <b>superāret</b> .	I was fighting <i>in order that the sailor might not overcome</i> the woman.

**H. Indirect Commands**

Consider the sentence, “I beg that you overcome the sailor”. “That you overcome the sailor” is an indirect command and represents a direct imperative: “I beg you. Overcome the sailor!” Many verbs of *ordering*, *warning*, *begging*, *urging*, *asking*, and the like, take such a construction. The indirect command is really a substantive clause which functions as the direct object of the main verb.



- Ōrō **ut** nautam <sup>71</sup> I beg *that you overcome* the sailor.  
**superēs.**
- Ōrābam **ut** nautam I begged (was begging) *that you overcome* the sailor.  
**superārēs.**
- Ōrāvī **ut** verba cum I begged *that you hear* (my) words with indulgence.  
 veniā **audirēs.**
- Ōrābam **nē** verba I begged *that you not hear the* words of the sailor.  
 nautae **audirēs.**

## UNIT THREE — VOCABULARY

acerbus, -a, -um	bitter, harsh
ager, agrī, M.	field
audiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus	hear, listen (to)
bellum, -ī, N.	war
bonus, -a, -um	good
caecus, -a, -um	blind, hidden, secret
campus, -ī, M.	plain, level surface
clārus, -a, -um	bright, clear, famous
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right (as opposed to left), favorable
dextra, -ae, F.	right hand
ad dextram	to the right
diligentia, -ae, F.	diligence
dōnum, -ī, N.	gift
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus	conduct, manage, wage
gladius, -ī, M.	sword
laetus, -a, -um	happy
liber, libera, liberum	free
magnus, -a, -um	large, big, great
malus, -a, -um	evil, bad, wicked
Marcus, -ī, M.	Marcus (proper name)
miser, misera, miserum	miserable, unhappy, wretched
multus, -a, -um	much, many
nātus, -ī, M.	son
nē (conj.)	(in purpose clauses) in order that...not; (in indirect commands) that...not
oculus, -ī, M.	eye
ōrō (1)	beg (for)

<b>petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus</b>	seek (with <b>ā</b> + abl.), ask (for) (cf. 'I ask for [seek] money from my son', <b>Pecūniam ā nātō petō.</b> )
<b>portō (1)</b>	carry
<b>puer, puerī, M.</b>	boy; child
<b>pūgnō (1)</b>	fight; (with <b>cum</b> + abl.), fight with (i.e., against)
<b>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum</b>	beautiful
<b>Rōmānus, -a, -um</b>	Roman
<b>saxum, -ī, N.</b>	rock, stone
<b>scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus</b>	write
<b>servus, -ī, M.</b>	slave
<b>spectō (1)</b>	look at
<b>ut (conj.)</b>	(in purpose clauses) in order that; (in indirect
<b>validus, -a, -um</b>	strong, healthy commands) that
<b>vēlum, -ī, N.</b>	cloth, covering, sail
<b>vēla dare</b>	to set sail
<b>venia, -ae, F.</b>	indulgence, favor, kindness, (obliging) disposition
<b>ventus, -ī, M.</b>	wind
<b>verbum, -ī, N.</b>	word
<b>vir, virī, M.</b>	man

### UNIT THREE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

Associating an English word with the Latin will be helpful in remembering when the **-e-** of a second declension masculine word remains and when it drops out: e.g., *agriculture* (**ager, agrī, M.**, 'field'), *pulchritude* (**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**, 'beautiful'), *liberal* (**liber, libera, liberum**, 'free').

**Gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus** means 'conduct, manage'; when it is used with **bellum**, it means 'wage (war)'; **Rōmānī multa bella gessērunt**, 'The Romans waged many wars'.

**Gladius, gladii, M.**, 'sword' has a diminutive **gladiōlus**, 'little sword', which gives the name of the flower whose leaf looks like a little sword. The diminutive endings will be discussed later.

**Multus, multa, multum** usually means 'much' in the singular and 'many' in the plural. However, one can say in Latin: **Multus Rōmānus gladiō pūgnāvit**, 'Many a Roman fought with a sword'.

**Nātus, nāti, M.** is really the passive form of the perfect participle of a verb meaning 'to be born'; thus **nātus** is 'the one having been born, the son, child'.

**Ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus**, 'beg (for)' may govern two accusatives: the thing begged for and the person begged: **Rēginam pecūniam ōrāvit**, 'He begged the queen for money'.

**Petō, petere, petīvī, petītus** means 'ask' or 'ask for'. If one asks someone for

something in Latin using the verb **petō**, he asks something from somebody: **Nātus dōnum ā Marcō petīvit**, '(His) son asked Marcus for a gift'.

**Pūgnō, pūgnāre, pūgnāvī, pūgnātus**, 'fight' is an intransitive verb and is used with **cum** to mean 'fight against': **Multī cum Rōmānīs pūgnāvērunt**, 'Many (men) fought with the Romans'. (Note that "with" in this sense means 'against', *not* 'on the side of'.) **Repūgnō** is a compound of **pūgnō** (**re-** + **pūgnō**) and means 'fight back, resist'.

**Scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus** means 'write'; thus, **īnscrībō**, 'write in or on'; **rescrībō**, 'write back'.

**Spectō**, a first conjugation verb, 'look at' has many compounds:

aspectō ( <b>ad</b> + <b>spectō</b> )	look toward, face
expectō	look out for, await
respectō	look back
	...etc.

There is another verb in Latin closely related to **spectō**: **speciō, specere, spēxi**, —, which also means 'look at' and has many compounds:

aspiciō	look at or toward
dēspiciō	look down upon
īnspiciō	look into, examine
respiciō	look back, consider

**Vēlum, vēlī**, N. is a 'cloth' or 'covering'; it can also mean a 'sail'. The idiom **vēla dare** means 'to set sail': **Vēla ab īnsulā dedērunt**, 'They set sail from the island'.

## UNIT THREE — DRILL

### I.

Change these noun forms to the plural. In some cases there may be several possibilities.

- |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. bellum | 3. oculum | 5. veniae |
| 2. nāti   | 4. saxō   |           |

### II.

Change these noun forms to the singular:

- |             |          |            |
|-------------|----------|------------|
| 1. bellōrum | 3. saxa  | 5. fēminās |
| 2. puerōs   | 4. virīs |            |

### III.

A. Decline **caecus, -a, -um** in the singular.

Decline **bonus, -a, -um** in the plural.

B. For each of the following, supply the proper form of **magnus, -a, -um**:

- |           |           |           |             |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. fēmina | 3. puerō  | 5. campus | 7. nautārum |
| 2. bellum | 4. poētae | 6. aquam  | 8. ager     |

#### IV.

Translate the following sentences, all of which contain clauses of purpose or indirect commands:

1. Puella dē noxā tacet ut cum nautā ambulet.
2. Puella cūram fāmae cēlāvit ut pecūniam habēret.
3. Poēta tacet ut dē nātūrā animae cōgitet.
4. Poēta tacuit ut dē nātūrā animae cōgitāret.
5. Fēminae pecūniam optābant ut ad prōvinciam venīrent.
6. Tacuērunt incolae nē rēgīna sententiam mūtāret.
7. Tacent incolae nē rēgīna sententiam mūtet.
8. Monēmus ut dē vitā cōgitētis.
9. Cum lacrimīs monuit nē dē vitā cōgitārēmus.
10. Nīl clāmāvit nē incolās terrēret.
11. Nīl clāmāvit nē fēminae oculōs lacrimīs implērent.
12. Nīl clāmāvit nē fēminae oculōs lacrimīs implēre inciperent.
13. Cum cūrā labōrābāmus ut nautās ē prōvinciā pellerēmus.
14. Dē morā nautārum clāmāre dubitābat nē fēminae timērent.
15. Monēbimus ut sententiam mūtētis.
16. Monuistis ut pecūniam cēlem.

#### V.

Translate the following sentences which contain adjectives used as nouns and/or ablatives of means or manner.

1. Nōtus cum cūrā labōrat. [Nōtus, -a, -um, 'well-known, famous']
2. Nōtōs taedis pepulērunt.
3. Pecūniamne nōtae cēlāvistī?
4. Nōta cum invidiā cēlāvimus.
5. Nōta magnā (cum) invidiā cēlāvimus. [magnus, -a, -um, 'great']
6. Puellās monēbāmus nē nōtās taedis terrērent.

### UNIT THREE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D, E, F)

1. Puer laetus dōna multa ā servīs petīvit.
2. Multa ā servīs petīvistī sed dōna virō bonō veniā bonā dedērunt.

3. Saxum magnum in aquā erat sed in terrā erant saxa magna et multa.
4. Si nauta miser ventōs bonōs orāvisset, laetusne fuisset?
5. Si liberī magnā cum diligentīā in agrō pūgnābunt, malōs superābunt.
6. Si pulchrae poētae caecum audirent, sententiās malās de vitā mutarent.
7. Verba acerba poētae caeci audivistis et miserī esse incēpistis.
8. Nātis servōrum gladiōs magnōs dedimus.
9. Rōmānī bella multa acerbaque gessērunt.
10. Malumne est bellum gerere?
11. Si virī mali in campis clāris Marcī pūgnent, incolās bonōs terrae superent.
12. Cum glōriā puerī gladiis pūgnābant.

### UNIT THREE — EXERCISES

#### I.

1. Nautae validi magnā cum cūrā pūgnābant ut incolās insulae superarent.
2. Saxī pūgnāverāmus nē nautae acerbi fēminās poētārum clārōrum spectarent.
3. Virī magnā diligentīā labōrant nē cum puerīs malis in prōvinciā pūgnent.
4. Rēgina magnum gladium virō bonō dabit ut cum Rōmānis in campō pūgnet.
5. Marcus, vir magnus et bonus, corōnam ad poētā portāvit.
6. Nautae Rōmānī vēla ventis dextrīs dabant nē virī malī campōs tenērent.
7. Virī liberī bellum cum diligentīā gessērunt ut liberī semper essent.
8. Liberī malōs multis gladiis superābunt nē servī miserī sint.
9. Rēgina pulchra poētae caecō dōnum bonum dederat ut verba clāra semper audiret.
10. Turba magna rēginam bonam gladiis terruit ut et prōvinciam et insulam superāret.
11. Virī validī nautās orāverunt ut incolās prōvinciae bellō et gladiis superarent.
12. Si dōnum bonum poētae Marcō darētis, magna verba cum diligentīā scriberet.
13. Si verba mala puerōrum audivistis, laetī nōn erātis.
14. Liberī prōvinciae servī fuissent, nisi nautae Rōmānī bellum in patriā gessissent.
15. Nisi tacuisset, miserum monuissem ut lacrimās celāret.
16. Nisi tacuerint, miserōs monēbō ut lacrimās celent.
17. Sententiās rēgina prōvinciae mutāvit nē poētae timērent.
18. Rēgina virōrum sententiās mutāvit ut nātī in agrīs labōrāre optent.
19. Poētae bonō sī pecūniam dedissēs, multa de agrīs prōvinciae scripsisset ut incolis magna fāma esset.
20. Validī incolae patriam et fāmam in dextrīs tenent. Per dextram orāmus ut magnā diligentīā cum malis pūgnent ut semper Rōmānī simus liberī. [per, 'by' (in oaths)]



21. Pueri ad dextram spectāverant ut gladiōs malōrum oculis vidērent.
22. Vidistisne magnum bellum in campis? Fēminae sī bellum vidissent, nātōs magnīs cum lacrimīs monuissent ut malōs ex agris patriae expellerent.
23. Nisi verba poētārum audivissēs, nihil dē nātūrā animae et vitae nunc sentirēs et vitam miseram nōn mūtāvissēs.
24. Nisi malōs saxis gladiisque ē cellā pepulissēmus, patriam cum glōriā nōn tenuissēmus, et nunc servī essēmus.
25. Ā rēgīnā petivisti ut veniam incolis daret.
26. Poēta validōs in agris monuit ut clārum gladium sub saxō peterent.

## II.

1. The Romans conquered the inhabitants of the island in order that they might frighten the free men of the province.
2. The wretched child desires to listen to the words of the poet in order that he may be happy.
3. The strong men were silent in order that they might not frighten the beautiful children.
4. The Romans very diligently (with great diligence) conquered the free men with swords and the slaves with kindness.
5. If you had looked at the girl with (your) eyes, she would have begged very tearfully (with many tears) that you not set sail.
6. The great queen had given swords to the strong sailors in order that they might fight with the wicked inhabitants of the island.

## III. Reading

Postquam<sup>1</sup> Aenēās ab Africā vēla dedit, sub terram īvit<sup>2</sup> ut patrem<sup>3</sup> mortuum<sup>4</sup> vidēret. Ut in Orcum<sup>5</sup> venīret, dōnum rēgīnae Orci<sup>5</sup> dedit. In Orcō<sup>5</sup> animōs<sup>6</sup> et laetōs et miserōs multōrum mortuōrum<sup>4</sup> oculis vidit. Ibi<sup>7</sup> rēgīnam mortuam<sup>4</sup> vīdit et ōrāvit nē sē<sup>8</sup> insidiārum dāmnāret, sed rēgīna neque spectāvit neque Aenēan<sup>9</sup> audivit. Aenēās viā<sup>10</sup> ambulāvit; ad dextram erat ager laetōrum, sed ad laevam<sup>11</sup> erant animī<sup>6</sup> malōrum. In agrum laetōrum vēnit et patrem<sup>3</sup> vīdit. Pater<sup>12</sup> nātō verba multa dē vitā et dē Rōmānis cum veniā dixit.<sup>13</sup> Aenēās patrem<sup>3</sup> audivit laetus. Postea<sup>14</sup> ad Italiam<sup>15</sup> vēla dedit et ibi<sup>7</sup> bellum cum incolis gessit. Et gladiis et saxis magnā cum diligentīā pūgnāverunt. Aenēās cum turbā incolās Italiae<sup>15</sup> superāvit et ab Aenēā pācem<sup>16</sup> petivērunt.

<sup>1</sup> postquam (conj.), 'after'    <sup>2</sup> eō, īre, ivi, itus, 'go'    <sup>3</sup> patrem (acc.), 'father'    <sup>4</sup> mortuus, -a, -um, 'dead'    <sup>5</sup> Orcus, -i, M., 'the land of the dead'    <sup>6</sup> animus, -i, M., 'soul'  
<sup>7</sup> ibi (adv.), 'there'    <sup>8</sup> sē (acc.), 'him'    <sup>9</sup> Aenēan (acc.), 'Aeneas'    <sup>10</sup> viā, 'along the road'  
<sup>11</sup> laevus, -a, -um, 'left'    <sup>12</sup> pater (nom.), 'father'    <sup>13</sup> dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus, 'say'  
<sup>14</sup> postea (adv.), 'afterward'    <sup>15</sup> Italia, -ae, F., 'Italy'    <sup>16</sup> pācem (acc.), 'peace'



# UNIT FOUR

## A. The Present Active System of All Four Conjugations

### 1. PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

In order to illustrate the inflections of the entire verbal system, we shall use the following verbs:

- |    |                                 |        |
|----|---------------------------------|--------|
| 1. | optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus         | desire |
| 2. | impleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus       | fill   |
| 3. | { dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus      | lead   |
|    | { incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus | begin  |
| 4. | sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus     | feel   |

Note that *two* verbs have been listed for the third conjugation. These differ from one another in the *-i-* which appears before the final *-ō* in the first person singular form of one of them. This *-i-* will appear in various other places throughout the conjugation. Such verbs are called *i-stems*. It will be observed that all verbs of the fourth conjugation also have an *-i-* before the ending, and so *i-stems* of the third conjugation will have something in common with verbs of the fourth conjugation. (The major difference is the length of the vowel: in the third conjugation it is short; in the fourth it is generally long.)

The conjugation of the present indicative can best be illustrated by the following table:

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4	Ending
optō	impleō	dūcō	incipiō	sentiō	-ō
optās	implēs	dūcis	incipis	sentis	-s
optat	implet	dūcit	incipit	sentit	-t
optāmus	implēmus	dūcimus	incipimus	sentimus	-mus
optātis	implētis	dūcitis	incipitis	sentitis	-tis
optant	implent	dūcunt	incipiunt	sentiant	-nt

The personal endings are identical for all four conjugations. The difficulty

in the third conjugation lies in the stem vowel: we should expect it to be **-e-** (**dūce/re**), but it appears as **-i-** or, in the third person plural, **-u-**. Also, note that for i-stem verbs, the **-i-** appears in the first person singular and the third person plural.

## 2. PRESENT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The sign for the present subjunctive of the first conjugation is the vowel **-ē-**; for the second, third, and fourth conjugations, it is **-ā-**, but this **-ā-** in some conjugations appears in conjunction with another vowel. It will be easiest to form the present subjunctive for all conjugations as follows:

- a. Arrive at the stem.
- b. Drop the stem vowel.
- c. In place of the original stem vowel, substitute **-ē-** for the first conjugation, **-ēā-** for the second, **-ā-** for the third, **-iā-** for i-stems of the third, and **-iā-** for the fourth.
- d. Add the endings **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

The following will illustrate:

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4
optem	impleam	dūcam	incipiam	sentiam
optēs	impleās	dūcās	incipiās	sentiās
optet	impleat	dūcat	incipiat	sentiat
optēmus	impleāmus	dūcāmus	incipiāmus	sentiāmus
optētis	impleātis	dūcātis	incipiātis	sentiātis
optent	impleant	dūcant	incipiant	sentiant

These forms should now be compared to those of the present indicative, so that the differences may be discerned readily.

One will observe at once some difficulties in the recognition of forms and will understand how important it is to know the principal parts of verbs, particularly the second part which indicates to which conjugation the verb belongs. **Dūcat**, for example, looks dangerously like **optat**. Only by knowing that **dūcō** belongs to the third conjugation, while **optō** belongs to the first, can one tell that the **-a-** in **dūcat** is the sign of the present subjunctive, while in **optat** it is the sign of the present indicative.

## 3. IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE

The sign for the imperfect indicative of all conjugations is **-bā-**. In the third conjugation, the stem vowel lengthens (from **-e-** to **-ē-**). In i-stem verbs of the third conjugation and in all verbs of the fourth conjugation, **-iē-** appears before the tense sign throughout:

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4
optābam	implēbam	dūcēbam	incipiēbam	sentiēbam
optābās	implēbās	dūcēbās	incipiēbās	sentiēbās
optābat	implēbat	dūcēbat	incipiēbat	sentiēbat
optābāmus	implēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	incipiēbāmus	sentiēbāmus
optābātis	implēbātis	dūcēbātis	incipiēbātis	sentiēbātis
optābant	implēbant	dūcēbant	incipiēbant	sentiēbant

#### 4. IMPERFECT ACTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The imperfect active subjunctive for all conjugations has been illustrated in section C2 of Unit 2 (page 36 above).

#### 5. FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE

The sign for the future of the first two conjugations is **-bi-** (with **-bō-** in the first person singular and **-bu-** in the third person plural). The sign for the future of the third and fourth conjugations is **-ē-** (with **-a-** in the first person singular). This vowel replaces the original vowel of the stem. I-stems show the **-i-** throughout.

1	2	3	3 i-stem	4
optābō	implēbō	dūcam	incipiam	sentiam
optābis	implēbis	dūcēs	incipiēs	sentiēs
optābit	implēbit	dūcet	incipiet	sentiet
optābimus	implēbimus	dūcēmus	incipiēmus	sentiēmus
optābitis	implēbitis	dūcētis	incipiētis	sentiētis
optābunt	implēbunt	dūcent	incipient	sentient

Again, some possible difficulties in interpretation will be noted:

dūcet; optet; implet

**Dūcō, -ere** is a third conjugation verb; **-e-** in this conjugation is the sign of the future; therefore, **dūcet** is third person singular future active indicative.

**Optō, -āre** is a first conjugation verb; **-e-** in this conjugation is the sign of the present subjunctive; therefore, **optet** is third person singular present active subjunctive.

**Impleō, -ēre** is a second conjugation verb; **-e-** in this conjugation is the vowel of the present stem; therefore, **implet** is third person singular present active indicative.

Frequently, however, the syntactical structure of a sentence will help determine the form of the verb, even if the conjugation to which the verb belongs is not known.

Ōrō ut urnam impleās.

The **ōrō ut** indicates that a subjunctive clause is being introduced; hence, the **-ā-** in **impleās** must be the sign of the present subjunctive and not the vowel of the present indicative of the first conjugation. Therefore:

**Ōrō ut urnam impleās.** I beg you to fill the urn.

## B. The Present Passive System of All Four Conjugations

If one can conjugate a verb in the active voice, he can do it easily in the passive. Instead of appending the personal endings **-ō (-m)**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt** to the appropriate stem or tense sign, he will append a special set of *passive* personal endings. These are:

<b>-or, -r</b>	<b>-mur</b>
<b>-ris (-re)</b>	<b>-mini</b>
<b>-tur</b>	<b>-ntur</b>

The active and passive forms are placed side by side in the following paradigms to illustrate this formation.

### 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE

1

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
optō	I desire	optor*	I am desired
optās	you desire	optāris (optāre)	you are desired
optat	he desires	optātur	he is desired
optāmus	we desire	optāmur	we are desired
optātis	you desire	optāmini	you are desired
optant	they desire	optantur*	they are desired

\* Note that a long vowel is shortened before final **-r** and **-ntur**.

2

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
impleō	impleor
implēs	implēris (implēre)
implet	implētur
implēmus	implēmur
implētis	implēmini
implent	implentur

3

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
dūcō	dūcor
dūcis	dūceris (dūcere)*
dūcit	dūcitur
dūcimur	dūcimur
dūcitis	dūcimini
dūcunt	dūcuntur

3 i-stem

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
incipiō	incipior	sentiō	sentior
incipis	inciperis (incipere)*	sentis	sentiris (sentire)
incipit	incipitur	sentit	sentitur

\* Note that the short **-i-** becomes short **-e-** before the **-ris (-re)** ending.

incipimus	incipimur	sentimus	sentimur
incipitis	incipimini	sentitis	sentimini
incipiunt	incipiuntur	sentiant	sentiantur

## 2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

1

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
optābam	I was desiring	optābar	I was being desired
optābās	you were desiring	optābāris	you were being desired
...etc.		(optābāre)	
		...etc.	

2

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
implēbam	implēbar
implēbās	implēbāris
...etc.	(implēbāre)
	...etc.

3

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
dūcēbam	dūcēbar
dūcēbās	dūcēbāris (dūcēbāre)
...etc.	...etc.

3 i-stem

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
incipiēbam	incipiēbar
incipiēbās	incipiēbāris
...etc.	(incipiēbāre)
	...etc.

4

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
sentiēbam	sentiēbar
sentiēbās	sentiēbāris
...etc.	(sentiēbāre)
	...etc.

## 3. FUTURE INDICATIVE

1

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
optābō	I shall desire	optābor	I shall be desired
optābis	you will desire	optāberis (optābere)*	you will be desired
optābit	he will desire	optābitur	he will be desired
optābimus	we shall desire	optābimur	we shall be desired
optābitis	you will desire	optābimini	you will be desired
optābunt	they will desire	optābuntur	they will be desired

2

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
implēbō	implēbor
implēbis	implēberis (implēbere)*
implēbit	implēbitur

3

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
dūcam	dūcar
dūcēs	dūcēris (dūcēre)
dūcet	dūcētur

\* Note that the short -i- becomes short -e- before the -ris (-re) ending.



implēbimus	implēbimur	dūcēmus	dūcēmur
implēbitis	implēbimini	dūcētis	dūcēmini
implēbunt	implēbuntur	dūcent	dūcentur

## 3 i-stem

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
incipiam	incipiar
incipiēs	incipiēris (incipiēre)
incipiet	incipiētur

incipiēmus	incipiēmur
incipiētis	incipiēmini
incipient	incipientur

## 4

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
sentiam	sentiār
sentiēs	sentiēris (sentiēre)
sentiet	sentiētur

sentiēmus	sentiēmur
sentiētis	sentiēmini
sentient	sentientur

## 4. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVES

As one would expect, the present and imperfect subjunctives are formed in the same way as the active, except that the *passive* personal endings are used instead of the active ones. For an illustration of this, see the review chart on page 66.

## C. The Perfect Passive System of All Four Conjugations

All verbs in Latin, regardless of the conjugation to which they belong, are conjugated identically in the perfect system.

In the perfect system the passive is a *compound* form; that is, it is composed of two words: a participle and a helping verb, **sum**. The perfect passive participle is the fourth principal part of most verbs. This form, while given in the vocabularies with a **-us** ending (**optātus**), is, in fact, an adjective and so can be declined. It might be written **optātus**, **-a**, **-um** just like the adjective **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**.

## 1. PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

The perfect passive indicative is composed of the fourth principal part of the verb (perfect passive participle) and a form of the present indicative of the verb **sum**. The ending of the participle is declined to show the number and gender of the subject. Since it refers to the subject, it is in the nominative case.

optātus sum	I (masc.) have been desired, I was desired
optāta sum	I (fem.) have been desired, I was desired
optātus est	he has been desired, he was desired
optāta est	she has been desired, she was desired
optātum est	it has been desired, it was desired
optātī sunt	they (masc.) have been desired, they were desired



The paradigm for the perfect passive indicative is:

optātus (-a, -um) sum	optātī (-ae, -a) sumus
optātus (-a, -um) es	optātī (-ae, -a) estis
optātus (-a, -um) est	optātī (-ae, -a) sunt

## 2. PLUPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus imperfect of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) eram	optātī (-ae, -a) erāmus
optātus (-a, -um) erās	optātī (-ae, -a) erātis
optātus (-a, -um) erat	optātī (-ae, -a) erant

## 3. FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus future of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) erō	optātī (-ae, -a) erimus
optātus (-a, -um) eris	optātī (-ae, -a) eritis
optātus (-a, -um) erit	optātī (-ae, -a) erunt

## 4. PERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus present subjunctive of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) sim	optātī (-ae, -a) sīmus
optātus (-a, -um) sis	optātī (-ae, -a) sītis
optātus (-a, -um) sit	optātī (-ae, -a) sint

## 5. PLUPERFECT PASSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

FORMATION: Perfect passive participle plus imperfect subjunctive of the verb **sum**.

optātus (-a, -um) essem	optātī (-ae, -a) essēmus
optātus (-a, -um) essēs	optātī (-ae, -a) essētis
optātus (-a, -um) esset	optātī (-ae, -a) essent

## D. Review of Verb Conjugations

The chart on page 66 will illustrate the forms of all the tenses of the indicative and the subjunctive of all four conjugations.

## E. Ablative of Personal Agent

The *agēt* (*agō*, -ere, *ēgī*, *āctus*, 'do') or *person* who performs the action of a passive verb is regularly expressed in the ablative case preceded by the preposition *ā* or *ab*, 'by'.

Puella *ā* *rēginā* terrētur. The girl is frightened by the queen.

# Review of Verb Conjugations

(Shown in each box are the *active* forms of the 1st and 2nd person singular, followed by the *passive* forms.)

	1ST CONJUGATION	2ND CONJUGATION	3RD CONJUGATION	3RD CONJUGATION: i-stem	4TH CONJUGATION
Present Indic.	optō, optās optor, optāris (optāre)	impleō, implēs impleor, implēris (implēre)	dūcō, dūcis dūcor, dūceris (dūcere)	incipiō, incipis incipior, inciperis (incipere)	sentiō, sentis sentior, sentiris (sentire)
Imperfect Indic.	optābam, optābās optābar, optābāris (optābare)	implēbam, implēbās implēbar, implēbāris (implēbare)	dūcēbam, dūcēbās dūcēbar, dūcēbāris (dūcēbare)	incipiēbam, incipiēbās incipiēbar, incipiēbāris (incipiēbare)	sentiēbam, sentiēbās sentiēbar, sentiēbāris (sentiēbare)
Future Indic.	optābō, optābis optābor, optāberis (optābere)	implēbō, implēbis implēbor, implēberis (implēbere)	dūcam, dūcēs dūcar, dūceris (dūcere)	incipiam, incipiēs incipiar, incipieris (incipiēre)	sentiam, sentiēs sentiar, sentieris (sentire)
Perfect Indic.	optāvi, optāvistī optātus (-a, -um) sum, optātus (-a, -um) es	implēvi, implēvistī implētus (-a, -um) sum, implētus (-a, -um) es	dūxī, dūxistī ductus (-a, -um) sum, ductus (-a, -um) es	incēpi, incēpistī inceptus (-a, -um) sum, inceptus (-a, -um) es	sēnsi, sēnsistī sēnsus (-a, -um) sum, sēnsus (-a, -um) es
Pluperf. Indic.	optāveram, optāverās optātus (-a, -um) eram, optātus (-a, -um) erās	implēveram, implēverās implētus (-a, -um) eram, implētus (-a, -um) erās	dūxeram, dūxerās ductus (-a, -um) eram, ductus (-a, -um) erās	incēperam, incēperās inceptus (-a, -um) eram, inceptus (-a, -um) erās	sēnseram, sēnserās sēnsus (-a, -um) eram, sēnsus (-a, -um) erās
Fut. Perf. Indic.	optāverō, optāveris optātus (-a, -um) erō, optātus (-a, -um) eris	implēverō, implēveris implētus (-a, -um) erō, implētus (-a, -um) eris	dūxerō, dūxeris ductus (-a, -um) erō, ductus (-a, -um) eris	incēperō, incēperis inceptus (-a, -um) erō, inceptus (-a, -um) eris	sēnserō, sēnseris sēnsus (-a, -um) erō, sēnsus (-a, -um) eris
Present Subj.	optem, optēs optier, optieris (optiēre)	impleam, impleās implear, impleāris (implēare)	dūcam, dūcās dūcar, dūcāris (dūcare)	incipiam, incipiās incipiar, incipiāris (incipiāre)	sentiam, sentiās sentiar, sentiāris (sentiare)
Imperfect Subj.	optārem, optārēs optārer, optārēris (optāriēre)	implērem, implērēs implērer, implērēris (implēriēre)	dūcerem, dūcerēs dūcerer, dūcerēris (dūceriēre)	inciperem, inciperēs inciperer, inciperēris (inciperiēre)	sentirem, sentirēs sentirer, sentirēris (sentiriēre)
Perfect Subj.	optāverim, optāveris optātus (-a, -um) sim, optātus (-a, -um) sis	implēverim, implēveris implētus (-a, -um) sim, implētus (-a, -um) sis	dūxerim, dūxeris ductus (-a, -um) sim, ductus (-a, -um) sis	incēperim, incēperis inceptus (-a, -um) sim, inceptus (-a, -um) sis	sēnserim, sēnseris sēnsus (-a, -um) sim, sēnsus (-a, -um) sis
Pluperf. Subj.	optāvissem, optāvisseris optātus (-a, -um) essem, optātus (-a, -um) essēs	implēvissem, implēvisseris implētus (-a, -um) essem, implētus (-a, -um) essēs	dūxissem, dūxisseris ductus (-a, -um) essem, ductus (-a, -um) essēs	incēpisssem, incēpissseris inceptus (-a, -um) essem, inceptus (-a, -um) essēs	sēnsissem, sēnsisseris sēnsus (-a, -um) essem, sēnsus (-a, -um) essēs

Ablative of personal agent should not be confused with the ablative of means, which has no preposition, and which refers to a thing, not a person (see section E of Unit Three).

Puella **fāmā** rēginae terrētur. The girl is frightened *by (means of) the reputation* of the queen.

## UNIT FOUR — VOCABULARY

aeternus, -a, -um	eternal
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus	do, drive, discuss, spend (time), conduct
altus, -a, -um	high, tall, deep
amicus, -a, -um	friendly (+ dat.)
inimicus, -a, -um	unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.)
caelum, -ī, N.	heaven, sky
cārus, -a, -um	dear (+ dat.)
cibus, -ī, M.	food
circum (prep. + acc.)	around
dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus	destroy
deus, -ī, M.	a god, deity
nom. pl. dī	
gen. pl. deōrum or deum	
dat., abl. pl. dīs	
dea, -ae, F.	goddess
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus	lead; consider
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus	make, do
factum, -ī, N.	deed
filius, -ī, M.	son
filia, -ae, F.	daughter
honestus, -a, -um	respected, honorable, distinguished
intellegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus	understand
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus	choose, select; read
liber, librī, M.	book
littera, -ae, F.	letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter (epistle)
mēnsa, -ae, F.	table
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus	send
mōnstrō (1)	show, point out, demonstrate
oppidum, -ī, N.	town
perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus	destroy, lose, waste
periculum, -ī, N.	danger

<b>pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus</b>	put, place, set aside
<b>quod (conj.)</b>	because
<b>rēgnum, -ī, N.</b>	realm, kingdom
<b>respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōnsus</b>	answer
<b>studium, -ī, N.</b>	enthusiasm, zeal
<b>tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus</b>	cover, conceal
<b>tēctum, -ī, N.</b>	roof, house
<b>trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditus</b>	hand over, betray
<b>umbra, -ae, F.</b>	shadow
<b>urna, -ae, F.</b>	urn
<b>vērū, -a, -um</b>	true, real
<b>vērē or vērō (adv.)</b>	truly, indeed
<b>videō, -ēre, vidi, vīsus</b>	see; (in passive) seem, <i>as well as</i> be seen
<b>villa, -ae, F.</b>	country house, farmhouse

## UNIT FOUR — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Agō, agere, ēgī, āctus** is an important verb which has many meanings: 'do, drive, discuss, spend time, conduct (life)'. When a speaker **agit**, he is 'pleading (a case)'; when an actor **agit**, he is 'acting'. Note that the **a-** in the present stem lengthens to **ē-** in the perfect active stem, and to **ā-** in the perfect passive form. **Grātiās agere** with the dative means 'to thank' someone: **Grātiās rēgīnae ēgī**, 'I thanked the queen'.

The preposition **cum**, when it is used as a prefix, is spelled **com-** or sometimes **co-**. The verb **cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus** means 'drive together, collect, compel' (compounded from **cum + agō**).

**Altus, -a, -um** describes something measured up or down; thus, it has both meanings, 'high' and 'deep'.

The adjective **amicus, -a, -um**, 'friendly', and its opposite **inimicus, -a, -um**, 'unfriendly', are very often used substantively (as many adjectives are). Thus **amicus**, 'a friendly (man)' is a 'friend', and **amica**, a 'girlfriend' as well as a 'prostitute'; **inimicus** as a noun refers to a personal 'enemy' as opposed to a public enemy.

The plural forms of **deus, deī, M.**, 'god', are: **dī, deōrum** or **deum, dīs, deōs, dīs**. Just as **deus, deī** is 'god' and **dea, deae**, 'goddess', so **filius, filiū** is 'son' and **filia, filiae**, 'daughter'.

**Dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductus** not only means 'lead' but also 'consider'.

Just as the **a-** of **agō** lengthens to **ē-** in the perfect active stem, so the **-a-** of **faciō, facere**, 'make, do', lengthens in **fēcī**, the perfect active form; however, it



remains short in **factus**, the perfect passive participle. There are many compounds of this verb:

<b>afficiō (ad + faciō)</b>	do (something) to (someone), affect
<b>cōficiō</b> (where the prefix <b>con-</b> has the meaning 'completely')	do completely, accomplish
<b>perficiō (per, 'thoroughly')</b>	do thoroughly, complete, accomplish
<b>reficiō (re-</b> can also mean 'again' as well as 'back')	make again, renew
<b>praeficiō (prae, 'in front of')</b>	make (someone) in front of (others); put in charge

**Factum, factī**, N., is 'the thing which has been done', thus, 'deed'.

**Honestus**, -a, -um does *not* mean 'honest', but 'honorable, respected, distinguished'.

**Legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus** basically means 'gather, choose'; it then extends its meaning to 'read'. **Intellegō** is a compound of **legō** (**inter-** [intel-], 'between, among'). When one chooses among other ideas, he understands. Some of the compounds of **legō** keep the -g- in the perfect active stem; others, like **intellegō**, change the -g- to -x-. There is no rule to indicate which compound will take which spelling.

Do not confuse **liber, librī**, M., 'book', with **līber, lībera, līberum**, 'free'. **Littera, litterae**, F., is a letter of the alphabet; the plural is used for an epistle. Thus **litterae, litterārum** is a 'letter': **Litterās Marcī vīdī**, 'I saw Marcus' letter'. If one wants to speak of 'letters', an adjective must be used: "several letters", "many letters", "two letters", etc. As in English, the plural may be used for "literature"; cf. in English, "a man of letters".

**Mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus** means 'send'. In Latin, one sends something to someone or someplace using **ad** with the accusative, not the dative case alone:

<b>Litterās ad amīcum mīsī.</b>	I sent a letter to (my) friend.	[motion stressed]
<b>Litterās amīcō mīsī.</b>	I sent a letter for (my) friend.	[the person referred to is stressed]

Do not confuse the form **mīseris** ('you will have sent' or second person singular perfect subjunctive active) with its long **-ī-** with the dative and ablative plural of **miser, misera, miserum (miserīs)** which has a short **-i-** in its root.

An indirect object is often found with **mōnstrō**, a first conjugation verb, 'show, point out, demonstrate'. One points something out to someone in the dative case: **Rēginam virō mōnstrābō**, 'I shall point out the queen to the man'.



**Pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus** means 'put, place, set aside'. Thus:

compōnō ( <b>com-</b> , 'together')	put together
dēpōnō	put down, deposit
impōnō ( <b>im-</b> for <b>in-</b> )	place in or on
praepōnō ( <b>prae</b> , 'in front of')	put in front of, place at the head
prōpōnō ( <b>prō-</b> , 'forward')	put forth
repōnō ( <b>re-</b> , 'back')	put back

**Tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus**, 'cover, conceal', is related to two nouns of interest. **Tēctum, tēctī**, N., is a 'covering' and so 'roof'; the meaning is then extended to 'house'. With a slight vowel change in the root of this verb there is produced the famous covering or garment for which the Romans are known, **toga, togae**, F.

**Trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus** is a compound of **trāns-**, 'across' and **dō**, 'give', but note that although **dō** is a first conjugation verb, this compounded form belongs to the third conjugation. Literally it means 'give across' and so the meaning is 'hand over' or 'betray'.

The adverb from **vērus**, -a, -um is either **vērē** or **vērō**; there is no difference between them.

The passive of **videō** means 'seem': **Marcus honestus vidētur**, 'Marcus seems honorable'. It can also mean 'be seen': **Marcus in tēctō vīsus est**, 'Marcus was seen in the house'.

**Villa, villae**, F., is a 'country house, farmhouse'. It was not necessarily a villa in our sense of the word, but a simple dwelling in which countryfolk lived.

## UNIT FOUR — DRILL

### I.

A. Translate indicatives; identify subjunctives.

B. Change the forms to the passive.

- |              |               |                                   |
|--------------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. spectās   | 8. capiētis   | 15. dāmnābās                      |
| 2. corōnāmus | 9. capiātis   | 16. dāmnāvisti                    |
| 3. dētis     | 10. capitis   | 17. incēpisset                    |
| 4. dōnent    | 11. cēlābāmus | 18. incēpissent                   |
| 5. habeam    | 12. cōgitāret | 19. labōrāverit (2 possibilities) |
| 6. impleat   | 13. cōgitet   | 20. monuerātis                    |
| 7. vidēbitis | 14. cōgitat   |                                   |

### II.

A. Translate indicatives; identify subjunctives.

B. Change the forms to the active.

- |                  |                 |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. mūtātī sumus  | 8. pulsa essem  | 15. tenēris     |
| 2. mūtātī sīmus  | 9. pulsae sumus | 16. auditum sit |
| 3. mūtātī erimus | 10. sentiāmini  | 17. audiāmur    |
| 4. mūtātī erāmus | 11. sentimini   | 18. audiēbāmur  |
| 5. pelleris      | 12. sentiēmini  | 19. gesta sunt  |
| 6. pellēris      | 13. tenēberis   | 20. geruntur    |
| 7. pellāris      | 14. tenēbāris   |                 |

## III.

1. Identify **agere** (2 possibilities).
2. Identify **agēre**.
3. Distinguish among:
  - (a) dāmnētis, vidētis, incolētis
  - (b) portant, taceant, veniant
  - (c) scribam, scribēbam, scribit, scribet, scribēbat

## IV.

1. Fēminae per portās venient ut rēginam videant.
  - a) Change **venient** to the perfect tense and make any other necessary change(s).
2. Monēmur nē multa verba amicis servōrum scribāmus.
  - a) Change **monēmur** to the pluperfect tense and make any other necessary change(s).
3. Dōnum ā nautīs cēlātum erat; dōnum undīs cēlātum est.
4. Sī dōnum vīsum esset, tacuissēmus.
  - a) Rewrite as a present contrary-to-fact condition.
5. Semper monitus eram nē ab incolīs vidērer, sed nōn audivi.

## UNIT FOUR — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTION A)

1. Multa vērō dē diligentīā viri clārī scribam (scribō, scribēbam).
2. Ā liberis petēmus ut oppida inimica dēleant.
3. Si malōs incolis prōvinciae trādant, dē insidiis taceāmus.
4. Honestī oppidī ad villam veniunt ut incolam ē periculō dūcant.
5. Rōmāni ad ārās deum multis cum dōnis veniēbant ut veniam ōrārent.
6. Intellegisne librum poētae clārī?
7. Dē factis acerbis aeternōrum deum audiēmus (audīmus, audiēbāmus).
8. Villamne cum filiis incolēbātis?
9. Si virum honestum in prōvinciā sentiās, laetus esse incipiam.
10. Multās litterās amicis scribit ut multās legat.

## UNIT FOUR — EXERCISES

## I.

1. Nautae mali ab incolis liberis in viam acti sunt.
2. Incolae liberi nautas Romanos in viam egerunt quod nautae missi erant ut oppidum delerent.
3. Si oppidum validum superabitur, liberi erunt servi.
4. Liber a poeta cum diligentia scriptus est ut magnum periculum bonis monstraretur.
5. Si litterae a regina pulchra ad honestos missae essent, moniti essent ut bellum gererent, et oppidum ab amicis malorum non superatum esset.
6. Urna pulchra in mensa a feminis reginae ponetur ut cibo aquaque impleatur.
7. Si umbris magnis aqua alta a dis tecta esset, nautae Romani vela non darent.
8. Magna cum studio filii reginae respondere inceperunt; oraverunt ut periculum incolis provinciarum magna diligentia duceretur.
9. Nisi nautae ad aquam ducantur, vela non dent.
10. Magna cum diligentia bellum gestum est ne ab incolis provinciae Romanae malis regnum superaretur.
11. Si verba vera magna studio a viris bonis honestisque legentur et intellegentur, periculum belli deleretur.
12. Viri liberi et honesti semper orabant ne bello et gladiis oppidum deleretur; incolae enim monuerunt ut vitam bonam agerent.
13. Litterae ad oppidum clarum a regina provinciae missae sunt ut incolae veniam veram viderent et intellegerent.
14. Feminae pulchrae viros miseros e provincia Romana ad amicum oppidum cum magna turba mittunt ne incolae provinciae esse videantur.
15. Filia reginae bonae ad aram a nautis Romanis ducta est ut honesta dis agerentur.
16. Periculum regno magnum filiis liberorum videtur.
17. Circum oppidum ducibaris ut a bonis malisque videretur.
18. Nisi poeta verba honesta veraque de factis bonorum scribet, pecuniam non faciet.
19. Bonam veniam honesta audies; honesta bona veniam audiuntur; oro ut honestum bonam veniam audiat.
20. Si litterae filio honesto mittantur, respondeatne?
21. Orabimus ut urnae aqua a puella impleantur.
22. Si magna bella ab incolis gerentur, regnum vere delebitur.
23. Si ara umbris tecta esset, incolae cibum deorum non vidissent.
24. Multa vero pecunia in mensa ponitur ut honesti pecuniam capiant et magnum tectum filiis faciant.
25. Nisi ab amicis traditus esset, vitam non perdidisset.

26. Monuerat ut litterās amīcō trāderētis quod vēra dē perīculīs rēgnō legere nōn optāvistis.
27. Āa aeterna ab incolīs oppidī facta est ut dōna dīs cāra darentur.
28. Oppidum enim dēlētum erat quod servī portās magnīs cum īnsidiīs patriae inimicīs trādiderant.
29. Deās in caelō ōrāvimus ut vīllam pulchram habeāmus.

## II.

1. Very tearfully (with many tears) the queen demonstrated the dangers of war to the inhabitants of the island in order that they might not be overcome by the swords of the strong Roman sailors.
2. If the town is destroyed, the queen, with great kindness, will send both food and money to (ad) the wretched inhabitants.
3. The Romans always will wage wars very zealously (with great zeal) in order that they may not be placed in danger by (their) enemies.
4. If many urns had been made by the children, gifts of money would have been given by the queen.
5. If the evil men should be led around the towns of the queen's realm, the inhabitants would not be betrayed by (their) treachery.

## III. Reading

Liber aeternus, honestīs virīs cārus, ā Vergiliō<sup>1</sup> scrīptus est. In librō vir, fīlius ē deā, ā dīs missus est ut oppidum in Italiā<sup>2</sup> conderet.<sup>3</sup> Vir ā dīs lēctus erat ut factum faceret quod honestus bonam vītā ageret.<sup>4</sup> Patriam, Trōiam,<sup>5</sup> ab inimicō trāditam<sup>6</sup> reliquit.<sup>7</sup> Trōia<sup>5</sup> dēlēta erat postquam<sup>8</sup> incolae longum<sup>9</sup> bellum cum Graecīs<sup>10</sup> gesserant; īnsidiīs perdita est. Multī inimicī in altō equō<sup>11</sup> ligneō<sup>12</sup> tēctī erant; Graecus<sup>10</sup> vir incolīs oppidī amīcus ductus,<sup>6</sup> magnō cum studiō amīcōs, Trōiānīs<sup>5</sup> inimicōs, ex equō<sup>11</sup> dūxit et tēcta mōnstrāvit ut accenderentur<sup>13</sup> et incolās ut interficerentur.<sup>14</sup> Trōia<sup>5</sup> magnō in perīculō posita est; nē<sup>15</sup> fīlius quidem<sup>15</sup> deae cum amīcīs oppidum servāre<sup>16</sup> potuit.<sup>17</sup> Cum parvā<sup>18</sup> turbā amīcōrum patriam reliquit<sup>7</sup> et vēla ad Italiā<sup>2</sup> dedit.

<sup>1</sup> Vergilius, -ī, M., 'Vergil', the author of the Roman epic poem *The Aeneid*    <sup>2</sup> Italia, -ae, F., 'Italy'    <sup>3</sup> condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, 'found'    <sup>4</sup> ageret. The subjunctive is used to express someone else's reason for doing a thing, not a reason one knows for sure. Subjunctive = mood of possibility.    <sup>5</sup> Trōia, -ae, F., 'Troy', a city in Asia Minor; Trōiānus, -a, -um, 'Trojan'    <sup>6</sup> trāditam (trāditus, -a, -um) and ductus (ductus, -a, -um) come from the fourth principal part of the verb and are perfect passive participles. Since a participle is an adjective, it must agree with the noun which it modifies in gender, number, and case. Translate trāditus, -a, -um 'having been betrayed, betrayed', and ductus, -a, -um 'having been considered, considered'.    <sup>7</sup> relinquo, -ere, reliquī, relictus, 'abandon'    <sup>8</sup> postquam (conj.), 'after'    <sup>9</sup> longus, -a, -um, 'long'    <sup>10</sup> Graecus, -a, -um, 'Greek'    <sup>11</sup> equus, -ī, M., 'horse'    <sup>12</sup> ligneus, -a, -um, 'wooden'    <sup>13</sup> accendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, 'set on fire'    <sup>14</sup> interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, 'kill'    <sup>15</sup> nē...quidem, 'not even'    <sup>16</sup> servō (1), 'save'    <sup>17</sup> possum, posse, potuī, --, 'be able'    <sup>18</sup> parvus, -a, -um, 'small'

# REVIEW: UNITS ONE TO FOUR

## Review of Syntax

1. Dāmnor semper ab acerbis malōrum factōrum, sed fāma nōn perdita est.  
(ablative of personal agent; adjective used as a noun; genitive with verbs of accusing and condemning)
2. Librī malī ab honestīs dāmnor, sed magnā cum invidiā ab amicīs legitur et bonus esse dūcitur.  
(genitive with verbs of accusing and condemning; ablatives of personal agent; adjectives used as nouns; ablative of manner; predicate adjective)
3. Sī multa mala dē factis deōrum audīta essent, incolae ad ārās nōn vēnissent.  
(adjective used as a noun; past contrary-to-fact condition)
4. Sī ad īnsulam clāram mittēmur nē in patriā videāmur, multās litterās amicīs cāris scribēmus nē ab inimicīs trādāmur.  
(future more vivid condition; two purpose clauses in primary sequence; adjectives used as nouns; ablative of personal agent)
5. Cārusne dīs videāris sī dōna cibī in ārīs pōnās?  
(dative with a special adjective; future less vivid condition)
6. Sī oppidum insidiis dēlērētur, facta mala inimicōrum ab incolis intellegerentur.  
(present contrary-to-fact condition; ablative of means; adjective used as a noun; ablative of personal agent)
7. Fēminae lacrimās cēlāre nōn dubitant. Fēminās ōrāmus nē lacrimās cēlent.  
Tacēmus nē fēminae lacrimās cēlent.  
(indirect command in primary sequence; purpose clause in primary sequence)
8. Petēbāmus ā nātis ut saxa clāra in cellam neque cum morā neque cum noxā portārentur, nē in campīs cēlārentur et perderentur.  
(ā + abl. with **petō**; indirect command in secondary sequence; ablatives of manner; purpose clause in secondary sequence)

## Synopsis of Verbs

A synopsis (refer to Preliminary Exercises for Unit Two) should include the active and passive forms of the verb in the indicative and subjunctive moods.



The following synopsis of **dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** in the first person plural will serve as a model:

**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 'lead, consider'**

#### INDICATIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	dūcimus	dūcimur
Imperfect	dūcēbāmus	dūcēbāmur
Future	dūcēmus	dūcēmur
Perfect	dūximus	ductī (-ae, -a) sumus
Pluperfect	dūxerāmus	ductī (-ae, -a) erāmus
Future Perfect	dūxerimus	ductī (-ae, -a) erimus

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

Present	dūcāmus	dūcāmur
Imperfect	dūcerēmus	dūcerēmur
Perfect	dūxerimus	ductī (-ae, -a) sīmus
Pluperfect	dūxissēmus	ductī (-ae, -a) essēmus

## UNITS 1-4: Self-Review A

While long marks appear below only in places where confusion might arise, they should appear in your answers.

### I.

A. Change these forms to the passive, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

- impleverunt
- terrueritis (2 possibilities)
- viderat
- spectes
- sentiebam

B. Change these forms to the active, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:

- monitus esses
- teneremur
- capiemini
- gesta sit
- mittitur

**II.**

Fully describe each of the following as to *form*, giving all possibilities of interpretation, and then give the dictionary forms (principal parts) for each:

1. *positae sunt*
2. *gladii* (2 possibilities)
3. *tegere* (3 possibilities)
4. *audiverit* (2 possibilities)
5. *villae* (3 possibilities)

**III.**

Translate each sentence into English and then do whatever is required by any questions which follow:

1. *Incolae miseri verba filiorum audiverunt ut multa intellegant.*
  - a) Change **intellegant** to the imperfect subjunctive and show how this would alter your translation of **audiverunt**.
  - b) Change the form **audiverunt** to the imperfect tense.
2. *Nisi laetus esse videberis, aquā urnam non implebo; regina enim monuit ut urnam laeto impleam.*
  - a) Rewrite in Latin completely in the plural.
  - b) Give the syntax of **videberis**.
  - c) Give the case of **laeto**.
  - d) Rewrite **Nisi laetus esse videberis, aquā urnam non implebo** as a simple present condition.
  - e) Rewrite as a present contrary-to-fact condition.
  - f) Rewrite as a past contrary-to-fact condition.
3. *Si insidiarum damnatus esset, nauta ab incolis oppidi honestis petivisset ut audiretur ne in periculo poneretur.*
  - a) Explain the syntax of **insidiarum**.
  - b) Explain the syntax of **audiretur**.
4. *Magnae turbae servorum ex agris ad portas oppidi venerunt ut multis cum lacrimis viros validos orarent ut de natura belli tacerent.*
  - a) Explain the syntax of **orarent**.
  - b) Explain the syntax of **tacerent**.
5. *Multum enim de periculo ab honesto actum et lectum et scriptum est ne regnum a malo deleretur.*
  - a) Explain the syntax of **malo**.
  - b) Rewrite the entire sentence in Latin in the plural.
6. *Si bellum gladiis saxisque magnā cum diligentia gestum esset, viri nunc vela ad insulam non darent.*
  - a) Give syntax of **gestum esset**.

- b) Give syntax of **darent**.
  - c) Give syntax of **gladiis**.
  - d) Give syntax of **diligentiā**.
  - e) Rewrite in Latin as a future less vivid condition.
  - f) Translate the Latin sentence you wrote under 6e.
7. Si amica facta deorum ducentur magnā cum curā, vitam bonam agere optabimus.

#### IV.

Translate into Latin:

1. If they think about the danger, the inhabitants will begin to place big rocks around the island in order that the town may be free.
2. The book had indeed been read zealously by the boy.

### Answer Key — UNITS 1–4: Self-Review A

#### I.

- A. 1. implēti, -ae, -a sunt
  2. territi, -ae, -a sitis  
terrītī, -ae, -a eritis
  3. vīsus, -a, -um erat
  4. spectēris (spectēre)
  5. sentiēbar
- B. 1. monuissēs
  2. tenērēmus
  3. capiētis
  4. gesserit
  5. mittit

#### II.

1. 3rd pl. fem. perfect passive indicative: **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**
2. genitive sing.; nominative pl.: **gladius, -ī, M.**
3. present active infinitive; 2nd sing. future passive indicative (when -e- is long); 2nd sing. present passive indicative (when -e- is short): **tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus**
4. 3rd sing. future perfect active indicative; 3rd sing. perfect active subjunctive: **audiō, audire, audivī, auditus**
5. genitive sing.; dative sing.; nominative pl.: **villa, -ae, F.**

## III.

1. The wretched inhabitants have heard (have listened to) the words of their sons in order that they may understand many things.
  - a) intellegent  
'listened to, heard'
  - b) audiēbant
2. If you do (will) not seem to be happy (unless you (will) seem...), I shall not fill the urn with water; indeed the queen has warned (has advised) that I fill the urn for a (the) happy man.
  - a) Nisi laeti esse vidēbimīni, aquis urnās nōn implēbimus; rēginae enim monuērunt ut urnās laetis impleāmus.
  - b) 2nd sing. future passive indicative in protasis of a future more vivid condition
  - c) dative sing.
  - d) Nisi laetus esse vidēris (vidēre), aquā urnam nōn impleō.
  - e) Nisi laetus esse vidērēris (vidērēre), aquā urnam nōn implērem.
  - f) Nisi laetus esse vīsus essēs, aquā urnam nōn implēvissem.
3. If he had been condemned for treachery, the sailor would have asked the honorable inhabitants of the town that he be heard in order that he might not be placed (put) in danger.
  - a) genitive pl. with a verb of condemning
  - b) 3rd sing. imperfect passive subjunctive in an indirect command in secondary sequence
4. Large crowds of slaves came out of the fields to the gates of the town in order that they might beg the strong men very tearfully (with many tears) that they be silent about the nature of (the) war.
  - a) 3rd pl. imperfect active subjunctive in secondary sequence — in a clause of purpose
  - b) 3rd pl. imperfect active subjunctive in secondary sequence — in an indirect command
5. Indeed much was done and read and written by the (an) honorable man about the danger in order that the kingdom might not be destroyed by the (an) evil man.
  - a) ablative of personal agent
  - b) Multa enim dē periculis ab honestis ācta et lēcta et scripta sunt nē rēgna ā malis dēlērentur.
6. If the war had been waged very diligently (with great diligence) with swords and rocks, the men would not now be setting sail to the island.
  - a) 3rd sing. pluperfect subjunctive passive in the protasis of a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
  - b) 3rd pl. imperfect subjunctive active in the apodosis of a mixed contrary-to-fact condition

- c) ablative of means
  - d) ablative of manner
  - e) Si bellum gladiis saxisque magnā cum diligentia geratur, viri vela ad insulam nōn dent.
  - f) If the war should be waged very diligently (with great diligence) with swords and rocks, the men would not set sail to the island.
7. If the friendly deeds of the gods are (will be) considered very carefully (with great care), we shall desire (choose) to conduct a good life.

#### IV.

1. Si dē periculō cōgitābunt, incolae magna saxa circum insulam pōnere incipient ut oppidum liberum sit.
2. Liber enim ā puerō cum studiō lēctus erat.

### UNITS 1-4: Self-Review B

While long marks appear below only in places where confusion might arise, they should appear in your answers.

#### I.

- A. Identify the form of each of the following, giving *all* possibilities and listing principal parts for verbs and the nominative, genitive singular, and gender for nouns:
 

1. gesseritis	3. nautis	5. studia
2. mitterere	4. sentiar	
- B. Change the following verb forms to the passive, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:
 

1. superamus	3. egeratis	5. perdiderim
2. terrebis	4. intellegant	
- C. Change the following verb forms to the active voice, retaining mood, person, number, and tense:
 

1. audiebatur	3. positi estis	5. visae essemus
2. pulsa erunt	4. donaremini	

#### II.

Translate each of the following and then do whatever is required by the questions which follow:

1. Si nautae validi poenas dedissent, magno studio regina aras deorum donis implevisset.



- a) Explain the ending of **validi**.
- b) Give the syntax of **studio**.
- c) Explain the syntax of **implevisset**.
- d) Change the above condition to the negative.
- e) Rewrite the above as a future less vivid condition.
- f) Rewrite as a future more vivid condition.
- g) Rewrite as a contrary-to-fact condition in present time.
2. Si bellum in provinciā geretis, magnum regnum perdetis.
  - a) Give the syntax of **geretis**.
3. Marcus, vir honestus clarusque, servos miseros monuit ut naturam animae intellegerent ut laeti essent.
  - a) Explain the syntax of **intellegerent**.
  - b) Explain the syntax of **essent**.
  - c) Change the subordinate clauses to the negative.
  - d) Change **monuit** to the simple present and make any additional change(s) necessary.
4. Multa verba acerba de periculo belli magnā cum diligentia a poetis scripta sunt ne boni bellum gerere optarent.
  - a) Explain the syntax of **diligentia**.
  - b) Explain the syntax of **poetis**.
  - c) Change the verb in the subordinate clause to primary sequence. How would this alter your translation of **scripta sunt**?
5. Nautae villas insulae gladiis saxisque delere inciperent nisi regina litteras incolis misisset ut multa bona amicis nautarum darentur.
  - a) Explain the syntax of **gladiis**.
  - b) Explain the syntax of **misisset**.
6. Venia vera deorum aeternorum in caelo natis monstrata est ut vitam bonam agant.
  - a) Change **monstrata est** to the simple future tense and make any other necessary change(s).
7. Si incola inimicus a viris visus esset, feminas e villis ad aras duxissent ut a dis peterent ne oppidum periculo et villae lacrimis implerentur.

### III.

Translate the following sentences into Latin:

1. We came to the town very zealously in order that we might warn the sailors that they not betray (their) friends.
2. If we should be seen by the men of the town, we would be considered hostile and would be driven from the province.

## Answer Key — UNITS 1–4: Self-Review B

### I.

- A. 1. 2nd pl. future perfect active indicative; 2nd pl. perfect active subjunctive:  
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestus
2. 2nd sing. imperfect passive subjunctive: mittō, mittere, misi, missus
3. dative/ablative pl.: nauta, -ae, M.
4. 1st sing. future passive indicative; 1st sing. present passive subjunctive:  
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsi, sēnsus
5. nominative/accusative pl.: studium, -i, N.
- B. 1. superāmur
2. terrēberis (terrēbere)
3. ācti, -ae, -a erātis
4. intellegantur
5. perditus, -a, -um sim
- C. 1. audiēbat
2. pepulerint
3. posuistis
4. dōnārētis
5. vīdissēmus

### II.

1. If the strong sailors had paid the penalty, very zealously (with great zeal) the queen would have filled the altars of the gods with gifts.
- a) nominative pl. M. adjective agreeing with **nautae**, M.
- b) ablative of manner
- c) 3rd sing. pluperfect active subjunctive in the apodosis of a past contrary-to-fact condition
- d) Nisi nautae validi poenās dedissent, magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnis nōn implēvisset.
- e) Si nautae validi poenās dent, magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnis impleat.
- f) Si nautae validi poenās  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{dabunt} \\ \text{dederint} \end{array} \right\}$  magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnis implēbit.
- g) Si nautae validi poenās darent, magnō studiō rēgina ārās deōrum dōnis implēret.
2. If you (pl.) (will) wage war in the province, you (pl.) will destroy a great kingdom.

- a) 2nd pl. future active indicative in the protasis of a future more vivid condition
3. Marcus, an honorable and famous man, warned the wretched slaves that they understand the nature of the soul in order that they might be happy.
  - a) 3rd pl. imperfect active subjunctive in an indirect command in secondary sequence
  - b) 3rd pl. imperfect subjunctive in a purpose clause in secondary sequence
  - c) ...servōs miserōs monuit nē nātūrā animae intellegent nē laeti essent.
  - d) monet ut...intellegant ut...sint
4. Many harsh (bitter) words about the danger of war were written very diligently (with great diligence) by poets in order that good men might not choose (desire) to wage war.
  - a) ablative of manner
  - b) ablative of personal agent
  - c) optent  
'have been written'
5. The sailors would (now) begin to destroy the country houses of the island with swords and rocks if the queen had not (unless the queen had) sent a letter to (for) the inhabitants in order that many good things might be given to the sailors' friends.
  - a) ablative of means
  - b) 3rd sing. pluperfect active subjunctive in the protasis of a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
6. The true favor (kindness) of the eternal gods in the sky (heaven) has been shown (pointed out) to the children (sons) in order that they may conduct a good life.
  - a) mōnstrābitur  
no other changes necessary
7. If the unfriendly inhabitant had been seen by the men, they would have led the women out of the country houses to the altars in order that they might ask the gods that the town not be filled with danger and the country houses (not be filled) with tears.

### III.

1. Ad oppidum magnō cum studiō vēnimus ut nautās monērēmus nē amicōs trāderent.
2. Sī ā virīs oppidī videāmur, inimīcī habeāmur (dūcāmur) et ē prōvinciā pellāmur (expellāmur).

# UNIT FIVE

## A. Participles: Definition and Formation

If we wish to take a verb and make an adjective out of it, we construct a *verbal adjective* or *participle*.

The *shouting* woman departed.

The men saw the *destroyed* town.

A participle, like any other adjective, must agree with the noun it qualifies in gender, number, and case. In the sentences given as examples above, “shouting” is feminine, singular, nominative to agree with “woman”; “destroyed” is neuter, singular, accusative to agree with “town”. The participle also has the attributes of tense and voice: “shouting” is present active; “destroyed” (i.e., “having been destroyed”) is perfect passive.

The participle, although an adjective, still retains its verbal powers and accordingly, for example, can take an object:

The men *destroying the town* were sailors.

The formation of participles is illustrated below:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	optāns desiring	--
Perfect	--	optātus, -a, -um having been desired, desired
Future	optātūrus, -a, -um going to desire, about to desire	optandus, -a, -um having to be desired, to be desired*

1. **PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.** To form the present active participle, add **-ns** to the present stem. In the case of i-stem verbs, **-iē-** will appear in the present participle:

optā/ns implē/ns dūcē/ns incipiē/ns sentiē/ns

\* The future passive participle regularly carries the accessory notion of obligation, necessity, or propriety.

The form given is the nominative singular for all three genders. The present participle declines, but according to a scheme which differs from that which you have already learned. This will be discussed in Unit Eight. (Note that a vowel lengthens before **-ns**.)

2. **PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.** The perfect passive participle is the fourth principal part of the verb:

optātus, -a, -um implētus, -a, -um ductus, -a, -um inceptus, -a, -um  
sēnsus, -a, -um

3. **FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.** To form the future active participle, take the fourth principal part of the verb, drop the **-us** ending and add in its place **-ūrus, -a, -um**:

optātūrus, -a, -um implētūrus, -a, -um ductūrus, -a, -um  
inceptūrus, -a, -um sēnsūrus, -a, -um

4. **FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.** To form the future passive participle, add **-ndus, -a, -um** to the present stem. In i-stem verbs, **-ie-** will appear:

optandus, -a, -um implendus, -a, -um dūcendus, -a, -um  
incipiendus, -a, -um sentiendus, -a, -um

Note that a long vowel shortens before **-nd**.

## B. Some Uses of the Participle

The tense of the participle is *relative* to that of the main verb. A *present* participle refers to an action *contemporaneous* with that of the main verb; a *perfect* participle refers to an action *prior* to that of the main verb; a *future* participle refers to an action *subsequent* to that of the main verb. There are some problems which arise in this system because of the lack of certain participial forms (i.e., present passive and perfect active), but these may be circumvented easily, as will be seen later.

Multiple interpretations of a participle are possible in English:

### 1. PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

Fēmina clāmāns discessit. The *shouting* woman departed.  
The woman departed *shouting*.  
*Shouting*, the woman departed.  
The woman *who was shouting* departed.  
The woman, *since she was shouting*, departed.  
The woman, *although she was shouting*,  
departed.  
*When (while) she was shouting*, the woman  
departed.  
*If she was shouting*, the woman departed.



## OBSERVATIONS:

- a) In each case, the present participle **clāmāns** refers to an action which was going on at the same time as that of the main verb.
- b) The participle can be translated into English with causal ("since"), concessive ("although"), temporal ("when, while"), or conditional ("if") force. The participle alone, then, can stand for the if-clause (protasis) of a conditional sentence. It can also stand for a relative clause. The interpretation of a participle must depend upon the requirements of the *context* of each specific passage.
- c) Frequently when a participle is meant to be taken as concessive, the word **tamen**, 'nevertheless', is inserted to qualify the main verb.

Fēmina clāmāns tamen discessit. Although the woman was shouting, nevertheless she departed.

## 2. PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

Fēmina **territa** clāmāvit. The *having-been-frightened* woman shouted.  
 The woman, *having been frightened*, shouted.  
*Having been frightened*, the woman shouted.  
 The *frightened* woman shouted.  
 The woman *who had been frightened* shouted.  
*Since she had been frightened*, the woman shouted.  
*Although she had been frightened*, the woman shouted.  
*When (after) she had been frightened*, the woman shouted.  
*If she had been frightened*, the woman shouted.

## OBSERVATIONS:

- a) The perfect passive participle refers to an action which occurred prior to the time of the main verb.
- b) The absence of the perfect active participle in Latin makes it impossible at this stage of our study to express a verbal idea in the active voice as having occurred prior to the time of the main verb.

The woman, having shouted (after she had shouted), departed.

A subordinate clause, introduced perhaps by the subordinating conjunction **postquam**, 'after', would have to be used in this case:

Postquam clāmāvit, fēmina discessit. After she shouted, the woman departed.

## 3. FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

- Fēmina **discessūra** virum vidit. The *about-to-depart* woman saw (her) husband.  
 The woman, *about to depart*, saw (her) husband.  
*About to depart*, the woman saw (her) husband.  
 The woman *who was about (going) to depart* saw (her) husband.  
*Since* the woman *was going to depart*, she saw (her) husband.  
*Although* the woman *was going to depart*, she saw (her) husband.  
*When (as)* the woman *was going to depart*, she saw (her) husband.  
*If* the woman *was going to depart*, she saw (her) husband.

OBSERVATION: The future active participle refers to an action which will occur or has occurred subsequent to that of the main verb.

## 4. FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

- Librōs **legendōs** in mēnsā posuit. He placed *having-to-be-read* books on the table.  
 He placed books *to be read* on the table.  
 He placed books *which had to be read* on the table.

## OBSERVATIONS:

- The future passive participle refers to an action which will occur or has occurred subsequent to that of the main verb.
- The future passive participle (sometimes called the *gerundive*) carries with it the notion of obligation, necessity, or propriety.

These participial constructions may occur in any grammatical case:

- Fēminae **discessūrae** pecūniam He gave money to the about-to-depart  
 dedit. woman.  
 He gave money to the woman who was  
 about to depart.

### C. Periphrastics

The future participles (active and passive) are compounded with the verb **sum** to form the active and passive periphrastic conjugations.

#### 1. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The active periphrastic is translated by the English 'about to, going to, ready to'.

##### INDICATIVE:

Pres.	optātūrus (-a, -um) sum	I am about to desire
Impf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) eram	I was about to desire
Fut.	optātūrus (-a, -um) erō	I shall be about to desire
Perf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fui	I have been (was) about to desire
Plupf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fueram	I had been about to desire
Fut. Pf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerō	I shall have been about to desire

##### SUBJUNCTIVE:

Pres.	optātūrus (-a, -um) sim
Impf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) essem
Perf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerim
Plupf.	optātūrus (-a, -um) fuissem

#### 2. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

The passive periphrastic is translated by 'have (has) to, should, ought to', or 'must'.

##### INDICATIVE:

Pres.	optandus (-a, -um) sum	I am having-to-be desired, I have to be desired, I should (ought to) be desired, I must be desired
Impf.	optandus (-a, -um) eram	I had to be desired
Fut.	optandus (-a, -um) erō	I shall have to be desired
Perf.	optandus (-a, -um) fui	I had to be desired
Plupf.	optandus (-a, -um) fueram	I had had to be desired
Fut. Pf.	optandus (-a, -um) fuerō	I shall have had to be desired

##### SUBJUNCTIVE:

Pres.	optandus (-a, -um) sim
Impf.	optandus (-a, -um) essem
Perf.	optandus (-a, -um) fuerim
Plupf.	optandus (-a, -um) fuissem

These compound periphrastic forms should not be confused with the compound passives of the perfect system which have been met earlier. Distinguish:

optātus est	he has been desired	(passive)
optātūrus est	he is about to desire	(active periphrastic)
optandus est	he is (has) to be desired	(passive periphrastic)

### D. Dative of Agent with the Passive Periphrastic

Personal agent is regularly expressed by the ablative case preceded by the preposition **ā** (**ab**). With the passive periphrastic, however, the personal agent is normally expressed by the dative case without a preposition. In fact, this use of the dative is purely referential; the action of the verb is viewed as necessary with reference to the agent.

Poēta **rēgīnae** videndus est. The poet must be seen *by the queen*.

(Note that the **-us** ending on **videndus** agrees with the subject **poēta** which is masculine.)

### E. Dative of the Possessor

With forms of the verb **sum**, the dative is sometimes used to show possession. The *possessor* is put into the dative case.

Corōna est **rēgīnae**. A crown is *to the queen*; *the queen* has a crown; the crown is *the queen's*.

Liber est **amīcō**. A book is *to the friend*; *the friend* has a book; the book is *the friend's*.

### F. The Verb *possum*, 'be able'

This verb is a compound of **sum**. In the present system, when the form of **sum** begins with **s**, the prefix **pos-** is added to conjugate **possum**; when the form of **sum** begins with **e**, the prefix **pot-** is added. The imperfect subjunctive is constructed, as usual, on the full present infinitive, and the perfect system is formed as one might expect.

**possum, posse, potuī, --**

Present	Imperfect	Future	Perfect	Pluperfect	Future Perfect
INDICATIVE					
possum	poteram	poterō	potui	potueram	potuerō
potes	poterās	poteris	potuisti	potuerās	potueris
potest	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.
possumus					
potestis					
possunt					

Present	Imperfect	Perfect	Pluperfect
SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>possim</i>	<i>possem</i>	<i>potuerim</i>	<i>potuissem</i>
<i>possis</i>	<i>possēs</i>	<i>potueris</i>	<i>potuissēs</i>
<i>possit</i>	...etc.	...etc.	...etc.
<i>possimus</i>			
<i>possitis</i>			
<i>possint</i>			

### G. Complementary Infinitive and Object Infinitive

There are verbs in Latin which frequently require an infinitive to complete their meaning. Some of these are verbs which express ability, will, desire, and the like.

Amicum <b>vidēre</b> optō.	I desire <i>to see</i> (my) friend.
Amicum <b>vidēre</b> possum.	I am able <i>to see</i> (my) friend.
Bonus <b>esse</b> vidētur.	He seems <i>to be</i> good.

Such infinitives are called *complementary* infinitives because they *complete* the idea of the verb. When they are used with transitive verbs, as in the first example above, they are in effect *object* infinitives since they function as the direct object of the transitive verb.

## UNIT FIVE — VOCABULARY

<b>ante</b> (prep. + acc.)	before, in front of
(adv.)	before, previously
<b>antīquus</b> , -a, -um	ancient
<b>ardeō</b> , -ēre, <b>arsī</b> , <b>arsus</b>	burn, be on fire; desire
<b>arma</b> , -ōrum, N. (pl.)	arms, weapons
<b>aurum</b> , -ī, N.	gold
<b>aureus</b> , -a, -um	golden, of gold
<b>autem</b> (postpositive conj.)	however, moreover
<b>bene</b> (adv.)	well
<b>canō</b> , -ere, <b>cecinī</b> , <b>cantus</b>	sing (of)
<b>cēdō</b> , -ere, <b>cessī</b> , <b>cessus</b>	go, move, yield
<b>accēdō</b> , -ere, -cessī, -cessus	go to, approach
<b>discēdō</b> , -ere, -cessī, -cessus	go from, depart, leave
<b>dēbeō</b> , -ēre, <b>dēbuī</b> , <b>dēbitus</b>	owe, ought
<b>dominus</b> , -ī, M.	master, lord
<b>dūrus</b> , -a, -um	hard, harsh
<b>ferrum</b> , -ī, N.	iron, sword
<b>flamma</b> , -ae, F.	flame, fire
<b>imperium</b> , -ī, N.	authority, power, empire



<b>imperō (1)</b>	give (an) order(s), give (a) command(s) (The person ordered is in the dative case; the thing ordered is expressed by an <b>ut</b> clause [negative <b>nē</b> ] of indirect command.)
<b>interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus</b>	kill
<b>invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus</b>	go into, invade, attack
<b>magister, magistrī, M.</b>	superior, director, master, teacher
<b>medius, -a, -um</b>	middle of, middle
<b>moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus</b>	move
<b>removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus</b>	remove, take away, set aside
<b>mox (adv.)</b>	soon
<b>nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus</b>	learn, (in perfect) know
<b>cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus</b>	learn, (in perfect) know
<b>novus, -a, -um</b>	new, strange
<b>numquam (nunquam) (adv.)</b>	never
<b>umquam (unquam) (adv.)</b>	ever
<b>pius, -a, -um</b>	loyal, dutiful, pious
<b>impius, -a, -um</b>	irreverent, wicked, impious
<b>populus, -ī, M.</b>	people
<b>possum, posse, potuī, --</b>	be able, can
<b>post (prep. + acc.)</b>	after, behind
<b>(adv.)</b>	afterwards, after, behind
<b>postquam (conj.)</b>	after (+ indicative)
<b>quamquam (conj.)</b>	although (+ indicative)
<b>ruīna, -ae, F.</b>	fall, downfall, ruin, destruction
<b>ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus</b>	fall, go to ruin, rush
<b>sine (prep. + abl.)</b>	without
<b>socius, -a, -um</b>	allied
<b>socius, -ī, M.</b>	ally
<b>tamen (adv.)</b>	nevertheless
<b>vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victus</b>	be alive, live
<b>vocō (1)</b>	call

## UNIT FIVE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The prepositions **ante**, 'before', and **post**, 'after', are well known, since one speaks of the ante-bellum South, or the post-bellum South, for example, in reference to the Civil War. These expressions will serve as reminders that both prepositions govern the accusative case. Both words can be used adverbially as well: **ante**, 'previously, before'; **post**, 'afterwards, after, behind'. And so, one

might say either **Urna ante mēnsam posita est**, 'The urn was placed in front of the table', or **Litterās ante scripsimus**, 'We wrote the letter before'.

The word **arma**, **armōrum** has no singular; it is a neuter word found only in the plural.

**Aurum**, **aurī**, N., 'gold', has as its adjective **aureus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'golden, of gold'. The chemical symbol for gold, **Au**, comes from the first two letters of **aurum**.

**Autem**, 'however, moreover', like **enim**, 'indeed', is a postpositive conjunction; it cannot be the first word in a clause.

**Cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessus** is another verb with many compounds. It means 'go, move, yield', and so **accēdō** (**ad** + **cēdō**) is 'go to, approach'; **discēdō** (**dis-**, 'apart' + **cēdō**), 'go from, depart, leave'; **excēdō**, 'go out'; **recēdō**, 'go back', etc.

**Dēbeō**, **dēbere**, **dēbui**, **dēbitus**, when used with an infinitive, means 'ought'; otherwise it means 'owe'.

**Ferrum**, **ferri**, N., is the word for 'iron' (chemical symbol **Fe**); it can also mean 'sword'.

**Imperō**, **imperāre**, **imperāvī**, **imperātus**, 'order, command', may govern the dative case. One gives a command to someone that he do something (**ut** or [negative] **nē** + subjunctive): **Fēminae ut canat imperō**, 'I order the woman to sing'.

**Interficiō** is another compound of **faciō** and means 'kill'.

**Magister**, **magistri**, M., is the person in charge of something, 'superior, director, master, teacher'.

**Medius**, **-a**, **-um** means 'the middle of'; it is an adjective like any other adjective, taking the case of the noun which it modifies: **in mediō oppidō**, 'in the middle of the town'; **ad medium oppidum**, 'toward the middle of the town'.

**Moveō**, **movēre**, 'move', lengthens its **-o-** in the perfect tenses: **mōvī**, **mōtus**. **Removeō**, a compound of **re-** + **moveō**, means 'move back, remove, take away, set aside'.

**Nōscō**, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus** and **cognōscō**, **cognōscere**, **cognōvī**, **cognitus** both mean 'learn' in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. However, once one has learned something, he knows it; therefore, the perfect tenses mean 'know'.

**Umquam** (sometimes spelled **unquam**) means 'ever'; its opposite, **numquam** (sometimes spelled **nunquam**) means 'never'.

**Pius**, **-a**, **-um**, 'loyal, dutiful, pious', has as its negative counterpart **impius**, **-a**, **-um**, 'irreverent, wicked, impious'; the prefix **in-** may have the meaning 'not'.

**Populus** with a short **-o-** means 'people' and is masculine; with a long **-ō-** it means 'poplar tree' and is feminine. Obviously, a careful pronunciation is needed to make a distinction between these two words. **Populus**, **populī**, M., 'people', is a collective noun and since it is singular, any adjective modifying it or verb used with it must also be singular. In the plural, it means 'peoples'.

**Possum, posse, potuī** has no fourth principal part; it means 'be able, can'. If the meaning 'be able' is used, it will be easy to remember that a complementary infinitive is used with **possum**. A complementary infinitive completes the meaning of an intransitive verb. "I am able" or "I ought" does not mean anything until an infinitive is used to complete the meaning: **Canere possum**, 'I am able to sing'; **Ferrum removēre dēbeō**, 'I ought to remove the sword'.

The conjunction **postquam**, 'after', is sometimes cut up into two parts (**post...quam**); this is called *tnesis*. By dividing the word, one gives the sentence a greater cohesion: **Dominus post interfectus est quam trāditus est**, 'The master was killed after he had been betrayed'.

The present stem of **ruō, ruere, ruī, rutus**, 'fall, go to ruin, rush', is the same as the perfect active stem; thus, **ruit**, 'he rushes', or 'he has rushed'.

The adjective **socius, -a, -um**, 'allied', when used substantively means 'ally': **Multi socii Rōmānis in magnō bellō pūgnāvērunt**, 'Many (men) allied to the Romans fought in the great war' or 'Many men fought in the great war as allies to the Romans'. Often adding the English word "as" makes for a smoother translation of a Latin sentence: **Et domini et servi pii ad ārās deōrum vērērunt**, 'Both the dutiful masters and slaves came to the altars of the gods' or 'Both the masters and slaves came to the altars of the gods as dutiful men'.

## UNIT FIVE — DRILL

### I.

Translate these phrases:

1. puer intellegēs
2. poēta respondēs
3. oppidum pūgnāns
4. filius dubitāns
5. deus monēs
6. amicus audiēs
7. incola capiēs
8. a) incola captus    b) incolae captō    c) incolārum captōrum
9. a) litterae missae    b) litteris missis
10. a) inimicus expulsus    b) inimici expulsi    c) inimicō expulsō
11. a) liber lēctus    b) librōrum lēctōrum
12. a) urna facta    b) urnis factis
13. a) rēgnum perdendum    b) rēgna perdenda    c) rēgnō perdendō
14. a) servi spectandi    b) servōrum spectandōrum
15. a) libri scribendi    b) libris scribendis    c) librōrum scribendōrum
16. a) dōna danda    b) dōnōrum dandōrum

17. a) puella respōnsūra b) puellae respōnsūrae
18. a) vir pūgnātūrus b) viris pūgnātūrīs
19. a) rēgīnae dāmnātūrae b) ā rēgīnā dāmnātūrā
20. a) fēmina vīsūra b) fēminārum vīsūrārum

## II.

Translate these sentences: (participles)

1. Īnsula ā virō capta dēlēbitur (dēlēta est).
2. Vir insulam capiēns pecūniam incolis dabit (dedit).
3. Vir insulam captūrus pecūniam incolis dabit (dedit).
4. Vir insulam captam dēlēre poterit (poterat).
5. Īnsula capienda est magna.
6. Nautae oppidum perditūrī fēminās incolārum terrent (terruērunt).
7. Nauta oppidum perdēns fēminās incolārum terret (terrui).
8. Oppidum dē periculō ab amicis monitum ab inimicis tamen perditum est.
9. Oppidum perdendum ab amicis monitum erat.
10. Dōnum viris librum lēctūris dedisti.
11. Glōria nautārum superātōrum erat magna.
12. Incolis insulam superātūrīs pecūniam dare potuit (potest).
13. Nautae incolās trāditūrō erat mala fāma.
14. Caecō dōna dis datūrō nōn erat pecūnia.
15. Caecus cibum ā virō ad oppidum missō petere optat.
16. Sī virōs oppidum dēlētūrōs vidēre possim, laetus esse possim.

## III.

Translate the following: (periphrastics, etc.)

1. missūrī sunt
2. missūrī erant
3. missūrī erunt
4. trādendum est
5. Oppidum trādendum erat.
6. Oppidum incolis trādendum erit.
7. Sententiae puellārum mūtandae sunt.
8. Sententiae puellis mūtandae sunt.
9. Puellae sentiētiās mūtātūrae sunt.
10. Venīa petenda est.
11. Malī veniam petītūrī erant.
12. Nautae ad oppidum missī erant ut inimicōs ē prōvinciā pellerent.
13. Nautae ad oppidum mittendī sunt ut inimicōs ē prōvinciā pellant.
14. Nautae ad oppidum mittendī erant ut inimicōs ē prōvinciā pellerent.

15. Rēgina nautās ad oppidum missūra est (erat).
16. Bellum ab acerbīs gestum timēbātur.
17. Acerbus bellum gerēns ab incolis timētur.
18. Si sententiae dē bellō viris mūtandae sint, incolae nōn intellegant.
19. Si sententiae dē bellō viris mūtandae essent (fuissent), incolae nōn intellegent (intellēxissent).
20. Si sententiam dē bellō mūtātūrus sis, amīci nōn taceant.
21. Si sententiam dē bellō mūtātūrus essēs (fuissēs), amīci nōn tacērent (tacuissent).

## IV.

Translate: (datives of the possessor)

1. Nautis gladii sunt.
2. Fēminae est mēnsa pulchra.
3. Filiīs poētae erant pulchri oculi.
4. Nautae multa pecūnia est; poētae nihil.

## UNIT FIVE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Dominus vocātus ad campum accessit.
2. Aurum ē cellā removēns, magister imperāvit ut in mediā mēnsā pōnerētur.
3. Piōs ad āram cessūrōs vidimus.
4. Sociis in periculum rutūris imperāvit.
5. Arma movenda spectāvimus.
6. Impiōs interficiendōs mōnstrāvērunt.
7. Patriam populī territī invādere nōn dēbētis.
8. Poēta autem virōs cognitōs cecinit.
9. Ruinae oppidōrum arsōrum ā nautis vīsae sunt.
10. Multam pecūniam capiēns, servus ā dominī tēctō discessit.

## UNIT FIVE — EXERCISES

## I.

1. Villa alta, flammīs ardēns, in ruīnam ante oculōs populī territōs ruit.
2. Magister magnus ab agrō discessūrōs ōrāvit ut oppidum sociōrum captōrum dēlērent. Magistrō enim non erant arma, discessūrīs multa.
3. Postquam virīs ab agrō discessūrīs imperāvit ut multa dē nātūrā populī inimicī cognōscerent, ē mediō sine morā discessit.



4. a) Medium oppidum armīs cum studiō tentum ab impiīs tamen captum est.  
b) Medium oppidum armīs cum studiō tentum piīs tamen capiendum est ut sine periculō bene vivant.  
c) Pii medium oppidum armīs cum studiō tentum capere debent nē ab inimicīs interficiantur.
5. Magister honestus dōna multa et pulchra servīs bellō captīs dāns imperāvit ut cum diligentīā studiōque laborārent ut liberī mox essent et ē rēgnō cēderent. Servi autem magistrum nōn audivērunt; ē rēgnō numquam cessērunt, sed ē vitā mox cessūrī erant.
6. Rōmānī arma capta superātōrum dēlēbant ut imperium sine periculō tenēre possent.
7. Nōn sine glōriā vitam ēgī; et multa ē libris nōvī, et magna populō et rēgnō fēcī. Mala autem in vitam invāsērunt et nunc inimicīs interficiendus sum ut ē mediō removear. Lacrimīs fēminās inimicōrum movēre optāvī ut virōs ōrent nē pium bonōrum factōrum dāmnent, sed nōn potuī. Sī malam vitam ēgissem, nunc interficiendus nōn essem.
8. Impiōrum arma capta sunt ā turbā tēctum invāsūrā.
9. Nautārum Rōmānōrum turba invādēs arma capta liberōrum dēlēvit.
10. Poēta vivēns in imperiō arma virumque cecinit.
11. a) Sī nauta cum turbā sociōrum oppida nōta capere possit, clārus sit.  
b) Sī nauta cum turbā sociōrum oppida nōta capiat, clārus sit.  
c) Nauta cum turbā sociōrum oppida nōta capiēs clārus sit.
12. Urna antiqua et aurea, in mediā mēnsā posita, ā puerō malō dēlēta est ut novam habēret.
13. Fēmina clāmāns servum ē villā discessūrum monuit ut urna cāra ā mēnsā removenda esset.
14. Multa dūra dē rēginā clāmāns populus tamen ā patriā nōn discessūrus est (erat, erit).
15. Postquam ad tēctum sociōrum accessērunt, servīs imperāvērunt ut dē patriā multa canerent.
16. Numquam ē patriā cēdam vivēns. Numquam ē patriā cēdere poterō.
17. Sī nautās ē mediō oppidō vocētis, mox veniant ut insulam invādant.
18. Quamquam incolae miserī sunt, bellum tamen gerētur.
19. Quamquam poēta magnum librum scribet, clārus tamen nōn erit.
20. Poēta magnum librum scribēs clārus tamen nōn erit.
21. Bene cōgitāta nōn perduntur.
22. Bene perdit pecūniam amicīs dāns.
23. Socius inimicōs nec ferrō potuit superāre nec aurō.
24. Sī bellum dūrum sociīs nunc gerendum esset, pūgnātūrī arma caperēmus.
25. Poēta bella gerenda canere potest (poterat, poterit).
26. Novōs librōs legendōs in mēnsā nātō posuissētis sī legere potuisset.

27. Ruinamne in vitā unquam vidistis? Si ruinam in vitā vidissēmus, in periculum caeci nōn ruissēmus.
28. Ante portās pūgnāns interficiētur.
29. Ōrātūrī sumus ut dē vitā ante actā domini cōgitētis nē insidiārum dāmnētur.
30. Faciam nōn nova, sed multa ante facta.
31. Si periculum veniat, ruina post sit; post periculum erit ruina.
32. Impiī vivunt et victūrī sunt; pii semper malis interficiendī erunt si imperium tenēre optābunt.

## II.

1. The poet ought to write a book. (translate two ways)
2. The master will have to be overcome by the men who have been betrayed (i.e., the betrayed men) if they are going to drive evil from the land.
3. While the poet was singing of ancient empires destroyed by the sword, he was killed by the men who had been seen previously in the town.
4. A war must be fought by the captured allies in order that they may be free men.
5. After the war, those who had been conquered had neither money nor food. (use dative of the possessor)

## III. Reading

Antequam<sup>1</sup> pius Aenēās oppidum condere<sup>2</sup> potuit, bellum Aenēae pūgnandum fuit. Arma autem Aenēae nōn fuērunt. Filius deae mātrem<sup>3</sup> arma ōrāvit ut inimicōs interficeret. Māter<sup>3</sup> deō imperāvit ut arma historiā<sup>4</sup> populi Rōmānī inscripta<sup>5</sup> faceret. Arma accipiēns<sup>6</sup> Aenēās mox pūgnāre incēpit quamquam historiam<sup>4</sup> populi Rōmānī intellegere nōn potuit. Inimicus erat impius Turnus, vir dūrus, pūgnāre ardēns. Mediā nocte<sup>7</sup> dea ad Turnum vēnit ut ei<sup>8</sup> imperāret ut cum Aenēā pūgnāret. Ruēns ad bellum Turnus sociōs Aenēae invāsit et amicum Aenēae interfēcit. Populus socius bellum gestūrus deōs auxilium<sup>9</sup> ōrāvit. "Auxilium<sup>9</sup> cāris ā dis<sup>10</sup> dandum est," sēnsit; "si dī auxilium<sup>9</sup> dabunt, dōna multa āris deōrum dare dēbēbimus." Cum Aenēā socii magnō cum studiō pūgnāvērunt. Turnō parsūrus,<sup>11</sup> Aenēās tamen eum<sup>12</sup> interfēcit. Turnus interficiendus erat ut pius impium superāns oppidum conderet.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> antequam (conj.), 'before'    <sup>2</sup> condō, -ere, condidī, conditus, 'found'    <sup>3</sup> māter (nom.), mātrem (acc.), 'mother'    <sup>4</sup> historia, -ae, F., 'history'    <sup>5</sup> inscribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptus, 'inscribe'    <sup>6</sup> accipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, 'receive'    <sup>7</sup> nocte (abl.), 'in the night'    <sup>8</sup> ei (dat.), 'him'    <sup>9</sup> auxilium, -i, N., 'aid'    <sup>10</sup> The ablative of agent with a passive periphrastic is regularly used instead of the dative of agent in order to avoid confusion when another dative is closely associated with the verb.    <sup>11</sup> parcō, -ere, peperci, parsus, 'spare' (+ dat.)    <sup>12</sup> eum (acc.), 'him'

# UNIT SIX

## A. Nouns of the Third Declension

Nouns of the third declension occur very frequently in Latin and are distinguished by the genitive singular ending **-is**. This declension admits of all three genders, and while there are several minor variations within the system, all nouns in this declension can be dealt with easily according to the observations which follow.

In order to decline a noun of the third declension, determine the *stem* by dropping the genitive singular ending and then add the specified endings for this declension.

### THIRD DECLENSION ENDINGS

#### MASCULINE

&

#### FEMININE

#### NEUTER

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pl.</i>
Nom.	--	-ēs		--	-a (-ia)
Gen.	-is	-um (-ium)		-is	-um (-ium)
Dat.	-ī	-ibus		-ī	-ibus
Acc.	-em	-ēs (-īs)		--	-a (-ia)
Abl.	-e	-ibus		-e (-ī)	-ibus

#### OBSERVATIONS:

1. As is the case with all neuter nouns in Latin, the nominative and accusative forms of each number are identical.
2. There is no specific nominative singular ending for this declension. It must be learned for each noun as a vocabulary item.
3. The alternate endings in parentheses above belong to a class of nouns called *i-stems*. In this book, nouns which are *i-stems* will be signaled in the vocabulary by the addition of the genitive plural ending **-ium** to the regular principal parts: **māter**, **mātris**, *F.*, 'mother'; but **urbs**, **urbis**, **-ium**, *F.*, 'city'. Those who care to learn rules for determining which nouns are *i-stems* may find the notes at the end of this section helpful.

4. Masculine and feminine i-stems frequently have **-īs** as an alternate for **-ēs** in the accusative plural.

It will be easy to decline the following nouns according to the observations above.

rūmor, -ōris, M.	rumor, gossip
nox, noctis, -ium, F.	night
sīdus, -eris, N.	star, constellation
moenia, -ium, N. (only in pl.)	(city) walls

## MODEL FOR MASC.—

## FEM. NON-I-STEMS

rūmor	rūmōrēs
rūmōris	rūmōrum
rūmōrī	rūmōribus
rūmōrem	rūmōrēs
rūmōre	rūmōribus

## MODEL FOR MASC.—

## FEM. I-STEMS

nox	noctēs
noctis	noctium
noctī	noctibus
noctem	noctēs (noctis)
nocte	noctibus

## NEUTER

## NON-I-STEM

sīdus	sīdera
sīderis	sīderum
sīderī	sīderibus
sīdus	sīdera
sīdere	sīderibus

## NEUTER

## I-STEM

(moene	moenia
moenis	moenium
moenī	moenibus
moene	moenia
moenī)	moenibus

NOTES: RULES FOR DETERMINING WHICH THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS ARE I-STEMS  
A third declension noun will generally be an i-stem if:

1. the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables:

ignis, ignis, -ium, M. fire

2. the stem of the noun ends in two consonants *except* if the second consonant is an **l** or **r**:

nox, noctis, -ium, F. night  
mōns, montis, -ium, M. mountain

BUT:

pater, patris, M. father  
māter, mātris, F. mother

(even though the first rule applies also)

3. the nominative singular of a neuter noun ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**:

mare, maris, -ium*, N.	sea
animal, animālis, -ium, N.	animal
exemplar, exemplāris, -ium, N.	model

These neuter words end in **-ī** in the ablative singular (instead of **-e**) and in **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

\* Although this form is not found in extant literature, it has been reconstructed here.

## B. Infinitives

Although the Latin verb has six infinitives — present active, present passive, perfect active, perfect passive, future active, and future passive — only five are in common use. In addition, the future active and future passive participles combined with an infinitive of the verb **sum** yield the infinitives of the active and passive periphrastic conjugations.

### 1. PRESENT INFINITIVE

- a) **ACTIVE.** The present active infinitive is the second principal part of the verb:

optāre	to desire
dūcere	to lead

- b) **PASSIVE.** To form the present passive infinitive for the first, second, and fourth conjugations, replace the final **-e** of the active infinitive with **-ī**. For the third conjugation, replace the entire **-ere** with **-ī**:

optārī	to be desired
implērī	to be filled
dūcī	to be led
incipī	to be begun
sentīrī	to be felt

### 2. PERFECT INFINITIVE

- a) **ACTIVE.** The perfect active infinitive is formed for all verbs by adding **-isse** to the stem of the third principal part:

optāvisse	to have desired
implēvisse	to have filled
dūxisse	to have led
incēpisse	to have begun
sēnsisse	to have felt



- b) **PASSIVE.** The perfect passive infinitive is formed with the fourth principal part (perfect passive participle) plus the infinitive of **sum** (**esse**).

optātus, -a, -um esse	to have been desired
implētus, -a, -um esse	to have been filled
ductus, -a, -um esse	to have been led
inceptus, -a, -um esse	to have been begun
sēnsus, -a, -um esse	to have been felt

### 3. FUTURE INFINITIVE

- a) **ACTIVE.** The future active participle plus **esse** are the ingredients for the future active infinitive.

optātūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to desire
implētūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to fill
ductūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to lead
inceptūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to begin
sēnsūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to feel

- b) **PASSIVE.** The future passive infinitive occurs so rarely in Latin that its discussion has been omitted from this text.

### 4. PERIPHRASTIC INFINITIVES

The periphrastic conjugations also have infinitives formed by compounding the present or perfect infinitives of the verb **sum** with the future active and future passive participles. In the active periphrastic conjugation, this infinitive (with **esse**) merges with, and is in fact one and the same thing as, the future active infinitive. The infinitive of the passive periphrastic carries with it the notion of obligation, necessity, or propriety, just as the finite passive periphrastic forms do.

- a) **ACTIVE.**

optātūrus esse	to be going to desire
optātūrus fuisse	to have been going to desire

- b) **PASSIVE.**

optandus esse	to have to be desired
optandus fuisse	to have had to be desired

### C. Indirect Statement: Subject Accusative and Infinitive

The statement "Dawn is sprinkling the lands with a new light (day)" is a *direct* statement.

Aurōra terrās novō lūmine spargit.

After words which express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, and the like, we are able to

express statements *indirectly*; that is, the essence of the original speaker's ideas is reported by someone else, although not necessarily in his exact words.

He says that dawn is sprinkling the lands with a new light (day).

In English an indirect statement is generally introduced by the subordinating conjunction *that*, for which there is no equivalent in classical Latin. Instead, a construction with the subject in the accusative case and the verb in the infinitive is used.

In order to change a statement from direct to indirect, take the subject of the direct one and make it accusative; take the finite verb and change it to an infinitive. The rest of the sentence remains unchanged.

Dīcit aurōram terrās novō lūmine spargere.	He says <i>dawn to sprinkle</i> the lands with a new light (day); He says <i>that dawn is sprinkling</i> the lands with a new light (day).
---	--

The tense of the infinitive in this construction is relative to that of the main verb (much like the tense of participles discussed in the previous unit). The *present* infinitive expresses an action which is or was going on at the *same time* as that of the main verb; the *perfect* infinitive refers to an action which occurred *prior* to that of the main verb; and the *future* infinitive signals one which will occur *subsequent* to that of the main verb.

#### PRESENT INFINITIVE

Dīcit aurōram terrās novō lūmine spargere.	He says (i.e., now) that dawn is sprinkling the lands with new light (i.e., now).
Dixit aurōram terrās novō lūmine spargere.	He said (i.e., yesterday) that dawn was sprinkling the lands with new light (i.e., yesterday).
Dīcet aurōram terrās novō lūmine spargere.	He will say (i.e., tomorrow) that dawn is sprinkling the lands with new light (i.e., tomorrow)

#### PERFECT INFINITIVE

Dīcit aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsisse.	He says (i.e., now) that dawn has sprinkled (sprinkled) the lands with new light (i.e., yesterday).
Dixit aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsisse.	He said (i.e., yesterday) that dawn had sprinkled the lands with new light (i.e., the day before yesterday).
Dīcet aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsisse.	He will say (i.e., tomorrow) that dawn has sprinkled (sprinkled) the lands with new light (i.e., today).

## FUTURE INFINITIVE

Dīcit aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsūram* esse.	He says (i.e., now) that dawn will sprinkle the lands with new light (i.e., tomorrow).
Dixit aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsūram esse.	He said (i.e., yesterday) that dawn would sprinkle the lands with new light (i.e., today).
Dīcet aurōram terrās novō lūmine sparsūram esse.	He will say (i.e., tomorrow) that dawn will sprinkle the lands with new light (i.e., the day after tomorrow).

\* Since the future active, perfect passive, and the periphrastic infinitives are composed of a participle and the infinitive of *sum*, the participle is, in effect, a predicate adjective and must agree with its noun (the subject of the indirect statement) in gender, number, and case.

D. The Irregular Noun *vīs*

In the singular this noun regularly means 'force' or 'power'. In the plural it means 'strength'.

vīs	vīrēs
--	vīrium
--	vīribus
vim	vīrēs (vīris)
vī	vīribus

## E. Ablative of Separation

Some verbs which express or imply separation or deprivation are accompanied by the ablative case. The prepositions *ā* (**ab**), 'away from', *ē* (**ex**), 'from, out of', or *dē*, 'from, down from', are sometimes used with this construction, but more usually the ablative occurs alone.

Hominēs incolās insulae <b>servitūte</b> liberāvērunt.	The men freed the inhabitants of the island <i>from slavery</i> .
Oedipus, quod liber ( <i>ē</i> ) <b>cūrā</b> nōn erat, sē <b>oculīs</b> privāvit.	Oedipus, because he was not free <i>from</i> <i>care</i> , deprived himself <i>of (his) eyes</i> .

The word **careō**, *-ēre*, 'lack, be wanting', takes an ablative of separation:

**Pecūniā** careō. I lack *money*.

Allied with this construction are the following:

## 1. ABLATIVE OF ORIGIN

The ablative, with or without a preposition, expresses the origin or descent of a person or thing.

Aenēās (*ē*) **deā** nātus est. Aeneas is the son *from a goddess*.

## 2. ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

In order to express place from which, the ablative is used with the preposi-

tions **ā** (**ab**), **ē** (**ex**), or **dē**. But with names of towns, cities, and small islands, and the words **domus**, 'home', and **rūs**, 'country', no preposition is used.

**Ab Italiā** vēnit. He came *from Italy*.

BUT:

**Rōmā** vēnit. He came *from Rome*.

## F. Accusative of Place To Which

Place to which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **ad**. With names of towns, cities, and small islands, and the words **domus**, 'home', and **rūs**, 'country', no preposition is used.

**Ad Italiam** vēnit. He came *to Italy*.

**Ad urbem** vēnit. He came *to the city*.

BUT:

**Rōmam** vēnit. He came *to Rome*.

**Domum** vēnit. He came *home*.

## G. The Locative Case (*locus*, -ī, M., 'place')

The names of towns, cities, and small islands, and the words **domus** and **rūs** require a special case to express *place in which* or *place where*, which for other nouns is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**. This case is called the *locative*.

For nouns of the first and second declensions, the locative singular is identical to the genitive singular. In the plural for these two declensions, it is identical in form to the ablative plural.

For nouns of the third declension, the locative ends in either -e or -ī in the singular, in -ibus in the plural.

<i>Rōmae</i>	at Rome	( <i>Rōma</i> , -ae, F.)
<i>Athēnīs</i>	at Athens	( <i>Athēnae</i> , -ārum, F.)
<i>domī</i>	at home	( <i>domus</i> , -ī, F.)
<i>Carthāgine</i>	at Carthage	( <i>Carthāgō</i> , -inis, F.)
or <i>Carthāginī</i>		
<i>rūrī</i>	in the country	( <i>rūs</i> , <i>rūris</i> , N.)

## UNIT SIX — VOCABULARY

**animal**, -ālis, -ium, N.

animal

**Athēnae**, -ārum, F. (pl.)

Athens

atque or ac (conj.)	and
aurōra, -ae, F.	dawn
careō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	lack, be without (+ abl.)
corpus, corporis, N.	body
dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus	say, tell, speak
diū (adv.)	for a long time
domus, -ī, F.	house, home
exemplar, -āris, -ium, N.	copy, model, example
exemplum, -ī, N.	example
frāter, frātris, M.	brother
homō, hominis, M.	human being, man
ignis, ignis, -ium, M. (abl. sing. igne or ignī)	fire
Italia, -ae, F.	Italy
Iūnō, Iūnōnis, F.	Juno (sister and wife of Jupiter)
Iuppiter, Iovis, M.	Jupiter (god of the sky)
liberō (1)	free
lūmen, lūminis, N.	light
mare, maris, -ium, N.	sea
māter, mātris, F.	mother
mēns, mentis, -ium, F.	mind, disposition, intellect
mīles, militis, M.	soldier
moenia, moenium, N. (pl.)	(city) walls
mōns, montis, -ium, M.	mountain
nōn solum . . . sed etiam	not only . . . but also
nox, noctis, -ium, F.	night
oppugnō (1)	attack, fight against
pater, patris, M.	father
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus	rule
rēx, rēgis, M.	king
Rōma, -ae, F.	Rome
rūmor, -ōris, M.	rumor, gossip
rūs, rūris, N.	country (as opposed to city)
sānus, -a, -um	sound, healthy, sane
sciō, -īre, -ivī, -itus	know
servitūs, servitūtis, F.	slavery
sīdus, sideris, N.	constellation, star; heaven
soror, -ōris, F.	sister
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus	scatter, sprinkle, distribute
timor, timōris, M.	fear, dread
urbs, urbis, -ium, F.	city
vigor, -ōris, M.	liveliness, activity, vigor
vīs; (pl.) vīrēs, vīrium, F.	force, power; (pl.) strength



## UNIT SIX — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Athēnae, Athēnārum**, 'Athens', is a feminine plural word.

The verb **careō, carēre, carui, caritus**, 'lack, be without', governs the ablative case: **Lūmine carēmus**, 'We are without light'. The mark ^, a caret, shows that something is lacking.

**Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus**, 'say, tell, speak', often governs an object and an indirect object. Verbs of giving, telling, and showing take an indirect object. **Rūmōrem audītum frātri dīcam**, 'I shall tell my brother a rumor that I've heard'.

The word **domus** is sometimes considered a second declension noun and sometimes a fourth declension noun. In this book it is presented in Unit Six as second declension, and again in Unit Eight as second or fourth. Note that it is a feminine word even though it has the same endings as a masculine noun in the second declension.

**Exemplar, exemplāris**, N., and **exemplum, exempli**, N., may be used interchangeably. The abbreviation *e.g.*, **exempli grātiā** (*grātiā*, with preceding genitive, 'for the sake of'), means 'for the sake of an example'.

**Moenia, moenium** is a neuter plural word of the third declension; these are protective (city) walls as opposed to the walls of a house.

**Nōn solum . . . sed etiam** means 'not only . . . but also': **Nōn solum sorōre sed etiam frātre careō**, 'I am without not only a sister but also a brother'.

Notice that **māter, mātris**, F., 'mother', **pater, patris**, M., 'father', and **frāter, frātris**, M., 'brother', are not i-stems and that **pater** has a short -a-.

**Regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus**, 'rule', lengthens its -e- in the perfect tenses. **Rēx, rēgis**, M., 'king', and **rēgnum, rēgni**, N., 'kingdom', are connected with this verb.

The ending **-tūs, -tūtis** is a feminine ending of abstract nouns that indicates a quality or state of being. **Servus** is 'slave' and so **servitūs, servitūtis**, F., is the 'state of being a slave', that is, 'slavery'.

Students often have difficulty with the irregular noun **vīs**. In the singular, which lacks a genitive and dative form, the meaning is 'force, power' and in the plural, it means 'strength'. There is no reason to confuse it with **vir**, 'man', which has a short -i- and belongs to the second declension, since **vīs** has a long -ī- and is a third declension noun. The accusative plural of 'men' is **virōs**, of 'strength', **vīrēs** or **vīris**. The dative and ablative plural of 'men' is **virīs**, of 'strength', **vīribus**.

## UNIT SIX — DRILL

## I.

Supply forms of the adjective **bonus, -a, -um** to modify the following nouns.

miles, militis, M.	soldier
soror, sorōris, F.	sister
corpus, corporis, N.	body
mēns, mentis, -ium, F.	mind
exemplar, -āris, -ium, N.	example, model

1. miles	11. militi	21. milite	31. militum
2. soror	12. sorōri	22. sorōre	32. sorōrum
3. corpus	13. corpori	23. corpore	33. corporum
4. mēns	14. menti	24. mente	34. mentium
5. exemplar	15. exemplāri	25. exemplāri	35. exemplārium
6. militis	16. militem	26. militēs	36. militibus
7. sorōris	17. sorōrem	27. sorōrēs	37. sorōribus
8. corporis	18. corpus	28. corpora	38. corporibus
9. mentis	19. mentem	29. mentēs	39. mentibus
10. exemplāris	20. exemplar	30. exemplāria	40. exemplāribus

## II.

A. Rewrite these sentences in indirect statement after *sentit*, 'he feels':

1. Puella incolās dē periculō monet (monēbit, monuit).
2. Fēminae sententiās semper mūtānt (mūtābunt, mūtāvērunt).
3. Tēcta in mediō oppidō flammis dēlentur (dēlēta sunt).
4. Socii ē terrā discēdere nōn possunt (potuērunt).
5. Amicus vitam sine culpā agit (aget, ēgit).
6. Vita bona ab amicō agitur (ācta est).
7. Honesti in periculō nōn pōnendī sunt (pōnendī erant).
8. Litterae ad magistrum mittuntur (mittēbantur).
9. Nōtī dē malis cōgitant (cōgitābunt, cōgitābant).
10. Oppidum ab inimicis trāditur (trāditum est).
11. Amicō est (erat, erit) multa pecūnia.
12. Sine cūrā rēgina vivere nōn potest (potuit).

B. Translate the indirect statements you wrote above, first after *sentit*, 'he feels', then after *sēnsit*, 'he felt'.

## III.

Omit the initial verbs of the head and rewrite the indirect statements as direct ones:

1. Vidimus fāmam rēginae esse (fuisse, futūram esse) magnam.
2. Cognōverātis incolās rēginae multam pecūniam dēbere (dēbuisse).
3. Respondit bellum cum diligentīā pūgnātum esse (pūgnārī).

4. Intellegō nautās villam perdidisse (perdere, perditūrōs esse).
5. Intellēxi villam ā nautīs perditam esse (perdī).
6. Sentiunt honestōs malum ē terrā pellere nōn posse (potuisse).

## IV.

Translate the following sentences which contain "place" constructions or ablatives of separation or source:

1. Multōs familiā honestā nātōs ab oppidō ad insulam mīsimus. [**familia**, -ae, F., 'family']
2. Multōs Syracūsīs Tarentum mīsimus. [**Syracūsae**, -ārum, F. pl., 'Syracuse', a city in Sicily; **Tarentum**, -ī, N., 'Tarentum', a town in Southern Italy]
3. Ruīnae Syracūsīs vidērī potuērunt, sed neque Tarentī neque in patriā.
4. Ē viā in cellam ambulāvērunt.
5. Liberī invidiā vitam agimus.
6. Malōs magnā vī dē saxō altō iactāverant. [**iactō** (1), 'throw, hurl']

## UNIT SIX — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTION A)

1. Rēx militibus imperāvit nē discēderent.
2. Multa lūmina urbis ab hominibus captis vīsa sunt.
3. Flammae ignium multōrum nōn solum in monte sed etiam in mari vīsae sunt.
4. Multa animālia sorōribus frātribusque mōnstrāvimus.
5. Patri erat magnus timor maris.
6. Sī mentēs militum timōre implēbuntur, hominēsne pūgnāre poterunt?
7. Liberī servitūtem timent et cum vigōre pūgnābunt nē servī sint.
8. Rūmōrēsne novōs dē moenibus ignī dēlētis audīvistis?
9. Militēs domōs mātrem patrumque vidēre optāvērunt.
10. a) Corpora multōrum hominum vigōre carent.  
b) Corpora multōrum animālium valida sunt.

## UNIT SIX — EXERCISES

## I.

1. Populus ruēns in viam frātrēs cum frātribus pūgnāre in bellō clāmābat.
2. Poēta dīcit mentem sānam in corpore sānō optandam esse.
3. Rūmor est urbem ā militibus oppūgnātā vī dēlētā esse.

4. Pater mäterque audivērunt filiōs ante moenia Rōmae igni et ferrō pūgnāvisse.
5. Populus antiquus dicēbat Iovem esse patrem deōrum atque hominum rēgem et terram esse mātrem hominum animāliumque.
6. Dicēbātur Iūnō esse soror Iovis.
7. Vidēmus novam aurōram lūmine mare, terram, et caelum spargere.
8. Postquam antiquum exemplar positum est, poētae Rōmānī nova scribere incēpērunt.
9. Militēs in mediā urbe nōn mentis solum vigōre sed etiam corporis viribus bellum gessērunt.
10. Noctem mox tēcturam esse terrās umbris intellegimus.
11. Noctem ruere dē montibus mox vidēre poterimus.
12. Erant novī rūmōrēs corpora militum esse sāna et militēs validis viribus pūgnāre.
13. Hominēs urbium semper pūgnābant ut urbēs essent liberae.
14. Ā frātre dictum est animālia ā mari in terram vi ducta esse.
15. Postquam urbs oppūgnāta est, mātři imperāvimus nē timēret quod sēnsimus sorōrem frātreque pecūniam ac cibum incolis datūrōs esse nē in periculō essent.
16. Respondisti nova pericula validis hominibus oppidi mōnstrāta esse.
17. Postquam urbs superāta est, multus miles patrem mātremque vidēre ardēbat.
18. Rēx populō dixit terram, montēs, mare animāliaque esse cāra Iovi Iūnōnique.
19. Quamquam sīdera clāra in caelō vidēri nōn poterant, nautae vēla dedērunt ut rēx esset laetus.
20. Bonum est scire multum populum ā piō homine, ē deā nātō, ē patriā ad Italiam dūci potuisse.
21. Ut urbem timōre liberēmus, imperābimus militibus ut discēdant.
22. Si insulam servitūte liberēmus, timor incolārum removeātur.
23. Si vēra scivissēmus, dixissēmus incolās in multis insulis nōn solum aquā sed etiam pecūniā carēre.
24. Rōmae diū fuerant rēgēs, numquam Athēnīs.
25. Rūri atque in urbe incolis erant multa pericula.
26. Rēx rēgnum cum vigōre et magnā veniā regit ut novis sit rēgibus exemplum.
27. Urbs capta dēlenda est (dēlenda erat, dēlenda fuit); scimus urbem captam dēlendā esse (dēlendā fuisse).
28. Aureae urnae servīs pōnendae erant in mēnsis ut amicis domini ad villam ventūris mōnstrārent deōs multa bona piis dōnāre.
29. Nox si terrās mox umbris tegat, nōn solum moenia inimicōrum sine periculō oppūgnāre possimus sed etiam amicōs servitūte liberēmus.
30. Hominēs honesti in Italiā magnis cum viribus semper pūgnātūri erant ut urbēs cūrā essent liberae et fēminae periculō et timōre carērent.



31. Domum sine morā venient.

32. Incolae sentiunt rēgem mala ex urbe pellere dēbēre.

## II.

1. We understood that the city, after it had been attacked, was being destroyed by the strength of the soldiers.
2. Did you hear the rumors that the soldiers were rushing into the cities?
3. We understand that a model of the city walls has been shown to the men (who are) about to attack the city with fire and sword.
4. They told the father of the brothers that the sons had been chosen in order that they might fight around the city walls.
5. We shall say that poets should write books not only about Jupiter and Juno but also about the sea and about the animals of the mountains.
6. We know that a war cannot be waged forcefully on the sea by the soldiers without great danger.

## III. Reading

Cicero warns the Roman senators about men plotting against the state (*In Catilinam*\* 1.2.4-5, liberally adapted):

Optō, patrēs cōscriptī,<sup>1</sup> mē<sup>2</sup> esse pium, optō in tantis<sup>3</sup> urbī periculis mē<sup>2</sup> nōn sine cūrā vidēri, sed nunc mē<sup>2</sup> inertiae<sup>4</sup> nēquitiaeque<sup>5</sup> dāmnō. Castra<sup>6</sup> sunt in Italiā contrā<sup>7</sup> populum Rōmānum in Etrūriae<sup>8</sup> montibus conlocāta,<sup>9</sup> crēscit<sup>10</sup> semper inimicōrum numerus;<sup>11</sup> castrōrum<sup>6</sup> autem imperātōrem<sup>12</sup> ducemque<sup>13</sup> inimicōrum intrā<sup>14</sup> moenia atque adeō<sup>15</sup> in patrum cōscriptōrum<sup>1</sup> numerō<sup>11</sup> vidētis, et intellegere dēbētis illōs<sup>16</sup> dē periculō et magnīs malis urbi nostrae<sup>17</sup> cōgitāre.

\* *Catilina*, -ae, M., 'Catiline', the name of the leader of a conspiracy that Cicero was eager to put down

<sup>1</sup> cōscribō (com- + scribō), 'enroll'. (The "enrolled fathers" were the senators.) <sup>2</sup> mē (acc.), 'me, myself' <sup>3</sup> tantus, -a, -um, 'so much, so great' <sup>4</sup> inertia, -ae, F., 'laziness' <sup>5</sup> nēquitia, -ae, F., 'worthlessness' <sup>6</sup> castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp' <sup>7</sup> contrā (prep. + acc.), 'against' <sup>8</sup> Etrūria, -ae, F., 'Etruria', a district north of Rome <sup>9</sup> conlocō (1), 'locate' <sup>10</sup> crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, 'grow' <sup>11</sup> numerus, -i, M., 'number' <sup>12</sup> imperātōr, -ōris, M., 'commander' <sup>13</sup> dux, ducis, M., 'leader' <sup>14</sup> intrā (prep. + acc.), 'within' <sup>15</sup> adeō (adv.), 'even' <sup>16</sup> illōs (acc. pl.), 'those (men)' <sup>17</sup> noster, nostra, nostrum, 'our'



# UNIT SEVEN

## A. Demonstrative Adjectives

Demonstrative (**dēmōnstrō** (1), 'point out') adjectives *point out* the word with which they agree. There are three demonstrative adjectives of extreme importance:

(1) **hic, haec, hoc**, 'this'

(2) **ille, illa, illud**, 'that'

(3) **is, ea, id**, 'this' or 'that' (unemphatic)

**hic, haec, hoc** 'this'

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

**ille, illa, illud**, 'that'

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

**is, ea, id**, 'this' or 'that' (unemphatic)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

<b>Hunc</b> (illum, eum) virum vidēs.	You see <i>this (that, this or that)</i> man.
Cum <b>hōc</b> (illō, eō) virō ambulās.	You walk with <i>this (that, this or that)</i> man.
Vidēsne <b>hoc</b> (illud, id) dōnum?	Do you see <i>this (that, this or that)</i> gift?

The connotative distinctions between **hic**, **ille**, and **is** can be gauged from the following:

Hunc librum optās?	Do you want this book (i.e., here, as opposed to that book there)? [Emphatic Demonstrative]
Illum librum optās?	Do you want that book (i.e., there, as opposed to this book here)? [Emphatic Demonstrative]
Eum librum optās?	Do you want this (that) book (i.e., the one just referred to, e.g.)? [Unemphatic Demonstrative]

As is the case with other adjectives, **hic**, **ille**, and **is** are often found used substantively:

<b>Hunc</b> (illum, eum) vidēs.	You see <i>this (that, this or that)</i> man.
Cum <b>hōc</b> (illō, eō) ambulās.	You walk with <i>this (that, this or that)</i> man.
Vidēsne <b>hoc</b> (illud, id)?	Do you see <i>this (that, this or that)</i> thing?

In English it is often more convenient to translate **is**, **ea**, **id** when used substantively as a pronoun or, as in the last two examples below, as a possessive adjective:

<b>Eum</b> vidēs.	You see <i>this (that)</i> man; you see <i>him</i> .
Cum <b>eō</b> ambulās.	You walk with <i>this (that)</i> man; you walk with <i>him</i> .
Vidēsne <b>id</b> ?	Do you see <i>this (that)</i> thing? Do you see <i>it</i> ?
<b>Eius</b> librum habeo.	I have the book <i>of this (that)</i> man (woman); I have the book <i>of him (her)</i> ; I have <i>his (her)</i> book.
Patrem <b>eārum</b> vidēmus.	We see the father <i>of these (those)</i> women; we see the father <i>of them</i> ; we see <i>their</i> father.

## B. Personal Pronouns

Since the endings of a Latin verb already indicate the subject of that verb, personal pronouns are not required. However, pronouns in the nominative case are sometimes used for *emphasis*.

Clāmō.	I shout.
<b>Ego</b> clāmō.	It is <i>I</i> who shout; <i>I</i> am the one who shouts.

The other cases of the personal pronouns are used as they are in English, i.e., as substitutes for nouns.

Librum <b>mihi</b> dat.	He gives the book <i>to me</i> .
<b>Mē</b> videt.	He sees <i>me</i> .

**Mēcum ambulās.** You are walking with *me*. (Note that, with personal pronouns, the **cum** is regularly attached as a suffix to the pronoun instead of preceding it.)

### 1. FIRST PERSON

ego	I	nōs	we
mei	of me	nostrum	} of us
		nostrī	
mihi	to/for me	nōbīs	to/for us
mē	me	nōs	us
mē	from/with/in/by me	nōbīs	from/with/in/by us

### 2. SECOND PERSON

tū	you	vōs	you
tui	of you	vestrum	} of you
		vestrī	
tibi	to/for you	vōbīs	to/for you
tē	you	vōs	you
tē	from/with/in/by you	vōbīs	from/with/in/by you

NOTE: **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as *partitive* genitives (page 154):

multi **nostrum** many *of us* ("many" is the part, "us" is the whole)

**Nostrī** and **vestrī** are used as *objective* genitives; that is, they function as the *object* of the word on which they depend (pages 178–9):

Odium **nostrī** est magnum. The hatred *of (for) us* is great.

(**nostrī** is the *object* or recipient of the hatred)

### 3. THIRD PERSON

There is no third person personal pronoun as such. As indicated in section A above, the forms of **is**, **ea**, **id** are frequently used without a noun as a substitute for the third person pronoun. However, a third person *reflexive* pronoun does occur.

### 4. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

A *reflexive* (**reflectō**, **-ere**, **-flexī**, **-flectus**, 'bend back, reflect') pronoun generally refers to or *reflects* the subject of its own clause; therefore, it cannot have a nominative case.

In the first and second persons, there is no separate reflexive pronoun; one uses simply the correct case of **ego** or **tū**, and whether the usage is reflexive or not can be determined from the relationship of the pronoun to the subject: If they are the same person or thing, then the pronoun is reflexive; if they are different, then the pronoun is not reflexive.

<b>Mē</b> videō.	I see <i>myself</i> .	(Reflexive)
<b>Mē</b> videt.	He sees <i>me</i> .	(Not Reflexive)
<b>Tē</b> vidēs.	You see <i>yourself</i> .	(Reflexive)
<b>Tē</b> videt.	He sees <i>you</i> .	(Not Reflexive)

In the third person, however, a separate form is used.

#### SINGULAR AND PLURAL

Nom.	--
Gen.	suī
Dat.	sibi
Acc.	sē
Abl.	sē

**Sē** videt. He (she, it) sees *himself* (*herself*, *itself*).

**Sē** vident. They see *themselves*.

Note the following examples, which illustrate reflexive and nonreflexive usage:

**Eum** videt. He (person A) sees *him* (person B).

**Sē** videt. He sees *himself*.

**Eōs** videt. He sees *them*.

**Sē** vident. They see *themselves*.

**Mē** videt. He sees *me*.

**Mē** videō. I see *myself*.

### C. Possessive Adjectives

The possessive adjectives for the first person are **meus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'my', and **noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**, 'our'. For the second person, they are **tuus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'your', and **vester**, **vestra**, **vestrum**, 'your'. Since they are adjectives, they must agree with the thing possessed in gender, number, and case.

**Tuum** frātre<sup>m</sup> videō. I see *your* brother.

**Nostram** mātre<sup>m</sup> vidēmus. We see *our* mother.

**Meum** imperiū ōdit. He hates *my* authority.

As has been seen throughout this text, the possessive adjective need not be expressed in Latin when its sense can be inferred easily from the context. When the adjective is used in Latin, it is strictly emphatic or is used to clarify a point which the context would otherwise leave obscure.

Patrem videō. I see (my) father.

BUT:

Patrem **meum** videō. I see *my* father.

(the adjective is emphatic or elucidative, i.e., as opposed to "your" father, "their" father, etc.)

The possessive adjective for the third person is **suus**, **-a**, **-um** (singular and plural), but this word is used only *reflexively*; that is, the thing possessed belongs to the subject. When reflexive possession is not desired in the third person, a form of **is**, **ea**, **id** in the genitive case is used.

**Suum** imperium ōdit.      He/she hates *his/her (own)* authority.

**Suum** imperium ōdērunt.      They hate *their (own)* authority.

**BUT:**

**Eius** imperium ōdit.      He/she hates the authority of *him (her/it/this one/that one)*; he/she (person A) hates *his/her/its* (person B's or something's) authority.

**Eōrum** imperium ōdērunt.      They hate the authority of *them (of these/those men)*; they (group A) hate *their* (group B's) authority.

**OBSERVATION:** The genitive of the personal pronouns is *never* used to show possession. In order to express possession in the first and second persons, the *possessive adjectives* must be used.

#### D. Relative Pronoun

The relative pronoun introduces an adjectival clause which modifies the antecedent (**ante** + **cēdō**, 'go before'; thus, 'that which goes before') of that pronoun.

The man *whom* you see is my friend.

The relative pronoun "whom" agrees in gender and number with its antecedent, "man", but its case is determined by its use in its own clause. Consequently in Latin the pronoun is masculine singular because of its antecedent, but accusative because it is the object of the verb "you see".

The forms of the relative pronoun follow:

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
quī	quae	quod		quī	quae	quae
who	who	which (that)				
cuius	cuius	cuius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
of whom, whose						
cui	cui	cui		quibus	quibus	quibus
to/for whom						
quem	quam	quod		quōs	quās	quae
whom						
quō	quā	quō		quibus	quibus	quibus
from/with/in/by						
whom						



Note these examples:

Poēta **cuius** amicus erat      The poet *of whom* the friend was blind was  
caecus puerum audiēbat.      listening to the boy; the poet *whose* friend  
was blind was listening to the boy.

(**cuius**: masculine singular because of its antecedent **poēta** which is masculine singular; genitive because of its dependence on **amicus** in its own clause)

Fēminās **quae** in viā clāmant ōdimus.      We hate the women who shout in  
the street.

(**quae**: feminine plural because of its antecedent **fēminās** which is feminine plural; nominative because it is the subject of the verb **clāmant**)

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AT THE BEGINNING OF A SENTENCE (CONNECTING RELATIVE)

The relative pronoun is frequently used in Latin to begin a sentence where the English would use a demonstrative or a personal pronoun. Since the antecedent of the relative pronoun is a word or idea in the previous sentence, this usage makes for greater cohesion between sentences and thoughts.

Filius dixit urbem in periculō magnō      My son said that the city was in great  
esse. **Quae** postquam audīvī, vērō      danger. After I heard *which things*  
timēbam.      (*these things*), I was truly afraid.

Miles mē monuerat ut ex oppidō      The soldier had warned me that I  
discēderem. **Quem** postquam mē      depart from the town. After I  
interfectūrum esse sēnsī, mox      perceived that *whom* (*he*) was  
discessī.      going to kill me, I soon (i.e.,  
thereupon) departed.

### E. Interrogative Adjective

The interrogative adjective (which? what?) is identical in form to the relative pronoun.

**Quem** virum vidēs?      Which (*what*) man do you see?  
**Cum quō** virō ambulās?      With *which* (*what*) man are you walking?  
**Quod** dōnum vidēs?      Which (*what*) gift do you see?

### F. Interrogative Pronoun

The interrogative pronoun is identical to the interrogative adjective in the *plural*; in the *singular*, the following forms are used:

M. F.	N.
quis	quid
cuius	cuius
cui	cui
quem	quid
quō	quō

<b>Quem</b> vidēs?	<i>Whom</i> do you see?
<b>Quōcum*</b> ambulās?	With <i>whom</i> are you walking?
<b>Quid</b> vidēs?	<i>What</i> do you see?

\* Note that with the interrogative pronouns, as with personal pronouns, **cum** is regularly attached as a suffix to the pronoun instead of preceding it.

IN REVIEW — Note the following comparisons between pronominal and adjectival usage:

Pronoun: <b>Cui</b> taedam dedistī?	<i>To whom (to which one)</i> did you give the torch?
Adjective: <b>Cui</b> fēminae taedam dedistī?	<i>To which (what)</i> woman did you give the torch?
Pronoun: <b>Quis</b> taedam tibi dedit?	<i>Who</i> gave you the torch?
Adjective: <b>Quae</b> fēmina taedam tibi dedit?	<i>Which (what)</i> woman gave you the torch?

### G. Ablative of Accompaniment

The ablative is used with the preposition **cum** to denote accompaniment.

Ad urbem <b>cum</b> amīcō venit.	He comes to the city <i>with (his) friend</i> .
Ad urbem <b>mēcum</b> venit.	He comes to the city <i>with me</i> .

### H. Ablative of Time When or Within Which

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative. A preposition is not regularly used.

<b>Illō tempore</b> miser erat.	<i>At that time</i> he was unhappy.
<b>Quīque annis</b> hoc opus perficiet.	<i>Within five years</i> he will complete this task.

### I. Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space

The accusative, usually without a preposition, is used to express duration of time or extent of space. It answers the question "for how long?", whether it be of time or distance.

<b>Quīque annōs</b> miser erat.	<i>For five years</i> he was unhappy.
<b>Quīque pedēs</b> ad dextram ambulāvit.	He walked <i>five feet</i> to the right.

### J. Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

Subordinate clauses within an indirect statement (subject accusative and infinitive) normally have their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense of which is frequently determined according to the rules of tense sequence (Unit Three, section G) after the verb or phrase of the head which introduces the indirect statement.

- Vir quem vidēs pecūniam optat.      The man whom you see desires money.
- Dicō virum quem videās pecūniam optāre.      I say that the man whom *you see* (*may see*) desires money.  
(present subjunctive, primary sequence, simultaneous action after dicō)
- Dixi virum quem vidērēs pecūniam optāre.      I said that the man whom *you saw* (*might be seeing*) desired money.  
(imperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, simultaneous action after dixi)
- Vir quem vidistī (vidēbās) pecūniam optat.      The man whom you saw desires money.
- Dicō virum quem videris pecūniam optāre.      I say that the man whom *you saw* (*may have seen*) desires money.  
(perfect subjunctive, primary sequence, prior action after dicō)
- Dixi virum quem vidissēs pecūniam optāre.      I said that the man whom *you had seen* (*might have seen*) desired money.  
(pluperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, prior action after dixi)

The development of this usage is logical, for the subjunctive is the mood of *idea*, *intention*, *possibility*, etc., as opposed to *fact*, and the person reporting the statement (in this case, "I") does not claim responsibility that the subject of the relative clause (in this case, "you") *actually* sees the man. The indicative might have been used in this case, but the tone would then be:

- Dicō virum quem vidēs pecūniam optāre.      I say that the man whom *you actually see* (and I accept responsibility for this statement) desires money.

## UNIT SEVEN — VOCABULARY

amō (1)	love
amor, amōris, M.	love
annus, -ī, M.	year
Asia, -ae, F.	Asia
auctor, -ōris, M.	producer, founder, author

**cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M. or F.**  
**cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus**  
**ego, meī (pron.)**  
**fīnis, fīnis, -ium, M.**  
**genus, generis, N.**  
**hic, haec, hoc**  
**hōra, -ae, F.**  
**hostis, hostis, -ium, M.**  
**ille, illa, illud**  
**inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus**  
**is, ea, id**  
**locus, -ī, M.**  
**meus, -a, -um**  
**mors, mortis, -ium, F.**  
**noster, nostra, nostrum**  
**ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb lacking**  
     in the present system; per-  
     fect forms have present  
     meanings)  
**opus, operis, N.**  
     **opus est (+ nom. or abl.**  
         [instrumental] of thing  
         needed; less frequently  
         + gen.)  
**perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus**  
**pēs, pedis, M.**  
**placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus**  
**premō, -ere, pressī, pressus**  
     **opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus**  
**quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.)**  
**quī, quae, quod (interrogative**  
     adj.)  
**quīque (indeclinable adj.)**  
**quis, quid (interrogative pron.)**  
**salūs, -ūtis, F.**  
     **salūtem dicere**  
**spērō (1)**  
 --, **suī (reflexive pron.)**

citizen  
 complete  
 I  
 end, boundary, limit  
 descent, origin, race, sort  
 this, the latter  
 hour, season  
 enemy, public enemy  
 that, the former  
 come upon, discover, find  
 this, that; he, she, it  
 place, spot  
 my, mine, my own  
 death  
 our, ours, our own  
 hate  
  
 work  
 there is need of  
     **Pecūnia mihi opus est.** Money exists for  
         me (as a) need; there is need of money  
         to me; I need money.  
     **Opus est mihi pecūniā.** The need exists to  
         me by means of money; there is need  
         to me of money; I need money.  
 accomplish, complete, finish  
 foot  
 be pleasing to, please (+ dat.)  
 press, press upon, press hard  
 press upon, overwhelm, suppress, oppress  
 who, which, that  
 which, what  
  
 five  
 who, what  
 health, safety  
 say hello, greet  
 hope (for)  
 himself, herself, itself, themselves

<b>suus, -a, -um</b>	his own, her own, its own, their own
<b>tempus, -oris, N.</b>	time, period, season
<b>tū, tuī (pron.)</b>	you
<b>tuus, -a, -um</b>	your, yours, your own (sing.)
<b>vester, vestra, vestrum</b>	your, yours, your own (pl.)
<b>vōx, vōcis, F.</b>	voice

## UNIT SEVEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Cōficiō** and **perficiō** are both compounds of **faciō** with an intensive prefix and mean 'do completely, accomplish'. The **-ō-** of **cōficiō** is long because it precedes **-nf**. A vowel is lengthened before **-ns**, **-nf**, and **-nct**.

**Genus, generis, N.**, not only means 'descent, origin, race', but also 'sort': **Est homō illius generis**, 'He is a man of that sort'.

**Hic, haec, hoc** and **ille, illa, illud** are emphatic words which point out the word they modify: this book as opposed to that one; **hic liber . . . ille**. Since **ille** points to something further away, it can also mean the thing mentioned previously, 'the former', as opposed to the last thing said (**hic**, 'the latter').

**Inveniō** is a compound of **veniō**, 'come'; it means 'come upon, find'.

**Is, ea, id** is a weaker word; it does not point out so strongly as **hic** and **ille** and so it can mean either 'this' or 'that'. Of course, when it is used substantively, 'this man', 'this woman', 'this thing' are more easily expressed as 'he', 'she', 'it'. The abbreviation *i.e.*, **id est**, means 'that is'.

**Locus, locī**, 'place', is masculine in the singular, but, most often, neuter in the plural, **loca, locōrum**, 'places'. **Locī, locōrum**, masculine, when it does occur, usually refers to passages of literature or the points of an argument.

**Ōdī** is a defective verb. It has only perfect tenses and so the perfect infinitive is given. The perfect tense is translated as present, the pluperfect as imperfect, and the future perfect as future: **ōdī**, 'I hate', **ōderam**, 'I hated', **ōderō**, 'I shall hate'.

**Opus** and **tempus**, like **corpus**, are neuter words whose nominative singular ends in **-us**. **Opus est** is an idiom meaning 'there is need of'. What is needed is put into the nominative case or the ablative, less frequently the genitive; the person who is in need is in the dative case: **Opus tibi est mēnsa**? or **Opus tibi est mēnsā**? or **Opus tibi est mēnsae**?, 'Do you need a table?'

**Opprimō** is a compound of **premō**. Once again, the vowel in the uncompounded verb weakens when the verb is compounded.

**Quī, quae, quod** can be either the relative pronoun 'who, which, that' or the interrogative adjective 'which, what'. The relative pronoun will have an antecedent; the interrogative adjective will not, but, since it is an adjective, it will



be used with a noun: **Vir quem vidimus nōs ōdit**, 'The man whom we saw hates us'; **Quem librum legis?**, 'What book are you reading?'

**Quis, quid** is the interrogative pronoun, 'who, what': **Quem vidēs?**, 'Whom do you see?'

**Salūs, salūtis**, F., means 'health, safety'; the idiom **salūtem dicere** means 'to greet, say hello': **Pater tuus nōbīs salūtem dīxit**, 'Your father said hello to us'.

Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they occur (for exceptions, see Unit Fourteen, section E) and so there is no nominative case. The same forms are used for the singular and plural and for all three genders. The possessive adjective **suus, -a, -um** refers to something owned by the subject: **Rēgīna naufrīs suīs imperāvit ut vēla darent**, 'The queen ordered her sailors that they set sail'.

The pronoun **tū** is 'you', referring to one person; **vōs** is the plural 'you'. The plural is never used as a polite form of 'you' in Latin as is the case in many modern languages. The possessive adjective **tuus, -a, -um** is used to indicate possession by a singular 'you'; **vester, vestra, vestrum**, by the plural 'you': **tuus pater**, 'your (singular 'you') father'; **tui librī**, 'your (singular 'you') books'; **vester filiū**, 'your (plural 'you') son'; **vestrae sorōrēs**, 'your (plural 'you') sisters'.

**Vōx, vōcis**, F., 'voice', is associated with **vocō**, 'call'.

## UNIT SEVEN — DRILL

### I.

Give the gender, number, and case of the pronouns or adjectives in *italics* in the following sentences. Then, referring to the paradigms in the Unit, translate only those words into Latin.

1. Is *this* your book? Is *it* his?
2. With *whom* were you walking at *that* time? Not with *your* mother, but with *his*.
3. *What* do you think about the voice of *this* man?
4. I hate *those* men, but I love *these*.
5. To *whom* did you give the gifts *which* I sent to you from *that* island?
6. *This* man knew that *he* hated the voice of *that* man.
7. I completed the work, not *you*.
8. *Whose* book is *this* which was placed on *your* table?
9. The women *whom* we saw at *that* time were the mothers of *those* boys to *whom* we had given money.
10. (At) *what* time shall we see *them*?
11. *His* friends will love *him* and the woman *whom* he loves.

12. *Whose* right hand has written *that* book about *which* people say many good things?
13. The unhappy man sent gifts neither to *his* sister nor to *his* brother, but *his* friend sent gifts to *his* (i.e., the unhappy man's) mother.
14. The soldier hates *his* country's enemies and *he* desires to conquer *them*.
15. *We* lived in *their* country for five years and *they* did not consider *us* enemies.

## II.

Translate the following sentences:

1. Scimus tē domum quae ardeat multōs mēnsēs incoluisse. [mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium, M., 'month']
2. Dixērunt sē per oppida in quibus socii vidēri potuissent trēs noctēs ambulāvisse. [trēs, fem. acc. pl. adj., 'three']

## UNIT SEVEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Hunc locum scimus; illum locum nōn scimus.</li> <li>2. Hunc scimus; illum nōn scimus.</li> <li>3. Nōs patrem nostrum vidimus; is nōs nōn vidit.</li> <li>4. Patrem eius vidit; patrem suum vidit.</li> <li>5. Mē sciō; tēne scīs?</li> <li>6. Eum scit; sēne scit?</li> <li>7. Sē scit; sēne sciunt?</li> <li>8. Hī nōbis salūtem dixērunt.</li> <li>9. Multi vestrum mortem timent.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10. Auctor opus suum cōnfēcit quamquam id ōdit.</li> <li>11. Opus suum ōdērunt.</li> <li>12. Opus nostrum ōdimus.</li> <li>13. Opusne vestrum ōdistis?</li> <li>14. Mors nōs premit.</li> <li>15. Mors nōbis nōn placet.</li> <li>16. Eīs multus amor nostri est.</li> <li>17. Mihi opus est vōce magnā.</li> <li>18. Pēs mātris tuae est magnus; pēs meus est parvus.</li> <li>19. Vōcem eārum audivērunt.</li> <li>20. Vōcem suam audivērunt.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

## UNIT SEVEN — EXERCISES

### I.

1. Ad quem misisti librōs quōs noster clārus auctor illō tempore scripsit ut populō tuō placēret?
2. Hunc librum cuius auctor scitur ā vestris civibus amāmus, sed illum librum qui est in mēnsā ōdimus.

3. Dīcit fēminās quās vīderimus in illō locō esse matrēs eōrum puerōrum qui Rōmam ex Asiā vēnērunt ut sibi laetās vītās petant.
4. Hī ab illā insulā quae est in nostrō mari vēnērunt, sed illi in hōc locō semper vixērunt.
5. Ego illum librum lēgi, tūne hunc lēgistī?
6. Cui dedisti librum quem magister dixit mihi legendum esse?
7. Quī liber tibi legendus est?
8. Quid (tū) agis? Ego litterās scribō. Ego litterās meis scribō.
9. In quibus terris servitūs vidēri potest?
10. Quibuscum ambulāvisti ē villā in viam quae populō implēta est? Cum quibus fēminis? Cum quibus viris? Cum tuīs?
11. Filius mei amīci vidit vōs, sed nōs neque tē neque tuōs sociōs vīdimus.
12. a) Ōdimus eōs quibus patria nōn placet, sed nōbis est amor honestōrum piōrumque.  
b) Dicimus nōs ōdisse eōs quibus patria nōn placeat.
13. Librī quōs ad nōs misisti ab hominibus quī amant suum opus scripti sunt.
14. Scribisne in tuō librō dē generibus animālium quae scīs?
15. Dixērunt dōna quae petitūri essēmus pulchra futūra esse.
16. Isne est vir quem tua māter vidit?
17. Cui fēminae dōna dedit quae optāverāmus?
18. Ii quī piō genere nāti sunt nōn solum amant patriam quam incolunt sed etiam ōdērunt hostēs quī eam invāsērunt.
19. Hic amat quod ille ōdit.
20. Quis est haec? Quis nostrārum fuit?
21. Dicam servitūtem quae opprimat hōs quōs videritis malam esse.
22. Quī locus est? Ad quem locum venī et quōcum?
23. "Quis fuit?" "Marcus." "Quī Marcus?" "Is quī urbem hostibus quī multum tempus genus nostrum oppressissent invādendam esse dixit."
24. Quae patria est tua?
25. Quem quinque hōris vidēbō? Tē et tuōs.
26. Ille vir, cui patriae salūs est cāra, pius habētur ā populō quī eum scit, sed nōn sē amat.
27. Quod opus ante tempus perfēcisti? Quod opus eō tempore perfēcisti?
28. Tempore careō ut perficiam opus quod scribō.
29. a) Cīvēs illārum urbium quae habuērunt rēgēs dāmnābātis.  
b) Sēnsit cīvēs illārum urbium quae rēgēs habērent dāmnandōs esse.
30. Quinque hōris vidēbimus amīcōs quibuscum vivēbāmus.
31. a) Rēx cuius soror Rōmae vivit bene sē gessit.  
b) Scīmus rēgem cuius soror Rōmae vivat bene sē gessisse.  
c) Scīmus rēgem cuius soror Rōmae diū vixerit bene sē gerere.
32. Cuius liber quinque annōs petitus est?

33. Tibine ea quibus opus est invēnistī? Quod nōn opus est, nōn est cārum.
34. Māter filiō dixit multam salūtem quem multōs annōs nōn vīderat.
35. Dixit et sē et suōs amicōs et vōs invidiā populī periculisque belli premi; sē autem spērāre nec suōs nec vōs miserōs futūrōs esse. "Nisi malō premerēmur, numquam nātūram vitae intellexerēmus."
36. Tibi imperō ut sciās mortem nōn esse timendam: quae bona si nōn est, finis tamen illa malōrum est.
37. Quīque annis bellum cum nostris hostibus gerere poterimus ex quibus spērāmus nōs multam pecūniam et magnum imperium captūrōs esse.
38. Dicit illud opus tibi cōfectum ā populō lēctum esse.
39. Ut laetī nōs simus, nōbis amōre opus est.
40. Magnā vōce clāmāvimus multa eius generis inventa esse.
41. Sentis vōcēs eōrum quī clāment ei hominī nōn placēre.
42. Quīque pedēs ad dextram nōs mōvimus ut verba magistri audirēmus.
43. Illi vērunt ut quīque hōrās tēcum agant. Quibuscum in oppidō ambulārēs nisi fessus essēs. [fessus, -a, -um, 'tired']
44. Cīvēs illius oppidī spērābant nōs mox discessūrōs esse. Quī quamquam nōbis erant amicī, nōs nōn amāvērunt.
45. Rēx dixit rūmōrēs in urbe auditōs esse pellendōs. Quae (eī) quī audiēbant probābant. [probō (1), 'approve (of)']
46. Eō tempore tuus ad nōs vēnit ut salūtem diceret. Cui respondimus "Et nōs tibi salūtem dicimus!"

## II.

Rewrite sentences 11, 13, and 28 in indirect statement after **dicit** and **dicēbat**. Translate each of the sentences you wrote.

## III.

1. What book is this which has been sent to us by our friends (by his friends) with whom we were walking?
2. The man whom you saw at that time is the sailor to whom I gave those gifts.
3. For five years he hoped that he would complete this, his own work, but now he hates it.
4. We said that we would move five feet to the right in order that we might see your king with his queen and their sons.
5. Those wretched people not only hate themselves, but they also say that we hate them.

## IV. Readings

- A. The poet Catullus, after renouncing his love for Lesbia, addresses her (Catullus 8.15-19):



...Quae tibi manet<sup>1</sup> vita?

Quis nunc tē adibit?<sup>2</sup> Cui vidēberis bella?<sup>3</sup>

Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dicēris?

Quem bāsiābis?<sup>4</sup> Cui labella<sup>5</sup> mordēbis?<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsus, 'remain'    <sup>2</sup> adibit (3rd person sing. future indicative), 'will approach'    <sup>3</sup> bellus, -a, -um, 'beautiful'    <sup>4</sup> bāsiō (1), 'kiss'    <sup>5</sup> labellum, -i, N., 'little lip'    <sup>6</sup> mordeō, -ēre, momordi, morsus, 'bite'

NOTE: For some observations on the rhythm of this and subsequent selections from verse which will appear in the readings, see *A Note on Quantitative Rhythm*, p. 401.

## B. Martial 12.73:

Herēdem<sup>1</sup> tibi mē, Catulle,<sup>2</sup> dicis.

Nōn crēdam,<sup>3</sup> nisi<sup>4</sup> lēgerō, Catulle.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> herēs, herēdis, M., 'heir'    <sup>2</sup> Catullus, -i, M., a man's name; here, it is in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, Section G)    <sup>3</sup> crēdō, -ere, crēdidi, crēditus, 'believe'    <sup>4</sup> nisi (for nisi): occasionally, certain metrical necessities cause a long vowel to shorten in verse.

## C. Catullus 58:

Caeli,<sup>1</sup> Lesbia nostra, Lesbia illa,  
illa Lesbia, quam Catullus ūnam<sup>2</sup>  
plūs<sup>3</sup> quam<sup>4</sup> sē atque suōs amāvit omnēs,<sup>5</sup>  
nunc in quadriviis<sup>6</sup> et angiportis<sup>7</sup>  
glūbit<sup>8</sup> magnanimi<sup>9</sup> Rēmi<sup>10</sup> nepōtēs.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Caelius, -i, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G)    <sup>2</sup> ūnus, -a, -um, 'alone'    <sup>3</sup> plūs (adv.), 'more'    <sup>4</sup> quam (adv.), 'than'    <sup>5</sup> omnēs (acc. pl. M.), 'all'    <sup>6</sup> quadrivium, -i, N., 'crossroads'    <sup>7</sup> angiportum, -i, N., 'alley'    <sup>8</sup> glūbō, -ere, 'bark, peel, skin'    <sup>9</sup> magnanimus, -a, -um, 'great-souled'    <sup>10</sup> Rēmus, -i, M., 'Remus', the brother of Romulus, the founder of Rome    <sup>11</sup> nepōs, nepōtis, M., 'descendant'

## D. Martial 1.38:

Quem recitās<sup>1</sup> meus est, Ō Fidentīne,<sup>2</sup> libellus:<sup>3</sup>  
sed male<sup>4</sup> cum<sup>5</sup> recitās,<sup>1</sup> incipit esse tuus.

<sup>1</sup> recitō (1), 'recite'    <sup>2</sup> Fidentīnus, -i, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G)    <sup>3</sup> libellus, -i, M., 'little book'    <sup>4</sup> male (adv.), 'badly'    <sup>5</sup> cum (conj.), 'when'



## E. Martial 1.32:

Nōn amo tē, Sabidī,<sup>1</sup> nec possum dicere quārē:<sup>2</sup>  
hoc tantum<sup>3</sup> possum dicere, nōn amo tē.

<sup>1</sup> Sabidius, -ī, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) <sup>2</sup> quārē (adv.), 'why' <sup>3</sup> tantum (adv.), 'only'

## F. Martial 5.43:

Thāīs<sup>1</sup> habet nigrōs,<sup>2</sup> niveōs<sup>3</sup> Laecānia<sup>1</sup> dentēs.<sup>4</sup>  
Quae ratiō<sup>5</sup> est? Ēmptōs<sup>6</sup> haec habet, illa suōs.

<sup>1</sup> Thāīs and Laecānia are names of women in the nominative case. <sup>2</sup> niger, nigra, nigrum, 'black' <sup>3</sup> niveus, -a, -um, 'snowy white' <sup>4</sup> dēns, dentis, M., 'tooth' <sup>5</sup> ratiō, -ōnis, F., 'reason' <sup>6</sup> emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptus, 'buy'

## G. Martial 12.80:

Nē laudet<sup>1</sup> dignōs,<sup>2</sup> laudat<sup>1</sup> Callistratus<sup>3</sup> omnēs.<sup>4</sup>  
Cui malus est nēmō,<sup>5</sup> quis bonus esse potest?

<sup>1</sup> laudō (1), 'praise' <sup>2</sup> dignus, -a, -um, 'worthy' <sup>3</sup> Callistratus, -ī, M., a man's name <sup>4</sup> omnēs (acc. pl. M.), 'all' (i.e., 'everyone') <sup>5</sup> nēmō (nom. sing.), 'no one'

## H. Martial 7.3:

Cūr<sup>1</sup> nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne,<sup>2</sup> libellōs?<sup>3</sup>  
Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne,<sup>2</sup> tuōs.

<sup>1</sup> cūr (adv.), 'why' <sup>2</sup> Pontiliānus, -ī, M., a man's name; here, in the vocative case (the case of direct address; see Unit Eight, section G) <sup>3</sup> libellus, -ī, M., 'little book'

I. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.12.27:

Nunc illōs quī in urbe remānsērunt<sup>1</sup> atque adeō<sup>2</sup> quī contrā<sup>3</sup> urbis salūtem omniumque<sup>4</sup> vestrum in urbe ā Catilinā relictī sunt,<sup>5</sup> quamquam sunt hostēs, tamen, quia<sup>6</sup> nātī sunt<sup>7</sup> cīvēs, monitōs etiam atque etiam<sup>8</sup> volō.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> remaneō, -ēre, remānsī, remānsus, 'remain' <sup>2</sup> adeō (adv.), 'thus far' <sup>3</sup> contrā (prep. + acc.), 'against' <sup>4</sup> omnium (gen. pl.), 'all' <sup>5</sup> relinquo, -ere, reliquī, relictus, 'leave behind' <sup>6</sup> quia (conj.), 'because' <sup>7</sup> nātī sunt, 'they were born' <sup>8</sup> etiam atque etiam, 'again and again' <sup>9</sup> volō, velle, volui, --, 'want'

# UNIT EIGHT

## A. Adjectives of the Third Declension; Present Participles

There are two types of adjectives in Latin:

1. those which have the endings of the first and second declensions;
2. those which have the endings of the third declension.

First-second declension adjectives have already been learned. Most third declension adjectives are declined largely like i-stem nouns of the third declension. The important features are:

ablative singular: **-ī**

genitive plural: **-ium**

accusative plural (M. and F.): **-īs** as well as **-ēs**

nominative and accusative plural (N.): **-ia**

Adjectives of the first and second declension have three terminations; that is, there is a separate nominative singular form for each of the three genders (**bonus, -a, -um**). Adjectives of the third declension can have either three, two, or one termination. These varieties are illustrated below.

### 1. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS

Adjectives of three terminations are given in the vocabulary in the masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative: **ācer, ācris, ācre**, 'sharp'.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs(-īs)	ācrēs(-īs)	ācria
ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

The stem for such adjectives will be found by dropping the ending from the feminine singular nominative form.

## 2. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS

Adjectives of two terminations are given in the vocabulary in the masculine-feminine and neuter nominative: **omnis**, **omne**, 'every, all'.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M., F.	N.	M., F.	N.
omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
omni	omni	omnibus	omnibus
omnem	omne	omnēs(-is)	omnia
omni	omni	omnibus	omnibus

## 3. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION

Adjectives of one termination are given in the vocabulary in the masculine-feminine-neuter nominative and the genitive singular: **ingēns**, **ingentis**, 'huge'.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
M., F., N.	M., F., N.
ingēns	ingentēs, ingentia (neut.)
ingentis	ingentium
ingenti	ingentibus
ingentem, ingēns (neut.)	ingentēs(-is), ingentia (neut.)
ingenti	ingentibus

The genitive singular for adjectives of one termination is given so that the stem on which the declension is built may be known.

## 4. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

Present participles are declined like third declension adjectives of one termination.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
M., F., N.	M., F., N.
optāns	optantēs, optantia (neut.)
optantis	optantium
optanti	optantibus
optantem, optāns (neut.)	optantēs(-is), optantia (neut.)
optanti(-e)	optantibus

NOTE: For the moment, the following distinction between the **-ī** and **-e** endings of the ablative singular should be remembered:

- ī** generally occurs when the participle is used as an attributive adjective
- e** generally occurs when the participle is used as a noun

### B. Fourth Declension Nouns

The genitive singular ending for the fourth declension is *-ūs*. While there are three genders of nouns in this declension, the neuter is rare.

**fructus, -ūs, M., 'enjoyment'**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	fructus	fructūs
Gen.	fructūs	fructuum
Dat.	fructui	fructibus
Acc.	fructum	fructūs
Abl.	fructū	fructibus

Most nouns ending in *-us* in this declension are *masculine*; the others are *feminine*. Neuter nouns differ from this paradigm in these places:

1. the nominative and accusative singular end in *-ū*
2. the dative singular ends in *-ū*
3. the nominative and accusative plural end in *-ua*

### C. Fifth Declension Nouns

The genitive singular ending is *-eī*, but when the stem ends in a vowel, the ending is *-ēī*. Most nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine*.

**rēs, reī, F., 'thing'**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	rēs	rēs
Gen.	reī	rērum
Dat.	reī	rēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus

NOTE: This completes our discussion of the declensional system in Latin. There are no adjectives which have the endings of the fourth and fifth declensions. Also, the number of nouns which belong to these two declensions is limited; the great bulk of Latin nouns belongs to the third declension.

### D. Ablative of Respect (Specification)

The *respect* in which a statement is true is expressed by the *ablative without a preposition*.

Haec fēmina **speciē** pulchra est.

This woman is beautiful *in (respect to) appearance*.

Meā **sententiā** nihil perficient.

*In (respect to) my opinion*, they will accomplish nothing.

### E. The Irregular Verb *eō, ire, 'go'*

The verb *eō, ire, iī* (or *īvī*), *itus, 'go'*, exhibits some irregularities in the present system. The rest of the verb is regular, except as follows:

1. In the perfect active indicative, the second person singular is *istī* (for *iistī*), and the second person plural is *istis* (for *iistis*).
2. The perfect active infinitive is *isse* (for *iisse*), which provides the stem for the pluperfect active subjunctive. For the full conjugation, see Appendix, pp. 354–355.

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>eō</i>	<i>imus</i>
<i>is</i>	<i>itis</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>eunt</i>

#### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

(conjugates according to normal rules for the imperfect, but with no *-iē-*)

<i>ibam</i>	<i>ibāmus</i>
<i>ibās</i>	<i>ibātis</i>
<i>ibat</i>	<i>ibant</i>

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>eam</i>	<i>eāmus</i>
<i>eās</i>	<i>eātis</i>
<i>eat</i>	<i>eant</i>

#### FUTURE INDICATIVE

(conjugates like first-second conjugation verbs with *-bi-*)

<i>ibō</i>	<i>ibimus</i>
<i>ibis</i>	<i>ibitis</i>
<i>ibit</i>	<i>ibunt</i>

#### PRESENT PARTICIPLE

*iēns, euntis*

### F. The Present Imperative (*imperō* (1), 'command')

The *imperative* is the mood of *command*. The present imperative is formed for the four conjugations as follows:

#### 1. ACTIVE

For all conjugations, the *singular* imperative active is the present stem:

<i>optā!</i>	<i>desire!</i>	<i>incipē!</i>	<i>begin!</i>
<i>implē!</i>	<i>fill!</i>	<i>sentī!</i>	<i>feel!</i>

For the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *plural* imperative is formed by adding *-te* to the present stem; for the third conjugation, the stem vowel is changed from *-e-* to *-i-* before adding *-te*:

<i>optāte!</i>	<i>desire!</i>	<i>incipite!</i>	<i>begin!</i>
<i>implēte!</i>	<i>fill!</i>	<i>sentite!</i>	<i>feel!</i>

EXCEPTIONS: The following third conjugation verbs do not have the *-e* in the singular of the present imperative active: *dīcō, 'say'*; *dūcō, 'lead'*; *faciō, 'make, do'*; *ferō, 'carry'*.



dic!	BUT	dicite!
dūc!		dūcite!
fac!		facite!
fer!		ferite! (note absence of stem vowel -i-)

## 2. PASSIVE

The singular imperative passive is identical to the second person singular of the present passive indicative with the **-re** ending:

optāre!	be desired!
implēre!	be filled!
incipere!	be begun!
sentire!	be felt!

It will be noted that these forms look like those of the present active infinitive.

The plural imperative passive is identical to the second person plural of the present passive indicative:

optāmini!	be desired!
implēmini!	be filled!
incipimini!	be begun!
sentimini!	be felt!

## 3. NEGATIVE IMPERATIVES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

Negative imperatives are expressed by the command words **nōli** (singular) and **nōlite** (plural), 'be unwilling', followed by the present infinitive of the verb:

Nōli optāre!	Don't (sing.) desire!
Nōli optārī!	Don't (sing.) be desired!
Nōli implēre!	Don't (sing.) fill!
Nōli implērī!	Don't (sing.) be filled!
Nōli dūcere!	Don't (sing.) lead!
Nōli dūcī!	Don't (sing.) be led!
Nōlite dūcere!	Don't (pl.) lead!
Nōlite dūcī!	Don't (pl.) be led!

Negative imperatives may also be expressed with the present or perfect subjunctive (with no obvious distinction in meaning) introduced by **nē**:

Nē optēs.	May you not desire; (I hope that you) don't desire.
Nē dūcātis.	May you not lead; (I hope that you) don't lead.
Nē dūxeritis.	May you not lead; (I hope that you) don't lead.

[Another imperative form, the so-called *future imperative*, appears rarely in Latin, generally in formal or legal documents and as a regular imperative

for a few verbs. It has been omitted from the exercises in this book, but it is discussed in the Appendix, p. 362.]

### G. The Vocative Case (*vocō* (1), 'call')

The *vocative* is the case of *direct address*. It is generally identical to the nominative, except for second declension nouns ending in *-us* or *-ius*:

Nouns ending in *-us* have a vocative singular in *-e*:

Marcus venit. Marcus is coming.

**Marce**, veni! *Marcus*, come!

Nouns ending in *-ius* have a vocative singular in *-ī*:

Vergilius carmen scripsit. Vergil wrote a poem.

**Vergilī**, scribe carmen! *Vergil*, write a poem!

The adjective *meus*, *-a*, *-um*, 'my', has the masculine singular vocative *mī*:

Meus filius venit. My son is coming.

**Mī fili**, veni! *My son*, come!

All plural vocatives are identical to the nominative plural.

### H. Datives of Purpose (Service) and Reference: The Double Dative Construction

Two datives frequently appear in close proximity, one denoting the *purpose* (*service*) with reference to which the action or idea expressed in the clause occurs, the other denoting the person or thing with reference to whom or which the action or idea occurs or is relevant.

Fili **mātrī** fructuī sunt.

The sons are (*for the purpose of*) an asset (*with reference*) to their mother; the sons serve as an asset to (*for*) their mother; the sons are an asset to their mother.

Ad urbem **salūtī** mihi vēnit.

He came to the city *for (the purpose of)* a salvation (*with reference*) to (*for*) me; he came to the city to save me.

Opiniō mali **periculō** erat cīvitātī.

The opinion of the evil (man) was (*for the purpose of*) a danger (*with reference*) to the state.

## UNIT EIGHT — VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre

carmen, -inis, N.

cīvitās, cīvitātis, F.

sharp, keen, fierce

song, poem, incantation

citizenship; state

diēs, -ēī, M.  
 domus, -ūs and -ī, F.  
 dulcis, -e  
 eō, ire, īī (or īvī), itus  
 fēlix, fēlicis  
     infēlix, -īcis  
 fidēs, -eī, F.  
 fortis, -e  
 frīgīdus, -a, -um  
 frūctus, -ūs, M.  
     frūctui esse  
  
 fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, ---  
 gravis, -e  
 iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus  
 iactō (1)  
 ingēns, ingentis  
 ira, -ae, F.  
 iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus  
  
 libertās, libertātis, F.  
 lītus, lītoris, N.  
 longus, -a, -um  
     longē (adv.)  
 lūx, lūcis, F.  
     primā lūce  
 manus, -ūs, F.  
 memor, memoris  
 metus, -ūs, M.  
 mōtus, -ūs, M.  
 nōmen, nōminis, N.  
 nūmen, nūminis, N.  
 ob (prep. + acc.)  
     quam ob rem  
  
 omnis, -e  
 opiniō, -ōnis, F.  
 pectus, -oris, N.  
 prō (prep. + abl.)  
  
 profugus, -a, -um  
 pūblicus, -a, -um

day  
 house, home  
 sweet, pleasant  
 go  
 happy, fortunate  
 unhappy, unfortunate  
 faith, trust, trustworthiness  
 strong, brave  
 cold  
 enjoyment; fruit; profit  
 to be (for [the purpose of]) a profit, be an asset  
     to (+ dat.)  
 flash, shine  
 heavy, severe, important  
 throw  
 throw, scatter, shake; boast  
 huge  
 wrath, anger  
 order, command (+ inf., not **ut** clause of  
     indirect command)  
 freedom  
 shore, beach  
 long  
 far off, at a distance, far and wide  
 light  
 at the first light, at daybreak  
 hand; band, troop  
 mindful, remembering (+ gen.)  
 fear, dread  
 motion, movement  
 name  
 divinity, divine spirit  
 on account of  
 on account of which thing, for what reason,  
     why  
 every, all  
 opinion  
 heart, breast  
 in front of, for, on behalf of, instead of, in  
     return for  
 fugitive, banished, exiled  
 public

<b>quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesītus</b>	look for, search for, seek, ask
<b>rēs, reī, F.</b>	thing, matter, affair, situation
<b>rēs pūblica</b>	state, republic
<b>saevus, -a, -um</b>	cruel
<b>sēsus, -ūs, M.</b>	sensation, feeling
<b>speciēs, -eī, F.</b>	appearance
<b>spēs, -eī, F.</b>	hope
<b>superus, -a, -um</b>	above, upper
<b>superī, -ōrum, M. pl.</b>	the gods above
<b>vertex, verticis, M.</b>	head, top, summit; whirlpool, whirlwind

## UNIT EIGHT — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The suffix **-tās, -tātis** is a feminine ending of abstract nouns which indicates a quality or state. **Cīvis** is a citizen; **cīvitās, cīvitātis, F.**, is the 'state of being a citizen', thus, 'citizenship, state'. **Liber**, 'free', thus becomes the stem of the abstract noun **libertās, libertātis, F.**, 'the state of being free', i.e., 'freedom'.

**Diēs, diēi** is one of the two masculine nouns in the fifth declension (the other is a compound of **diēs**). Sometimes it occurs in the singular as feminine, especially when a specific day is meant or when the reference is to time in general: **longa diēs**, 'a long day'.

**Domus**, 'house, home', has some forms which belong to the second declension and others which belong to the fourth declension; therefore, it is given in this book as both a second and fourth declension noun. The most common forms are:

<b>domus</b>	<b>domūs</b>
<b>domūs</b>	<b>domuum</b>
<b>domui</b>	<b>domibus</b>
<b>domum</b>	<b>domōs</b>
<b>domō</b>	<b>domibus</b>

The locative is **domī**.

The verb **eō, ire, ii** or **ivī, itus**, 'go', in the perfect active stem may shorten from **-iv-** to **-i-**. There are many compounds of this verb:

<b>adeō</b>	go to, approach
<b>abeō</b>	go away, depart
<b>circumeō</b>	go around, surround
<b>ineō</b>	go in, enter
<b>exeō</b>	go out, depart
...etc.	

**Fēlix, fēlicis**, 'happy, fortunate', takes the negative prefix **in-** to form the word for 'unhappy, unfortunate', **infēlix, infēlicis**.

**Fructus, fructūs**, M., 'enjoyment, fruit, profit', is used in the dative case with the verb **sum** to form the idiom **fructui esse**, 'to be an asset to': **Nauta reginae fructui erat**, 'The sailor was an asset to the queen'.

**Iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus**, 'throw', produces the frequentative verb **iactō**. A frequentative verb is usually a first conjugation verb formed from the fourth principal part of another verb and which, originally, had the idea of the action being repeated; in many verbs, this idea became lost in time and no discernible difference in meaning is seen in the two verbs. However, **iactō** does have the additional meaning 'boast'.

**Iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussus**, 'order', is the only verb of ordering in Latin that does not regularly use the construction for an indirect command (**ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive), but rather an infinitive with subject accusative: **Rēgina nautās vēla dare iussit**, 'The queen ordered the sailors to set sail'.

The word **manus, manūs** is feminine even though, in addition to the meaning 'hand', it means 'a band (of men)'.

**Mōtus, mōtūs**, M., is a noun of the fourth declension made from the perfect passive participle of **moveō**; it means 'motion, movement'. In the same way, **sēnsus, sēnsūs**, M., 'sensation, feeling', is formed from the perfect passive participle of **sentiō**.

The verb **quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesītus**, 'seek, ask (for)', may introduce an indirect command: **Quaesivimus nē domum irēs**, 'We asked that you not go home'. If one seeks something from someone, either **ā (ab)**, **dē**, or **ex** is used: **Pecūniam ab (dē, ex) amicis quaesivimus**, 'We sought money from our friends'.

**Rēs, rei**, F., is an abstract word with many meanings, e.g., 'thing, matter, affair, situation, business, lawsuit, event, property'; **rēs pūblica** is the 'public thing, the public matter', therefore, 'state, republic'.

## UNIT EIGHT — DRILL

### I.

Give a form of the adjectives **magnus**, -a, -um, **gravis**, -e, and **ingēns**, **ingentis** to go with each of the following noun forms. In some cases, there may be several possible interpretations.

- |            |                |                |                 |
|------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. frāter  | 8. sidera      | 15. manūs      | 22. periculōrum |
| 2. noctis  | 9. rēgum       | 16. manui      | 23. dōnō        |
| 3. sīdus   | 10. rūmōribus  | 17. diēs       | 24. bella       |
| 4. mātri   | 11. frātrum    | 18. fructibus  | 25. gladiō      |
| 5. sorōrem | 12. servitūtem | 19. spem       | 26. nautae      |
| 6. homine  | 13. corporis   | 20. manuum     |                 |
| 7. hominēs | 14. rei        | 21. prōvinciae |                 |



## II.

Translate and give the syntax of the words in boldface type:

1. Hic homō **mente** est validus.
2. Haec fēmina pulchra est **fōrmā**.
3. Ille civis sānus est **corpore**.
4. Illi infēlicēs sunt **salūte**.
5. Superātī militēs **vītā** et **vigōre** sunt miserī.
6. Sī Rōmam **eat**, amicis nōn careat.
7. Nisi militēs **urbī salūtī** **ībunt**, magnus erit timor.
8. Sī ad insulam **īisset** (**īret**), fēlix fuisset (essem).
9. Rōmam **it**; Athēnās **eunt**; Eis imperō ut Athēnās **eant**; Ad urbem **ībant**; Eis imperābam nē ad urbem **īrent**.
10. Homō ad prōvinciam **iēns** erat intellegēs.
11. Quae est filia hominis ad prōvinciam **euntis**?
12. Dicō hominī ad prōvinciam **euntī** esse filiam **speciē** pulchram.
13. **Discēde** ē prōvincia!
14. **Oppūgnāte** urbem cum vigōre!
15. **Nōli discēdere** ē prōvincia! **Nē discesseris** (**discēdās**) ē prōvincia!
16. **Nōlite oppūgnāre** urbem! **Nē oppūgnāveritis** (**oppūgnētis**) urbem!
17. **Nōli, amice, spectāre** montem; **spectā** campum!
18. **Mī fili, nōli timōre opprimī**! **Nē timōre oppressus sīs** (**opprimāris**)!
19. Morsne erit bonō **finī** **vītae** nostrae?
20. Militēs **timōrī** civibus missi sunt.

## UNIT EIGHT — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C)

1. Haec civitās infēlix metū gravi dēlētur.
2. Sēnsūs omnis dē libertāte mūtāvimus.
3. Sēnsūs gravēs nōbis mūtandi erant.
4. Sēnsūs nostri dē fidē eōrum prō libertāte pūgnantium mūtandi sunt.
5. Acrēs sunt opiniōnēs oppressōrum dē rē publicā.
6. Quam ob rem infēlicēs domum ire iussī sunt?
7. Nōbis est metus nūminum omnium.
8. In hāc civitāte omnibus est magna spēs libertātis.
9. Memorēs metuū suōrum, profugī primā lūce discessērunt.
10. Carmina dulcia dē fructū vītae audivērunt.
11. Mihi quaerentī opus est mente ācrī ut haec intellegam.

12. Semper erimus rerum omnium memorēs dē rei pūblicae spēbus.
13. Sidera fulgentia in caelō vīdimus.
14. Opus est rei pūblicae manūs fortium.

## UNIT EIGHT — EXERCISES

### I.

1. Intellegitur pectus rēginae dulcis in cuius terrā vivāmus flammīs ācribus amōris saevī ardēre.
2. Rēx ācer, salūtem sociīs quaerēns, iussit militēs fortēs civitātem patrum nostrōrum gravem ignibus gladiisque superāre ut nostra bona sibi frūctui essent.
3. a) Lūx aurea aurōrae sidera quae flammīs frigidis nocte fulgent vertice caeli removet.  
b) Lūx aurea aurōrae sidera flammīs frigidis nocte fulgentia vertice caeli removet.
4. Nautae oppressi in mediō mari ventis ācribus et frigidis iactāti clāmāvērunt: “Ō fēlicēs dī, nostri memorēs, pellite ventōs ā nōbīs. Removēte noxam. Nōs sumus frīgidi atque miserī. Pōnite iram vestram et iubēte mare magnīs undīs carēre. Haec quaerimus prō omnibus dulcibus quae vōbīs dedimus.”
5. Sī puerī fēlicēs, Rōmā discēdentēs, Athēnās eant, carmina pulchra poētae cecī audiant.
6. Militēs fortēs sociōs Rōmānōrum gladiis et armīs suis oppūgnāvērunt ut moenia ingentia urbis infēlicis caperent.
7. Pater meus mihi dixit Rōmānōrum manum, factis fēlicem, omnem rem pūblicam sine morā captūram esse; nūminibus enim deōrum salūtem eōrum cūrae futūram esse.
8. Illud periculum gravi rēgi superandum est ut cum oppūgnanti manū militum sociōrum prō libertāte pūgnet. Rēx, ī et pūgnā cum oppūgnante! Nōli timēre! Si metus tibi erit, nil perficiēs.
9. Hominēs fortēs quōs in nōmine rēgis misisti ut nōbīs cibum pecūniamque darent militibus nostris captīs frūctui fuērunt.
10. Omnēs militēs spem fidemque rēginae dedērunt cuius oppidum ab invādentibus profugis superātum erat. Nē dūxeris, rēgina, invādentēs oppidum dēlētūrōs esse. Meā opiniōne, omnēs vī superōrum in salūte pōnēmur.
11. Iacite magna saxa in mare ut in litore sine periculō ambulēmus.
12. Ō Marce! Dūc ad libertātem patriam tuam! Quaere virōs impiōs et malōs! Iace illōs ē rē pūblicā nōn solum prō civibus liberis sed etiam prō tē!
13. Opus est mihi mente ācri ut haec intellegam.

14. Arma virumque canō, Trōiae<sup>1</sup> quī primus<sup>2</sup> ab ōris<sup>3</sup>  
[ad] Italiā, fātō<sup>4</sup> profugus, Lāvinaque<sup>5</sup> vēnit [ad]  
litora, multum<sup>6</sup> ille et [in] terris iactātus et [in] altō  
vī super[or]um, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob iram.

(Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.1–4)

- <sup>1</sup> Trōia, -ae, F., 'Troy'    <sup>2</sup> primus, -a, -um, 'first'    <sup>3</sup> ōra, -ae, F., 'shore'  
<sup>4</sup> fātum, -ī, N., 'fate'    <sup>5</sup> Lāvinus, -a, -um, 'Lavinian', refers to Lavinium, a city of  
Latium founded by Aeneas    <sup>6</sup> multum (used adverbially), 'a great deal, a lot'
15. Profugō, libertātis rutae memori et salūtem sorōribus frātribusque quaerenti,  
metus opprimētiū saevōrum ingēns multōs diēs erat.
16. Quam ob rem domūs illius manūs nōs in periculō pōnentis dēlētae sunt?  
Prō salūte rei pūblicae!
17. Scimus metum rūmōris per oppida euntis magnum esse; Ō rūmōrēs dicentēs,  
ite in malam rem!
18. Deō scribe carmina, cuius nūminī placent omnia pia.
19. Nōlite ārās deōrum fulgentēs flammis ingentibus dēlēre, nisi ab eis opprimi  
optētis.
20. Postquam manum militum suam superatam vidit sēque libertātem mox  
perditūrum, memor generis amicōrumque et viriū, in bellum ruit atque  
pūgnāns interfectus est.
21. Rōma enim vertex omnium est civitātum. Quam ob rem ex urbe cēdis?
22. Sēnsus eōrum dē rē pūblicā mihi placeat nisi genus suum et nōmen semper  
populō dicentēs iacent.
23. Nisi rēgina infēlix amōre perdita esset, patriam ingentem numquam  
trādidisset et nunc omnēs eam populum bene regentem canerent. Multa enim  
amicis salūtem quaerentibus semper fēcerat; libertās salūsque omnium  
semper ei cūrae fuerant. Haec autem omnia mala ei ob amōrem sunt.
24. Vir fāmā ingēns glōriāque et viribus sua iēcit in litus arma dicēns sē  
numquam prō patriā pūgnātūrum esse nisi ingentia facta rēgi ā civibus  
mōnstrārentur.
25. Ovidius poēta dicit dūrum hominum genus saxīs in terram iactātis nātum  
esse. [Ovidius, -ī, M., 'Ovid', a poet of the Augustan Age]
26. Helena, speciē pulchra, salūtem petēbat iēns longē sub lūnā per oppidum  
ardēns. Incolentibus oppidum neque spēs erat neque fructus. Dī superī  
primā lūce post longum tempus domibus in oppidō discessērunt et novās  
quaesivērunt. [Helena -ae, F., 'Helen', the name of the Greek woman over  
whom the Trojan war was fought]
27. Nē longum sit, civēs, vōbis omnia dicam ut dē sentiētiis huius rēgis sciātis.
28. Civēs, intellegite spem omnium in vestris manibus positam esse; pōnite  
vestram spem in armis et pūgnāte magnā cum fidē et vigōre.
29. Ille est homō sine rē, sine fidē, sine spē.

30. a) Socius nōs iussit corpora lūce carentium ā campō removēre.  
 b) Socius nōbīs imperāvit ut corpora lūce carentium ā campō removērēmus.  
 31. Magister nōbīs dē mōtibus siderum in pūblicō dixit.

## II.

1. He felt that the enemy was serving as the author of evil for that city which had been oppressed for many years by all sorts of destruction.  
(use double dative construction)
2. Soldiers! Destroy the republic! Overcome all free men! Throw liberty, hope, and faith out of the state! Know that all men are your slaves!
3. At daybreak the fugitives, unfortunate in appearance, going hopefully through all the streets of the town, were sought far and wide by the soldiers.
4. Mindful of all dangers, the fugitives went from home, throwing cares from their breasts and seeking Rome as the summit to their hopes.
5. Marcus, my son, don't look at the arms of the invaders which are shining in the light of the moon.

## III. Readings

## A. Martial 5.57:

Cum<sup>1</sup> voco tē dominum, nōli tibi, Cinna,<sup>2</sup> placēre:  
 saepe<sup>3</sup> etiam<sup>4</sup> servum sic<sup>5</sup> resalūto<sup>6</sup> tuum.

<sup>1</sup> cum (conj.), 'when'    <sup>2</sup> Cinna, -ae, M., a man's name    <sup>3</sup> saepe (adv.), 'often'  
<sup>4</sup> etiam (adv.), 'even'    <sup>5</sup> sic (adv.), 'thus, in this way'    <sup>6</sup> resalūtō (1), 'greet in return'

## B. Martial 5.58:

Crās<sup>1</sup> tē victūrum, crās<sup>1</sup> dicis, Postume,<sup>2</sup> semper.  
 Dic mihi, crās<sup>1</sup> istud,<sup>3</sup> Postume,<sup>2</sup> quando<sup>4</sup> venit?  
 Quam<sup>5</sup> longē crās<sup>1</sup> istud,<sup>3</sup> ubi<sup>6</sup> est? Aut<sup>7</sup> unde<sup>8</sup> petendum?  
 Numquid<sup>9</sup> apud<sup>10</sup> Parthōs<sup>11</sup> Armeniōsque<sup>12</sup> latet?<sup>13</sup>  
 Iam<sup>14</sup> crās<sup>1</sup> istud<sup>3</sup> habet Priamī<sup>15</sup> vel<sup>16</sup> Nestoris<sup>17</sup> annōs.

. . .

Crās<sup>1</sup> vivēs? Hodiē<sup>18</sup> iam<sup>14</sup> vivere, Postume,<sup>2</sup> sērum<sup>19</sup> est:  
 ille sapit<sup>20</sup> quisquis,<sup>21</sup> Postume,<sup>2</sup> vixit heri.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>1</sup> crās (adv.), 'tomorrow'    <sup>2</sup> Postumus, -i, M., a man's name    <sup>3</sup> istud (nom. sing. N.), 'that (of yours)'; here, modifying crās, which is being used as a noun    <sup>4</sup> quandō (interrogative adv.), 'when'    <sup>5</sup> quam (adv.), 'how'    <sup>6</sup> ubi (adv.), 'where'    <sup>7</sup> aut (conj.), 'or'    <sup>8</sup> unde (adv.), 'from which place, from where'    <sup>9</sup> numquid (interrogative adv.), introduces a question; do not translate    <sup>10</sup> apud (prep. + acc.), 'at, with, among'    <sup>11</sup> Parthus, -i, M., 'a Parthian'    <sup>12</sup> Armenius, -i, M., 'an Armenian'    <sup>13</sup> lateō, -ēre, latui, --, 'lie hidden'    <sup>14</sup> iam (adv.), 'now, already'    <sup>15</sup> Priamus, -i, M., 'Priam', aged king of Troy    <sup>16</sup> vel (conj.), 'or'    <sup>17</sup> Nestor, -oris, M., 'Nestor', an aged Greek    <sup>18</sup> hodiē (adv.), 'today'    <sup>19</sup> sērus, -a, -um, 'late, too late'    <sup>20</sup> sapiō, -ere, -ivi, --, 'be wise'    <sup>21</sup> quisquis (nom. sing. M.), 'whoever'    <sup>22</sup> heri (adv.), 'yesterday'



C. A selection from Terence, *Eunuch* 130–135 (very slightly adapted). Thais explains how she came into the ownership of one of her slave women, Pamphila, supposed to be her sister.

Hoc audite amābō.<sup>1</sup> Māter mea illic<sup>2</sup> mortua est<sup>3</sup>  
 nūper,<sup>4</sup> cuius frāter aliquantum<sup>5</sup> ad<sup>6</sup> rem<sup>7</sup> est avidus.<sup>8</sup>  
 Is ubi<sup>9</sup> esse hanc fōrmā<sup>10</sup> videt honestā virginem<sup>11</sup>  
 et fidibus<sup>12</sup> scire,<sup>13</sup> pretium<sup>14</sup> spērāns<sup>15</sup> ilicō<sup>16</sup>  
 prōdūcit,<sup>17</sup> vendit.<sup>18</sup> Forte<sup>19</sup> fortunā<sup>19</sup> adfuit<sup>20</sup>  
 hic meus amicus: emit<sup>21</sup> eam dōnō mihi,  
 imprūdēns<sup>22</sup> hārum rērum ignārusque<sup>23</sup> omnium.

<sup>1</sup> amābō, the idiomatic way of saying “please”    <sup>2</sup> illic (adv.), ‘there’    <sup>3</sup> mortua est, ‘(she) died’    <sup>4</sup> nūper (adv.), ‘recently’    <sup>5</sup> aliquantum (adv.), ‘somewhat’    <sup>6</sup> ad (prep. + acc.), here ‘for (the purpose of)’    <sup>7</sup> rēs, here ‘material gain, profit’    <sup>8</sup> avidus, -a, -um, ‘eager’    <sup>9</sup> ubi (conj.), ‘when’    <sup>10</sup> fōrmā... honestā: the ablative is here used to describe hanc... virginem, this maiden ‘of distinguished beauty’ (see Unit Ten, section D)    <sup>11</sup> virgō, -inis, F., ‘maiden’    <sup>12</sup> fidēs, -ium, F. (pl.), ‘a lyre, stringed instrument’    <sup>13</sup> sciō, here ‘be knowledgeable, skilled’    <sup>14</sup> pretium, -ī, N., ‘price’    <sup>15</sup> spērō (1), ‘hope (for)’    <sup>16</sup> ilicō (adv.), ‘right there, on the spot’    <sup>17</sup> prōdūcō (prō + dūcō), ‘lead forth, put up (for auction)’    <sup>18</sup> vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditus, ‘sell’    <sup>19</sup> forte fortunā, ‘by great good luck’, Fors Fortūna, a goddess whom the Romans associated with great strokes of good luck    <sup>20</sup> adsum (ad + sum), ‘be present’    <sup>21</sup> emō, -ere, ēmī, ēemptus, ‘buy’    <sup>22</sup> imprūdēns, imprudentis, ‘unaware (of)’ (+ gen.)    <sup>23</sup> ignārus, -a, -um, ‘ignorant (of)’ (+ gen.)

D. A WEALTHY MAN DESCRIBES HIS TOMBSTONE (Petronius, *Satyricon* 71.9):

Tē rogō<sup>1</sup> ut nāvēs<sup>2</sup> etiam<sup>3</sup> in monumentō<sup>4</sup> meō faciās plēnis<sup>5</sup> vēlis euntēs, et mē in tribūnālī<sup>6</sup> sedentem<sup>7</sup> praetextātum<sup>8</sup> cum ānulīs<sup>9</sup> aureis quinque et nummōs<sup>10</sup> in pūblicō dē sacculō<sup>11</sup> effundentem.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> rogō (1), ‘ask’    <sup>2</sup> nāvis, nāvis, F., ‘ship’    <sup>3</sup> etiam (adv.), ‘even’    <sup>4</sup> monumentum, -ī, N., ‘monument’    <sup>5</sup> plēnus, -a, -um, ‘full’    <sup>6</sup> tribūnal, -ālis, N., ‘raised platform’ (on which magistrates sat)    <sup>7</sup> sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, ‘sit’    <sup>8</sup> praetextātus, -a, -um, ‘wearing the toga worn by magistrates’    <sup>9</sup> ānulus, -ī, M., ‘ring’    <sup>10</sup> nummus, -ī, M., ‘coin’    <sup>11</sup> sacculus, -ī, M., ‘purse’    <sup>12</sup> effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, ‘pour out’



# REVIEW: UNITS FIVE TO EIGHT

## Review of Syntax

1. Amice, nē mihi illud dixeris; nōlī mihi illud dicere; dic illud mihi.  
(vocative; negative and positive imperatives; complementary infinitive)
2. Illis vitam male agentibus sunt multae cūrae. [**male**, 'badly']  
(dative of the possessor)
3. Bellum prō patriā gestūrī et sociis dicentēs mortis timōrem ex animō pellendum esse, ā locō nostrī cessērunt nōn solum ut ad campum hostium īrent sed etiam ut exemplum mīlitibus pōnerent. [**animus**, ī, M., 'soul']  
(subject accusative and passive periphrastic infinitive in indirect statement; ablative of separation; ablative of place from which; accusative of place to which with **ad**; dative of reference)
4. Cēnantī mihi cum fēminā et filiis liber ā servō semper legitur. [**cēnō** (1), 'dine']  
(ablative of accompaniment)
5. Meā opiniōne, illī profugī sentiunt libertātem cīvium dēlendā esse (fuisse).  
(ablative of respect; subject accusative and passive periphrastic infinitive in indirect statement)
6. Eō tempore rēx spērāvit sē urbem timōre et servitūte liberātūrū esse. Illā autem nocte interfectus est. Nunc cīvītās rēge bonō caret.  
(ablatives of time when; subject accusative and infinitive in indirect statement; ablatives of separation)
7. Populus nōn solum ab īsulā sed etiam Rōmā salūtī cīvītātī vēnit.  
(ablative of place from which, with and without a preposition; double dative construction)
8. Hominibus semper est cūra dē pecūniā; dis numquam.  
(datives of possessor)
9. Rōmae Athēnisque et multis in urbibus populus liber semper pūgnābit ut multa bona habeat. In hāc autem urbe libertās populi ā rēge ācrī dēlēta est; opus est fortī ut cīvēs liberī sint.  
(locatives; place where with **in**; **opus est** with the ablative)
10. Dē caelō, terrā, maribus montibusque magister multa dixit ut dē nātūrā intelgāmus.

11. *Quinque annis eius corpus vigore caruit qui semper ante fuerat.*  
(ablative of time within which; possession with the pronoun **is, ea, id**;  
ablative of separation)
12. *Dixistis illum multos vestrum eo die domum quae ab invadentibus deleretur  
sine mora missum esse ut hostes rure pelleretis.*  
(ablative of time when; accusative of place to which without a preposition  
with the word **domus**; subject accusative and infinitive in indirect statement;  
subjunctive in a subordinate clause within an indirect statement; ablative of  
place from which without a preposition with the word **rursus**)
13. *Omnēs fructūs ē sē iecerunt ut validi corporibus essent.*  
(ablative of separation; ablative of respect)
14. *Poteritne civitas periculum temporum nostrorum superare?*  
(complementary infinitive)
15. *Rumor per Asiam ruerat et ad Italiam magnā cum vi ierat.*  
(accusative of place to which with **ad**)
16. *Amore carētis sine quō vita nōn potest esse felix.*  
(ablative of separation; complementary infinitive)
17. *Fidēs valida opus est in rebus gravibus illius generis.*  
(**opus est** with nominative)
18. *Sciō eōs malos qui in urbe vivant (qui Rōmae vivant) amore pecūniae multos  
annos rectos esse.*  
(subject accusative and infinitive in indirect statement; ablative of place  
where with **in**; subjunctive in a subordinate clause within an indirect state-  
ment; locative case; accusative of duration of time)
19. *Bellum pugnandum est sociis captis ut sint liberi.*  
(passive periphrastic and dative of agent)
20. *Post bellum superatis neque pecunia neque cibus erat.*  
(dative of the possessor)
21. *Liber a poeta scriptus est; liber poetae scribendus est; poeta librum scribere  
debet.*  
(passive periphrastic; dative of agent; complementary infinitive)
22. *Poeta canens imperia antiqua ferro delata interfectus est a viris in oppido  
ante visis.*
23. *Quibuscum in oppido visus es? Cum quibus amicis in oppido visus es?  
Quibuscum ambulabamus amici sunt.*  
(ablatives of accompaniment)
24. *Ē quā deā ille natus est?*  
(ablative of origin)
25. *Libertas civium erat regi curae. Cui dicēbās tē auxiliō futurum. [auxilium,  
-i, N., 'aid']*  
(double dative construction)

### Synopsis of Verbs

A full synopsis should include the active and passive forms of the verb in the indicative and subjunctive moods, as well as all the participles and infinitives. The following synopsis of **inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus** in the second person singular will serve as a model:

**inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus, 'come upon, find'**

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<b>INDICATIVE</b>		
Present	invenis	invenīris (invenīre)
Imperfect	inveniēbās	inveniēbāris (inveniēbare)
Future	inveniēs	inveniēris (inveniēre)
Perfect	invēnistī	inventus (-a, -um) es
Pluperfect	invēnerās	inventus (-a, -um) erās
Future Perfect	invēneris	inventus (-a, -um) eris
<b>SUBJUNCTIVE</b>		
Present	inveniās	inveniāris (inveniāre)
Imperfect	invenīrēs	invenīrēris (invenīrēre)
Perfect	invēneris	inventus (-a, -um) sis
Pluperfect	invēnissēs	inventus (-a, -um) essēs
<b>PARTICIPLES</b>		
Present	inveniēns	--
Future	inventūrus, -a, -um	inveniendus, -a, -um
Perfect	--	inventus, -a, -um
<b>INFINITIVES</b>		
Present	invenīre	invenīrī
Future	inventūrus (-a, -um) esse	--
Perfect	invēnisse	inventus (-a, -um) esse

## UNITS 5-8: Self-Review A

- I.
- A. Give all possibilities for the following forms, remembering to take into account long and short quantities:
1. sensus
  2. res
  3. ingenti animali
  4. spebus

B. Fully describe the *form* of each of the following, giving all possibilities of interpretation, and then give the dictionary forms (principal parts) for each:

1. arsurus esse
2. tecta
3. spargere (give three possibilities when the *-e-* of the penult is short, and one additional possibility when the *-e-* is long)
4. petenda sunt
5. vocatae erant
6. quaeratis
7. iecisse
8. cani

## II.

Translate these sentences and then do whatever is required for each one:

1. Socii si hostium urbem media nocte ferro flammisque capere potuissent, hoc genus belli nunc militibus nostris non pugnandum esset.
  - a) Give the syntax of **militibus**.
  - b) Give the syntax of **pugnandum esset**.
2. Sciebat auctores horum operum omnium quae omnes cives legissent multa de civitatis nostrae libertate cecinisse.
  - a) Give the syntax of **legissent**.
  - b) Give the syntax of **auctores**.
  - c) Change **sciebat** to the future tense and make any other necessary change(s), explaining why you made them.
3. Verba illorum hominum se multis carere dicentium sed nihil tamen optare vos non solum servitute pecuniae liberabunt sed etiam felices facient.
  - a) Syntax of **se**?
  - b) Syntax of **dicentium**?
  - c) Syntax of **servitute**?
  - d) Rewrite in indirect statement after **scit**.
  - e) Rewrite the original sentence, changing the participial construction to a relative clause.
4. Quis hoc imperium, quis hunc timorem optare potest?
  - a) Rewrite completely in the plural.
  - b) Change **potest** to the *imperfect* tense.
5. Quibus manibus prima luce cives huius rei publicae opprimendi erant?
  - a) Syntax of **luce**?
6. Cape oppidum! Amici nostri ex urbe discedentes bellum in provincia gladiis gesturi sunt.
  - a) Syntax of **urbe**?

7. Pueris, carmina auctorum cum diligentia audire iussis, multi libri novi scripti erant ut mens sana in corpore sano eis esset.

a) Syntax of *eis*?

### III.

Translate into Latin:

1. His sister said to her (own) friend that she (herself) had to destroy the severe rumor about her (own) father.  
(Translate two ways: first, with a passive periphrastic; second, with *debeo*.)
2. Don't hate those men; for much time they have been oppressed by the soldiers, strong in body, who had attacked these walls.

## Answer Key — UNITS 5–8: Self-Review A

### I.

- A. 1. nominative sing., genitive sing., nominative pl., accusative pl. of *sēnsus*, -ūs, M.  
OR masculine nominative sing. of the perfect passive participle of *sentiō*, -īre, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*
2. nominative sing., nominative or accusative pl. of *rēs*, *reī*, F.
3. dative or ablative sing. of *ingēns animal*
4. dative or ablative pl. of *spēs*, *speī*, F.
- B. 1. nominative masculine sing. of the future active infinitive: *ardeō*, -ēre, *arsī*, *arsus*
2. nominative or accusative pl. of *tēctum*, -ī, N.  
OR nominative or accusative neuter pl. or feminine nominative sing. of the perfect passive participle of *tegō*, *tegere*, *tēxī*, *tēctus*
3. short -e-: present active infinitive, 2nd sing. present passive indicative, 2nd sing. passive imperative  
long -ē-: 2nd sing. future passive indicative: *spargō*, *spargere*, *sparsī*, *sparsus*
4. 3rd pl. neuter present indicative passive periphrastic: *petō*, -ere, -īvī, -ītus
5. 3rd pl. feminine pluperfect passive indicative: *vocō* (1)
6. 2nd pl. present active subjunctive: *quaerō*, -ere, *quaesivī*, *quaesitus*
7. perfect active infinitive: *iaciō*, -ere, *iēcī*, *iactus*
8. present passive infinitive: *canō*, -ere, *cecinī*, *cantus*

### II.

1. If the allies had been able to capture the enemies' city in the middle of the night with sword and flames, this kind of war would not now have to be fought by our soldiers.



- a) dative of agent with passive periphrastic
  - b) passive periphrastic 3rd sing. imperfect subjunctive in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
2. He knew that the authors of all these works, which all the citizens had read, had sung many things about the freedom of our state.
- a) 3rd pl. pluperfect active subjunctive subordinate clause in indirect statement in secondary sequence. *Pluperfect* subjunctive because action occurs *before* that of *sciēbat*
  - b) accusative pl., subject of *cecinnisse*, infinitive in indirect statement
  - c) *sciet* . . . *lēgerint*  
perfect subjunctive, primary sequence
3. The words of those men who say (saying) that they lack many things, but nevertheless desire (wish for) nothing, will not only free you from the slavery of money but also will make you happy.
- a) accusative pl. subject of *carēre*, infinitive in indirect statement
  - b) genitive pl. present participle in agreement with *hominum*
  - c) ablative of separation
  - d) *Scit verba illōrum hominum sē multīs carēre dicentium sed nihil tamen optāre, vōs nōn solum servitūte pecūniae liberātūra esse sed etiam fēlicēs factūra esse.*
  - e) *Verba illōrum hominum quī dicunt sē multīs carēre* . . .
4. Who can (is able to) desire (wish for) this power, who can (is able to) desire (wish for) this fear?
- a) *Quī haec imperia, quī hōs timōrēs optāre possunt?*
  - b) *poterat*
5. By what hands had the citizens of this republic to be oppressed at dawn?
- a) ablative of time when
6. Capture the town! Our friends departing (who are departing) from the city are about (going/ready) to wage war in the province with (their) swords.
- a) ablative of place from which
7. Many new books had been written for the boys ordered (who had been ordered) to listen diligently (with diligence) to the authors' poems in order that they might have a sound mind in a sound body.
- a) dative of possessor with *esset*

### III.

- 1. *Soror eius amicō suō dixit rūmōrem gravem sibi dē patre suō dēlendum esse. Soror eius amicō suō dixit sē rūmōrem gravem dē patre suō dēlēre dēbēre.*
- 2. *Nē ōderis* (OR *nōlī ōdisse*) *illōs*; *multum tempus ā militibus, fortibus* (validis) *corpore, quī oppūgnāverant haec moenia oppressi sunt.*

## UNITS 5-8: Self-Review B

### I.

- A. Identify each of the following forms, giving *all* possibilities and listing principal parts for verbs and the nominative singular, genitive singular, and gender for nouns:

- |             |              |            |              |              |
|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. arsis    | 3. invadendi | 5. rebus   | 7. manuum    | 9. vocaturus |
| 2. imperans | 4. iturae    | 6. vertice | 8. removisse | 10. iaci     |

- B. Change each of the following from the singular to the plural:

- |                 |                 |             |
|-----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. illius lucis | 3. eo tempore   | 5. meam vim |
| 2. huic fructui | 4. cuius sensus |             |

- C. List all infinitives, participles, and imperatives (active and passive) of **dico**.

### II.

Translate each of the following and complete whatever is required in addition:

1. Si cives verba auctorum clarorum audivissent, viris infelicibus magna bella non pugnanda essent.
  - a) Explain the syntax of the phrase **viris infelicibus**.
  - b) Explain the syntax of **pugnanda essent**.
  - c) Rewrite the sentence completely in the singular.
2. Dicit regem, qui oppida Romanorum bello oppugnet, milites validos superare posse.
  - a) Syntax of **regem**?
  - b) Syntax of **oppugnet**?
  - c) Syntax of **superare**?
  - d) Syntax of **posse**?
  - e) Write the sentence as a direct statement.
  - f) If **dicit** is changed to **dixit**, how will the translation be different? What change will have to be made in the subordinate clause?
3. Quibus viris, oppida Romanorum deleturis, gladii dati erant, ut cum hostibus eorum bellum gererent?
  - a) Explain the form of **deleturis**.
4. Eo tempore femina quae formā pulchra erat ab auctore librum novum scripturo amabatur.
  - a) Explain the syntax of **tempore**.
  - b) Syntax of **formā**?
  - c) Syntax of **scripturo**?

5. Magister superandus erit traditis si malum e terra pulsuri erunt.

a) Give the syntax of **traditis**.

### III.

Translate into Latin:

1. They say that the mountain on which the gods are found is always covered with golden light.
2. That man's mother told him that the great works of Roman authors had to be read by all who wished to complete their lives with glory.

Translate "who wished . . ." in two ways:

- a) with a relative clause
- b) with a participle

## Answer Key — UNITS 5–8: Self-Review B

### I.

- A.
1. all genders dative or ablative pl. of the perfect passive participle: **ardeō**, **-ēre**, **arsī**, **arsus**
  2. all genders nominative sing. or neuter accusative sing. of the present participle: **imperō** (1)
  3. masculine or neuter genitive sing. or nominative masculine pl. of the future passive participle: **invādō**, **invādere**, **invāsī**, **invāsus**
  4. feminine nominative pl., genitive sing., dative sing. of the future active participle: **eō**, **īre**, **īi** (**īvī**), **ītus**
  5. dative or ablative pl.: **rēs**, **reī**, F.
  6. ablative sing.: **vertex**, **verticis**, M.
  7. genitive pl.: **manus**, **manūs**, F.
  8. perfect active infinitive: **removeō**, **-ēre**, **remōvī**, **remōtus**
  9. nominative masculine sing. of the future active participle: **vocō** (1)
  10. present passive infinitive: **iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactus**
- B.
1. illārum lūcum
  2. his fructibus
  3. eis temporibus
  4. quōrum sēnsuum
  5. meās virēs (-is)

### C. Infinitives:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	dicere	dīcī
Perfect	dixisse	dictus, -a, -um esse
Future	dictūrus, -a, -um esse	--

## Participles:

Present active	dicēns
Perfect passive	dictus, -a, -um
Future active	dictūrus, -a, -um
Future passive	dicendus, -a, -um

## Imperatives:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Active	dic	dicite
Passive	dicere	dicimini

## II.

- If the citizens had heard (listened to) the words of the famous authors, great wars would not have to be fought by the unhappy men.
  - dative of agent with passive periphrastic
  - passive periphrastic 3rd pl. imperfect subjunctive in a mixed contrary-to-fact condition
  - Sī cīvis verbum auctōris clārī audīvisset, virō infēlicī magnum bellum nōn pūgnandum esset.*
- He says that the king, who attacks (is attacking) the towns of the Romans by means of war, is able to overcome the strong soldiers.
  - accusative sing., subject of infinitive **posse** in indirect statement
  - 3rd sing. present active subjunctive in a subordinate relative clause in indirect statement, primary sequence depending on **dicīt**
  - complementary infinitive
  - present infinitive in indirect statement
  - Rēx, quī oppida Rōmānōrum bellō oppūgnat, militēs validōs superāre potest.*
  - He said . . . ; was attacking . . . ; was able to overcome . . . ; **oppūgnāret**; but if **dixit** is translated as an English present perfect, i.e., 'he has said', then no change has to be made in the rest of the translation or in the subordinate clause.
- To which (what) men about to destroy (who were about to destroy) the towns of the Romans had the swords been given in order that they might wage war with their enemies?
  - dative pl. future active participle, agreeing with **virīs**
- At that time a (the) woman who was beautiful in form was loved by an (the) author about (who was about) to write a new book.
  - ablative of time when
  - ablative of respect
  - ablative masculine sing., future active participle modifying **auctōre**

5. The master (director) will have to be conquered by the men who have been betrayed if they are (will be) about to drive evil out of the land.  
a) dative pl. masculine of the perfect passive participle;  
dative of agent with passive periphrastic construction

### III.

1. Dicunt montem in quō dī inveniuntur lūce aureā semper tegī.
2. Māter illius ei dixit magna opera auctōrum Rōmānōrum omnibus legenda esse quī vitās (suās) cum glōriā cōficere (perficere) optārent.  
*or* ...omnibus optantibus vitās cum glōriā cōficere (perficere).



# UNIT NINE

## A. Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives in Latin occur in three *degrees*: positive (e.g., “brave”), comparative (e.g., “braver, rather brave, too brave”), and superlative (e.g., “bravest, most brave, very brave”). Adjectives appear in the vocabularies in the positive degree.

Note the following observations for the formation of the comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives.

### 1. COMPARATIVE

Find the stem of the adjective by dropping the genitive singular ending from the positive form, and to this stem add **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, **-ius** for the neuter.

validus, -a, -um	valid/i	validior, validius
fortis, -e	fort/is	fortior, fortius

The comparative adjective is declined like third declension adjectives, but with **-um** in the genitive plural instead of **-ium** and with **-a** in the neuter nominative and accusative plural instead of **-ia** (that is, it is not an i-stem). The stem for adjectives in the comparative degree is the full nominative singular masculine-feminine form, with the **-o-** lengthened.

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
fortiōri	fortiōri	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs(-is)	fortiōra
fortiōre(-ī)	fortiōre(-ī)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

### 2. SUPERLATIVE

Most adjectives form the superlative by adding **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the stem of the positive form.

validissimus, -a, -um

fortissimus, -a, -um

These are declined like first-second declension adjectives.

Adjectives which end in **-er** in the masculine nominative singular of the positive degree form the superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** directly to the masculine nominative form.

âcer, âcris, âcre      âcerrimus, -a, -um

Six adjectives which end in **-lis** in the masculine and feminine nominative singular of the positive degree form the superlative by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the stem of the positive degree.

similis, -e      simillimus, -a, -um

These adjectives are:

facilis, -e	easy
difficilis, -e	difficult
similis, -e	similar
dissimilis, -e	unlike
gracilis, -e	slender
humilis, -e	humble, low

### 3. Quam PLUS THE SUPERLATIVE

**Quam** followed by an adjective (or adverb) in the superlative degree gives the meaning 'as... as possible'.

**Quam fortissimus est.** He is *as brave as possible*; he is *as brave as can be*.

### B. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

Five common adjectives have irregular comparisons and must be learned.

bonus, -a, -um	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
good	better	best
malus, -a, -um	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
bad	worse	worst
magnus, -a, -um	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
great	greater	greatest
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
small	smaller	smallest
multus, -a, -um	plūs (neuter only in sing.)	plūrimus, -a, -um
much	pl., plūrēs, plūra	most, very many
	more	

NOTE: The masculine plural comparative of **magnus**, **maiōrēs**, is frequently used to mean 'ancestors', (i.e., 'those greater [in respect to age]').

### C. Comparison with *quam*; Ablative of Comparison

Comparisons can be made in two ways in Latin:

1. Pater eius est altior **quam** hospes. His father is taller *than the guest*.

The conjunction **quam** is here equivalent to the English 'than'. As in English, **quam**, 'than', has the same case after it as it has before it.

Dixit patrem esse altiorem **quam** hospitem. He said that his father was taller *than the guest*.

Pater est altior **quam** ego. The father is taller *than I*.

2. Pater eius est altior hospite. His father is taller *than the guest*.

Here the ablative, without a preposition, is used with the comparative adjective to denote comparison. The ablative of comparison and the construction with **quam** may be used interchangeably with no distinction in meaning.

### D. Ablative of Degree of Difference

The ablative, without a preposition, is used with comparatives to express the degree in which the two things being compared differ. Less frequently, this kind of ablative is also found with a superlative in statements in which there is an implicit comparative judgment made.

Pater eius est <b>pede</b> altior hospite (quam hospes).	His father is taller than the guest <i>by a foot</i> ; his father is <i>a foot</i> taller than the guest.
Nunc <b>multō</b> fēlicior est.	Now he is happier <i>by much</i> ; he is <i>much</i> happier now.
<b>Multō</b> optimus ex omnibus pūgnantibus est.	He is <i>by far (much)</i> the best of all who are fighting.

### E. Adverbs and Their Comparison

1. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives. Two of the more frequent formations of the positive degree are noted below:

- a) From adjectives of the first and second declensions, adverbs are frequently formed by adding the ending **-ē** to the stem of the adjective.

miser, misera, miserum	miserē
poor	poorly

- b) Adverbs formed from adjectives of the third declension frequently exhibit the ending **-iter**.

fortis, -e	fortiter
strong	strongly, bravely

There is no way to determine that a given adverb will not be formed according to these rules; adverbs formed differently will be given as vocabulary items.

2. The comparative degree of an adverb is formed by adding the ending **-ius** to the stem of the positive degree of the *adjective*. It will be noted that the comparative is really the neuter accusative singular of the comparative of the adjective.

fortiter	fortius
bravely	more bravely, rather bravely, too bravely
facile	facilius
easily	more easily, rather easily, too easily
miserē	miserius
poorly	more poorly, rather poorly, too poorly

3. The superlative is formed with the ending **-issimē** (or **-rimē**, **-limē** when the adjective would be thus formed; see section A above) added to the stem of the positive degree of the *adjective*.

fortissimē	most bravely
facillimē	most easily
miserrimē	most poorly
quam miserrimē	as poorly as possible

## F. Irregular Comparison of Adverbs

bene	melius	optimē
well	better	best
male	peius	pessimē
badly	worse	worst
magnopere	magis	maximē
greatly	more	most, especially
parum	minus	minimē
not enough	less	least
multum	plūs	plūrimum
much	more	most
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
long (in time), for a long time	longer	longest

saepe	saepius	saepissimē
often	more often	very often
--	prius	primum
	before	first
prope	propius	proximē
near	nearer	nearest, next

### G. Partitive Genitive

The genitive is sometimes used in Latin to express the *whole* group or unit of which the word on which the genitive depends expresses the *part*. This usage is called the *partitive genitive* or the *genitive of the whole*.

Fortissimus omnium militum ad mē vēnit.	The bravest of all the soldiers came to me.
Multi hominum opiniōnēs sapientium laudent.	Many of the men praise the opin- ions of the wise.

The ablative, preceded by the prepositions **ē** (**ex**), or **dē** is used as an alternative to the partitive genitive with some words. This is especially frequent when the word denoting the *part* is a cardinal numeral.

Quīnque ex militibus domum vēnērunt.	Five of (out of) the soldiers came home.
--------------------------------------	---

Some words used substantively in Latin require a partitive genitive to render an idea which in English would be expressed with a noun and adjective.

Satis pecūniae habet.	He has enough (of) money.
Plūs pecūniae habet quam tū.	He has more (of) money than you.

In the singular, the word **plūs** is used substantively and is generally indeclinable; in the plural, it is used attributively and is declined.

Plūs hominum ad sē vocāvit.	He called more (of) men to him.
Plūrēs hominēs ad sē vocāvit.	He called more men to him.

## UNIT NINE — VOCABULARY

aiō (defective verb)	say, affirm
[pres.: aiō, ais, ait, --, --, aiunt imperf.: aiēbam, etc. (complete) pres. subjunctive: --, aiās, aiat, --, --, aiant]	
amicitia, -ae, F.	friendship



<b>cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus</b>	fall
<b>cāsus, -ūs, M.</b>	fall, accident, occurrence, chance
<b>cōnsilium, -ī, N.</b>	counsel, plan, advice
<b>crūdēlis, -e</b>	cruel
<b>dēmēns, dēmentis</b>	mad, raving
<b>facilis, -e</b>	easy
<b>facile (adv.)</b>	easily
<b>difficilis, -e</b>	difficult
<b>gracilis, -e</b>	slender, unadorned, simple
<b>hospes, -itis, M.</b>	guest, host
<b>humilis, -e</b>	humble, lowly
<b>laudō (1)</b>	praise
<b>laus, laudis, F.</b>	praise
<b>magnopere (adv.)</b>	greatly
<b>maiōrēs, -um, M. pl.</b>	ancestors
<b>male (adv.)</b>	badly
<b>Mārs, Mārtis, M.</b>	Mars (god of war)
<b>multum (adv.)</b>	much, very
<b>mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus</b>	fortify
<b>nam (conj.)</b>	for
<b>odium, -ī, N.</b>	hatred
<b>parum (adv. and indeclinable adj.)</b>	too little, not enough
<b>parvus, -a, -um</b>	little, small
<b>prius (adv.)</b>	before, previously
<b>quam primum</b>	as soon as possible
<b>proximus, -a, -um</b>	nearest, next
<b>quam (conj.)</b>	than (used in comparisons)
<b>saepe (adv.)</b>	often
<b>sapiēns, -ntis</b>	wise
<b>sapientia, -ae, F.</b>	wisdom
<b>satis (adv. and indeclinable adj.)</b>	enough
<b>serēnus, -a, -um</b>	serene, calm
<b>similis, -e</b>	like, similar (to) (+ gen. or dat.)
<b>dissimilis, -e</b>	dissimilar, unlike (+ gen. or dat.)
<b>solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus</b>	loosen, free, untie
<b>summus, -a, -um</b>	highest, top (of)
<b>supplex, supplicis</b>	suppliant, humble
<b>tam (adv.)</b>	so
<b>tam ... quam</b>	so ... as, as ... as
<b>templum, -ī, N.</b>	temple
<b>tūtus, -a, -um</b>	safe

## UNIT NINE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

The easiest way to memorize the irregular comparisons of adjectives is to associate the forms with the English derivatives:

**bonus, melior** (*ameliorate* is to make *better*), **optimus** (an *optimist* is a person who looks at the *best* side of things)

**malus, peior** (a *pejorative* meaning of a word is a *worse* one), **pessimus** (a *pessimist* is a person who looks at the *worst* side of things)

**magnus, maior** (a *major* problem is a *rather great* one), **maximus** (the *maximum* penalty is the *largest* one)

**parvus, minor** (a *minor* problem is a *rather small* one; eight *minus* (*smaller* [by]) two is six), **minimus** (the *minimum* penalty is the *smallest* one)

**multus, plūs** (six *plus* (*more* [by]) two is eight; *plural* means *more* than one), **plūrimum** does not have an English derivative.

**Maiōrēs, maiōrum**, M. pl. means 'ancestors' because they are the ones 'greater (in age)' than we are.

**Quam** with the superlative means 'as...as possible'; with the comparative it means 'than'. **Quam** can mean 'how' in an exclamatory sense: **Quam pulchra est!**, 'How beautiful she is!' And, of course, **quam** can be the feminine accusative singular of the relative pronoun or interrogative adjective.

**Aiō** is a defective verb with not many forms; the present tense of the indicative is found in four persons, of the subjunctive in three. The imperfect indicative is complete. The verb means 'say' or 'say yes'.

The suffix **-tia**, sometimes with a connecting vowel, or the suffix **-ia** is added to the stem of an adjective to produce an abstract noun; thus, **amicitia** is 'friendship'. **Sapiēns**, 'wise', produces **sapientia**, 'wisdom'.

**Cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus**, 'fall', has many compounds; it must not be confused with **caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus**, 'fell, cut', which also has many compounds. **Incidō**, 'fall into, happen', is a compound of **in** + **cadō**; **incidō**, 'cut into, engrave', is from **in** + **caedō**; the **-ae-** diphthong becomes **-ī-** in compounds. Once again it is clear that it pays to be attentive to long and short vowels. The last principal part of **cadō** produces the fourth declension noun **cāsus, cāsūs**, M., 'fall, accident, occurrence, chance'.

**Dēmēns (dē + mēns)** describes someone who is '(down, away) from his mind', thus, 'mad, raving'.

Note the irregular adverbs **facile**, 'easily'; **male**, 'badly'; **multum**, 'much, very'; and **magnopere** (uncontracted, **magnō opere**), 'with great work', thus, 'greatly'.

Remember that the six adjectives ending in **-lis** — **facilis, difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis**, and **humilis** — form their superlatives by doubling the **-l-** and adding **-imus**.

The noun **laus**, **laudis**, F., 'praise', is related to the first conjugation verb **laudō**, 'praise'.

**Nam** is a *conjunction* meaning 'for': **Nam omnis populus rēgem timuit**, 'For all the people feared the king'.

The neuter second declension noun **odium**, 'hatred', is related to the verb **ōdī**, 'hate'. The English word *annoy* comes from **in odiō**.

Sometimes an adjective is more easily translated as an adverb: **Humilēs in tēctum domini vēnimus**, 'We came humbly into the master's house'; literally, 'We, humble, came into the master's house'; **Primī accessērunt**, 'They were the first to approach' or 'They approached first'.

**Proximus**, -a, -um is often found with the dative: **Proximus turbae fuit**, 'He was nearest the crowd'.

**Similis** and **dissimilis** may govern either the genitive or the dative without distinction: **Patris similis est** and **Patrī similis est** both mean 'He is like his father'.

**Summus**, -a, -um means 'top (of)': **Animal in summō monte vīdimus**, 'We saw the animal on the top of the mountain'.

**Tam...quam** means 'so...as': **Quid est tam dulce quam habēre amicum cārissimum?**, 'What is so sweet as having (*literally*, 'to have') a very dear friend?'

## UNIT NINE — DRILL

### I.

Give the positive, comparative, and superlative forms of the following adjectives to go with each of the following nouns. Several interpretations of the cases of the nouns may be possible.

**miser, misera, miserum**, 'wretched, unhappy, poor'

**saevus, -a, -um**, 'cruel'

**humilis, -e**, 'humble, low'

- |            |              |              |            |
|------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. manuī   | 3. spērum    | 5. hominibus | 7. carmen  |
| 2. profugi | 4. civitātēs | 6. amicum    | 8. corpora |

### II.

Translate:

- Hoc opus difficilius est illō.
- Hoc opus difficilius est quam illud.
- Hoc opus difficilius est parvō quam illud.
- Hoc opus multō difficilius est illō.
- Hae fēminae sāniōrēs sunt illis.
- Hae fēminae multō sāniōrēs sunt quam illae.
- Dīcimus hās fēminās multō sāniōrēs esse quam illās.

8. Dicimus hās fēminās multō sāniōrēs esse illis.
9. Hi hominēs fortiōrēs plūs pecūniae optant.
10. Multa pecūnia hominibus meliōribus optanda est; parum pecūniae hominibus peiōribus optandum est.
11. Plūs pecūniae hominibus optandum est.
12. Plūs pecūniae hominibus meliōribus optandum est quam peiōribus.
13. Studium mihi dulcius est bellō.
14. Studium mihi dulcius est quam bellum.
15. Verba vēra mihi dixērunt.
16. Verba vēriōra mihi dixērunt.
17. Verba vērissima mihi dixērunt.
18. Verba quam vērissima mihi dixērunt.
19. Militēs ācerrimī rēgī ācriōrī dixērunt sē sentiētiās ācrēs magistrōrum petitūrōs esse.
20. Scīmus sentiētiās ācerrimās magistrōrum meliōrēs esse quam arma ācerrima.
21. Scīmus sentiētiās ācerrimās magistrōrum meliōrēs esse armīs ācerrimis.
22. Hic puer multō facilius quam frāter legit.
23. Militēs quam ācerrimē et fortissimē pūgnāvērunt.
24. Rēx novus melius quam pater rēxit.
25. Honestē et fēliciter vītam agere optāmus.

## UNIT NINE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B, C, D)

1. Domī quam tūtissimī esse dēbēmus.
2. a) Puer frātrī est simillimus, nam est tam sapiēns quam frāter.  
b) Puer est sorōris dissimilis.
3. Multō facilius est laudāre amicum quam inimicum.
4. Sapientēs aiunt amicitiam esse summum bonum.
5. Maiōribus fuisse odium belli dicitur.
6. Dōna cāriōra darī filiō sapientissimō iussit.
7. Tēcta domuum altiōrum (altissimārum) fulgēbant lūmine clāriōre (clārissimō).
8. Hic hospes multō serēnior est illō.
9. Supplicēs humillimī miserrimique timōre mōtī urbem regentēs magnopere laudāvērunt.
10. Multae urbēs antiquae pulcherrimaeque cāsū crūdēlissimō dēlētae sunt.
11. Auctor clārior erat frātre clārō.
12. Dicimus Mārtem saepe crūdēliōrem esse multīs dis.
13. Hic ager est quinque pedibus longior quam ille.
14. Nam cōsiliū dēmentis est multō crūdēlissimum.



## UNIT NINE — EXERCISES

## I.

1. Urbs pulcherrima nōn solum umbrā maiore timōris tegitur, sed etiam rūmōribus crūdēlibus (crūdēliōribus, crūdēlissimis) dē populō dēlētur.
2. Lūx discēdere incipit atque nox venit; maiōresque cadunt altis dē montibus umbrae.
3. Plūs studii in cūris animae pōnendum est quam in cūris corporis; nam anima est aeterna, sed corpus dēlēbitur.
4. Nihil est bellō tam simile quam ruīna.
5. Numquam, nisi mē saepius ōrāveris, servitūte amicum miserrimum facile solvēs.
6. Quam ob rem maxima dēbētur militibus fortissimis venia? Bellum diūtissimē et fortiter ab eis gestum est.
7. Bellum grave et crūdēlissimum militibus fortiōribus gerendum est nē nāti incolārum gladiis flammisque superentur.
8. Audiēbāmus multōs supplicēs validiōrēs ad templum magnō cum studiō ventūrōs esse ut deōs ōrārent ut periculum ab oppidō removērētur.
9. Quid infēlici servō dulcius cūris solūtis?
10. Manū supplicī dōna gravia portāns ad rēgēs pessimōs et crūdēliōrēs humilis vēnit ut ab eis veniam prō illis multō infēliciōribus sē quaereret.
11. Summōs virōs dēmentiōrēs esse dicēbās; nunc eōs quam dēmentissimōs dicis.
12. Sed nil dulcius est, bene quam mūnita tenēre opiniōnibus sapientium templa serēna.
13. Hanc villam nātūrā et opere mūnitam incolae humilēs quam primum capient.
14. Bellum est grave Mārtis opus; vītam quam serēnissimam optantibus nihil bellō saepe est peius.
15. Auctor dixit illum hospitem opus magnum in manibus habēre; opus simillimum esse librō ab infēliciōre poētā qui Rōmā pulsus esset scriptō.
16. Incipit rēs melius ire quam spērāveram.
17. Plūrēs tibi dabō, qui nōn amīcō, sed amīcitiā caruērunt.
18. Facilius genus vītae hominibus quaerendum est.
19. Eō diē mihi dixit sē audivisse fēminam altiōre vōce clāmantem satis sibi pecūniae nōn esse ut Rōmam sine morā iret; proximō autem diē sē invenīre eam nōn posse.
20. Aiunt plūs dōnōrum pessimis servīs nōn optandum esse quam optimis.
21. Cīvēs honestissimī, spectāte meum hunc cāsum tam gravem, tam malum.
22. Illa civitās multō plūrīs quam nostra cāsūs mortis habet.
23. Oppidum parvum quam optimē mūniēbātur nē hostēs id diūtius oppūgnārent.



24. Maximē maiōrēs laudant quī cum diligentīā sē prō rē publicā gessērunt.
25. Aiēbat sē facillimē lēgisse librōs quōs mīssissēs.
26. Supplex intellēxit amōrem esse difficiliōrem sibi multō quam odium.
27. Nihil est mortis tam simile quam vīta sine salūte, sine pecūniā, sine maximō studiō rērum bonārum.
28. Mors animam cārissimam corpore solvit.
29. Cum omnibus tuis laudibus, haec, meā opiniōne, est maxima: sapientia tua civēs metū solvit quō magnopere atque diūtius territi sunt.
30. Bona opiniō hominum tūtior pecūniā est. Nam pecūnia sine cōnsiliō saepe perditur; fāma nōbiscum semper vivit.
31. Quae rēs in sē parum cōnsilii neque multum sapientiae habet, eam cōnsiliō regere nōn potes.
32. Cognōvimus virōs liberōs vītam difficillimam agere quod illis opus est studiō et diligentīā quibus rem publicam bene gerant. [quibus = ut hīs (introducing a clause of purpose)]
33. Amicō bonō nihil tenēri melius potest.
34. Cōnsiliis optimis vītam agere dēbēbimus, si quam fēlicissimē vivere optābimus.
35. Crūdēliōrem imperium tenentem ōrāvit supplex nē odium profugōrum ei dē poenā cōgitanti esset cūrae.
36. Poēta dixit sē librum sententiis gracilibus atque quam dulcissimis implētūrum esse.
37. Rōmae satis odiī, laudis parum erat.
38. Maiōrēs enim vestri bella saepe quaesivērunt ob maximum glōriae amōrem. Male quaesivērunt.
39. Noster amātissimus auctor dixit, "Verbum sapienti sat (*i.e.*, satis) est."
40. Hostem crūdēlissimum si vīdisset, arma manū cecidissent.
41. Rēgem saeviōrem civēs prius Rōmā, post et ex Italiā pepulērunt.
42. Multum laudātur quod vīta cōnsiliis sapientium mūnītur.

## II.

1. The rather humble guest, who had been attacked by the raving inhabitants in the middle of the city, had to fortify the temple as well as possible in order that he might be safe.
2. It is said that gossip is a much more evil thing than cruel war.
3. The king's very healthy brother feels that the constellations are brighter than the fires in the streets of this city.
4. These soldiers are much better in strength than those.
5. At that time he would very easily have overcome the brave soldiers if (his) rather heavy arms had not fallen from (his) very strong hands.

## III. Reading

Pliny writes about his sorrow over the death of Fundanus' daughter on the night before her wedding (Pliny 5.16, slightly adapted):

Tristissimus<sup>1</sup> haec tibi scribō dē morte Fundāni<sup>2</sup> nostri filiae minōris. Quā puellā nihil umquam fēstivius,<sup>3</sup> amābilis<sup>4</sup> nec modo<sup>5</sup> longiōre vitā, sed prope<sup>6</sup> immortalitātē<sup>7</sup> dignius<sup>8</sup> vidi. Nōndum<sup>9</sup> annōs quattuordecim<sup>10</sup> implēverat, et iam<sup>11</sup> illi anilis<sup>12</sup> sapientia, fēminae gravitās<sup>13</sup> erat, et tamen suāvitās<sup>14</sup> puellae cum virginis<sup>15</sup> verēcundiā.<sup>16</sup> Ut<sup>17</sup> illa patris cervicibus<sup>18</sup> inhaerēbat!<sup>19</sup> Ut<sup>17</sup> nōs amicōs patris et amanter<sup>20</sup> et modestē<sup>21</sup> complectēbātur!<sup>22</sup> Ut<sup>17</sup> nūtrīcēs,<sup>23</sup> ut<sup>17</sup> paedagōgōs,<sup>24</sup> ut<sup>17</sup> magistrōs prō suō quemque<sup>25</sup> officiō<sup>26</sup> diligēbat!<sup>27</sup> Quam<sup>28</sup> studiōsē,<sup>29</sup> quam<sup>28</sup> intellegenter<sup>30</sup> legēbat! Ut<sup>17</sup> parcē<sup>31</sup> custōditēque<sup>32</sup> lūdēbat!<sup>33</sup> Quā illa temperantiā,<sup>34</sup> quā patientiā,<sup>35</sup> quā cōstantiā<sup>36</sup> novissimam<sup>37</sup> valētūdinem<sup>38</sup> tulit!<sup>39</sup> Medicis<sup>40</sup> pārēbat,<sup>41</sup> sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur<sup>42</sup> sēque dēstitūtā<sup>43</sup> corporis viribus vigōre mentis sustinēbat.<sup>44</sup> Dūrāvit<sup>45</sup> hic illi ūsque<sup>46</sup> ad mortem nec aut<sup>47</sup> spatiō<sup>48</sup> valētūdinis<sup>38</sup> aut<sup>47</sup> metū mortis infractus est,<sup>49</sup> quō plūrēs graviōrēsque nōbis causās<sup>50</sup> relinqueret<sup>51</sup> et dēsiderii<sup>52</sup> et dolōris.<sup>53</sup> Ō triste<sup>1</sup> plānē<sup>54</sup> acerbūque fūnus!<sup>55</sup> Ō morte ipsā<sup>56</sup> mortis tempus indignius!<sup>57</sup>

<sup>1</sup> tristis, -e, 'sad'    <sup>2</sup> Fundānus, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>3</sup> fēstivus, -a, -um, 'gay, pleasing'    <sup>4</sup> amābilis, -e, 'lovable'    <sup>5</sup> modo (adv.), 'only'    <sup>6</sup> prope (adv.), 'nearly'    <sup>7</sup> immortalitās, -tātis, F., 'immortality'    <sup>8</sup> dignus, -a, -um, 'worthy' (+ abl.)    <sup>9</sup> nōndum (adv.), 'not yet'    <sup>10</sup> quattuordecim (indeclinable adj.), 'fourteen'    <sup>11</sup> iam (adv.), 'already'    <sup>12</sup> anilis, -e, 'of an old woman'    <sup>13</sup> gravitās, -tātis, F., 'seriousness'    <sup>14</sup> suāvitās, -tātis, F., 'charm, agreeableness'    <sup>15</sup> virgō, -inis, F., 'maiden'    <sup>16</sup> verēcundiā, -ae, F., 'modesty'    <sup>17</sup> ut (adv.), 'how'    <sup>18</sup> cervix, -icis, F., 'neck'; here, used in the pl., but with sing. meaning    <sup>19</sup> inhaereō, -ēre, inhaesi, inhaesus, 'cling'    <sup>20</sup> amanter (adv.), from amāns    <sup>21</sup> modestus, -a, -um, 'modest'    <sup>22</sup> complectēbātur, translate as active: 'she used to embrace'    <sup>23</sup> nūtrix, -icis, F., 'nurse'    <sup>24</sup> paedagōgus, -ī, M., a slave in charge of escorting a child to and from school    <sup>25</sup> quemque (acc. sing., M. & F.), 'each (one)'    <sup>26</sup> officium, -ī, N., 'duty, service'    <sup>27</sup> diligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, 'esteem highly'    <sup>28</sup> quam (adv.), 'how'    <sup>29</sup> studiōsus, -a, -um, 'studious, busy'    <sup>30</sup> intellegenter (adv.), from intellegēs    <sup>31</sup> parcus, -a, -um, 'sparing'    <sup>32</sup> custōditē (adv.), 'cautiously'    <sup>33</sup> lūdō, -ere, lūsi, lūsus, 'play'    <sup>34</sup> temperantia, -ae, F., 'self-restraint'    <sup>35</sup> patientia, -ae, F., 'patience'    <sup>36</sup> cōstantia, -ae, F., 'self-possession'    <sup>37</sup> novus, -a, -um, 'recent'    <sup>38</sup> valētūdō, -inis, F., 'bad health'    <sup>39</sup> ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, 'endure'    <sup>40</sup> medicus, -ī, M., 'doctor'    <sup>41</sup> pārēō, -ēre, pārui, pāritus, 'be obedient to' (+ dat.)    <sup>42</sup> adhortābātur, translate as active: 'she used to encourage'    <sup>43</sup> dēstitūō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, 'desert'; in perfect participle, 'deprived of'    <sup>44</sup> sustineō (sub + teneō), 'sustain'    <sup>45</sup> dūrō (1), 'last, continue'    <sup>46</sup> ūsque (adv.), 'all the way'    <sup>47</sup> aut...aut (conj.), 'either...or'    <sup>48</sup> spatium, -ī, N., 'length of time'    <sup>49</sup> infringō, -ere, -frēgi, -fractus, 'break up, bring down'    <sup>50</sup> causa, -ae, F., 'reason, cause'    <sup>51</sup> relinquō, -ere, reliqui, relictus, 'leave'; quō...relinqueret = ut...relinqueret    <sup>52</sup> dēsiderium, -ī, N., 'regret' (for the loss of anything)    <sup>53</sup> dolor, -ōris, M., 'pain, sorrow'    <sup>54</sup> plānē (adv.), 'plainly, certainly'    <sup>55</sup> fūnus, -eris, N., 'funeral, death'    <sup>56</sup> ipsā (abl. sing. F.), 'itself' (modifies morte)    <sup>57</sup> indignus, -a, -um, 'unworthy' (+ abl.)

# UNIT TEN

## A. Ablative Absolute

The word "absolute" comes from the fourth principal part of the verb **absolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus**, 'untie, loosen'. Grammatically, it refers to a part of the sentence which has no close syntactical connection with the rest; it is "untied" or "detached" from the main clause.

English has a *nominative absolute*:

*This being the case*, I shall now help you.

Note that the nominative absolute in English utilizes a subject, "this" and a participle, "being". The subject of the absolute construction is different from the subject (or object) of the main clause. In the broadest sense, the absolute functions as an adverb giving the circumstances in which the action of the main clause occurs.

The Latin absolute construction requires the ablative, not the nominative, case. All tenses of the participle may occur, according to the observations stated in the unit on participles above, although the future is very rare in classical Latin.

**Coniuge veniente,** *With her husband coming*, the woman will depart.  
**fēmina discēdet.** *When her husband is coming (comes)*, the woman will depart.  
*Since her husband is coming*, the woman will depart.  
*If her husband is coming (comes)*, the woman will depart.  
*Although her husband is coming*, the woman will depart.  
...etc.

[NOTE that when the present participle is used in an ablative absolute, the -e ending for the ablative singular occurs rather than -ī.]

### OBSERVATIONS:

1. The subject of the ablative absolute, **coniuge**, is different from the subject of the main clause, **fēmina**. Hence, **coniuge veniente** is a true absolute.
2. The present participle refers to an action which occurs at the *same time* as that of the main verb.

3. Because of the absence of a perfect *active* participle, it will be impossible to express an active idea in the absolute as having occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb without recasting it in the passive voice. Another construction would have to be used (e.g., *Sī coniūnx vēnit, postquam coniūnx vēnit, quamquam coniūnx vēnit*, etc.).

<b>Coniuge visō,</b>	<i>With her husband having been seen,</i>	the woman
<b>fēmina discessit.</b>	departed.	
	<i>When she had seen her husband,</i>	the woman
	departed.	
	<i>Since she had seen her husband,</i>	the woman
	departed.	
	<i>If she had seen her husband,</i>	the woman departed.
	<i>Although she had seen her husband,</i>	the woman
	departed.	
	...etc.	

## OBSERVATIONS:

- Note that in the last four translations above, the subordinate clause has been changed from the passive to the active voice. The subject “she” of the subordinate clause is the same as the subject of the main clause *in English*. In the Latin, however, the subject of the perfect passive participle is *not* the same as that of the main verb (**coniuge** is the subject of the ablative absolute; **fēmina** is the subject of the main clause; note the first English translation above).
- The perfect participle refers to an action which occurred *prior* to the time of the main verb.

NOTE: If we wish to render “When she was departing, the woman saw her husband” into Latin, we *cannot* use the ablative absolute because the subject of each clause (“she” and “woman”) is the same. A simple participle must be used instead:

*Fēmina discēdēns coniugem vīdit.*

<b>Illā fēminā rēgīnā,</b>	<i>With that woman (being) queen,</i>	the inhabitants
<b>incolae fēlicēs erant.</b>	were happy.	
	<i>When that woman was queen,</i>	the inhabitants were
	happy.	
	...etc.	

## OBSERVATION:

Since there is no present participle for the verb **sum**, two nouns are sometimes used in an ablative absolute construction with an *implied* participle connecting them. The second noun is in effect a predicate ablative.



**Custōde amicum vocante,** *With the guardian calling his friend,* the sailors  
nautae fūgērunt. fled.

*When the guardian was calling his friend, the  
sailors fled.*

...etc.

#### OBSERVATION:

The participle, since it is a verbal adjective, retains its verbal functions. Consequently it can control an object, as in the case of **amicum** above.

### B. Adjectives with Genitive Singular in *-ius*

There is a group of adjectives which are like first-second declension adjectives except that they have **-ius** in the genitive singular of all genders and **-ī** in the dative singular. One of these is **tōtus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'whole, all'.

SINGULAR			PLURAL
M.	F.	N.	
tōtus	tōta	tōtum	
tōtius	tōtius	tōtius	
tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	the plural is identical to that of <b>magnus</b> , <b>-a</b> , <b>-um</b>
tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	
tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	

The other adjectives of this class are:

alius, -a, -ud	other
alter, altera, alterum	the other (of two)
ūllus, -a, -um	any
nūllus, -a, -um	no, none
uter, utra, utrum	which (of two)
neuter, neutra, neutrum	neither
sōlus, -a, -um	only
ūnus, -a, -um	one, alone

### C. Ablative of Cause

The ablative, generally without a preposition, is sometimes used to express *cause*.

**Clāmāre gaudiō** coepit. She began to shout *because of joy*.

**Fōrmā** laudābantur. They were praised *because of (their) beauty*.

Sometimes cause is expressed by **ob** or **propter**, 'on account of', followed by the accusative case.

**Propter metum** fēminās interfēcit. He killed the women *on account of fear*.



**D. Ablative and Genitive of Description**

A noun in the ablative or genitive case, when modified by an adjective, may be used to describe or express a quality of another noun.

Vir magnā sapientiā }  
 Vir magnae sapientiae } a man of great wisdom

**E. The Irregular Verb *ferō* and Its Compounds**

**Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, 'bring, carry, bear, endure', exhibits certain peculiarities in the present indicative, present infinitive, and present imperative. The other forms are exactly what we would expect for a third conjugation verb.

**PRESENT INDICATIVE**

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris	ferimini
		(ferre)	
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

**IMPERATIVE**

SING.	PL.
fer!	ferite!

There are several compounds of **ferō** which occur frequently and should be learned. Some are:

- ad + ferō** = **afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus**, 'bring to, present'  
**ab + ferō** = **auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus**, 'carry away'  
**com + ferō** = **cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus**, 'bring together, collect; compare;' reflexive **sē cōnferre** = 'take oneself' (i.e., to a place), 'go'  
**dē + ferō** = **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**, 'bring away, bring down, offer; report'  
**dis + ferō** = **differō, differre, distulī, dilātus**, 'differ'  
**ex + ferō** = **efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus**, 'carry out; bring forth'  
**in + ferō** = **inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus**, 'carry into; inflict'  
**ob + ferō** = **offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus**, 'bring before; offer; expose'  
**re + ferō** = **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus**, 'bring back, report'  
**sub + ferō** = **sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātus**, 'undergo, endure'

It will be easy to form other compounds of this verb by the addition of other prefixes.

## UNIT TEN — VOCABULARY

<b>alius, -a, -ud</b> (note that the neuter nom. and acc. end in <b>-ud</b> , not <b>-um</b> )	other, another
<b>alius . . . alius</b>	one . . . another
<b>alii . . . alii</b>	some . . . others
<b>alter, altera, alterum</b>	the other (of two)
<b>apud</b> (prep. + acc.)	at, near, among; at the house of
<b>ars, artis, -ium, F.</b>	skill, art
<b>audācia, -ae, F.</b>	boldness, courage
<b>audāx, audācis</b>	bold, courageous
<b>auxilium, -ī, N.</b>	aid
<b>certus, -a, -um</b>	certain, sure
<b>incertus, -a, -um</b>	uncertain, unsure
<b>coepī, coepisse, coeptus</b>	began (defective verb; it occurs only in the perfect system)
<b>custōs, -ōdis, M.</b>	guardian
<b>doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus</b>	teach
<b>errō (1)</b>	wander, err
<b>ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus</b> (for compounds of <b>ferō</b> , see section E of this Unit)	bring, carry, bear, endure
<b>figūra, -ae, F.</b>	figure, form, shape
<b>foedus, foederis, N.</b>	pact, treaty, agreement
<b>fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus</b>	flee
<b>fuga, -ae, F.</b>	flight
<b>gaudium, -ī, N.</b>	joy
<b>gēns, gentis, -ium, F.</b>	race, people
<b>iam</b> (adv.)	now, by this time, already, soon
<b>iter, itineris, N.</b>	journey, route
<b>iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus</b>	join
<b>coniūnx, coniugis, M. or F.</b>	husband, wife, spouse
<b>mōs, mōris, M.</b>	custom; pl., character
<b>negō (1)</b>	deny, say no
<b>neuter, neutra, neutrum</b>	neither
<b>nūllus, -a, -um</b>	no, none
<b>orbis, orbis, -ium, M.</b>	ring, orb, circle
<b>orbis terrārum</b>	circle of lands; the world
<b>pars, partis, -ium, F.</b>	part

<b>propter</b> (prep. + acc.)	on account of, because of
<b>quantus, -a, -um</b>	how much, how great
<b>quot</b> (indeclinable adj.)	how many
<b>signum, -ī, N.</b>	signal, sign
<b>sōl, sōlis, M.</b>	sun
<b>sōlus, -a, -um</b>	alone, only
<b>tantus, -a, -um</b>	so much, so great
<b>tantus . . . quantus</b>	as (so) much . . . as ; as (so) great . . . as
<b>quantus . . . tantus</b>	
<b>temptō (1)</b>	try, attempt
<b>tot</b> (indeclinable adj.)	so many
<b>tot . . . quot</b>	as many . . . as
<b>quot . . . tot</b>	
<b>tōtus, -a, -um</b>	all, whole
<b>ūllus, -a, -um</b>	any
<b>ūnus, -a, -um</b>	one, alone
<b>uter, utra, utrum</b>	which (of two)
<b>virtūs, -tūtis, F.</b>	manliness, courage, excellence, virtue

## UNIT TEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

There are nine adjectives in Latin which end in **-ius** in the genitive singular and **-ī** in the dative singular: **alius**, **alter**, **ūllus** ('any'), **nūllus** ('none'), **uter**, **neuter** ('neither'), **sōlus** ('alone'), **tōtus** ('whole'), and **ūnus** ('one'). **Alius** means 'other, another', **alter**, 'the other (of two)', and **uter**, 'which (of two)'. **Alterius** was used as the genitive singular of **alius** (see Appendix, page 322). **Alius . . . alius** means 'one . . . another': **Alius in tēctō alius in viā erat**, 'One man was in the house, another in the street'. When two forms of the adjective **alius** are found in the same sentence, they are translated twice:

**Aliī aliud mihi dixērunt.**

Some men told me one thing; others told me another.

**Alia dōna ad aliōs amicōs misērunt.** They sent some gifts to some friends, other gifts to others (other friends).

**Apud** is like the French **chez**; it means 'at, near, among, at the house of, in the works of'.

The adjective **audāx**, **audācis**, 'bold, courageous', is related to the abstract noun **audācia**, **audāciae**, F., 'boldness, courage'.

**Coepī**, **coepisse**, **coeptus**, 'began', is a defective verb which has only perfect tenses. **Incipiō** may be used if a present, imperfect, or future tense of 'begin' is needed.

The verb **doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus**, 'teach', may govern two accusatives. In other words, one teaches something in the accusative case to someone in the accusative: **Multa nātōs docēre optāmus**, 'We wish to teach many things to our children'.

**Errō**, a first conjugation verb, means 'wander'. If one wanders from the true path, one errs; thus, **errō** also means 'err'.

**Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**, 'bear, bring, carry, endure', is sometimes used, usually in the third person, to mean 'say, report': **Auctōrem clārissimum in illō tēctō ferunt vīxisse**, 'They say that the very famous author lived in that house'. Also, **Auctor clārissimus in illō tēctō vīxisse fertur**, 'The very famous author is said to have lived in that house'.

**Ferō** is one of the four verbs (**dīcō, dūcō**, and **faciō** are the others) which drop the ending in the present active singular imperative: **dīc, dūc, fac, fer**.

Connected with **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus**, 'flee', is the noun **fuga, fugae**, F., 'flight'.

**Iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus**, 'join', has a compound **coniungō**, 'join together'; the person with whom one is joined, **coniūnx**, is one's 'spouse'; therefore, this word can be either masculine or feminine.

**Iam** is an adverb which relies on the tense of the verb for its meaning; with the present tense, it means 'now', with a past tense, 'up to now, already, by this time', and with the future, 'soon'.

**Mōs, mōris**, M., in the singular means 'custom', but in the plural, 'character', since it is our customs or habits which make up our character.

**Negō**, a first conjugation verb, is the opposite of **aīō**; it means 'say no, deny'.

**Orbis, orbis**, M., is 'ring, circle'; **orbis terrārum**, 'circle of lands', is the way of saying 'the world'.

There is no difference between **propter** with the accusative and **ob** with the accusative.

**Quantus, -a, -um**, 'how much, how great', is often used correlatively with **tantus, -a, -um**, 'so much, so great'. There is no difference in meaning between **quantus...tantus** and **tantus...quantus**: **Quantōs librōs in mēnsā vidimus tantōs in cellā**, 'We saw as many books on the table as (we saw) in the storeroom'; **Tantum gaudium in urbe erat quantum in prōvinciā**, 'There was as much joy in the city as in the province'.

**Quot**, 'how many', may be correlative with **tot**, 'so many'. There is no difference in meaning between **quot...tot** and **tot...quot**: **Quot puellae tot pueri in tēctō erant**, 'There were as many girls as boys in the house'; **Tot dominōs quot servōs in templō vidimus**, 'We saw as many masters as slaves in the temple'.

**Virtūs, virtūtis**, F., is an abstract noun meaning 'the state of being a man, or the quality of a man'; it is what makes a man a man, namely, 'manliness, courage, excellence, virtue'.

## UNIT TEN — DRILL

## I.

Translate each of the following ablatives absolute literally; then give at least four smoother translations:

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| 1. hostibus oppressis                   | 6. sociis interfectis      |
| 2. opere perfectō                       | 7. periculō remōtō         |
| 3. timōre superante                     | 8. urbe ā hostibus invāsā  |
| 4. rēgibus civēs servitūte liberantibus | 9. sociō magistrō          |
| 5. imperiō ruente                       | 10. militibus rūs euntibus |

## II.

Rewrite the subordinate clauses in Latin as ablatives absolute:

1. Postquam oppidum arsum est, militēs discessērunt.
2. Si Marcus erit magister, superābimus.
3. Si pater sānus esset, mortem nōn timērēmus.
4. Quamquam nox terrās umbris tegit, socii tamen vidēre possunt.
5. Quamquam pericula intellēxit, in villam tamen ardentem ruit.
6. Incolae timēbant quod urbs ā sociis trādita erat.
7. Quamquam opiniōnem dē amicō mūtāverat, crūdēlis esse nōn optāvit.
8. Si discēdētis, poēta nōn canet.
9. Militēs per campōs ire nōn possunt quod saxa ingentia dē viā nōn removēbantur.
10. Postquam supplex domum missus est, populus omnem spem perdidit.

## III.

Translate, explaining the syntax of the words in boldface type:

1. Fēmina **magnae fidei** mihi imperāvit ut Rōmam irem.
2. Mōtibus siderum **intellēctis**, poēta librum dē illis rēbus scrīpsit.
3. Profugō **poenam timente**, amici rēgem interficient.
4. **Oppidō** trāditō, incolae tamen spērāvērunt amicōs sibi fructuī futūrōs esse.
5. Sententiā dē hospitibus mūtātā, vir magnā **veniā** ad nōs vēnit ut dē insidiis monēret.
6. Ille puer quem magister ad rēgnum vocāvit minimā est **diligentiā**, maximā sapientiā.
7. **Illō dominō**, nōn timēmus.
8. Hostibus **pulsis**, miles fēlix erat.
9. **Bellō** cōfectō, diūtius pūgnātis?
10. **Amōre** patriae pūgnāvit.
11. Omnibus hostibus ab urbe **remōtis**, incolae **gaudiō** clāmābant.



## IV.

Note the following uses of participles and ablatives absolute:

1. Puerōs scribentēs vidi.
2. Hominēs in bellō superātī discesserunt.
3. Miles erat pūgnātūrus.
4. Poēta, sub caelō legēns, sidera spectāvit.
5. Puella hōs librōs lēctūra est.
6. Opere cōfectō, virī domum missi sunt.
7. Mediā nocte ad socium litterās portantēs vērunt.
8. His rēbus gestis, omnēs discesserunt.
9. Audiēns virōs magnae sapientiae dē bellō clāmantēs, maximē timēbam.
10. Audiēns virōs magnae sapientiae dē bellō clāmāre, maximē timēbam.
11. Servīs liberātis, dominus suōs filiōs labōrāre in agris iussit.
12. Homō miser, villā arsā, nūllam domum habēbat.
13. Clārum multās hōrās sociīs vērā dicentem audīvi; minimō tempore discessit.  
Illō discēdente, militēs gaudiō clāmāvērunt.
14. Multa dōna ūnī virō cibum ad hospitēs ferentī dabimus.
15. Taedamne ad profugōs nocte ambulantes ferēs?

## V.

1. Puer fert librōs.
2. Puer ferēbat librōs.
3. Is est puer quī ferēbat librōs.
4. Puer fertur esse bonus. [fertur, '(he) is said...']
5. Puer fertur librōs ferre.
6. Puer fertur librōs tulisse.
7. Librōs nōn feram.
8. Librī ā puerō feruntur.
9. Librī ā mē nōn lāti sunt.
10. Dicō puerum quī librōs ferat bonum esse.
11. Dicēbam puerum quī librōs ferret bonum esse.
12. Dixi puerum quī librōs tulisset bonum esse.
13. Intellegit librōs fructū esse hominibus sapientibus.
14. Librī ad nōs ferentur ut sapientiōrēs sīmus.

## UNIT TEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Fugā temptātā, audacēs per prōvinciam itinere errāre coepērunt.
2. Audācia custōdis sōlius auxilium gentī tōtī tulit.

3. Gaudiō positō, aliī vitam tulērunt, aliī negāvērunt.
4. Omnibus fortibus mōrēs supplicis alterius laudantibus, opīniō nostra nōn petita est.
5. Librō aliō scriptō, auctor alium scribere coepit.
6. Sōle auxiliō, viis incertis fūgimus ut nōs sociis quam primum iungerēmus.
7. Quot artēs sunt aliī tot aliī.
8. Omnī spē fugae dēlētā, locus nūllus salūtis ā profugis inventus est.
9. Itinere incertō et nūllō signō ā magistrō datō, in neutram viam sine timōre periculī ruere iam possumus.
10. Nūllus homō quī apud nōs vivit tanta gaudia quantōs metūs tulit.

## UNIT TEN — EXERCISES

### I.

1. Militibus foedere iūctis, haec urbs sōla nōn dēlēbitur; multa gravia iam sustulit.
2. Aliō bellō in prōvinciam illātō, hostēs tēctis et templis tōtius urbis ignēs inferre temptāvērunt.
3. Tōtam diem illae gentēs socium magnae audāciae invenīre temptābant quem vī abstulerant saeviōrēs servī.
4. Sōle multis partibus maiōre quam terrā tōtā, ōrō ut mē dē illō plūs doceās.
5. Sorōrī meae nōmen est magnā apud omnēs glōriā; eam oculis tuis in litore errantem saepe vīdisti.
6. Pectoribus mōrēs tot sunt quot in orbe figūrae.
7. Negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūlli per prōvinciam dare.
8. Dīs nūllam mihi culpam esse scientibus, audāx metū carēbō.
9. Patriā liberā, mē ad mortem nōn offeram.
10. His ā sociō dictis, rēx primā luce respondit libertātem cīvibus ā dīs oblātā et datā esse.
11. Quot hominēs tot sententiae.
12. Tot militibus urbem oppūgnantibus, rēgīnae coniūnx pecūniae quam rēgnī melior custōs erat.
13. Quam ob rem per tōtum oppidum rūmor huius generis ibit?
14. Rēx prōvinciae fūgisse cum multā pecūniā dīcitur ac sē contulisse Rōmam.
15. a) Rēge crūdēli Rōmam fugiente, aliī cīvēs gaudiō clāmant, aliī timōre tacent.  
b) Rēge crūdēli Rōmam fugiente, aliī cīvēs gaudiō clāmābant, aliī timōre tacēbant.
16. Amīcitia ex sē et propter sē petenda est.
17. Illō discēdente, rēs agī coepta est.

18. Militibus sē in fugam dantibus, utrum dūcentium laudāre coeperās?  
Neutrum!
19. Ūnō signō datō, cum gaudiō invēnimus cīvibus quantum audāciae tantum  
satis esse.
20. Suffer! Multō graviōra tulistī.
21. Nūlli servitūtem sī dēfers, honestus habēris.
22. Multi mōre illō atque exemplō vīvunt.
23. Quī nihil sciunt timent fortūnam; sapientēs ferunt. [**fortūna**, -ae, F., 'chance,  
fortune']
24. Hostēs maximārum vīrium, cum suis sociis iūcti, oppidum oppūgnāvērunt.
25. Multis prō oppidō pūgnantibus, incolae nōn timēbant.
26. Vir bonus optimisque artibus clārus cīvibus auxiliō fuit.
27. Custōdibus maiōre opus erit et arte et diligentia sī malōs ex urbe pellent.
28. Amicus certus in rē incertā vidētur.
29. Mōrēs cōnferte et artēs sī filiōs maximae virtūtis esse optābitis. [**cōnferte**,  
*here*, 'apply, bestow']
30. Cōnsiliis certiōribus factis, dōna ā rēge abstulit et ea ad suam patriam attulit.
31. Miles militi iūctus amicitia bellum magnā cum virtūte gessit.
32. Illi custōdī, virō magnā audācia et mōribus clārō, coniūnx auxiliō vēnit, nē  
urbis insidiis hostium dēlētae dāmnārētur. Eum enim monuit cōnsilia  
hostium urbī mala esse.
33. Pars gentis domum cum sapientia fūgit; pars propter audāciam bellum  
gessit.
34. In tōtō orbe terrārum numquam vidimus tot errantēs quot in hāc urbe  
vīvunt. Alius bellum gentibus fortiōribus inferre optat, alius sine arte et  
auxiliō tōtum orbem terrārum superāre; nūllus homō negat sē omnia  
(facere) posse.
35. Hostibus foedere iūctis, ūnus ex pūgnantibus negābat sē bellum gerere  
umquam optāvisse; sibi gerendum fuisse vīribus atque mōribus malis rēgis.
36. Quam ob rem magister docuit errantem verbis sapientium in lūcem  
dūcendum esse?
37. Signō datō, fēminae maximā fōrmā sē in fugam contulērunt.
38. Bellō cōnfectō, multa nōbis superātis relāta sunt.
39. Tantō periculō in urbem illātō, lacrimae incolārum mātrem certiōrem  
fēcērunt ruinae. Māter fēmina erat clārā virtūte, sed tanta mala sufferre  
nōn poterat.
40. Ferrum ē manibus interfecti cēpit, ēlātumque dēferēbat in pectus alterius  
inimici ā dextrā ad sē venientis.
41. Quantā maximē poterat vī superāvit.
42. Hominibus ācritur pūgnantibus, rēx ardentēs oculōrum orbēs in moenia  
torsit. [**torqueō**, -ēre, **torsi**, **tortus**, 'turn, turn away, twist']

## II.

1. Because the people of this city have been conquered by the Roman soldiers, the woman's husband, bold in character, is going to try to flee in order that he may seek (ask for) aid from the guardians of other towns.
2. On account of the treaty by which they were joined to the Romans, the husband learned that the guardians did not desire to give aid to any people.
3. He alone will not be able to flee to the shore because of fear; the others have already boldly set sail.
4. In the whole world I have never seen with my eyes a man of such (so) great skill.
5. Since he has done these things, his name will be borne by the winds to all lands in order that people may praise him.

## III. Readings

- A. THE LOVE OF DAPHNE AND APOLLO (selections slightly adapted from Ovid, *Metamorphoses* I, taken from lines 452-3, 495, 502-3, 533-4, 539)

Primus amor Phoebī<sup>1</sup> Daphnē<sup>2</sup> quem dedit saeva Cupidinis<sup>3</sup> ira. Sic<sup>4</sup> deus in flammās abiit;<sup>5</sup> fugit ōcior<sup>6</sup> aurā<sup>7</sup> illa levī.<sup>8</sup> Ut<sup>9</sup> canis<sup>10</sup> in vacuō<sup>11</sup> leporem<sup>12</sup> arvō<sup>13</sup> cum<sup>14</sup> vidit, et ille praedam<sup>15</sup> pedibus petit, hic salūtem; sic<sup>4</sup> deus et virgō.<sup>16</sup> Est hic spē celer,<sup>17</sup> illa timōre.

<sup>1</sup> Phoebus, -ī, M., the god Apollo    <sup>2</sup> Daphnē (nom. sing. F.), 'Daphne', a girl's name  
<sup>3</sup> Cupidō, -inis, M., 'Cupid'    <sup>4</sup> sic (adv.), 'in this way'    <sup>5</sup> abeō (ab + eō), 'go away'  
<sup>6</sup> ōcior, ōcius, 'swifter'    <sup>7</sup> aura, -ae, F., 'breeze'    <sup>8</sup> levis, leve, 'light'    <sup>9</sup> ut (adv.), 'as'  
 (here, correlative with sic below)    <sup>10</sup> canis, canis, M. or F., 'dog'    <sup>11</sup> vacuus, -a, -um, 'empty'  
<sup>12</sup> lepus, leporis, M., 'rabbit'    <sup>13</sup> arvum, -ī, N., 'field'    <sup>14</sup> cum (conj.), 'when'  
<sup>15</sup> praeda, -ae, F., 'loot'    <sup>16</sup> virgō, virginis, F., 'maiden'    <sup>17</sup> celer, celeris, celere, 'swift'

- B. Dido, after berating Aeneas for intending to abandon her, falls silent and leaves him to think about her plight (Vergil, *Aeneid* iv.388-91):

His medium dictis sermōnem<sup>1</sup> abruptit<sup>2</sup> et aurās<sup>3</sup>  
 aegra<sup>4</sup> fugit sēque ex oculis āvertit<sup>5</sup> et aufert,  
 linquēns<sup>6</sup> multa metū cūctantem<sup>7</sup> et multa parantem<sup>8</sup>  
 dicere.

<sup>1</sup> sermō, -ōnis, M., 'speech'    <sup>2</sup> abruptō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, 'break off'    <sup>3</sup> aura, -ae, F., 'air, breeze, outdoors'    <sup>4</sup> aeger, aegra, aegrum, 'sick, wretched'    <sup>5</sup> āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, 'turn away'  
<sup>6</sup> linquō, -ere, liquī, lictus, 'desert'    <sup>7</sup> cūctor, -āri, -ātus sum, 'delay' (this is a verb of the first conjugation; the finite forms are all passive, but with active meanings; see Unit Eleven, section A, "Deponent Verbs")    <sup>8</sup> parō (1), 'prepare'



## C. Catullus 87:

Nūlla potest mulier<sup>1</sup> tantum<sup>2</sup> sē dicere amātam  
 Vērē, quantum<sup>2</sup> ā mē Lesbia<sup>3</sup> amāta mea es:  
 Nūlla fidēs ūllō fuit unquam in foedere tanta  
 Quanta in amōre tuō ex parte reperia meā est.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> mulier, mulieris, F., 'woman'    <sup>2</sup> tantum . . . quantum (adv.), 'so much . . . as'    <sup>3</sup> Lesbia, -ae, F., 'Lesbia', the literary name of Catullus's mistress    <sup>4</sup> reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertus, 'find, discover'

D. Seneca speaks about the advantages of clemency and about the difference between the king and the tyrant (Seneca, *Dē Clēmētiā* i.xi.4–xii.2, slightly adapted):

Clēmētiā<sup>1</sup> ergō<sup>2</sup> hominēs nōn tantum<sup>3</sup> honestiōrēs sed tūtiōrēs sunt. Clēmētiā<sup>1</sup> ōrnāmentum<sup>4</sup> imperiōrum est simul<sup>5</sup> et certissima salūs. Metū hostium sublātō,<sup>6</sup> hominēs maximae clēmētiāe<sup>1</sup> sine cūrā possunt vivere. Cūr<sup>7</sup> enim rēgēs cōnsenēscunt<sup>8</sup> filiisque trādunt rēgna, tyrannōrum<sup>9</sup> execrābilis<sup>10</sup> ac brevis<sup>11</sup> potestās<sup>12</sup> est? Quid interest<sup>13</sup> inter<sup>14</sup> tyrannum<sup>9</sup> ac rēgem? — Tyranni<sup>9</sup> voluptāte<sup>15</sup> saeviunt,<sup>16</sup> rēgēs nōn nisi ex causā<sup>17</sup> ac necessitatē.<sup>18</sup>

"Quid ergō?<sup>2</sup> Nōn rēgēs quoque<sup>19</sup> interficere solent?"<sup>20</sup> Sed ubi<sup>21</sup> id fieri<sup>22</sup> pūblica ūtilitās<sup>23</sup> persuadet;<sup>24</sup> tyrannis<sup>9</sup> saevitia<sup>25</sup> cordi<sup>26</sup> est. Tyrannus<sup>9</sup> autem ā rēge factis distat,<sup>27</sup> nōn nōmine; nam et Dionysius<sup>28</sup> maior iūre<sup>29</sup> meritōque<sup>30</sup> praeferri<sup>31</sup> multis rēgibus potest. Et L. Sullam<sup>32</sup> tyrannum<sup>9</sup> appellāri<sup>33</sup> quid prohibet,<sup>34</sup> cui factōrum malōrum finem fēcit inopia<sup>35</sup> hostium? Quī umquam tyrannus<sup>9</sup> avidius<sup>36</sup> hūmānum<sup>37</sup>

<sup>1</sup> clēmētia, -ae, F., 'clemency'    <sup>2</sup> ergō (adv.), 'therefore'    <sup>3</sup> tantum (adv.), 'only'  
<sup>4</sup> ōrnāmentum, -ī, N., 'decoration, ornament'    <sup>5</sup> simul (adv.), 'at the same time'    <sup>6</sup> tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, 'remove'    <sup>7</sup> cūr (adv.), 'why'    <sup>8</sup> cōnsenēscō, -ere, cōnsenuī, --, 'grow old'    <sup>9</sup> tyrannus, -ī, M., 'absolute ruler, tyrant'; tyrannōrum execrābilis . . . est: the clause is antithetical to the previous one; assume the ellipsis of sed, 'but'    <sup>10</sup> execrābilis, -e, 'deserving punishment, deadly'    <sup>11</sup> brevis, -e, 'brief'    <sup>12</sup> potestās, -tātis, F., 'power'    <sup>13</sup> interest (impersonal verb), '(it) is different'; quid interest?, 'what is the difference?'    <sup>14</sup> inter (prep. + acc.), 'between'    <sup>15</sup> voluptās, -tātis, F., 'pleasure'    <sup>16</sup> saeviō, -ire, -iī, -itus, 'rage, be fierce'    <sup>17</sup> causa, -ae, F., 'cause, reason'    <sup>18</sup> necessitās, -tātis, F., 'necessity'    <sup>19</sup> quoque (adv.), 'also'    <sup>20</sup> soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, 'be accustomed'    <sup>21</sup> ubi (adv.), 'when'    <sup>22</sup> fiō, fierī, factus sum, 'happen, be done'    <sup>23</sup> ūtilitās, -tātis, F., 'advantage'    <sup>24</sup> persuadeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, 'persuade'    <sup>25</sup> saevitia, -ae, F., 'cruelty'    <sup>26</sup> cor, cordis, N., 'heart'; cordi, 'for the purpose of the heart', i.e., 'dear'    <sup>27</sup> distō (1), 'differ, be distinct'    <sup>28</sup> Dionysius, -ī, M., a man's name; Dionysius was the famous tyrant of Sicily    <sup>29</sup> iūs, iūris, N., 'right, law'    <sup>30</sup> meritum, -ī, N., 'merit, desert'    <sup>31</sup> praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, 'prefer (to)' (+ dat.)    <sup>32</sup> L. Sulla, -ae, M., 'Lucius Sulla', the name of a Roman dictator whose policy it was to have all his enemies killed    <sup>33</sup> appellō (1), 'call, name'; appellāri, the infinitive is used here with prohibet to express prevention: 'What prohibits L. Sulla to be called . . .'; 'What keeps L. Sulla from being called . . .'    <sup>34</sup> prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 'prohibit'    <sup>35</sup> inopia, -ae, F., 'lack'    <sup>36</sup> avidē (adv.), 'eagerly'    <sup>37</sup> hūmānus, -a, -um, 'human'



sanguinem<sup>38</sup> bibit<sup>39</sup> quam ille, qui septem<sup>40</sup> milia<sup>41</sup> civium Rōmānōrum interfici iussit et, ubi<sup>21</sup> in vicinō<sup>42</sup> sedēns<sup>43</sup> audivit conclāmātiōnem<sup>44</sup> tot milium<sup>41</sup> sub gladiō gementium,<sup>45</sup> exterritō<sup>46</sup> senātū,<sup>47</sup> “Nē haec conclāmātiō,”<sup>44</sup> ait, “vobis sit cūrae, patrēs cōscripti;<sup>48</sup> sēditiōsī<sup>49</sup> pauculi<sup>50</sup> meō iussū<sup>51</sup> interficiuntur”? Hoc vērūm erat; pauci<sup>52</sup> Sullae<sup>32</sup> vidēbantur.

<sup>38</sup> sanguis, -inis, M., ‘blood’    <sup>39</sup> bibō, -ere, bibī, --, ‘drink’    <sup>40</sup> septem (indeclinable adj.), ‘seven’    <sup>41</sup> milia, -ium, N., ‘thousands’    <sup>42</sup> vicinū, -ī, N., ‘vicinity’    <sup>43</sup> sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, ‘sit’    <sup>44</sup> conclāmātiō, -ōnis, F., ‘loud shouting’    <sup>45</sup> gemō, -ere, -uī, -itus, ‘groan, lament’    <sup>46</sup> exterreō (ex + terreō), ‘frighten thoroughly’    <sup>47</sup> senātus, -ūs, M., ‘senate’    <sup>48</sup> cōscribō (com- + scribō), ‘enroll’; patrēs cōscripti, ‘senators’  
<sup>49</sup> sēditiōsus, -a, -um, ‘seditious, turbulent’    <sup>50</sup> pauculi, -ae, -a, ‘a very few’    <sup>51</sup> iussū (abl. sing.), ‘by order’    <sup>52</sup> pauci, -ae, -a, ‘few’

# UNIT ELEVEN

## A. Deponent Verbs

Many verbs in Latin have only passive forms, but active meanings. These verbs are called *deponents* (**dē** + **pōnō**, 'put aside'; i.e., they *put aside* their active forms).

precor, -ārī, precātus sum	beg, request
vereor, -ērī, veritus sum	fear
ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum	enter, proceed
experior, -īrī, expertus sum	try, experience

### PRESENT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precor	precer
I entreat	
precāris (-re)	precēris (-re)
you entreat	
precātur	precētur
he entreats	
precāmur	precēmur
we entreat	
precāminī	precēminī
you entreat	
precantur	precentur
they entreat	

### IMPERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precābar	precārer
I used to entreat	
precābāris (-re)	precārēris (-re)
you used to entreat	
...etc.	...etc.

NOTE that the imperfect subjunctive is built onto what would have been the entire

present *active* infinitive. This is especially important for third conjugation verbs where the present passive infinitive looks so different from the active one. Thus:

ingrederer  
ingrederēris (-re)  
...etc.

## FUTURE TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precābor	
I shall entreat	<i>None</i>
precāberis (-re)	
you will entreat	
...etc.	

## PERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precātus sum	precātus sim
I have entreated	
precātus es	precātus sis
you have entreated	
...etc.	...etc.

## PLUPERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precātus eram	precātus essem
I had entreated	
precātus erās	precātus essēs
you had entreated	
...etc.	...etc.

## FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
precātus erō	<i>None</i>
I shall have entreated	
...etc.	

## INFINITIVES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	precārī	--
	to entreat	
Perfect	precātus esse	--
	to have entreated	
Future	precātūrus esse	--
	to be going to entreat	

NOTE that, while the present and perfect infinitives have *passive forms* but *active meanings*, the future infinitive is *active* in *form* and *meaning*.

### PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	precāns entreating	--
Perfect	precātus, -a, -um having entreated	--
Future	precātūrus, -a, -um going to entreat	precandus, -a, -um having to be entreated

NOTE that the following irregularities occur in the participial system:

1. Deponents *do have* a present participle which is active in *form* and *meaning*.
2. Deponent verbs have a perfect *active* participle; other verbs have only a perfect *passive* participle.
3. Deponent verbs have *both* a future *active* and a future *passive* participle in *form* and *meaning*.

The present and future participles and the future infinitive, then, pose the only problem in the deponent system. In all other instances, remember: **DEPONENTS HAVE PASSIVE FORMS, BUT ACTIVE MEANINGS.**

### B. Semi-Deponent Verbs

Several verbs have active forms and meanings in the present system, but passive forms with active meanings in the perfect system. These are called *semi-deponents*.

#### audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, 'dare'

audeō	I dare
audēbam	I used to dare
audēbō	I shall dare
ausus sum	I have dared
ausus eram	I had dared
ausus erō	I shall have dared

### C. Subjective and Objective Genitive

There is a verbal idea understood in nouns and adjectives of feeling or action. The noun that is the object of this verbal idea is called the *objective genitive*, and the noun that is its subject is called the *subjective genitive*.

## OBJECTIVE GENITIVE:

amor <b>patriae</b>	love of the native land (i.e., what is loved is the native land; <b>patriae</b> is the object of the verbal idea understood in <b>amor</b> )
metus <b>belli</b>	fear of war (i.e., what is feared is war)
cupidus (-a, -um) <b>pecūniae</b>	desirous of money (i.e., what the subject desires is money)

## SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE:

<b>fēminae</b> amor <b>patriae</b>	the woman's love of her native land (i.e., the woman is doing the loving and therefore <b>fēminae</b> is the <i>subjective genitive</i> ; the woman [subject] loves her native land [object])
---------------------------------------	---

## D. Predicate Genitive (Genitive of Characteristic)

A noun in the genitive case which stands alone (or modified by an adjective) in the predicate denotes a characteristic or a class.

<b>Hominis sapientis</b> est librōs legere.	It is ( <i>the mark</i> ) of a wise man to read books. Reading books is <i>the mark</i> of a wise man.
<b>Bonī</b> est deōs laudāre.	It is ( <i>the mark</i> ) of a good [man] to praise the gods.

## E. Infinitive As Subject

The infinitive is, in fact, a neuter noun. In the sentences given as examples under section D above, **legere** and **laudāre** are the subjects of the verb **est**.

**Vidēre** est crēdere. *To see* is to believe; *seeing* is believing.

Infinitives used in this way may be modified by adjectives which will appear in the neuter.

Librōs legere <b>bonum</b> est.	To read books is ( <i>a good thing</i> ); reading books is <i>good</i> ; it is <i>a good thing</i> to read books.
Scimus <b>bonum</b> esse librōs legere.	We know that to read books is ( <i>a good thing</i> ); we know that reading books is ( <i>a good thing</i> ).

In the last example, the infinitive **legere** is the subject accusative of the infinitive **esse**.

F. The Irregular Verbs **volō**, **nōlō**, **mālō**

volō, velle, voluī --	wish, want, be willing
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, --	be unwilling (contracted from <b>nōn volō</b> )
mālō, mälle, māluī, --	prefer (contracted from <b>magis volō</b> )



All three verbs actually belong to the third conjugation. The only irregularities which occur are in the present tense, as illustrated below. The imperfect subjunctive is formed on the irregular infinitives **velle**, **nōlle**, **mālle**. The imperfect and future indicatives as well as the present participle (except for **mālō**, which lacks one) are formed on the stems **vole-**, **nōle-**, and **māle-**, as if the verbs had regular infinitives (★**volere**, ★**nōlere**, ★**mālere**).

## PRESENT TENSE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
<b>volō</b>	volō vīs vult volumus vultis volunt	velim velis velit velimus velitis velint	volēns
<b>nōlō</b>	nōlō (= nōn volō) nōn vīs nōn vult nōlumus (= nōn volumus) nōn vultis nōlunt (= nōn volunt)	nōlim (= nōn velim) nōlis (= nōn velis) nōlit (= nōn velit) nōlimus (= nōn velimus) nōlitis (= nōn velitis) nōlint (= nōn velint)	nōlēns
	IMPERATIVE: nōlī (sing.); nōlite (pl.)		
<b>mālō</b>	mālō (= magis volō) māvīs (= magis vīs) māvult (= magis vult) mālumus (= magis volumus) māvultis (= magis vultis) mālunt (= magis volunt)	mālim (= magis velim) mālis (= magis velis) mālit (= magis velit) mālimus (= magis velimus) mālitis (= magis velitis) mālint (= magis velint)	--

## UNIT ELEVEN — VOCABULARY

<b>arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum</b>	think, believe, judge
<b>audeō, -ēre, ausus sum</b>	dare
<b>cēna, -ae, F.</b>	dinner
<b>cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum</b>	try, attempt
<b>cōnsul, cōnsulis, M.</b>	consul
<b>crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus</b>	be credulous, believe; be trusting, trust (+ dat.)
<b>cupidus, -a, -um</b>	desirous, eager, fond of (+ gen.)

<b>divitiae, -ārum, F. pl.</b>	riches, wealth
<b>dux, ducis, M. or F.</b>	leader, guide
<b>experior, experiri, expertus sum</b>	try, put to the test, experience
<b>familia, -ae, F.</b>	household, family
<b>fateor, fatēri, fassus sum</b>	confess
<b>cōfiteor, cōfitēri, cōfessus sum</b>	confess
<b>flūmen, -inis, N.</b>	river, running water
<b>forum, -i, N.</b>	open space, market place, public square
<b>gradior, gradi, gressus sum</b>	step, walk
<b>aggredior, -i, -gressus sum</b>	go to, approach
<b>ēgredior, -i, -gressus sum</b>	go out, go away
<b>ingredior, -i, -gressus sum</b>	go into, enter, advance, begin
<b>prōgredior, -i, -gressus sum</b>	go forth, advance, proceed
<b>hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum</b>	urge, encourage (+ <i>ut or nē</i> and subjunctive)
<b>imperātor, -ōris, M.</b>	commander, general
<b>iuvenis, -is, M. or F.</b>	youth, young person
<b>loquor, loqui, locutus sum</b>	speak, talk
<b>mālō, malle, mālui, --</b>	prefer, choose rather
<b>minor, mināri, minātus sum</b>	jut forth, threaten
<b>morior, mori, mortuus sum</b>	die
<b>nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum</b>	be born, descend from
<b>nāvis, -is, -ium, F.</b>	ship
<b>neglegō, -ere, neglēxi, neglēctus</b>	disregard, neglect
<b>nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, --</b>	be unwilling, wish. . . not
<b>ōrātor, -ōris, M.</b>	speaker
<b>parēns, parentis, M. or F.</b>	parent
<b>pator, pati, passus sum</b>	suffer, endure, allow
<b>pauper, pauperis</b>	poor
<b>praemium, -i, N.</b>	reward
<b>precor, precāri, precātus sum</b>	beg, request
<b>proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum</b>	set forth, set out, start
<b>scelus, sceleris, N.</b>	wicked deed, crime
<b>sequor, sequi, secutus sum</b>	follow
<b>servō (1)</b>	save, preserve, rescue, keep
<b>soleō, -ēre, solitus sum</b>	be accustomed, be customary
<b>statua, -ae, F.</b>	statue
<b>ut (conj. + indicative)</b>	as, when
<b>ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum</b>	use, enjoy, experience (+ <i>abl.</i> )
<b>vereor, verēri, veritus sum</b>	reverence, fear, dread
<b>volō, velle, volui, --</b>	wish, want, be willing

## UNIT ELEVEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Audeō, audēre, ausus sum**, 'dare', and **soleō, solēre, solitus sum**, 'be accustomed', are semi-deponents. In other words, in the present, imperfect, and future tenses, the forms are active with active meanings, but in the perfect tenses, the forms are passive with active meanings: **audēbis**, 'you will dare'; **ausus erat**, 'he had dared'.

**Crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus** is really an intransitive verb which means 'be trusting' and governs the dative case; however, we often translate it as 'believe, trust': **Cui crēdis?** 'To whom are you trusting?; Whom do you trust?'

The adjective **cupidus, -a, -um**, 'desirous, eager, fond of', governs an objective genitive: **Cupidus imperiī erat**, 'He was desirous of power'.

**Divitiae, divitiarum** is a feminine plural noun meaning 'riches, wealth'.

**Dux, ducis**, 'leader, guide', may be either masculine or feminine; it is related to the verb **dūcō**, 'lead'.

**Fateor, fatērī, fassus sum** and its compound **cōnfiteor, cōnfiterī, cōfessus sum** both mean 'confess' and may be used interchangeably.

There is a third conjugation verb **fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus**, 'flow'; when the abstract noun ending **-men, -minis** is added to the stem, the noun **flūmen, flūminis**, N., 'the result of flowing', that is, 'river', results.

**Gradior, gradī, gressus sum**, 'step, walk', when compounded gives the stem **-gredior**. Thus, **aggredior** (**ad + gradior**), 'go to, approach'; **ēgredior**, 'go out'; **ingredior**, 'go into, enter, advance, begin'; **prōgredior**, 'go forth, proceed, advance'.

The verb **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**, 'urge, encourage', can introduce an indirect command: **Amicōs hortātī sumus nē huic hominī crēderent**, 'We urged our friends not to believe this man'.

**Imperātor, imperātōris**, M., is 'the one who does the ordering', namely, 'commander, general'; **ōrātor, ōrātōris**, M., is 'one who does the begging or pleading', and then, 'speaker'.

**Iuvenis, iuvenis**, M. or F., 'youth, young man', is not an i-stem; neither is **parēns, parentis**, M. or F., 'parent', although according to the rules for i-stems, one would expect them to be.

**Loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** is 'speak, talk'; **dicō, dicere, dixī, dictus** is 'say, tell'.

**Volō, velle, voluī**, --, 'wish, want, be willing', is an irregular verb of the third conjugation. It has two compounds: (**nōn + volō**) **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, --, 'be unwilling, wish...not', and (**magis + volō**) **mālō, mälle, mālui**, --, 'prefer, choose rather'. Literally **mālō** means 'want more'; it may govern an accusative and an ablative of comparison: **Virtūtemne fōrmā māvis?**, 'Do you want courage more than beauty?; Do you prefer courage to beauty?'

Dux mortem impiis minatus est. The leader threatened the impious men  
*or* with death.

**Morior, morī, mortuus sum, 'die',** has as its future participle **moritūrus, -a, -um.**

**Neglegō** is a compound of **legō** (**nec** + **legō**, 'not choose'); it means 'disregard, neglect'. Like **intellegō**, **neglegō** has an **-x-** in the perfect active stem, **neglēxi**.

**Servō**, a first conjugation verb, does *not* mean ‘serve’ (*serviō*, *servire* does); it means ‘save, preserve, rescue, keep’.

Notice that **ut** may be used with the indicative; when it is so used, it means 'as' or 'when'.

**Ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum**, ‘use, enjoy, experience’, is one of several deponents which govern the ablative case: **Ferrō ūsus es?**, ‘Did you use your sword?’ The most common of the other deponents which govern the ablative are: **fruor, fruī, fructus sum**, ‘enjoy’; **fungor, fungī, fūctus sum**, ‘perform’; **potior, potīrī, potītus sum**, ‘gain possession of’; and **vēscor, vēscī, --, ‘eat’**.

The suffixes **-tor** (M.), **-trix** (F.) added to the stem of a verb produce a noun. Each means 'one who'. Thus:

**inceptor, -ōris, M., 'one who begins, beginner'**

**audītor, -ōris, M., 'one who hears, hearer'**

**scriptor, -ōris, M., 'one who writes, writer'**

**spectātor, -ōris, M., and spectātrix, -trīcis, F., 'one who looks on, spectator'**

**āctor, -ōris, M., 'one who does, doer, performer'**



**liberātor**, -ōris, M., 'one who frees, liberator'

**amātor**, -ōris, M., and **amātrīx**, **amātrīcis**, F., 'one who loves, lover'

**inventor**, -ōris, M., and **inventrīx**, **inventrīcis**, F., 'one who finds, discoverer'

**cantor**, -ōris, M., and **cantrīx**, **cantrīcis**, F., 'one who sings, singer'

**victor**, -ōris, M., and **victrīx**, **victrīcis**, F., 'one who conquers, conqueror'

**petītor**, -ōris, M., 'one who seeks, seeker', also, 'a candidate for office'

By analogy, there are **viātor**, -ōris, M., and **viātrīx**, **viātrīcis**, F., 'traveler' (from **via**, 'way' + -tor or -trīx).

The endings -ulus, -a, -um; -ōlus, -a, -um (after a vowel); -culus -a, -um; -ellus, -a, -um; -illus, -a, -um are diminutive endings which may also be used to show affection, pity, or contempt.

**puellula**, -ae, F., 'a little girl'

**filiōlus**, -ī, M., 'a little son'

**homunculus**, -ī, M., 'a little man; a poor, weak man'

**libellus**, -ī, M., 'a little book'

**ocellus**, -ī, M., 'a little eye'

**Graeculus**, -ī, M. (**Graecus**, -a, -um, 'Greek'), 'a no-good Greek'

**sigilla**, -ōrum, N. pl. (**signum**, -ī, N., 'sign'), 'little figures, little images'

#### ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES ADDED TO THE STEMS OF NOUNS

The suffixes -eus, -ius, -ānus, -ēnus, -īnus, -ēius, -cus, -ticus added to the stem of a noun (or, sometimes, an adjective) mean 'made of' or 'belonging to':

**fēmineus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to a woman, feminine'

**aureus**, -a, -um, 'made of gold, golden'

**patrius**, -a, -um, 'belonging to a father, paternal'

**rēgius**, -a, -um, 'belonging to a king, royal'

**montānus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to a mountain, mountain-'

**urbānus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to the city, city-'

**terrēnus**, -a, -um, 'made of earth, earthen'

**aliēnus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to another, strange'

**dīvīnus**, -a, -um, (**dīvus**, -ī, M., 'god'), 'belonging to a deity, divine'

**marīnus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to the sea, marine'

**plēbēius**, -a, -um (**plēbs**, **plēbis**, F., 'common people'), 'belonging to the common people, plebeian'

**cīvicus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to or of a citizen, civic'

**bellicus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to or of war, war-'

**domesticus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to the house, domestic'

**viāticus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to a road, belonging to a journey'



The suffixes **-ālis**, **-āris**, **-ilis** added to the stem of a noun mean 'pertaining to':

**aquālis**, -e, 'pertaining to water'

**corporālis**, -e, 'pertaining to the body, corporeal'

**populāris**, -e, 'pertaining to the people'

**cōsulāris**, -e, 'pertaining to a consul, consular'

**hostilis**, -e, 'pertaining to an enemy, hostile'

**cīvilis**, -e, 'pertaining to citizens, civil, civic'

The suffixes **-ter (-tris)**, **-ester (-estris)**, **-timus**, **-nus**, **-urnus**, **-ternus** mean 'belonging to' (especially of times and places):

**equester**, **equestris**, **equestre** (eques, 'horseman, knight'), 'belonging to a horseman, equestrian'

**campester**, **campestris**, **campestre**, 'of or pertaining to a level field'

**terrestris**, -e, 'of or belonging to the earth'

**maritimus**, -a, -um, 'of or belonging to the sea'

**finitimus**, -a, -um, 'bordering upon, neighboring'

**meridiānus**, -a, -um (meridiēs, 'noon'), 'of or belonging to mid-day'

**nocturnus**, -a, -um, 'of or belonging to the night'

**diūturnus**, -a, -um, 'of long duration, lasting'

**hesternus**, -a, -um (heri, 'yesterday'), 'of or pertaining to yesterday'

## UNIT ELEVEN — DRILL

### I. Deponent Verbs

Translate indicatives, participles, infinitives, and imperatives; fully identify subjunctives.

**cōnor**, -ārī, **cōnātus sum**      try, attempt

**fateor**, -ērī, **fassus sum**      confess

**sequor**, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**      follow

**experior**, -irī, **expertus sum**      try, experience

1. **cōnātur**; **fatētur**; **sequitur**; **experitur**
2. **cōnābātur**; **fatēbātur**; **sequēbātur**; **experiebātur**
3. **cōnābitur**; **fatēbitur**; **sequētur**; **experietur**
4. **cōnāta est**; **fassa est**; **secūta est**; **experta est**
5. **cōnāta erat**; **fassa erat**; **secūta erat**; **experta erat**
6. **cōnāta erit**; **fassa erit**; **secūta erit**; **experta erit**
7. **cōnētur**; **fateātur**; **sequātur**; **experiatur**
8. **cōnārētur**; **fatērētur**; **sequerētur**; **experirētur**
9. **cōnāta sit**; **fassa sit**; **secūta sit**; **experta sit**

10. cōnāta esset; fassa esset; secūta esset; experta esset
11. cōnāre; fatēre; sequere; experire
12. cōnāminī; fatēminī; sequiminī; experiminī
13. cōnārī; fatērī; sequī; experīrī
14. cōnātus esse; fassus esse; secūtus esse; expertus esse
15. cōnātūrus esse; fassūrus esse; secūtūrus esse; expertūrus esse
16. cōnāns; fatēns; sequēns; experiēns
17. cōnātus; fassus; secūtus; expertus
18. cōnātūrus; fassūrus; secūtūrus; expertūrus
19. cōnandus; fatendus; sequendus; experiendus
20. capit
21. sequitur
22. cēpērunt
23. secūtī sunt
24. iubētis
25. fatēminī
26. iubēminī
27. fassī estis
28. iussī estis
29. iussus, -a, -um
30. fassus, -a, -um
31. laudāns
32. cōnāns
33. laudās
34. laudāris
35. cōnāris

## II.

Translate the following sentences and give the syntax of the words in boldface type:

1. Fuga **servōrum** eō tempore relāta est.
2. Timōrem **supplicis** intellegere temptāvimus.
3. Laus **maiōrum** nostrōrum maxima erat.
4. Nātōs amōrem **virtūtis** docēbant.
5. **Gentis** crūdēlis est bellum gentī amīcae **inferre**.
6. **Virī** pessimi semper fuit patriam **trādere**.
7. Amōrem **coniugis** amōre fēminae alterius māluērunt.
8. Factumne crūdēle negāre vīs?
9. Virī **infēlicis** est **velle** plūs quam satis.
10. Custōs **templī** fugere nōlet.

## UNIT ELEVEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES

### (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Arbitror cōsulem mori; Arbitror cōsulem mortuum esse; Arbitror cōsulem moritūrum esse.
2. Scelusne cōfiteri ausus es?
3. Ōrātōremne loqui patiēmini?
4. Imperātor militēs hortābatur ut prōgrederentur.
5. Si iuvenēs nōbīs noxam minentur, eōs magnopere vereāmur.
6. Auxilium precāns, supplex ad āram ruit.
7. Flūmen secūti, ad oppidum maximum vēnimus.
8. Crēdidistīne parentēs quam primum profectūrōs esse?
9. Ducēs nāvibus nōn ūsi erant.
10. Pauperēs hortāti sumus nē ē prōvinciā ēgredi cōnārentur.

## UNIT ELEVEN — EXERCISES

### I.

1. Si ūtāmur nāvibus sociōrum, quam primum fugere possimus.
2. Nōli arbitrārī nostra scelera esse peiōra tuis.
3. Imperātor sequentēs hortātus est nē odium iuvenum verērentur.
4. Fatēbāmur nōs proficisci cōnātōs esse ut iungerēmus manum hostium.
5. Patientēs multās poenās quam primum Rōmam prōgredi voluimus.
6. Ēgrediēns primā lūce, familia ad flūmen quod erat altissimum prōgressa sē ulterius gradī nōlle dīxit. [**ulterius**, comparative adv., 'farther']
7. Dux fassus est sibi esse metum cōsulum.
8. Domini servīs ut sibi labōrārent maximā cum diligentīā minārī solitī sunt.
9. Est fortis virī neglegere pericula quae minantur.
10. Est cōsulis velle mori prō patriā.
11. Bonum est velle prō amātis pati.
12. Si cōnāns servāre vitam cōsulis moriāris, tuī civēs fortissimum factum laudent et ut statua pōnātur in forō hortentur.
13. Sapientēs crēdere ausi sunt hominem cupidum divitiārum saepe errāre.
14. Datūrus cēnam iuvenibus sequentibus sē, imperātor deōs precārī coepit ut familiam servārent. Dīxit sē quam primum domum prōgressūrum esse.
15. Fassus est sē nātum esse pauperibus parentibus quibus amor suī esset maximus.
16. Aenēās ē deā nātus est, ut aiunt, et multa proficiscēns Troiā ad Italiam expertus est. [**Aenēās**, -ae, M., proper name of a Roman hero]
17. Amor patriae est boni civis.

18. Dulce est scire amicōs mala nōn patī, ut scīs.
19. Cupidus magnōrum praemiōrum ōrātor dē sceleribus cum duce proficiscentium nōn loquētur.
20. Imperātor sequentibus nē vereantur hostēs minantēs ignī et ferrō imperāre solet.
21. Nōn est patī meum.
22. Audē gradi cum virtūte et audāciā, omnibus cūrīs neglēctīs.
23. Iuvenēs pauperēs in villam nocte ingredi māluērunt nē ā familiā eam incolentī vidērentur.
24. Servāre pecūniam nōn est facile ūllō tempore.
25. Alii divitiīs bene ūtī volunt, aliī ob mōrēs nōlunt.
26. Saxa ingentia ē flūmine minantia periculō fuērunt nāvibus.
27. Servi nōs aggradientēs viam ad villam mōnstrāvērunt.
28. Sī in hāc cūrā vīta mihi pōnenda sit, pōnam spem salūtis in amōre fidēque tuī.
29. Quid tibi pecūniā opus est, sī ūtī nōn potes? [**quid**, *here*, 'why']
30. Quod vult habet quī velle quod satis est potest.
31. Antiquus populus sōlem esse deum maximum arbitrāns eum precātus est auxilium. Cōfessus est sibi auxilium multum opus esse.
32. Satis est superāre inimicum, pessimum est perdere.
33. Ūnus deus poenam affert, ut multi cōgitant.
34. Virī bonī est nōlle facere noxam.
35. Quī superārī sē patitur prō tempore superat.
36. Sine morā ex urbe ēgredimini! Nōlite vōs ūnā hōrā in urbe inveniri patī!
37. Quam ob rem scelera illius generis ferre solēbās? Nōs in hāc familiā neque tanta mala ferre solitī sumus neque ferēmus.
38. Imperātōre multa locūtō, militēs fassī sunt sē parum mortem verēri sed bene scire sē omnēs morī nōn posse; sibi opus esse mala atque pericula patī ut omnis orbis terrārum sē cum gaudiō laudāret dicēs malum propter audāciam hōrum virōrum ē terrā pulsum esse.
39. Crēdidistis iuvenēs quōs ad vōs vocāvissētis maximā esse diligentīā et omnibus rēbus ūsūrōs esse ut Rōmam sē cōferrent. Nihil eis autem fidei erat; male crēdidistis.
40. Cupidī divitiārum et primā lūce Rōmam proficiscentēs, pauperēs deōs precābantur nē salūte, pecūniāque et omnibus bonis in urbe caritūrī essent. Spēs hominibus est saepe caecissima!
41. Parentum malōrum est iuvenēs neglegere; sapientēs semper illum parentem hortātī sunt ut filiī ei cūrae sint.
42. Tot mala sum passus quot in caelō sīdera sunt.
43. Fatēmur scelera maximae audāciae in nostrā rē públicā hōc annō facta esse. Quōrum quod simile in tōtō orbe terrārum factum?

## II.

1. Having dared to enter the neglected house, the children fled as soon as possible when the guardian approached.
2. Desirous of money, the young men attempted crimes, nor did they fear the punishment which threatened.
3. Famous consuls, don't use all your wealth in order that you may fill the forum with statues of impious men.
4. The soldiers confessed that the commander's hope of safety had saved lives in a time of great danger.
5. Loving both (one's) enemies and (one's) friends is the mark of a distinguished man.

## III. Readings

A. Cicero, *In Catilinam* 1.5.10, 6.15, 8.20, 11.27

In Marcus Tullius Cicero's consulship, Lucius Catiline planned a conspiracy. Cicero found out about it and, after exposing Catiline's plans to the senate, drove him into exile.

Quae cum<sup>1</sup> ita<sup>2</sup> sint, Catilina,<sup>3</sup> perge<sup>4</sup> quō<sup>5</sup> coepisti, ēgredere aliquandō<sup>6</sup> ex urbe; patent<sup>7</sup> portae: proficiscere. Nōbiscum versārī<sup>8</sup> iam diūtius nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam.<sup>9</sup> Quotiēns<sup>10</sup> tū mē dēsīgnātum,<sup>11</sup> quotiēns<sup>10</sup> vērō cōnsulem interficere cōnātus es! Nihil agis, nihil adsequeris<sup>12</sup> neque tamen cōnārī ac velle dēsistis.<sup>13</sup> Ēgredere ex urbe, Catilina,<sup>3</sup> liberā rem pūblicam metū, in exsilium<sup>14</sup> sī hanc vōcem exspectās,<sup>15</sup> proficiscere. Etenim<sup>16</sup> sī mēcum patria, quae mihi vitā meā multō est cārīor, sī cūncta<sup>17</sup> Italia, sī omnis rēs pūblica sic<sup>18</sup> loquitur: "Marce Tulli, quid agis? Tūne eum quem esse hostem comperisti,<sup>19</sup> quem ducem belli futūrum vidēs, quem exspectārī<sup>15</sup> imperātōrem in castris<sup>20</sup> hostium sentis, auctōrem sceleris, principem<sup>21</sup> coniūratiōnis,<sup>22</sup> ēvocātōrem<sup>23</sup> servōrum et civium perditōrum, exire<sup>24</sup> patiēre, ut abs<sup>25</sup> tē nōn ēmissus<sup>26</sup> ex urbe sed immissus<sup>27</sup> in urbem esse videātur?"

<sup>1</sup> cum (conj. + subjunctive), 'since'    <sup>2</sup> ita (adv.), 'so'    <sup>3</sup> Catilina, -ae, M., a man's name    <sup>4</sup> pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus, 'continue'    <sup>5</sup> quō (adv.), '(to) where'    <sup>6</sup> aliquandō (adv.), 'now at last'    <sup>7</sup> pateō, -ēre, -uī, --, 'stand open'    <sup>8</sup> versor (1), 'live'    <sup>9</sup> sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs, 'allow'    <sup>10</sup> quotiēns (adv.), 'how many times'    <sup>11</sup> dēsīgnātus, -a, -um, 'elect' (understand cōnsulem)    <sup>12</sup> adsequor (ad + sequor), 'gain'    <sup>13</sup> dēsistō, -ere, dēstitī, dēstitus, 'stop (from)' (+ infinitive)    <sup>14</sup> exsilium, -ī, N., 'exile'    <sup>15</sup> exspectō (1), 'wait for'    <sup>16</sup> etenim (conj.), 'and indeed'    <sup>17</sup> cūnctus, -a, -um, 'all'    <sup>18</sup> sic (adv.), 'in this way'    <sup>19</sup> comperiō, -īre, comperī, compertus, 'learn'    <sup>20</sup> castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp'    <sup>21</sup> princeps, principis, M., 'the leading man'    <sup>22</sup> coniūratiō, -ōnis, F., 'conspiracy'    <sup>23</sup> ēvocātōr, -ōris, M., 'a summoner, one who calls out (to arms)'    <sup>24</sup> exeō, -īre, -īvī, -itus, 'go out'    <sup>25</sup> abs = ab    <sup>26</sup> ēmittō (ē + mittō), 'send out'    <sup>27</sup> immittō (in + mittō), 'send against' (+ in and the accusative)



## B. Martial 2.21:

Bāsia<sup>1</sup> dās aliīs, aliīs dās, Postume,<sup>2</sup> dextram.

Dīcis, 'Utrum māvīs? Ēlige.'<sup>3</sup> Mālo manum.

<sup>1</sup> *bāsium*, -ī, N., 'kiss'    <sup>2</sup> *Postumus*, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>3</sup> *ēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, 'choose'

## C. Martial 10.8:

Nūbere<sup>1</sup> Paula<sup>2</sup> cupit<sup>3</sup> nōbīs, ego dūcere<sup>4</sup> Paulam<sup>2</sup>

nōlō: anus<sup>5</sup> est. Vellem, sī magis esset anus.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *nūbō*, -ere, *nūpsī*, *nuptus*, 'marry' (+ dat.); used for a *woman* marrying    <sup>2</sup> *Paula*, -ae, F., a woman's name    <sup>3</sup> *cupiō*, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, 'wish'    <sup>4</sup> *dūcō*, *here*, 'marry'; used for a *man* marrying (understand in *mātrimōnium*)    <sup>5</sup> *anus*, -ūs, F., 'an old woman'; here, used as an adjective, 'old'; *magis* is used with it to give a comparative force

## D. Martial 9.10:

Nūbere<sup>1</sup> vīs Priscō:<sup>2</sup> nōn mīror,<sup>3</sup> Paula;<sup>4</sup> sapistī.<sup>5</sup>

Dūcere<sup>6</sup> tē nōn vult Priscus:<sup>2</sup> et ille sapit.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *nūbō*, -ere, *nūpsī*, *nuptus*, 'marry' (+ dat.); used for a *woman* marrying    <sup>2</sup> *Priscus*, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>3</sup> *mīror* (1), 'wonder'    <sup>4</sup> *Paula*, -ae, F., a woman's name    <sup>5</sup> *sapiō*, -ere, -īvī, --, 'be sensible'; *sapistī* is a contraction for *sapivistī* (see Unit Eighteen, Section D)    <sup>6</sup> *dūcō*, *here*, 'marry' (understand in *mātrimōnium*); used for a *man* marrying.

## E. Martial 8.27:

Mūnera<sup>1</sup> quī tibi dat locuplētī,<sup>2</sup> Gaure,<sup>3</sup> senique,<sup>4</sup>

sī sapīs<sup>5</sup> et sentīs, hoc tibi ait 'Morere'.

<sup>1</sup> *mūnus*, *mūneris*, N., 'gift'    <sup>2</sup> *locuplēs*, *locuplētis*, 'wealthy'    <sup>3</sup> *Gaurus*, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>4</sup> *senex*, *senis*, 'old'    <sup>5</sup> *sapiō*, -ere, *sapivī*, --, 'be sensible'

## F. Martial 2.87:

Dicis amōre tuī bellās<sup>1</sup> ardēre puellās,

quī faciem<sup>2</sup> sub aquā, Sexte,<sup>3</sup> natantis<sup>4</sup> habēs.

<sup>1</sup> *bellus*, -a, -um, 'beautiful'    <sup>2</sup> *faciēs*, -ēī, F., 'face'    <sup>3</sup> *Sextus*, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>4</sup> *natō* (1), 'swim'

## G. Martial 12.78:

Nīl in<sup>1</sup> tē scripsī, Bithŷnice.<sup>2</sup> Crēdere nōn vīs

et iūrāre<sup>3</sup> iubēs? Mālo satisfacere.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *in*, *here*, 'against'    <sup>2</sup> *Bithŷnicus*, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>3</sup> *iūrō* (1), 'swear'    <sup>4</sup> *satisfaciō* (*satis* + *faciō*), 'make amends'

## H. Martial 5.83:

Insequeris,<sup>1</sup> fugiō; fugis, insequor;<sup>1</sup> haec mihi mēns est:  
velle tuum nōlō, Dindyme,<sup>2</sup> nōlle, volō.

<sup>1</sup> *insequor* (in + *sequor*), 'pursue'    <sup>2</sup> *Dindymus*, -i, M., a man's name

I. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 2.10 (adapted):

Amicō mortuō, graviter angī<sup>1</sup> nōn amicī est, sed sē ipsum<sup>2</sup> amantis est.

<sup>1</sup> *angī* (present passive infinitive), 'to suffer torment'    <sup>2</sup> *ipsum* (acc. sing. M.), intensifies sē, translate sē ipsum 'his very self'

J. Cicero, *Dē Officiis* 1.24.83:

In tranquillō<sup>1</sup> tempestātem<sup>2</sup> adversam<sup>3</sup> optāre dēmentis est.

<sup>1</sup> *tranquillum*, -i, N., 'calm'    <sup>2</sup> *tempestās*, -tātis, F., 'weather'    <sup>3</sup> *adversus*, -a, -um, 'unfavorable'

K. Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.198–9 and 202–3:

Ō socii (neque enim ignārī<sup>1</sup> sumus ante malōrum),  
Ō passi graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque<sup>2</sup> finem.

. . .

. . . revocāte<sup>3</sup> animōs<sup>4</sup> maestumque<sup>5</sup> timōrem  
mittite; forsan<sup>6</sup> et haec ōlim<sup>7</sup> meminisse<sup>8</sup> iuvābit.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *ignārus*, -a, -um, 'unaware (of)' (+ gen.)    <sup>2</sup> *quoque* (adv.), 'also'    <sup>3</sup> *revocō* (re- + *vocō*), 'call back, recover'    <sup>4</sup> *animus*, -i, M., 'spirit'    <sup>5</sup> *maestus*, -a, -um, 'gloomy'  
<sup>6</sup> *forsan* (adv.), 'perhaps'    <sup>7</sup> *ōlim* (adv.), 'at some time'    <sup>8</sup> *meminī*, *meminisse* (defective verb), 'remember'    <sup>9</sup> *iuvō*, -āre, *iūvī*, *iūtus*, 'please, help, delight'

L. Cicero, *Dē Officiis* 1.6.18:

Omnēs enim trahimur<sup>1</sup> et dūcimur ad cognitiōnis<sup>2</sup> et scientiae<sup>3</sup>  
cupiditātem,<sup>4</sup> in quā excellere<sup>5</sup> pulchrum putāmus,<sup>6</sup> lābī<sup>7</sup> autem, errāre,  
nescire,<sup>8</sup> dēcipī<sup>9</sup> et malum et turpe<sup>10</sup> dūcimus.

<sup>1</sup> *trahō*, -ere, *trāxī*, *tractus*, 'attract'    <sup>2</sup> *cognitiō*, -ōnis, F., 'knowledge'    <sup>3</sup> *scientia*, -ae, F., 'knowing'    <sup>4</sup> *cupiditās*, -tātis, F., 'desire'    <sup>5</sup> *excellō*, -ere, *excellui*, *excelsus*, 'excel'  
<sup>6</sup> *putō* (1), 'think'    <sup>7</sup> *lābor*, *lābī*, *lāpsus sum*, 'slip'    <sup>8</sup> *nesciō* (ne + *sciō*), 'not know'  
<sup>9</sup> *dēcipiō* (dē + *capiō*), 'deceive'    <sup>10</sup> *turpis*, -e, 'disgraceful'

# REVIEW: UNITS NINE TO ELEVEN

## Review of Syntax

1. Custōdis ācerrimī est hospitēs monēre dē illis oppidō ignem minantibus ut sē in fugam quam primum cōferant.  
(predicate genitive; infinitive as subject; **quam** with superlative)
2. Imperium illius ducis nunc minus est quam prius; nec habet apud hās gentēs satis auctōritātis. [**auctōritās, -tātis**, F., 'influence']  
(comparison with **quam**; partitive genitive)
3. Timentī auxilium ferre solēmus nē metū male ūtātur. Hominēs enim clārissimae fāmae metū saepe scelera crūdēliōra faciunt.  
(instrumental ablative with **ūtor**; genitive of description; ablative of cause)
4. Multī virī suā sententiā sunt fēlicēs; illi autem multōrum saepe dominī sunt, sed plūrium servī.  
(objective genitive)
5. Multis ante diēbus, lūce erant clāriōra nōbīs tua cōnsilia; nunc ea intellegere nōn possumus.  
(ablative of degree of difference; ablative of comparison)
6. Oppidō captō, ōrātōrem, virum clārissimō patre maiōribusque, superantēs interficere ausī sunt (audēbunt).  
(ablative absolute; ablative of description; semi-deponent verb)
7. His dictīs, hoc genus verbōrum patī nōlēbant, sed magnus eis metus erat eōrum loquentium.  
(ablative absolute; objective genitive)
8. Dis inimicis, multō maxima pars civium bellum tamen gessit.  
(ablative absolute; ablative of degree of difference; partitive genitive)
9. Sī in hāc cūrā auxilium opus erit, pōnam spem salūtis tōtius in amōre fidēque vestrī.  
(objective genitives)
10. Omnibus bonis optimum est plūs glōriae quam dīvitiārum habēre.  
(partitive genitive; comparison with **quam**; infinitive as subject)
11. Servī ē villis ēgrediuntur, noctemque tōtam itinere factō, in alterum oppidum primā lūce venient.  
(ablative absolute)

12. Nam arbitrāti sunt sē dis superis cūrae esse.
13. Cognītis imperātōris rēbus, Rōmae gaudium magnum erat.  
(ablative absolute)
14. Nostrā ūtere amicitia ut volēs.  
(instrumental ablative with **ūtor**)
15. Tū hortāris ut fidē sim magnā et spem habeam salūtis.  
(ablative of description; objective genitive)
16. Amōre Iovis multae fēminae iram Iunōnis passae sunt.  
(ablative of cause; subjective genitives)
17. Alii huic sōli crēdidērunt, alii ūlli crēdere nōluērunt.
18. Quīque ē supplicibus erant simillimī viris quōs sciō.
19. Virī magnae virtūtis saepe laudābuntur ā populō honestis mōribus.  
(genitive of description; ablative of description)
20. Mihi nihil est tam cārum quam amicus amātus.
21. Quam primum nāvēs ācerrimōs militēs facillimē auferent.  
(**quam** with superlative)
22. Quid cōsulī est cārius quam patria? Cōsulī nihil est cārius patriā.  
(comparison with **quam**; ablative of comparison)
23. Tibi ūnī, nōn ei, loquī mālō.
24. Quid cōsiliū cēpisti?  
(partitive genitive)
25. Multō melius quam frāter legit.  
(ablative of degree of difference)

## UNITS 9–11: Self-Review A

### I.

Change to the plural, giving all possibilities:

- |                 |            |             |
|-----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. difficiliōri | 3. nullius | 5. loqueris |
| 2. maius        | 4. offert  |             |

### II.

Translate indicative forms; identify subjunctives. Then change each form to the simple future tense, retaining person, number, and voice.

- |               |                  |               |          |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|----------|
| 1. passi sunt | 3. neglexeris    | 5. solitus es | 7. malim |
| 2. hortantur  | 4. proficiscebar | 6. volumus    |          |

### III.

Translate, and then do whatever else is required:

1. Sentio illum virum omnibus temporibus fortiter vivere cui timor mortis gravissimus non sit.  
a) What is the syntax of **mortis**?

2. Ullusne nostrum dicere potest se suam vitam quam sapientissimē egisse?
  - a) Syntax of **nostrum**?
3. Illi cives qui sunt multo fortiores quam nos corpore credunt se hostes e sua civitate expellere vi posse.
  - a) Give an alternative construction in Latin for **quam nos**.
4. Imperator militi dicit bellum quo urbem servaverint longius multis diebus fuisse quam illud in monte.
  - a) Syntax of **diebus**?
5. Dicit maiores multo maiora et meliora fecisse quam ea quae iuvenes facturi sint.
6. Fassi sunt hunc consulem multo melius se civitati gessisse quam illum.
  - a) Change **fassi sunt** to the future tense.
7. Dis volentibus, consilia iuvenum crudeliorum nostrae saluti minari conantium debentur.
  - a) Syntax of **volentibus**?
8. Cupidi divitiarum est bonos mores invidiā et audaciā negligere et in scelera se conferre.
  - a) Syntax of **cupidi**?
  - b) Syntax of **divitiarum**?
  - c) Syntax of **negligere**?
9. Bello illato, hospes magni studii et minimi timoris ad moenia venit et homines portas servantes hortatus est ut quam primum proficiscerentur. "Nisi," ait, "profecti eritis, magna scelera patiemini."
  - a) Syntax of **studii**?
  - b) Change **venit** to the future tense and make any other necessary change(s) in the sentence.
  - c) Rewrite the conditional sentence in Latin as a present contrary-to-fact condition.
10. Matris odio belli, filius, iuvenis bonis moribus, pugnare neque vult neque audet.
  - a) Syntax of **matris**?
  - b) Syntax of **odio**?
  - c) Syntax of **moribus**?
  - d) Change **vult** and **audet** to the future perfect tense.

#### IV.

Translate:

Noli arbitrari me alii longiores litteras scribere, nisi unus ex amicis ad me multa scripsit ad quem arbitror me respondere debere; nihil enim habeo quod scribere possum, et hōc tempore nihil difficilior facio. Ad te et ad nostram filiam non



possum sine plurimis lacrimis et magnā curā scribere; vos video miserrimas esse, quae mihi cariores vitā sitis.

(part of a letter written by Cicero to his wife; adapted)

## Answer Key — UNITS 9–11: Self-Review A

### I.

1. difficiliōribus
2. maiōra
3. nūllōrum, nūllārum
4. offerunt
5. loquiminī (present tense); loquēminī (future tense, if the original -e- was long)

### II.

1. they have suffered, they suffered, they did suffer; **patientur**
2. they encourage, they are encouraging, they do encourage; **hortābuntur**
3. you will have neglected; perfect subjunctive second person singular active; **neglegēs**
4. I was setting forth, I used to set forth, I kept on setting forth; **proficiscar**
5. you were accustomed, you have been accustomed; **solēbis**
6. we wish, we are wishing, we do wish; **volēmus**
7. present subjunctive, first person singular active; **mālam**

### III.

1. I feel that that man to whom the fear of death is not very severe lives bravely at all times.  
a) objective genitive
2. Is anyone of us able to say that he has conducted his own life as wisely as possible?  
a) partitive genitive
3. Those citizens who are far (much) stronger (stronger by far/much) than we in body believe that they are able to (can) drive the enemies out of their state by force.  
a) nōbīs (ablative of comparison)
4. The general says to the soldier that the war by means of which they saved the city has been (was) many days longer than that (war) on the mountain.  
a) ablative of degree of difference (longer by many days)
5. He says that his ancestors did (have done) (much) greater and better things (by far) than those which the young men are about to do.

6. They confessed that this consul had conducted himself for the state (much) better (by far) than that (consul).
  - a) *fatēbuntur*
7. With the gods willing, the plans of the rather cruel young men (youths) trying (who are trying) to threaten our safety will be destroyed.
  - a) ablative absolute (with present participle)
8. It is the mark of a man (characteristic of one) desirous of wealth (riches) to neglect (his) good character because of envy and boldness and to take himself into (resort to) crimes.
  - a) predicate genitive (genitive of characteristic)
  - b) objective genitive
  - c) infinitive, subject of *est* ('neglecting good character is [the mark] of one desiring riches')
9. When the war had been brought on (inflicted), the host of great eagerness and very little fear came to the walls and urged the men saving (who were saving) the gates that they set out as soon as possible. "If you do not set out," he says, "you will suffer (endure) great crimes."
  - a) genitive of description
  - b) *Bellō . . . moenia veniet et . . . hortābitur ut . . . proficiscantur.*
  - c) "*Nisī,*" ait, "*proficiscerēminī, magna scelera paterēminī.*" (imperfect subjunctives)
10. Because of the hatred of his mother (his mother's hatred) for war, the son, a young man of good character, neither wishes nor dares to fight.
  - a) subjective genitive
  - b) ablative of cause
  - c) ablative of description
  - d) *voluerit; ausus erit* (Since this is a semi-deponent verb, the perfect system has passive forms but active meanings.)

#### IV.

Do not think that I write a longer letter (a rather long letter) to another unless one of my friends, (to) whom I think that I ought to answer, has written many things to me; indeed, I have nothing which I am able to write, and at this time I do nothing more difficult (with more difficulty). I am not able to write to you and to our daughter without very many tears and great anxiety; I see that you are very wretched, you who are dearer to me than life.

### UNITS 9-11: Self-Review B

#### I.

- A. Give the comparative and superlative forms of each of the following adjectives and adverbs:

- |             |            |              |           |            |
|-------------|------------|--------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. crudelis | 3. validus | 5. magnopere | 7. diu    | 9. bene    |
| 2. bonus    | 4. malus   | 6. magnus    | 8. parvus | 10. multum |

B. Change the following from the singular to the plural, retaining person, mood, and voice:

- |           |            |            |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. ferris | 3. contuli | 5. volebat |
| 2. offers | 4. malit   |            |

## II.

Translate, and then do whatever else is required:

- Magister plus boni in vitā quam mali esse nos credere voluit.  
a) Give the syntax of **boni**.
- Milites multo fortius in hoc bello quam in illo pugnaverunt quod quam optimis consiliis usi sunt.  
a) Syntax of **multo**?  
b) Syntax of **consiliis**?
- Spem gloriae esse consulis bonis moribus nostri maiores crediderunt.  
a) Syntax of **gloriae**?  
b) Syntax of **consulis**?  
c) Syntax of **moribus**?
- Cupidior divitiarum pio, impius malae familiae scelera quam facta honesta maluit.  
a) Syntax of **pio**?  
b) Give an alternate way of phrasing the first three words of the sentence.  
c) Syntax of **familiae**?
- Melius est laudare quam laudari.  
a) Syntax of **laudare**?
- Litteris quam primum scriptis, unus ex amicis nos curā laudari detulit.  
a) Syntax of **scriptis**?  
b) Syntax of **curā**?  
c) Give an alternate way of expressing **curā**.
- Unius invidiā tota gens magnopere passa est.  
a) Syntax of **unius**?
- Postquam dulciores hospites parum laudatos esse sensimus, nos eis maximas gratias acturos esse arbitrati sumus. [**gratias agere**, 'to thank']

## III. Translate:

- How many days after me do you want to set out to Rome?
- When the general died, the young people, raving and very unlike (their) cruel enemies, fell because of their boldness and because no aid was offered.

**Answer Key — UNITS 9-11: Self-Review B****I.**

- A.
1. crūdēlior, crūdēlius; crūdēlissimus, -a, -um
  2. melior, melius; optimus, -a, -um
  3. validior, validius; validissimus, -a, -um
  4. peior, peius; pessimus, -a, -um
  5. magis; maximē
  6. maior, maius; maximus, -a, -um
  7. diūtius; diūtissimē
  8. minor, minus; minimus, -a, -um
  9. melius; optimē
  10. plūs; plūrimum
- B.
1. feriminī
  2. offertis
  3. contulimus
  4. mālīnt
  5. volēbant

**II.**

1. The teacher wished us to believe that there was more good in life than bad.  
a) partitive genitive
2. The soldiers fought more bravely by far (much more bravely) in this war than in that one because they used the best possible plans (as good plans as possible).  
a) ablative of degree of difference  
b) ablative of instrument after the verb *ūtor*
3. Our ancestors believed that hope of glory was the mark of a consul of good character.  
a) objective genitive  
b) predicate genitive (genitive of characteristic)  
c) ablative of description
4. More desirous of riches than a pious man, the impious man of bad family preferred crimes rather than honorable deeds.  
a) ablative of comparison  
b) cupidior divitiarum quam pius  
c) genitive of description
5. To praise is better than to be praised (praising is better than being praised; it is better to praise than to be praised).  
a) infinitive as subject
6. When (since, after) the letter had been written as soon as possible, one of

our friends reported that we were (being) praised because of (our) concern.

a) ablative absolute; the participle modifies the subject **litteris**

b) ablative of cause

c) propter cūram *or* ob cūram

7. Because of the envy of one man, the entire race suffered greatly.

a) subjective genitive

8. After we perceived that the rather sweet (pleasant) guests had not been praised enough, we thought that we would give very great thanks to them.

### III.

1. Quantis diēbus post mē Rōmam proficīscī vīs?

2. Imperātore mortuō iuvenēs, dēmentēs et crūdēlium hostium (crūdēlibus hostibus) dissimillimī audāciā (ob audāciam/propter audāciam) cecidērunt et quod nūllum auxilium oblātum est (offerēbātur).



## UNIT TWELVE

### A. Independent Uses of the Subjunctive

The subjunctive occurs most frequently in Latin in subordinate clauses, but some independent uses are found. All of these express notions connected with the basic definition of the subjunctive given in Unit One.

1. **JUSSIVE (iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, 'command') AND HORTATORY (hortor (1), 'urge') SUBJUNCTIVES**

The present subjunctive is used to express a command or an exhortation.

veniat!      let him come!      command (JUSSIVE)

veniāmus! let's come! exhortation (HORTATORY)

The jussive sense occurs mainly in the third person; the hortatory in the first. The negative is introduced by **nē**.

Nē hoc faciat! Let him not do this!

## 2. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive may be used independently to express an action which might possibly or conceivably occur.

Haec crēdās. You would (could, might) believe these things.

For present or future potentiality, the present (sometimes the perfect) subjunctive is used. This type of subjunctive is allied to future less vivid conditions (see Unit Two); in fact, one might conceive of it as the apodosis (concluding clause) of such a condition, the protasis (if-clause) of which has been suppressed:

Frātre<sup>m</sup> meī miserēri nōlim I would not wish (my) brother to pity me  
(sī mē videat). (if he should see me).

**OBSERVATION:**

The verb **misereor** takes the genitive case to express its object; hence the objective genitive **mei**.

Dīcās eum hominem    You would say (i.e., if you could) that he is a good  
bonum esse.            man; you might say that he is a good man.

Past potentiality is expressed with the imperfect subjunctive.

Crēderēs eum hominem    You would have believed that he was a good  
bonum esse.            man; you might have believed that he was a  
good man.

The negative of the potential subjunctive is introduced by **nōn**.

### 3. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

The present and imperfect subjunctives may be used to *deliberate* about a course of action. This is frequently used in a rhetorical question (i.e., a question which is asked for effect, but which does not demand an answer).

Quid faciam?    What am I to do?    What should I do?  
Quid facerem?    What was I to do?    What should I have done?

The negative is introduced by **nōn**.

### 4. OPTATIVE (**optō** (1), 'desire, wish') SUBJUNCTIVE

A wish for the future which is capable of fulfillment is expressed by the present subjunctive alone or is introduced by **utinam** or **ut** (negative **utinam nē** or **nē**).

Utinam veniat!    Would that he may come; I wish he would come;  
if only he would come!  
Utinam nē veniat!    Would that he may not come; I wish he would not  
come; if only he would not come!

Wishes incapable of fulfillment utilize the imperfect subjunctive for present time (cf. present contrary-to-fact conditions) and the pluperfect for past time (cf. past contrary-to-fact conditions).

Utinam venīret!    Would that he were coming; I wish he were coming;  
if only he were coming! (but he is not; the wish is  
incapable of fulfillment, or contrafactual)  
Utinam vēnisset!    Would that he had come; I wish he had come; if only  
he had come! (but he did not; the wish is incap-  
able of fulfillment, or contrafactual)

### B. Direct Questions

Questions are sometimes introduced by interrogative words: **quis?**, 'who?'; **quid?**, 'what?'; **quandō?**, 'when?'; **quō?**, **quō modō?**, 'how?'; **cūr?**, **quam ob rem?**, 'why?'; **unde?**, 'from where?'; etc. If no interrogative word is used, the

enclitic **-ne** is frequently attached to the introductory word in order to indicate that a question is approaching.

Venīsne mēcum? Are you coming with me?

When the answer "yes" is expected, the question is introduced by the word **nōnne**.

Nōnne venīs mēcum? You are coming with me, aren't you? (answer "yes" expected)

When the answer "no" is expected, the question is introduced by the word **num**.

Num venīs mēcum? You aren't coming with me, are you? (answer "no" expected)

Double questions are introduced by the particles **utrum** (or **-ne** or no introductory particle at all) . . . **an**, 'whether . . . or'.

Utrum mēcum venīs an cum (Whether) are you coming with me or staying with him?  
eō manēs?

Servusne es an nōn? Are you a slave or not?

Servus es an nōn? Are you a slave or not?

### C. Indirect Questions

Indirect questions are subordinate noun clauses which serve as the object (and, less frequently, the subject) of the words on which they depend. These words usually, but not always, express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, asking, and the like. Indirect questions are introduced by an interrogative word and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

I know *who you are*. Direct Question: Who are you?

The noun clause "who you are" serves as the object of the word ("know") on which it depends. It is introduced by an interrogative word ("who") and, in Latin, its verb ("you are") would be in the subjunctive.

We wondered *what gifts you brought*. Direct Question: What gifts did you bring?

The noun clause "what gifts you brought" serves as the object of the word ("wondered") on which it depends. It is introduced by an interrogative word ("what") and, in Latin, its verb ("you brought") would be in the subjunctive.

*What you are doing* bothers me. Direct Question: What are you doing?

The noun clause "what you are doing" serves as the subject of the word ("bothers") on which it depends. It is introduced by an interrogative

word ("what") and, in Latin, its verb ("you are doing") would be in the subjunctive.

In direct speech, these clauses would have been direct questions with their verbs in the indicative or the deliberative subjunctive.

#### DIRECT QUESTIONS:

Quid sentiō?	What do I feel?
Quid agēs?	What will you do?
Unde vēnisti?	Where have you come from?
Quam ob rem mē spectās?	Why are you looking at me?
Spectāsne mē?	Are you looking at me?
Venīsne mēcum an cum eō manēs?	Are you coming with me or staying with him?
Servusne es an nōn?	Are you a slave or not?
Quid faciam?	What am I to do? What should I do?

In order to turn these direct questions into the indirect form, we must review the rules for sequence of tenses (Unit Three, section G). The primary tenses in the indicative are the present, future, future perfect, and perfect (when translated using the English auxiliary verbs "has, have"). The secondary tenses in the indicative are the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. The subjunctive tenses in each sequence are illustrated in the examples below.

NOTE: While indirect questions follow the rules for sequence of tenses, a periphrastic form is frequently used to denote future time.

MAIN CLAUSE		SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	
PRIMARY SEQUENCE:	PRESENT TIME	FUTURE TIME	PAST TIME
Dicō, Rogō	quid faciam	quid factūrus sim	quid fēcērim
I say, I ask	what I am doing	what I shall do	what I did
SECONDARY SEQUENCE:			
Dixi, Rogāvī	quid facerem	quid factūrus essem	quid fēcissem
I said, I asked	what I was doing	what I would do	what I had done

Now, we shall turn the direct questions above into the indirect form:

Quid sentiō?	What do I feel?
Rogō quid sentiam.	I ask what I feel.
Rogāvī quid sentīrem.	I asked what I felt (was feeling).
Expōnam quid sentiam.	I shall explain what I feel.
Sciō quid sentiam.	I know what I feel.
...etc.	

Quid agēs?	What will you do?
Rogō quid āctūrus sis.	I ask what you will do.
Rogāvi quid āctūrus essēs.	I asked what you would do.
Expōnam quid āctūrus sis.	I shall explain what you will do.
Sciō quid āctūrus sis.	I know what you will do.
...etc.	

Unde vēnistī?	Where have you come from?
Rogō unde vēneris.	I ask where you have come from.
Rogāvi unde vēnissēs.	I asked where you came (had come) from.
...etc.	

Quam ob rem mē spectās?	Why are you looking at me?
Rogō quam ob rem mē spectēs.	I ask why you are looking at me.
Exposuī quam ob rem mē spectārēs.	I explained why you were looking at me.
Exposuī quam ob rem mē spectāvissēs.	I explained why you had looked at me.
...etc.	

Spectāsne mē?	Are you looking at me?
Rogō num ( <i>here</i> = 'whether') mē spectēs.	I ask whether you are looking at me.
...etc.	

Utrum venis mēcum (venisne mēcum) an cum eō manēs?	Are you coming with me or staying with him?
Nescivērunt utrum venirēs mēcum (venirēsne mēcum) an cum eō manērēs.	They did not know whether you were coming with me or staying with him.
...etc.	

Servusne es an nōn?	Are you a slave or not?
Rogō servusne sis necne.	I ask whether you are a slave or not.
...etc.	

Quid faciam?	What should I do?
Rogō quid faciam.	I ask what I should do.
...etc.	

OBSERVATION: In double indirect questions, when the second question is negative, *necne* is used more frequently than the **an nōn** of the direct question.



**D. The Adjective *idem, eadem, idem*, 'same'**

The forms are essentially those of *is*, *ea*, *id*, with **-dem** added as a suffix. The differences are as follows:

1. In the nominative masculine singular, the *s* of *is* drops out and the *i* becomes long.
2. In the nominative and accusative neuter singular, the *d* of *id* disappears.
3. A final **-m** is changed to **-n** before **-dem**.

Thus, the paradigm:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N. —	M.	F.	N.
<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i> ( <i>īdem</i> )	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> ( <i>īsdem</i> )	<i>eīsdem</i> ( <i>īsdem</i> )	<i>eīsdem</i> ( <i>īsdem</i> )
<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eīsdem</i> ( <i>īsdem</i> )	<i>eīsdem</i> ( <i>īsdem</i> )	<i>eīsdem</i> ( <i>īsdem</i> )

As with the demonstrative adjectives you have learned, the forms may also be used as pronouns.

**E. The Pronoun and the Adjective *quīdam*, 'certain'**

The pronoun *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam*, and the adjective *quīdam*, *quaedam*, *quoddam* are essentially the same in declension as the relative pronoun, with **-dam** added as a suffix. The only exceptions are:

1. The pronoun has **quid-** for the neuter singular, nominative and accusative.
2. **-m** before **-dam** becomes **-n**.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quiddam</i> ( <i>quoddam</i> )	<i>quīdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>cuiusdam</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>	<i>quārundam</i>	<i>quōrundam</i>
<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>cuidam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>
<i>quendam</i>	<i>quandam</i>	<i>quiddam</i> ( <i>quoddam</i> )	<i>quōsdam</i>	<i>quāsdam</i>	<i>quaedam</i>
<i>quōdam</i>	<i>quādam</i>	<i>quōdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>	<i>quibusdam</i>

**F. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, 'self, very'**

This adjective, which may also be used as a pronoun, declines like *ille*, except in the neuter nominative and accusative singular which have **-um** instead of **-ud**.

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

**Ipse** is used to *intensify* the word it modifies or stands for.

<b>Ipse</b> veniam.	I <i>myself</i> shall come.
Virum <b>ipsum</b> vidit.	He saw the man <i>himself</i> ; he saw the <i>very</i> man.
Expōnam quid <b>ipse</b> sentiam.	I shall explain what I <i>myself</i> feel.
<b>Ipse</b> sēcum loquitur.	He <i>himself</i> speaks with (to) himself.

### G. The Demonstrative Adjective *iste, ista, istud*, 'that (of yours)'

This adjective (also used as a pronoun) declines like *ille*. It frequently carries a pejorative or derogatory tone.

**Iste** amicus venīre nōn potest. *That* friend (*of yours*) can't come; *that damned* friend can't come.

## UNIT TWELVE — VOCABULARY

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	receive, accept; hear
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus	take back, regain, recover
sē recipere	withdraw, take oneself
an (conj.)	or (introducing the second part of a double question); whether (introducing a single indirect question)
aura, -ae, F.	breeze, wind, air
comes, comitis, M. or F.	companion
cōpia, -ae, F.	abundance, supply; pl., troops
cūr (adv.)	why, for what reason
dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus	select, choose, gather
exorior, -īrī, exortus sum	rise, arise, appear, start
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus	set forth, expose, explain
horridus, -a, -um	horrible, rough
hostilis, -e	of an enemy, hostile
ibi (adv.)	there, then
īdem, eadem, idem	same
immortālis, -e	immortal, everlasting

<b>ipse, -a, -um</b>	self, very
<b>iste, ista, istud</b>	that (of yours), that (with pejorative sense)
<b>iussum, -ī, N.</b>	command, order (the abl. sing. is <b>iussū</b> , 'by order')
<b>maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus or remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus</b>	remain
<b>misereor, -ērī, miseritus sum</b>	pity (+ gen.)
<b>modus, -ī, M.</b>	way, manner, limit; kind
<b>quō modō</b>	in what way, how
<b>necne (conj.)</b>	or not (generally used as the second part of a double indirect question, representing <b>an nōn</b> in the direct question)
<b>nesciō, -īre, -īvī (-iū), -ītus</b>	not know, be ignorant
<b>nōnne (adv.)</b>	(in a direct question, anticipates the answer "yes")
<b>num (adv.)</b>	(in a direct question, anticipates the answer "no"); whether (in an indirect question)
<b>occultē (adv.)</b>	secretly
<b>ops, opis, F.</b>	power, strength; pl., resources, wealth
<b>paucī, -ae, -a</b>	few
<b>poscō, -ere, poposcī, --</b>	beg, demand
<b>quamdiū (adv.)</b>	how long
<b>quandō (conj. and adv.)</b>	when; since
<b>quārē (adv.)</b>	by what means, why; and therefore
<b>quia (conj.)</b>	because
<b>quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.)</b>	a certain one, a certain thing
<b>quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (adj.)</b>	certain
<b>rogō (1)</b>	ask (for)
<b>sors, sortis, -ium, F.</b>	lot, destiny
<b>tamquam (adv.)</b>	as if, as, as it were
<b>tandem (adv.)</b>	at last, at length
<b>ubi (adv.)</b>	where, when
<b>unde (adv.)</b>	from where
<b>utinam (adv.)</b>	I wish!, would that!, if only!
<b>utrum (conj.)</b>	whether
<b>utrum . . . an</b>	whether . . . or
<b>-ne . . . an</b>	
<b>-- . . . an</b>	
<b>utrum . . . an nōn</b>	whether . . . or not (in direct double questions)
<b>-ne . . . an nōn</b>	
<b>-- . . . an nōn</b>	

utrum . . . necne }  
 -ne . . . necne }  
 -- . . . necne }

whether . . . or not (in indirect double questions)

## UNIT TWELVE — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Accipiō** (**ad** + **capiō**) in addition to meaning ‘receive, accept’ means ‘hear’, that is, to receive information through the ears.

**Sē recipere** means ‘to take oneself, withdraw’ to a place: **Servī sē ad deōrum ārās recēpērunt**, ‘The slaves took themselves to the altars of the gods’.

**Comes, comitis**, M. or F., is formed as though from **comeō** (**com-** + **eō**), ‘go with’; **comes** is the person who goes with someone, ‘companion’.

**Cōpia, cōpiae**, F., means ‘abundance, supply’ in the singular, but in the plural, it means ‘troops’.

**Dēligō**, ‘select, choose, gather’, is a compound of **legō**; it has **dēlēgī** for the third principal part.

**Exorior** is a compound of **orior, orīrī, ortus sum**, ‘rise’. **Exorior** in addition to meaning ‘rise, arise’ means ‘appear, start’. The East is called the Orient because that is where the sun rises.

**Expōnō** is a compound of **pōnō**; it means ‘set forth, expose, explain’.

**Horridus, -a, -um** is derived from a verb meaning ‘to bristle’; therefore, it means ‘rough, shaggy’, and thus, ‘horrible’.

**Idem, eadem, idem** is simply a compound of **is, ea, id** plus **-dem**, ‘exactly’; it means ‘same’. The abbreviation *ibid.* stands for **ibīdem**, ‘exactly there’.

**Immortālis, -e** means literally ‘not’ (**im-**) ‘pertaining to’ (**-ālis**) ‘death’ (**-mort-**), thus, ‘immortal, everlasting’.

**Ipse, -a, -um**, declined like **ille, -a, -ud** (except for the neuter singular nominative and accusative) intensifies the word it modifies and means ‘self, very’. As in Irish literature one is accustomed to read “Oh, ’tis himself” or “Himself is coming”, so in Latin one may find **Ipse venit**, ‘He himself is coming’, or **Ipsum volūi!**, ‘The very man I wanted!’

**Iste, -a, -ud** (declined like **ille, -a, -ud**) frequently (but not always) has a pejorative sense and means ‘that (of yours)’ or ‘that rotten no-good’.

**Iussum** is simply the fourth principal part of the verb used as a noun, ‘the ordered thing’ or ‘order, command’. Note that the ablative singular is **iussū**.

**Maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus** and **remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, remānsus**, may be used interchangeably; the **-a-** lengthens in the perfect stem before **-ns-**. Both verbs mean ‘remain’. Do not confuse the singular present active imperative **manē**, ‘remain’, with **māne** (adverb), ‘early in the morning’.

The deponent verb **misereor**, **miserēri**, **miseritus sum**, 'pity', governs the genitive case: **Meī miserēris?**, 'Do you pity me?'

**Nesciō** is simply **ne** + **sciō**, 'not know, be ignorant'.

**Nōnne** and **num** introduce a question. **Nōnne** is used when the answer "yes" is expected, **num** when the answer expected is "no". **Num** may also introduce an indirect question and then it means 'whether'.

**Ops**, **opis**, F., in the singular means 'power, strength, help', but in the plural it means 'resources, wealth'.

**Pauci**, **paucæ**, **paucæ** is an adjective found in the plural; it means 'few'.

**Quia** and **quod**, 'because', may be used interchangeably.

**Quīdam**, **quædam**, **quiddam** is the pronoun, 'a certain'; **quīdam**, **quædam**, **quoddam** is the adjective, 'certain': **Sī quiddam mihi dicās, dē eō taceam**, 'If you should tell me a certain thing, I would be silent about it'; **Quoddam dōnum quod placēbit tibi habeo**, 'I have a certain gift which will please you'.

**Rogō**, 'ask', a first conjugation verb, means not only to ask a question, but also to make a demand on someone: **Tē rogāvī nē id facerēs**, 'I asked you that you not do that'. Note that this verb can take two objects: **Tē pecūniam rogō**, 'I ask you for money'.

**Tamquam** means 'as if, as, as it were', and **tandem** means 'at last, at length'. In order not to confuse these two words, it might be helpful to remember that a bicycle built for two is called a tandem (humorously, from the idea of length: the second person sits behind, not next to, the other.)

#### ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES ADDED TO THE STEMS OF VERBS

The suffixes **-āx**, **-idus**, **-ulus**, or **-ivus** added to the stem of a verb express the action of the verb as a quality or tendency.

**audāx**, **-ācis**, 'bold, courageous'

**efficāx**, **-ācis** (**efficiō**, 'effect, bring about'), 'effectual, efficient'

**fugāx**, **-ācis**, 'apt to flee, swift'

**loquāx**, **-ācis**, 'talkative'

**pugnāx**, **-ācis**, 'fond of fighting, combative, warlike'

**timidus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'fearful, afraid'

**vividus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'containing life, living'

**bibulus**, **-a**, **-um** (**bibō**, **-ere**, 'drink'), 'drinking readily'

**crēdulus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'easy of belief, credulous'

**garrulus**, **-a**, **-um** (**garriō**, **-īre**, 'chatter'), 'chattering, talkative'

**querulus**, **-a**, **-um** (**queror**, **querī**, 'complain'), 'full of complaints, complaining'

**tremulus**, **-a**, **-um** (**tremō**, **-ere**, 'tremble'), 'shaking, trembling'

**āctivus**, **-a**, **-um**, 'active, practical'



**captīvus, -a, -um**, 'taken prisoner, captive'  
**fugitīvus, -a, -um**, 'fleeing away, fugitive'  
**nātīvus, -a, -um**, 'imparted by birth, innate'

The suffixes **-ilis** and **-bilis** added to the stem of a verb express passive qualities, and occasionally active ones.

**agilis, -e**, 'easily moveable, nimble'  
**docilis, -e**, 'easily taught'  
**amābilis, -e**, 'worthy of love, lovely'  
**crēdibilis, -e**, 'worthy of belief, credible'  
**mīrābilis, -e** (**mīror, -ārī**, 'wonder at, admire'), 'wonderful, admirable'  
**mūtābilis, -e**, 'changeable'  
**spectābilis, -e**, 'visible, worth seeing'

The suffixes **-bundus** and **-cundus** added to the stem of a verb denote a continuance of the act or quality expressed by the verb.

**errābundus, -a, -um**, 'wandering about'  
**furibundus, -a, -um** (**furō, -ere**, 'be mad'), 'raging, mad'  
**moribundus, -a, -um**, 'dying'  
**īrācundus, -a, -um** (**īrāscor, īrāscī**, 'be angry'), 'irritable, angry'  
**fācundus, -a, -um** (**for, fārī, fātus sum**, 'speak'), 'speaking with ease, eloquent'

This verb **for** contains the stem **fā-** which is found in such words as **fāma**, 'talk, report, reputation'; **fābula, -ae, F.**, 'narration, story, play'; **fātum, -ī, N.**, 'prediction, destiny, fate'; **fās**, indeclinable, 'right, proper, allowable (according to divine dictate)'; **nefās**, indeclinable, 'unlawful, abominable', in other words, so bad it cannot be talked about. The Romans divided their calendar between **fāstī** and **nefāstī** — days (lucky and unlucky) on which business was allowed or not allowed to be conducted. An infant, literally, is a child who does not (**in-**) speak; once he begins speaking he is no longer technically an infant.

## UNIT TWELVE — DRILL

1. Respondeāmus!
2. Utinam domini respondeant (respondissent)!
3. Ad quem locum accēdāmus?
4. Intellegēbat quam ob rem nōn respondissēmus.
5. Utrum iubēbis eum fortem esse an ego iubēbō?
6. Opprimarne ab hostibus an in fugam mē cōferam?
7. Nōne tibi hoc opus placet? Num illud opus clārissimum tibi placet?
8. Sine morā ille auctor librum cōficiat!

9. Nē ōderimus malum nōs opprimentem. Nōn sentiō eum scire quid agat.
10. Pater scit quantā pecūniā nōbīs opus sit.
11. Frāter ā nōbīs quaesivit quanta sīdera in caelō essent.
12. Omnia superat amor: et nōs cēdāmus amōrī.
13. Omnēs intellegere voluērunt quid hominēs illius temporis tanta mala passi essent. [*quid*, 'in respect to what thing, why']
14. Sciunt hunc ōrātōrem cupidissimum dīvitiārum esse.
15. Sciunt quam ob rem hic ōrātor cupidissimus sit (fuerit) dīvitiārum.
16. Cognōscēbātis ducem mortem minātūrum esse illis patriam neglegentibus.
17. Cognōscēbātis quam ob rem dux mortem minātūrus esset illis patriam neglegentibus.
18. Cognōscēbāmus quō tempore dux mortem illis patriam neglegentibus minātus esset; numquam intellegēmus quam ob rem patriam neglēxerint.
19. Utrum nostram patriam servāre cōnāberis an nōn?
20. Quaerimus utrum nostram patriam servāre cōnātūra sis necne.
21. Quīdam homō habēbat ferrum quoddam. Dedit cuidam. Is post dedit aliī. Is erat idem quī primus habēbat.
22. Nē iuvenī cupidō dīvitiārum crēdant.
23. Utinam scelus nē cōnfītērēris.
24. Periculum eō tempore neglegāmus.
25. Nāvēs eius generis nōn vidērēs.
26. Domum hōc tempore ingrediantur?
27. Iste amicus mē ōdit.
28. Idem amicus mē ōdit.
29. Amicus ipse mē ōdit.
30. Istum frātre mē vīdī.
31. Eundem frātre mē vīdī.
32. Frātre ipsum vīdī.
33. Frātre ipse vīdī.

## UNIT TWELVE — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Comitēs nostrī iussa tandem expōnant.
2. Utinam cōpiae hostilēs sē ex patriā recipiant.
3. Parentum iuvenis occultē miserear?
4. Nē domī maneāmus.
5. Pauca eius modī acciperēs.
6. Num negās tē haec nescivisse?
7. Utrum melius est haec dēligere an illa?

8. Nōne comitēs vestri opēs recipient?
9. Tē sequi velimus an hortēmur ut dux sine nōbis proficiscātur?
10. Utinam nē hoc audeās; magnopere patiāris.

## UNIT TWELVE — EXERCISES

### I.

1. Omnēs eidem militēs qui prō rē publicā pūgnāvērunt magna pecūniae praemia ā civibus accipiant.
2. Rogāvimus quaedamne cibum an pecūniam an auxilium posceret.
3. Dī immortalēs salūtem, opēs et imperium civibus comitibusque dent!
4. Iuppiter! Mihi vitam longam sine gravi mortis timōre dēs!
5. Crēdasne oppidum, ā cōpiis fortibus per tōtam diem nōn captum, nocte ā parvā infēlicium civium manū occultē dēlētum esse?
6. Quārē iste tandem mei misereātur?
7. Nōn vellem istōs hominēs, omnēs agrōs dēlentēs, nōbiscum remanēre.
8. Quid faciam, civēs? Quid dicam istis qui civitātem dēlēre volunt? Quō modō rem publicam servāre possim? Quandō exoriēmini? Ubi civitās oppūgnābitur? Exoriāmini! Rem publicam et civēs servāte!
9. Scisne Marcum? Num cum eō venis? Nōne cibum fers?
10. Utinam militēs hostilēs nē veniant ut oppidum dēleant!
11. Utinam ei, quōrum cōpiae fortiōrēs quam illae hostium oppūgnantium sunt, patriam nostram servent!
12. Utinam dux ipse paucis hōris veniat ut hostēs moenia ā civibus mūnita oppūgnantēs et capientēs dēleat.
13. Iste comes civēs rogāvit unde vēnissent, et quam ob rem ad ārās deōrum irent.
14. Nescivērunt utrum manus militum superāvisset an superāta esset.
15. Expōne quid urnās pulchrās manibus servōrum factās dēlēveris. [quid, 'in respect to what thing, why']
16. Semper intellegēbam quam ob rem omnēs hominēs liberī servōrum miserērentur.
17. Expōnere nōn potuerim quam ob rem rēx dōna ā turbā supplicī nōn accēperit.
18. Quidam nōbis dicere possunt quamdiū cōsulēs ipsi in urbe remānsūri sint.
19. His tantis in rēbus est tuum vidēre quid agātur.
20. Ā vōbis quaerō utrum pecūniam accēperitis necne.
21. Quid dicam dē servitūte quae opprimit hōs quōs vidēmus?
22. Multōrum cognōsce exemplō quae facta sequāris, quae fugiās: vīta est nōbīs magister.

23. Paucōrum est intellegere quid dōnet deus.
24. Ducēs dēlēctī nesciunt cūr magnus mortis timor inter civēs exoriātur. Utinam incolae fortiōrēs essent! [*inter*, prep. + acc., 'among']
25. Pauci tandem imperātōris iussū exposuērunt cūr horrida bella hominibus saepe pūgnanda essent: hominum est semper velle plūs imperiī quam habent.
26. Nē misereāmur ipsōrum comitum quī nōbīs noxae fuērunt et quōs nostri amici ōdērunt.
27. Sapiēns scit quid sorte sibi datum sit, quid nōn. Utinam omnēs sapientēs essēmus!
28. Scire volēbātis quamdiū in illā urbe vixissem. Quīnque annōs ibi mānsi, sed mihi nunc tempus nōn est vōbīs expōnere quārē mē rūs recēperim.
29. Nōnne intellegis quantō in periculō sis (fueris; futūrus sis)?
30. Vestri comitēs verba militum accipientēs nesciēbant quam ob rem expōnere nōllent quid ducēs dē salūte cōgitārent.
31. Omnēs sē in tēcta recēpērunt, nescientēs quandō sociī ventūrī essent, ut sē timōre et periculō liberārent.
32. Nesciō quō modō iste ā cīvibus dux dēlēctus sit; vir pessimus est.
33. Rogātis ut opibus bene ūtāmur; rogāmus num ipsī opibus bene ūtāminī.
34. Quaedam mē rogāvit unde vēnissem; dixī mē Rōmā occultē profectum esse; sortem esse ad hanc urbem mē cōferre ut multa huic populō tamquam magister dicerem.
35. PLINY TRIES TO HANDLE THE CHRISTIANS (selected and adapted from Pliny, *Letters* x.96):  
Interim in eis quī ad mē tamquam Christiānī dēferēbantur hoc ēgī. Rogāvi ipsōs an essent Christiānī. Dixērunt sē Christiānōs esse. Si negāvissent, imperāvissē ut ei ipsī liberārentur; persevērantēs autem dūci ad poenam iussī. Fuērunt alii similis āmentiae quōs, quia civēs Rōmānī erant, dixī in urbem mittendōs. Quid aliud in rēbus huius modi facerem? Magnum periculum civitātī atque populō Rōmānō erat.  
[āmentia, -ae, F., 'madness, folly'; Christiānus, -a, -um, 'Christian'; in (prep. + abl.), here, 'in the case of'; interim (adv.), 'meanwhile'; persevērō (1), 'persevere']
36. Amicus optimus mortuus est. Cōgitō quō amicō, quō virō caream.
37. Quaerō utrum Brūti similem mālīs an Antōnii. [Brūtus, -i, M., proper name; Antōnius, -i, M., proper name]
38. Hoc quaerāmus, immortalis sit ille hospes necne: Esne immortalis an nōn?
39. Unde quoddam dōnum dē quō diū audivimus recipiēmus? Scisne an nōn?
40. Ubi estis? Quandō veniam ut vōs videam? Nisi domi eritis, quō modō sciam quid mihi faciendum sit?
41. Eidem parentēs iuvenēs ipsōs audentēs loquī cum audaciā ōderint.
42. "Moriēmur sine culpā, sed moriāmur," ait.



43. Sed ubi diēs coepit, et incolae nihil hostīle veritī sunt, multī oppidō sunt ēgressī, aliī ibi mānsērunt et imperātor copiās portās oppūgnāre iussit.
44. Nōs ipsī morī velimus an mortem vereāmur (timeāmus)? Quae sit nostra sententia rogāre vīs.
45. Dāmnātus cuiusdam sceleris, mē quae esset poena nōn accēpisse fassus sum.
46. Quārē discēdant impiī!
47. Vidē nunc quid agās, quid ferre possīs, neque quamdiū vixerit Caesar sed quam nōn diū rēxerit cōgitā! [Note how **nōn** splits **quamdiū** for effect. **Caesar, Caesaris, M.**, proper name]
48. Utinam minus vitāe cupidi fuissēmus! Certē nihil aut nōn multum in vitā malī vidissēmus. [**aut** (conj.), 'or']
49. Ad tē quid scribam nesciō.
50. Utinam nē tōtam opīniōnem parva nōn numquam mūtāvisset aura rūmōris.
51. Rogābās quam ob rem somnus ad mē illā nocte nōn vēnisset; magnopere timēbam; omnēs mē terrēbant aerae. [**somnus, -ī, M.**, 'sleep']
52. Omnibus modis miser sum.

## II.

1. Let all citizens in a free state be dutiful and willing to fight for their country.
2. If only we could always be free from care!
3. All men know why the enemy must be overcome.
4. What are we to do in order that we may remain free men?
5. He might believe that you are all good and honorable men.
6. He explained how the enemy would attack and destroy the fortified walls at Rome.

## III. Readings

- A. Cicero speaks of the disadvantages of knowing one's future (*Dē Divinātiōne* II.9.22, slightly adapted):

Atque ego nē ūtilem<sup>1</sup> quidem<sup>2</sup> arbitror esse nōbīs futūrārum rērum scientiam.<sup>3</sup> Quae enim vitā fuisset Priamō,<sup>4</sup> sī ab adulēscientiā<sup>5</sup> scivisset, quōs ēventūs<sup>6</sup> senectūtis<sup>7</sup> esset habitūrus? Abeāmus<sup>8</sup> ā fābulis,<sup>9</sup> propiōra<sup>10</sup> videāmus. Clārissimōrum hominum nostrae civitātis dē gravissimis mortibus in aliō librō scripsī. Quid igitur?<sup>11</sup> ut omittāmus<sup>12</sup> superiōrēs,<sup>13</sup> Marcōne

<sup>1</sup> ūtilis, -e, 'advantageous'    <sup>2</sup> nē...quidem, 'not...even' (enclosing the word or words they qualify)    <sup>3</sup> scientia, -ae, F., 'knowledge'    <sup>4</sup> Priamus, -ī, M., 'Priam', the aged king of Troy    <sup>5</sup> adulēscientia, -ae, F., 'youth'    <sup>6</sup> ēventus, -ūs, M., 'issue, end, catastrophe'    <sup>7</sup> senectūs, -tūtis, F., 'old age'    <sup>8</sup> abeō (ab + eō), 'depart'    <sup>9</sup> fābula, -ae, F., 'story, myth'    <sup>10</sup> propior, -ius, 'nearer, more closely affecting'    <sup>11</sup> igitur (post-positive conj.), 'therefore'    <sup>12</sup> omittō (ob + mittō), 'leave out, omit'; translate ut 'granted that, although' (see Appendix, p. 392, Concessive Clauses #5)    <sup>13</sup> superior, -ius, comparative of superus, -a, -um, here, 'prior, former, earlier'



Crassō<sup>14</sup> putās ūtile<sup>1</sup> fuisse tum,<sup>15</sup> cum<sup>16</sup> maximīs opibus florēbat,<sup>17</sup> scire sibi interfectō Pūbliō<sup>18</sup> filiō exercitūque<sup>19</sup> dēlētō trāns<sup>20</sup> Euphrātem<sup>24</sup> cum ignōminiā<sup>22</sup> esse moriendum?<sup>23</sup>

<sup>14</sup> Marcus Crassus, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>15</sup> tum (adv.), 'then, at that time'    <sup>16</sup> cum (conj. + indicative), 'when'    <sup>17</sup> florēō, -ēre, -uī, --, 'prosper'    <sup>18</sup> Pūblius, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>19</sup> exercitus, -ūs, M., 'army'    <sup>20</sup> trāns (prep. + acc.), 'across, beyond'    <sup>21</sup> Euphrātes, -is, M., 'the Euphrates', a river in western Asia    <sup>22</sup> ignōminia, -ae, F., 'disgrace'    <sup>23</sup> esse moriendum: The neuter indicates that the verb is used impersonally: '... that it had to be died by him', i.e., 'that he had to die' (see Unit Thirteen, section C).

## B. Martial 2.7:

Dēclāmās<sup>1</sup> bellē,<sup>2</sup> causās<sup>3</sup> agis, Attice,<sup>4</sup> bellē,<sup>2</sup>  
historiās<sup>5</sup> bellās,<sup>2</sup> carmina bella<sup>2</sup> facis,  
compōnis<sup>6</sup> bellē<sup>2</sup> mimōs,<sup>7</sup> epigrammata<sup>8</sup> bellē,<sup>2</sup>  
bellus<sup>2</sup> grammaticus,<sup>9</sup> bellus<sup>2</sup> es astrologus,<sup>10</sup>  
et bellē<sup>2</sup> cantās<sup>11</sup> et saltās,<sup>12</sup> Attice,<sup>4</sup> bellē,<sup>2</sup>  
bellus<sup>2</sup> es arte lyrae,<sup>13</sup> bellus<sup>2</sup> es arte pilae.<sup>14</sup>  
Nīl bene cum<sup>15</sup> faciās, faciās tamen omnia bellē,<sup>2</sup>  
vīs dicam<sup>16</sup> quid sis? Magnus es ardeliō.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> dēclāmō (1), 'declaim'    <sup>2</sup> bellē (adv.), 'beautifully'; bellus, -a, -um, 'beautiful'    <sup>3</sup> causa, -ae, F., here, 'lawsuit'; causās agere, 'to plead cases'    <sup>4</sup> Atticus, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>5</sup> historia, -ae, F., 'history'    <sup>6</sup> compōnō (com- + pōnō), 'compose, arrange'    <sup>7</sup> mīmus, -ī, M., 'a mime' (a type of stage entertainment)    <sup>8</sup> epigramma, -atis, M., 'an epigram'    <sup>9</sup> grammaticus, -ī, M., 'grammarian'    <sup>10</sup> astrologus, -ī, M., 'astronomer'    <sup>11</sup> cantō (1), 'sing'    <sup>12</sup> saltō (1), 'dance'    <sup>13</sup> lyra, -ae, F., 'lyre' (a stringed instrument)    <sup>14</sup> pila, -ae, F., 'ball, a game of ball'    <sup>15</sup> cum (conj. + subjunctive), 'although'    <sup>16</sup> vīs dicam = vīs ut dicam    <sup>17</sup> ardeliō, -ōnis, M., 'busybody'

## C. Martial 8.12:

Uxōrem<sup>1</sup> quārē locuplēm<sup>2</sup> dūcere<sup>3</sup> nōlim  
quaeritis? Uxōrī<sup>1</sup> nūbere<sup>4</sup> nōlo meae.  
Inferior<sup>5</sup> mātṛōna<sup>6</sup> suō sit, Prisce,<sup>7</sup> marītō:<sup>8</sup>  
nōn aliter<sup>9</sup> fiunt<sup>10</sup> fēmina virque parēs.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> uxor, -ōris, F., 'wife'    <sup>2</sup> locuplēs, -plētis, 'wealthy'    <sup>3</sup> dūcere (in mātṛimōnium understood), 'marry' (of a man to a woman)    <sup>4</sup> nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nuptus, 'marry' (+ dat.) (of a woman to a man)    <sup>5</sup> inferior, -ius, comparative of inferus, -a, -um, 'low'    <sup>6</sup> mātṛōna, -ae, F., 'a married woman'    <sup>7</sup> Priscus, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>8</sup> marītus, -ī, M., 'husband'    <sup>9</sup> aliter (adv.), 'otherwise'    <sup>10</sup> fiunt, '(they) become' (3rd person pl. pres. indic. of fiō, fieri, factus sum)    <sup>11</sup> pār, paris, 'equal'

## D. Martial 12.20:

Quārē nōn habeat, Fabulle,<sup>1</sup> quaeris  
uxōrem<sup>2</sup> Themisōn?<sup>3</sup> Habet sorōrem.

<sup>1</sup> Fabullus, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>2</sup> uxor, -ōris, F., 'wife'    <sup>3</sup> Themisōn, -ōnis, M., a man's name

## E. Martial 12.92:

Saepe rogāre solēs quālis<sup>1</sup> sim, Prisce,<sup>2</sup> futūrus,  
 si fiam<sup>3</sup> locuplēs<sup>4</sup> simque repente<sup>5</sup> potēns.<sup>6</sup>  
 Quemquam<sup>7</sup> posse putās mōrēs nārrāre<sup>8</sup> futūrōs?  
 Dic mihi, si fiās<sup>9</sup> tū leo,<sup>10</sup> quālis<sup>1</sup> eris?

<sup>1</sup> quālis, -e, 'what kind (of)'    <sup>2</sup> Priscus, -i, M., a man's name    <sup>3</sup> fiam, 1st person sing., pres. subj. of fiō, fieri, factus sum, 'become'    <sup>4</sup> locuplēs, -plētis, 'wealthy'    <sup>5</sup> repente (adv.), 'suddenly'    <sup>6</sup> potēns, potentis, 'powerful'    <sup>7</sup> quemquam (acc. sing. M.), 'anyone'    <sup>8</sup> nārrō (1), 'tell, relate'    <sup>9</sup> fiās, 2nd person sing., pres. subj. of fiō, fieri, factus sum, 'become'    <sup>10</sup> leō, leōnis, M., 'lion'

F. Horace, *Odes* 1.11:

Tū nē quaesieris<sup>1</sup> — scire nefās<sup>2</sup> — quem mihi, quem tibi  
 Finem dī dederint, Leuconoē,<sup>3</sup> nec Babylonīōs<sup>4</sup>  
 Temptāris<sup>5</sup> numerōs.<sup>6</sup> Ut<sup>7</sup> melius, quicquid<sup>8</sup> erit, patī!  
 Seu<sup>9</sup> plūrēs hiemēs,<sup>10</sup> seu<sup>9</sup> tribuit<sup>11</sup> Iuppiter ultimam,  
 Quae nunc oppositīs<sup>12</sup> dēbilitat<sup>13</sup> pūmicibus<sup>14</sup> mare  
 Tyrrhēnum.<sup>15</sup> Sapiās,<sup>16</sup> vīna<sup>17</sup> liquēs,<sup>18</sup> et spatiō<sup>19</sup> brevī<sup>20</sup>  
 Spem longam resecēs.<sup>21</sup> Dum<sup>22</sup> loquimur, fūgerit invida<sup>23</sup>  
 Aetās:<sup>24</sup> carpe<sup>25</sup> diem, quam minimum crēdula<sup>26</sup> posterō.<sup>27</sup>

<sup>1</sup> quaesieris = quaesiveris    <sup>2</sup> nefās, N. (indeclinable), 'unlawful, wrong'    <sup>3</sup> Leuconoē (vocative), a woman's name    <sup>4</sup> Babylonīus, -a, -um, 'Babylonian' (The Babylonians were noted for their astrological calculations.)    <sup>5</sup> temptō (1), here, 'consult'; temptāris is a syncopated or contracted form of temptāveris (see Unit Eighteen, Section D)    <sup>6</sup> numerus, -i, N., here, 'calculation'    <sup>7</sup> ut (adv.), 'how'    <sup>8</sup> quicquid (nom. sing. N., indefinite pron.), 'whatever'    <sup>9</sup> seu...seu (conj.), 'whether...or'    <sup>10</sup> hiems, hiemis, F., 'winter'    <sup>11</sup> tribuō, -ere, tribui, -ūtus, 'assign'    <sup>12</sup> oppōnō (ob, 'against' + pōnō), 'oppose'    <sup>13</sup> dēbilitō (1), 'weaken, break'    <sup>14</sup> pūmex, -icis, M., '(porous) rock'    <sup>15</sup> Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um, 'Tyrrhenian'    <sup>16</sup> sapiō, -ere, -iī, --, 'be sensible'    <sup>17</sup> vīnum, -ī, N., 'wine'    <sup>18</sup> liquō (1), 'strain'    <sup>19</sup> spatium, -ī, N., 'time'    <sup>20</sup> brevis, -e, 'brief'    <sup>21</sup> resecō, -āre, -secui, -sectus, 'remove'    <sup>22</sup> dum (conj.), 'while'    <sup>23</sup> invidus, -a, -um, 'envious'    <sup>24</sup> aetās, -tātis, F., 'life'    <sup>25</sup> carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus, 'pluck, take advantage of'    <sup>26</sup> crēdulus, -a, -um, 'trusting (in)' (+ dat.)    <sup>27</sup> posterus, -a, -um, 'future'; here, used as a neuter noun

# UNIT THIRTEEN

## A. The Indefinite Pronouns *aliquis, quis, quisquam, quisque*

*Indefinite* pronouns represent *some* person or thing without designating exactly *which* one. **Quidam**, ‘a certain’, met in the previous unit, is also an *indefinite* pronoun.

### 1. **aliquis**

The pronoun **aliquis, aliquid** is declined like the interrogative pronoun **quis, quid** with **ali-** added as a prefix; the forms for the adjective, **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod**, are identical to those of the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod** with the prefix **ali-**, with the exception of the feminine nominative singular (as noted in the three parts given), and the neuter nominative and accusative plural, which are **aliqua**.

The pronoun means ‘someone, something, anyone, anything’; the adjective means ‘some, any’.

<b>Aliquis</b> ad mē heri vēnit.	<i>Someone</i> came to me yesterday.
Nōn sine <b>aliquō</b> metūcum incolis pūgnāvimus.	We fought with the inhabitants not without <i>some</i> fear.
Vidistine <b>aliquem</b> ?	Did you see <i>anyone</i> ( <i>someone</i> )?

### 2. **quis**

**Quis, quid** (adjective **quī, qua, quod**) is essentially identical to **aliquis, aliquid** (adjective, **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod**), although it perhaps has a greater degree of indefiniteness about it. It is most frequently used instead of **aliquis** after the words **sī, nisī, num, and nē**.

REMEMBER: After **sī, nisī, num, and nē**, all the **ali-**’s drop away.

Sī <b>quis</b> ad mē veniat, fēlix sim.	If <i>anyone</i> ( <i>someone</i> ) should come to me, I would be happy.
Nisī <b>quem</b> videās, fēlix nōn sis.	If you should not see <i>anyone</i> ( <i>someone</i> ), you would not be happy.
Num <b>quem</b> vidēs?	You don’t see <i>anyone</i> ( <i>someone</i> ), do you?

Hoc fēcit nē **quis** irātus esset.

He did this in order that *someone* might not be angry.

### 3. **quisquam**

**Quisquam, quidquam** (sometimes written **quicquam**) is declined like **quis, quid** with the suffix **-quam**. It means 'someone (something), anyone (anything)' and is used mainly in sentences which are negative or imply negation. The adjective for **quisquam** is supplied by the word **ūllus, -a, -um**, 'any'.

Vix **quisquam** hoc negāre potest. Hardly *anyone* can deny this.

Fortior fuit lēgātus **quam quisquam** militum. The envoy was braver than *any(one)* of the soldiers. (The implied negation here is that no one of the soldiers was braver than the envoy.)

Sōlis lūx clārior est **quam lūx ūllius** ignis. The light of the sun is brighter than the light of *any* fire.

### 4. **quisque**

The pronoun **quisque, quidque** (sometimes written **quicque**) (adjective, **quique, quaeque, quodque**) is declined like **quis, quid** (adjective like **quī, quae, quod**) with the suffix **-que** and means 'each one (each), everyone (every)'.

Haec optimus **quisque** sentit. *Each (every)* very good man perceives these things.

**Quique** vir hanc puellam amat. *Each (every)* man loves this girl.

**Cuique** hominī multa pecūnia est. There is much money to *each (every)* man; *each (every)* man has much money.

## B. Dative with Certain Intransitive Verbs

There are certain intransitive verbs in Latin which govern the dative case. For example, while in English the verb "persuade" is transitive and governs an object, in Latin **persuādeō** is intransitive (it means 'I am persuasive') and takes a dative of reference.

**Tibi** persuādeō. I am persuasive (*with reference*) to you; I persuade you.

Some of the more common verbs of this variety are:

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus	be credulous, believe; be trusting, trust
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus	be favorable, favor
ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtus	be forgiving, forgive, pardon
imperō (1)	give orders, command
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus	be harmful, harm
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus	be sparing, spare
pāreō, -ēre, pārūī, pārītus	be obedient, obey
placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus	be pleasing, please
persuādeō, -ēre, persuāsi, persuāsus	be persuasive, persuade
studeō, -ēre, -uī, --	be zealous, study

### C. Impersonal Passives

Like all intransitive verbs, the verbs introduced in B above cannot logically be used in the passive. When a passive idea is desired, an *impersonal* construction must be used. An *impersonal* verb form appears in the third person singular and has no personal subject. The pronoun "it" may be used in English to give a literal translation.

Tibi parcō.	I spare (am sparing to) you.
Tibi ā mē <b>parcitur</b> .	<i>It is spared (there is sparing) to you by me; you are spared by me.</i>
Mihi ā tē <b>parcitur</b> .	<i>It is spared (there is sparing) to me by you; I am spared by you.</i>
Mihi ā tē <b>parsum est</b> .	<i>It was (has been) spared (there was/has been sparing) to me by you; I was (have been) spared by you.</i>

When such verbs are used in the passive periphrastic construction, the ablative of agent generally occurs instead of the more usual dative of agent in order to avoid confusion with the dative that is governed by the intransitive verb.

Tibi ā **nōbīs** parcendum est. It must be spared to you *by us*; we must spare you.

The impersonal passive construction sometimes occurs with other verbs which do not take the dative when particular attention is called to the verbal action itself rather than to the ones performing the action.

Domī **pūgnātur**. *It is (being) fought at home; there is fighting at home; fighting is going on at home; a battle is being fought at home.*



**Ācriter pūgnātum est.** *It was fought fiercely; there was fierce fighting; the battle was fiercely fought.*

**Ad villam curritur.** *It is (being) run to the country house; there is (a) running to the country house; people are running to the country house.*

#### D. Dative with Compound Verbs

Many verbs compounded with prefixes such as the following govern the dative case.

ad-	con-	ob-	prō-
ante-	in-	post-	sub-
circum-	inter-	prae-	super-

It will be noted that such verbs cannot stand alone or, if transitive, simply with an accusative object; they require another word to complete the sense. For example,

**praesum** I am at the head of. . . (Another word is required to complete the sense; it will be in the dative.)

**Nautīs praesum.** I am at the head of *the sailors*; I command *the sailors*.

**praeſciō** I make at the head of, I place in command of. . . (Two additional words are required to complete the sense. Since the basic verb in this compound (**-ſciō** from **ſciō**) is transitive, the root **-ſciō** will govern the accusative, and the prefix **prae-** will govern the dative.)

**Tē nautīs  
praeſciō.** I place you in command of *the sailors*.

These datives, like all datives, are basically referential.

**Nautis praesum.** I am at the head with reference to the sailors; I am at the head of the sailors.

**Tē nautis  
praeſciō.** I make you in command with reference to the sailors; I place you in command of the sailors.

#### E. The Verb *fīō*, 'be made, be done, happen, become'

**Fīō, fieri, factus sum** is used as the passive for the verb **ſciō, -ere, fēci, factus**. The perfect system poses no problem, for it is identical to that formed from **ſciō** (the last principal part of both verbs is the same). The present system functions like an i-stem verb of the third conjugation, except that it has active forms with passive meanings, and the quantity of the **-i-** is long in the present (except for the third person singular), the imperfect, and future indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunctive.

NOTE that the imperfect subjunctive is formed on the hypothetical active infinitive for this verb:

fiere/m

fierē/s

...etc.

### F. The Numerical Adjective *duo, duae, duo*, 'two'

The plural adjective *duo*, 'two', has its own set of endings (shared also by *ambo*, *ambae*, *ambo*, 'both').

M.	F.	N.
duo	duae	duo
duōrum	duārum	duōrum
duōbus	duābus	duōbus
duōs (-o)	duās	duo
duōbus	duābus	duōbus

## UNIT THIRTEEN — VOCABULARY

<i>admirātiō</i> , -ōnis, F.	admiration
<i>adulēscēns</i> , -entis	young, youthful
<i>aliquis</i> , <i>aliquid</i> (pron.)	someone, something; anyone, anything
<i>aliquī</i> , <i>aliqua</i> , <i>aliquod</i> (adj.)	some, any
<i>celer</i> , <i>celeris</i> , <i>celere</i>	swift
<i>cōstituō</i> , -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtus	set, establish, decide
<i>currō</i> , -ere, <i>cucurrī</i> , <i>cursus</i>	run
<i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i>	two
<i>faveō</i> , -ēre, <i>fāvī</i> , <i>fautus</i>	be favorable, favor (+ dat.)
<i>fiō</i> , <i>fieri</i> , <i>factus sum</i>	be made, be done, happen, become (serves as the passive for <i>faciō</i> )
<i>heri</i> (adv.)	yesterday
<i>hīc</i> (adv.)	here
<i>ignōscō</i> , -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus	be forgiving, forgive, pardon (+ dat.)
<i>illīc</i> (adv.)	there
<i>irātus</i> , -a, -um	angry
<i>iūs</i> , <i>iūris</i> , N.	right, law
<i>lēgātus</i> , -ī, M.	legate, envoy
<i>mīror</i> , -ārī, -ātus sum	wonder (at), be amazed (at), admire
<i>moror</i> , -ārī, -ātus sum	delay, stay, hinder

<b>nēmō, nēminis</b> , M. or F.	no one
<b>noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus</b>	be harmful, harm (+ dat.)
<b>ōrātiō, -ōnis</b> , F.	oration, speech
<b>paene</b> (adv.)	almost
<b>parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus</b>	be sparing, spare (+ dat.)
<b>pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus</b>	be obedient, obey (+ dat.)
<b>persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus</b>	be persuasive, persuade (+ dat.)
<b>plēbs, plēbis</b> , F.	common people
<b>praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus</b>	bring (place) before, prefer
<b>praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus</b>	make before (at the head of), put in command of
<b>praesum, praeesse, -fuī, --</b>	be before (at the head of), be in command of
<b>quis, quid</b> (pron.)	someone, something; anyone, anything
<b>quī, qua, quod</b> (adj.)	some, any
<b>quisquam, quidquam</b> or <b>quicquam</b> (pron.)	someone, something; anyone, anything (used with a negative or a virtual negative)
<b>quisque, quidque</b> or <b>quicque</b> (pron.)	each one, each thing, every one, every thing
<b>quīque, quaeque, quodque</b> (adj.)	each, every
<b>quō</b> (adv.)	(to) where
<b>sollers, sollertis</b>	skilled, expert
<b>studeō, -ēre, -uī, --</b>	be zealous, study (+ dat.)
<b>ūsus, -ūs</b> , M.	use, advantage, enjoyment
<b>vix</b> (adv.)	hardly, scarcely

## UNIT THIRTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Aliquis, aliquid** is the pronoun, ‘someone, anyone, something, anything’; it is declined like **quis, quid** with the prefix **ali-**. **Aliquī, aliqua, aliquod** is the adjective ‘some, any’, declined like the relative pronoun (except that the **quae** forms become **-qua**) with the prefix **ali-**. But the feminine plural remains **-quae**.

Note that the verb **cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus**, ‘set, establish, decide’, has the same stem in the present and perfect active. Therefore, **cōstituit** may be either present or perfect, for example.

**Currō, currere, cucurri, cursus**, ‘run’, duplicates the **cu** in the perfect active stem in the same way that **pellō**, for instance, duplicates the **pe** in its perfect active stem **pepul-**.

**Duo, duae, duo**, ‘two’, and **ambo, ambae, ambo**, ‘both’, are declined in the same way. They are the only remains of the *dual* number in Latin; the dual was used

for two objects only, as the singular is used for one object, and the plural for several objects.

The verb **fiō, fieri, factus sum**, 'be made, be done, happen, become', is used as the passive of **faciō**. In a way, it is the opposite of a deponent verb since its forms are active in appearance, but passive in meaning: **Hoc fiēbat**, 'This was done'.

**Hic**, 'here', is an adverb and should not be confused with the adjective **hic**; **illic** is the adverb 'there'.

**Ignōscō** is a compound of **nōscō**; it means 'be forgiving, forgive, pardon' and governs the dative case.

There is a deponent verb **irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum**, 'become angry', which is derived from **ira**, 'anger'. Its participle **irātus** is used as an adjective, 'angry'.

**Iūs, iūris**, N., is 'right, law', as in our Bill of Rights. There is another word **iūs, iūris**, N., which means 'soup, sauce'.

**Lēgātus, lēgātī**, M., is an 'envoy, legate'; the legate was an official assistant of a general or governor of a province.

**Miror** is a first conjugation deponent meaning 'wonder (at), be amazed (at), admire'; it has a compound, **admīror**, with the same meanings. Related to this compound is the noun **admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis**, F., 'admiration'.

The first conjugation deponent **moror**, 'delay, stay, hinder', is related to the noun **mora, -ae**, F., 'delay'.

Four Latin verbs are frequently confused with one another; a careful memorization of the principal parts of each of them would eliminate such confusion:

**parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus**, 'be sparing, spare' (+ dative)

**pāreō, pārere, pārui, pārītus**, 'be obedient, obey' (+ dative)

**parō** (1), 'prepare, make ready, provide, get'

**pariō, parere, peperī, partus**, 'bear, give birth to, produce'

**Persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsi, persuāsus** is a compound of **suādeō**, 'urge, persuade'. This verb and **suēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētus**, 'be accustomed', have many compounds and derivatives; in these words, **su** is pronounced as **sw** (compare the English word "suave"). **Persuādeō**, therefore, has four syllables.

**Plēbs, plēbis**, F., 'common people', is a collective noun and so it takes a singular verb: **Plēbs ducī crēdit**, 'The common people trust the leader'.

**Praeferō**, 'bring before, place before, prefer', and **praefficiō**, 'make before, make at the head of, put in command of', govern both an object in the accusative case and a dative with compounds: **Dux lēgātum cōpiis praefēcīt**, 'The leader put the legate in command of the troops'.

After **sī, nisī, num**, and **nē**, **quis** means 'someone, anyone', and **quid** means 'something, anything'. The adjective **quī, qua, quod**, 'some, any', has **qua** forms instead of **quae**.

The spelling **quicquam**, 'something, anything', may be used instead of **quidquam**, as **quicque**, 'each thing, everything', may be used instead of **quidque**.

**Quō** is an adverb meaning '(to) where'. A chart of these "place" adverbs might be helpful at this point:

<b>ubi</b> , 'where'	<b>quō</b> '(to) where'	<b>unde</b> , 'from where'
<b>hīc</b> , 'here'	<b>hūc</b> , '(to) here'	<b>hinc</b> , 'from here'
<b>illic</b> , 'there'	<b>illūc</b> '(to) there'	<b>illinc</b> , 'from there'
<b>ibi</b> , 'there'	<b>eō</b> , '(to) there'	<b>inde</b> , 'from there'

Obviously, **studium**, **studii**, N., 'zeal', and **studeō**, **studēre**, **studui**, --, 'be zealous, study' (+ dative), are related.

**Ūsus** is a fourth declension noun from **ūtor**; it means 'use, advantage, enjoyment'.

#### ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES ADDED TO THE STEMS OF NOUNS

The suffixes **-ōsus** and **-lentus** added to the stem of a noun mean 'full of'.

<b>animōsus</b> , -a, -um	full of courage, bold, spirited
<b>annōsus</b> , -a, -um	of many years, aged
<b>aquōsus</b> , -a, -um	abounding in water, moist
<b>bellicōsus</b> , -a, -um	warlike, martial
<b>fāmōsus</b> , -a, -um	much talked of, famous
<b>glōriōsus</b> , -a, -um	full of glory, famous, renowned
<b>sententiōsus</b> , -a, -um	full of meaning, pithy
<b>corpulentus</b> , -a, -um	corpulent, fleshy, fat
<b>opulentus</b> , -a, -um	rich, wealthy
<b>turbulentus</b> , -a, -um	full of commotion, confused, disturbed

The suffixes **-fer** and **-ger** (the roots of **ferō** and **gerō**) added to the stem of a noun mean 'bearing'.

<b>armifer</b> , -a, -um	} bearing weapons, armed, warlike
<b>armiger</b> , -a, -um	
<b>aurifer</b> , -a, -um	bearing, producing <i>or</i> containing gold
<b>belliger</b> , -a, -um	waging war, warlike, martial
<b>flammifer</b> , -a, -um	} flame-bearing, flaming, fiery
<b>flammiger</b> , -a, -um	
<b>lūcifer</b> , -a, -um	light-bringing
<b>mortifer</b> , -a, -um	death-bringing

#### ABSTRACT NOUN SUFFIXES

The suffixes **-ia** (-iēs), **-tia** (-tiēs), **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tūdō** added to the stems of adjectives (usually) produce feminine abstract nouns.



<b>dēmentia</b> , -ae, F.	insanity, madness
<b>memoria</b> , -ae, F.	memory, recollection
<b>pauperiēs</b> , -ēī, F.	poverty
<b>saevitia</b> , -ae, F.	a raging, rage, fierceness
<b>laetitia</b> , -ae, F.	joy, gladness, pleasure
<b>cānitiēs</b> , -ēī, F. ( <b>cānus</b> , -a, -um, 'white')	a grayish-white color
<b>crūdēlitās</b> , -tātis, F.	harshness, severity, cruelty
<b>gravitās</b> , -tātis, F.	weight, heaviness
<b>iuventūs</b> , -tūtis, F.	the age of youth, youth
<b>senectūs</b> , -tūtis, F. ( <b>senex</b> , <b>senis</b> , 'old')	old age
<b>magnitūdō</b> , -inis, F.	greatness, size
<b>multitūdō</b> , -inis, F.	a great number, multitude

The suffixes **-ium** and **-tium** added to noun stems (usually) produce neuter abstract nouns.

<b>augurium</b> , -ī, N. ( <b>augur</b> , -uris, M. or F., 'soothsayer')	the observation and interpretation of omens, augury
<b>magisterium</b> , -ī, N.	the office of a president, chief, director, superintendent, etc.
<b>hospitium</b> , -ī, N.	hospitality
<b>servitium</b> , -ī, N.	the condition of a slave, slavery

## UNIT THIRTEEN — DRILL

### I.

Give the following forms:

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. gen. sing. <b>quaeque aura</b>      | 4. dat. sing. <b>quisque</b>    |
| 2. nom. pl. <b>aliquod iussum</b>      | 5. abl. pl. <b>quīque modus</b> |
| 3. acc. sing. <b>quisquam, aliquis</b> |                                 |

### II.

Translate:

1. Amōremne iussis praepōnis?
2. In forō clāmātur.
3. Vōbīs imperāvimus nē iussa amōrī postpōnātis.
4. Ducī placet moenia oppidō circumpōnere.
5. Ira fit ruīnā nostrōrum bonōrum.
6. Crēdāmus imperātōrī ā regentibus honestīs dēlēctō.
7. Quisque pessimus poenās det!

8. Utinam quisque patriam amet!
9. Nōlī crēdere alicui maiōrī quam tibi.
10. Duōbus imperāvit nē cui maiōrī quam eīs crēdant.
11. a) Duo cōsulēs exposuērunt quōsdam ducēs nāvibus praefectōs esse.  
b) Duo cōsulēs exposuērunt sē quōsdam ducēs nāvibus praefectūrōs esse.  
c) Duo cōsulēs exposuērunt sē quōsdam ducēs nāvibus praefectūrōs.
12. Dux ipse hortātus est ut hostilēs cōpiaē flammās oppidō circumdarent.
13. Per viās oppidī errātum est.
14. Tibi ab omnibus audientibus crēditum est.
15. Sī quis domī maneat, quid fiat in orbe terrārum nesciat.
16. Aliquisne tē timet? Num quis timēret tē rogāvimus.
17. Aliquī amīcus mihi dōnum aliquod misit.
18. Illud flūmen erat longius quam ūllum in Graeciā.
19. Marcus sē esse sapientiōrem quam quemquam amīcōrum arbitrātus est.
20. In bellō magnopere timētur.
21. Hoc difficilīus est quam quidquam.

## UNIT THIRTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES

### (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Cūr aliquī adulēscēns per forum heri currere cōstituit?
2. Cūr aliquis per forum heri currere cōstituit?
3. Nescīvī num quis per forum currere cōstitueret.
4. Sī quī adulēscēns per forum currere cōstituāt, irātissimus sim.
5. Vix quisquam virtūtem illic mōnstrāre voluit.
6. Ōrātiōnem lēgātī mirātī sumus plūs quam ūllam ōrātiōnem quam audīvimus.
7. Cuique persuāsērunt ut quam honestissimus esset.
8. Plēbī quodque iūs nōn datum est.
9. Rogāvimus quārē aliqua admirātiō adulēscēntibus offerrētur rei pūblicae nocēre cōnantibus.
10. a) Nēmō intellēxit cūr dux aliqua scelera eō tempore fassus esset.  
b) Cīvēs ducī malō nōn fāvērunt.

## UNIT THIRTEEN — EXERCISES

### I.

1. Quō quisque est sollertior, hōc docet facilius. [quō...hōc, 'by the degree in which...by this degree; the more...the more...']
2. Quō maius quodque animal, eō magis timendum est. [quō...eō = quō...hōc]

3. Si quisquam est irātus, is ego sum.
4. Vix ūlli crēdit, nec quisquam ex omnibus gentibus ad eum accēdere audet.
5. Hārum sentiārum quae vēra sit, deus aliqui videat.
6. Aliquid ā nōbīs invenitur; nescimus quid sit. Quidam crēdunt id malum esse. Illis nōn crēdimus.
7. Nisi cui imperābis ut illi servō ignōscat, mox moriētur.
8. Ignōscite mihi, adulēscentēs, si vōbis quid dicam: cūrae vōbis sit ut mōribus multārum gentium maximā cum cūrā studeātis.
9. Imperātōri quodque sit bellum laudī.
10. Lēgāti illius virtūs omnibus cīvibus admirātiōnī fuit.
11. Cui bonō fuit? Nēmini bonō fuit.
12. Hoc vōbis sit exemplō!
13. Hic mihi magnō ūsuī erit lēgātus, iste parvō.
14. Quem ūnī ē nōbīs saepe praetulit?
15. Pecūnia amicitiae nōn praeferenda est.
16. Imperātōri quī oppidō praecerat pārendum erat.
17. Dixi imperātōri quī oppidō praesset pārendum esse.
18. Hic vivitur; illic nēmini vita placet.
19. Mihi ā quāque fēminā in urbe favētur.
20. Quaeque fēmina respondit hanc esse partem ōrātiōnis quae rem cōstitueret paene ante oculōs cuiusque audientis.
21. Rogāmus quid fiat (quid factum sit, quid factūrus sit).
22. Omnia nātūrae nūminī, caelum, ignēs, terrae, maria pārent.
23. Aliquis hominī cuidam heri dixit omnibus vīventibus animum datum esse ex illis aeternis ignibus, quae sidera et stellās vocārētis. [*animus*, -ī, M., 'mind, soul'; *stella*, -ae, F., 'star']
24. Homō quidam rogāvit quō modō haec fieri possint; alius respondit fieri nōn posse.
25. Quisque suam opīniōnem habet.
26. Signō datō, celeriter Rōmam curritur.
27. Lūx fiat.
28. Rogat num cui magnopere placuerit.
29. Quī amābant hunc, illi favēbunt.
30. Vix cuiquam persuādēbātur ē Graeciā omnī cessūrōs (esse) Rōmānōs.
31. Si qua mihi virtūs esset, in bellum sine metū ruerem.
32. Dī in caelō, parcite nōbīs! Nātūram optimam ducem tamquam deum sequimur eīque pārēmus.
33. Crēdō ego vōs mīrārī quō ferat nātūra sua quemque.
34. Si quisque suā manū captum ex hoste domum rettulisset, multī servī nōbis nunc domi essent.

35. a) Gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum. [ēdūcere = ē + dūcere]  
 b) Mē interficere cōnantī dextram morātus sum manum.
36. Si nēmō nēminī similis est, nōbīs opus est mōrēs cuiusque hominis intellegere et in quōque quaerere aliquid virtūtis.
37. Eō vitāe tempore, dux sēnsit scelera quam pessima in orbe terrārum fieri.
38. Quid fiet si quis cōstituet nōs rogāre unde vēnerimus? Cōnfiteri nōn possumus nōs Rōmā heri profectōs esse, urbe hīs gentibus inimicissimā.
39. Mōrēs istius aliquam mihi admirātiōnem movērent nisi opibus semper male ūterētur (nisi opēs amīcōrum dēlēre occultē cōnārētur).
40. Hic saxō, liquidis ille colōribus  
 sollers nunc hominem pōnere, nunc deum. (Horace, *Odes* iv.8.7-8)  
 Quisque artem suam habet.

[liquidus, -a, -um, 'liquid'; color, -ōris, M., 'color'; pōnō, here, 'portray, fashion']

41. Imperātūrus es hominibus, quī nec tōtam servitūtem patī possunt nec tōtam libertātem. Aliquid tibi cōnsilii atque mentis opus est.
42. Amīcī fiāmus et sine bellō atque odiō vivāmus. Huicne cōnsiliō favētis an nōn?
43. Mē heri rogāvistī num quem vīdissem. Dixi mē aliquem vīdisse, sed nescire quis esset. Nihil novī nunc tibi afferre possum.
44. Intellegi potest nōn solum hominēs solēre dubitare, bonumne aliquod cōnsilium an malum sit, sed etiam ē duobus cōnsiliis bonis utrum melius sit.
45. Quō plūs custōdum fortissimōrum imperātōri est, hōc tūtior; nam plēbs, alterius ducis cupida, nihil audāciae agere audēbit.
46. Dixitne aliquid? Nōn dixit quicquam.
47. Homīni pepercērunt quem dux manui fortium praefēcerat.
48. Mihi nōn ab istis nocērī potest.
49. Mōtus celer flūminis intellegendus erit nē cui trānseuntī noceātur. [trānseō from trāns, 'across' + eō]
50. Parva magnīs cōferantur.
51. THE COMMON PEOPLE AND THE DRUIDS IN GAUL (adapted from Caesar, *The Gallic Wars* vi.13):

In omni Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, ad nūllum cōnsilium [here, 'council'] ire potest. Multī, pecūniā carentēs aut vīribus aliōrum fortiōrum pressī, sē in servitūtem trādunt nōbilibus; quibus in [here, 'over'] hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominis in ['over']

servōs. Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, quibus ūnus fortissimus praeest, alterum equitum. Illi rēbus divinis intersunt; sacrificia pūblica et privāta faciunt. Ad eōs magnus adulēscantium numerus disciplīnae causā currit, magnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam paene dē omnibus contrōversiis pūblicis privātisque cōstituunt, et, sī quod est scelus factum, sī quis interfectus est, sī dē finibus contrōversia est, idem cōstituunt quid faciendum sit. Hī dicunt quae poenae, quae praemia quibus danda sint. Sī quī aut privātus aut populus eōrum iussis nōn pāret, sacrificiis prohibent. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est prohibitum, hī numerō impiōrum habentur, his omnēs discēdunt nē quid ex eis mali accipiant, neque iis petentibus iūs datur neque honor ūllus.

[aut (conj.), 'or'; causā (used prepositionally + gen. — placed after the genitive which it governs), 'for the sake of'; contrōversia, -ae, F., 'controversy'; disciplīna, -ae, F., 'training'; divinus, -a, -um, 'divine'; druidēs, -um, M., 'the druids' (the priests and wise men of Gaul); eques, equitis, M., 'horseman, knight'; Gallia, -ae, F., 'Gaul', a country in the ancient world corresponding roughly to modern France; honor, honōris, M., 'honor, respect'; intersum, -esse, -fuī, —, 'be between, be concerned'; ita (adv.), 'in this way'; nōbilis, -e, 'noble'; numerus, -i, M., 'number'; privātus, -a, -um, 'private'; prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 'prohibit, keep from'; sacrificium, -i, N., 'sacrifice']

## II.

1. Will anyone pardon him? He will not be pardoned by anyone.
2. I don't prefer anyone to her. She is a great aid to me.
3. What was happening yesterday on land and sea?
4. He said that he would please each man whom he had praised.
5. If anyone should shout that there is danger here, there would be a great running in the streets; the consul would put the legate in command of the people in order that the ruler may be obeyed.

## III. Readings

### A. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 5.17:

Ego vōs hortārī tantum<sup>1</sup> possum, ut amicitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānis<sup>2</sup> antepōnātis;<sup>3</sup> nihil est enim tam nātūrae aptum,<sup>4</sup> tam conveniēns<sup>5</sup> ad rēs vel<sup>6</sup> secundās<sup>7</sup> vel<sup>6</sup> adversās.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> tantum (adv.), 'only'    <sup>2</sup> hūmānus, -a, -um, 'human'    <sup>3</sup> antepōnō (ante + pōnō), 'put (place) before, prefer'    <sup>4</sup> aptus, -a, -um, 'suited to'    <sup>5</sup> conveniēns, -entis, 'appropriate'    <sup>6</sup> vel...vel (adv.), 'either...or'    <sup>7</sup> secundus, -a, -um, 'favorable'    <sup>8</sup> adversus, -a, -um, 'adverse'



B. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 6.20:

Amicitiae dīvitias alii praepōnunt,<sup>1</sup> bonam alii valētūdinem,<sup>2</sup> alii potentiam,<sup>3</sup> alii honōrēs,<sup>4</sup> multī etiam<sup>5</sup> voluptātēs.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> praepōnō (prae + pōnō), 'place before, prefer'    <sup>2</sup> valētūdō, -inis, F., 'health'    <sup>3</sup> potentia, -ae, F., 'power'    <sup>4</sup> honor, -ōris, M., 'honor, distinction'    <sup>5</sup> etiam (adv.), 'even'    <sup>6</sup> voluptās, -tātis, F., 'pleasure'

C. Cicero *Dē Divinātiōe* 1.25.52:

Est apud<sup>1</sup> Platōnem<sup>2</sup> Sōcratēs,<sup>3</sup> cum<sup>4</sup> esset in custodiā<sup>5</sup> pūblicā, dicēs Critōnī,<sup>6</sup> suō familiārī,<sup>7</sup> sibi post tertium<sup>8</sup> diem esse moriendum;<sup>9</sup> vidisse enim sē in somnīs<sup>10</sup> pulchritūdine<sup>11</sup> eximiā<sup>12</sup> fēminam, quae sē nōmine appellāns,<sup>13</sup> diceret Homēricum<sup>14</sup> quendam eius modī versum:<sup>15</sup>

tertia<sup>8</sup> tē Phthiae<sup>16</sup> tempestās<sup>17</sup> laeta<sup>18</sup> locābit.<sup>19</sup>

Quod, ut est dictum, sic<sup>20</sup> scribitur contigisse.<sup>21</sup>

<sup>1</sup> apud (prep. + acc.), here, 'in the works of'    <sup>2</sup> Platō, -ōnis, M., 'Plato', the Greek philosopher    <sup>3</sup> Sōcratēs, -is, M., 'Socrates', the Greek philosopher    <sup>4</sup> cum (conj. + subjunctive), 'when'    <sup>5</sup> custodiā, -ae, F., 'custody'    <sup>6</sup> Critōn, -ōnis, M., 'Crito', a friend of Socrates    <sup>7</sup> familiārīs, -is, M., 'friend'    <sup>8</sup> tertius, -a, -um, 'third'    <sup>9</sup> The neuter participial form indicates that the verb is used impersonally; see section C of this Unit.    <sup>10</sup> somnus, -ī, M., 'dream'    <sup>11</sup> pulchritūdō, -inis, F., 'beauty'    <sup>12</sup> eximius, -a, -um, 'exceptional'    <sup>13</sup> appellō (1), 'call'    <sup>14</sup> Homēricus, -a, -um, 'of Homer, Homeric'    <sup>15</sup> versus, -ūs, M., 'a line of poetry, verse'    <sup>16</sup> Phthia, -ae, F., 'Phthia', a town in Thessaly. [The line echoes Homer, *Iliad* ix.363. Phthia, the homeland of Achilles, is used here to suggest that Socrates is going home.]    <sup>17</sup> tempestās, -tātis, F., 'period of time, season, day'    <sup>18</sup> laetus, -a, -um, here, 'felicitous'    <sup>19</sup> locō (1), 'locate, place'    <sup>20</sup> sic (adv.), 'in this way'    <sup>21</sup> contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactus, 'happen'

D. Cicero, *In Catilinam* 1.4.8:

Videō enim esse hīc in senātū<sup>1</sup> quōsdam quī tēcum ūnā<sup>2</sup> fuērunt.

<sup>1</sup> senātus, -ūs, M., 'senate'    <sup>2</sup> ūnā (adv.), 'together'

E. Cicero, *In Catilinam* 1.9.23:

Sīn<sup>1</sup> autem servīre<sup>2</sup> meae laudī et glōriae māvīs, ēgredere cum importūnā<sup>3</sup> scelerātōrum<sup>4</sup> manū, cōfer tē ad Manlium,<sup>5</sup> concitā<sup>6</sup> perditōs<sup>7</sup> cīvēs, sēcerne<sup>8</sup> tē ā bonīs, infer patriae bellum, exsultā<sup>9</sup> impiō latrōciniō,<sup>10</sup> ut ā mē nōn ēiectus<sup>11</sup> ad aliēnōs,<sup>12</sup> sed invitātus<sup>13</sup> ad tuōs isse videāris.

<sup>1</sup> sīn (conj.), 'but if'    <sup>2</sup> serviō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, 'serve, be a slave to' (+ dat.)    <sup>3</sup> importūnus, -a, -um, 'rude, savage'    <sup>4</sup> scelerātus, -a, -um, 'polluted, profaned by guilt'    <sup>5</sup> Manlius, -ī, M., a man's name    <sup>6</sup> concitō (1), 'arouse'    <sup>7</sup> perditus, -a, -um, here, 'desperate, corrupt, infamous, degenerate'    <sup>8</sup> sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, 'separate'    <sup>9</sup> exsultō (1), 'rejoice, triumph'    <sup>10</sup> latrōcinium, -ī, N., 'criminality'    <sup>11</sup> ēiciō (ē + iaciō), 'throw out'    <sup>12</sup> aliēnus, -a, -um, 'strange, foreign'    <sup>13</sup> invitō (1), 'invite'

F. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.5.11:

Cum lūxuriā<sup>1</sup> nōbīs, cum āmentīā,<sup>2</sup> cum scelere certandum est.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> lūxuria, -ae, F., 'luxury, excess'    <sup>2</sup> āmentia, -ae, F., 'madness'    <sup>3</sup> certō (1), 'fight'

G. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.12.27:

Quod<sup>1</sup> reliquum<sup>2</sup> est, iam nōn possum oblivīscī<sup>3</sup> meam hanc esse patriam,  
mē hōrum esse cōsulem, mihi aut<sup>4</sup> cum hīs vivendum aut<sup>4</sup> prō his esse  
moriendum.

<sup>1</sup> quod, *here*, '(with respect to) what . . . ; as far as what . . . '    <sup>2</sup> reliquus, -a, -um, 'remain-  
ing'    <sup>3</sup> oblivīscor, oblivīscī, oblītus sum, 'forget'    <sup>4</sup> aut . . . aut, 'either . . . or'

# UNIT FOURTEEN

## A. Clauses of Result

Clauses which express the result of an action or a quality are introduced by **ut** for the positive, **ut nōn** (**nēmō**, **nihil**, **numquam**, etc.) for the negative, and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

The approach of a result clause is often indicated by the presence of an adjective or adverb of degree in the main clause.

ADJECTIVES: { **tantus**, -a, -um, 'so great'  
**tālis**, -e, 'such, of such a sort'  
**tot** (indeclinable), 'so many'

ADVERBS: { **ita**, 'so'  
**tam**, 'so'  
**sic**, 'in this way'  
**adeo**, 'so'

**Tanta** est tempestās **ut** omnēs nāvēs *So great* dēleantur. *the storm that all the ships are being destroyed.*

**Tam** celeriter currit **ut** nēmō eum vincere possit. *He runs so fast that no one can beat him.*

The rules for sequence of tenses are generally observed. However, the perfect subjunctive is sometimes found in secondary sequence instead of the imperfect in order to lay stress on the fact that the action is completed.

**Tam** irātus erat **ut** hoc diceret. *He was so angry that he said this.*  
**Tam** irātus erat **ut** hoc dixerit. *He was so angry that he (actually) said this. (emphasis on completion of the action)*

**Tanta** erat tempestās **ut** omnēs nāvēs *So great* dēlērentur. *the storm that all the ships were (being) destroyed.*

**Tanta** erat tempestās **ut** omnēs nāvēs *So great* dēlētae sint. *the storm that all the ships were (actually) destroyed. (emphasis on completion of the action)*

Note the following similarities and distinctions between purpose and result clauses:

**PURPOSE**

Positive introduced by **ut**.

Negative introduced by **nē**.

Vēnit **ut** turbam vinceret.

He came *in order that* he might overcome the crowd.

Nōn vēnit **nē** turbam vinceret.

He didn't come *in order that* he might *not* overcome the crowd.

**RESULT**

Positive introduced by **ut**.

Negative introduced by **ut . . . nōn**.

An adverb or adjective of degree in the main clause frequently signals the approach of a clause of result.

**Tam** fortis erat **ut** turbam vinceret (vicerit).

He was *so* brave *that* he overcame the crowd.

**Tam** fortis erat **ut** ā turbā **nōn** vinceretur (victus sit).

He was *so* brave *that* he was *not* overcome by the crowd.

**B. Substantive Clauses of Result**

Certain verbs and expressions have result clauses either as their object or subject. Of these, the most important are:

efficere ut, 'to bring it about that'	} + object clause
facere ut, 'to see to it that'	
accidit ut, 'it happens that'	} + subject clause
fit ut, 'it comes about that, it happens that'	
feri potest ut, 'it is able to happen that, it is possible that'	

**Effēcit ut** nautae inter sē pūgnarent. *He brought it about that* the sailors fought among themselves; *he brought it about that* the sailors fought one another.

**Accidit ut** ego ipse illic manērem. *It happened that* I myself remained there.

**Fit ut** nēmō sit laetior quam ego. *It happens that* no one is happier than I.

The verbs **efficere** and **facere** are frequently followed by **nē** instead of **ut . . . nōn** to introduce a negative clause, particularly when there is an implicit notion of command in the sentence.

**Fac nē** cui noceās. See to it *that* you do *not* harm anyone.

**C. Relative Clauses of Characteristic (Generic [*genus, generis*, N., 'sort'] Relative Clauses)**

The relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod** plus the subjunctive can be used to describe its antecedent in terms of the general qualities or characteristics of the group to which the antecedent belongs.

**Is est quī celeriter ambulet.** *He is the (kind of) man who walks fast; he is a man who walks fast.*

(The relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive characterizes its antecedent in terms of the general qualities of the larger group to which the antecedent belongs.)

COMPARE:

**Is est quī celeriter ambulat.** He is the (actual) man who walks fast.

(The relative clause with its verb in the indicative describes a particular antecedent.)

**Sunt quī eī crēdant.** *They are the (kind of) men who trust him; there are men (of the kind) who trust him; there are those who trust him.*

COMPARE:

**Hī sunt quī eī crēdunt.** These are the (actual) ones who trust him.

**Quis erat quī hoc crēderet?** *Who was there (of the kind) who believed this?*

In many instances, these clauses have general or indefinite antecedents, of which the following are common:

sunt quī	there are those who
est quī	he is one who
nēmō est quī	there is no one who
nihil est quod	there is nothing that
quis est quī?	who is there who?
quid est quod?	what is there that?

But these generic clauses are also found with less vague and even with precise antecedents when they are felt to characterize or generalize rather than denote a specific attribute of the antecedent:

sōlus est quī	he is the only (kind of) man who
is est quī	he is the (kind of) man who
Cicerō est quī	Cicero is the (kind of) man who
dignus est quī	he is the (kind of) man worthy who (to)



Relative clauses of characteristic are best translated into English using the indicative; the generic idea is carried over into English by the formulae which introduce such clauses — i.e., 'there is *no one* who', 'he is the *sort of* man who'. Sometimes, however, the context requires that the subjunctive be rendered with potential force:

Sōlus est quī hoc nesciat.	He is the only one who does not know this. OR He is the only one who would not know this. (potential force)
Quid erat quod agerēmus?	What was there that we could do? (potential force)
Quis est quī hoc faciat?	Who is the (kind of) one who does this?; Who is there who does this? OR Who is there who would do this? (potential force)
Nēmō erat quī eum ridēret.	There was no one (the kind) who laughed at him. OR There was no one who would laugh at him. (potential force)
Dignus est quī nautis praesit.	He is the kind of worthy man (i.e., he belongs to the class of worthy men) who is (would be) in command of the sailors; he is worthy to be in command of the sailors.

Frequently, negative relative clauses of characteristic are introduced by **quīn** (= **quī** [**quae**, **quod**] **nōn**):

Nēmō est <b>quīn</b> haec intellegat.	There is no one <i>who</i> does <i>not</i> understand these things. OR There is no one <i>who</i> <i>would not</i> understand these things.
---------------------------------------	---

#### D. Relative Clauses of Result

Very closely allied to the relative clause of characteristic is the relative clause of result.

Nihil est tam malum <b>quod</b> mūtārī nōn possit.	There is nothing so bad <i>with the result that it cannot</i> be changed; there is nothing so bad <i>that it cannot</i> be changed.
Nēmō est tam caecus <b>quī</b> haec nōn videat.	There is no one so blind <i>who</i> does not <i>see</i> these things; there is no one so blind <i>that he does not see</i> these things.

Here there is a fusion of both a relative clause of characteristic and a result clause to produce a relative clause of result. The relative pronoun is standing for the **ut** which would normally introduce the clause of result.

### E. Relative Clauses of Purpose and Purpose Clauses Introduced by Adverbs

Purpose clauses were presented in Unit Three as having their verbs in the subjunctive and as being introduced by **ut** for the positive and **nē** for the negative. However, there are other ways of expressing purpose with the subjunctive in Latin:

1. **Quō** (ablative, 'by which') introduces a purpose clause which contains a comparative.

Properātis **quō** celerius    You hasten *by which you may arrive* more  
adveniātis.                      quickly; you hasten in order that you may arrive more quickly.

(= Properātis ut eō celerius adveniātis.)

2. Purpose clauses may be introduced by a relative pronoun when its antecedent, usually not the subject of the main verb, is clearly expressed in the main clause. They may also be introduced by an adverb (**ubi**, 'where'; **unde**, 'from where'; **quō**, '(to) where').

Nūntium mittit **quī** dē mōribus    He sends a messenger *who may ask*  
incolārum roget.                      about the customs of the inhabitants; he sends a messenger in order that he (i.e., the messenger) may ask about the customs of the inhabitants.

(= Nūntium mittit ut is dē mōribus incolārum roget.)

Domum cucurri **ubi** mē                      I ran home *where I might hide*; I ran  
cēlārem.    home in order that I might *hide*  
there.

(= Domum cucurri ut ibi mē cēlārem. I ran home in order that I might hide there.)

Scribēbat librōs **quōs** alii                      He wrote books *which* others might  
legerent.    read; he wrote books in order that  
others *might* read them.

(= Scribēbat librōs ut eōs alii legerent.)

### F. Indirect Reflexives

It has been pointed out in Unit Seven, section B4, that reflexives refer to the subject of the verb of their own clause. A reflexive so used is called a *direct reflexive*.

Senex multam pecūniam **sibi** parāvit. The old man got much money for *himself*.

However, in subordinate subjunctive clauses and in indirect statement, the reflexive usually refers to the subject of the *main* clause and not to that of the clause in which it appears. This use is called the *indirect reflexive*.

Dux lēgātum mittit quī **sibi** multam pecūniam paret. The leader sends a legate in order that he may get much money for *him(self)* (i.e., the leader).

Plēbs ōrat ut **sibi** parcāmus. The common people beg that we spare *them*.

Dicit illōs irātōs sē interficere velle. He says that those angry men want to kill *him*.

Vir rogāvit quam ob rem iste adu- The man asked why that young man  
lēscēns ad sē vēnisset. of yours had come to *him* (i.e., to the man).

If, in the third example above, the author had wished to take the less frequent course and have his reflexive refer to the subject of the verb in its own clause (here, the infinitive *velle*), clarity could have been achieved by inserting the appropriate form of the intensive pronoun, **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**:

Dicit illōs irātōs sē **ipsōs** interficere velle. He says that those angry men want to kill *themselves* (i.e., their *very* selves).

## UNIT FOURTEEN — VOCABULARY

<b>accidō, -ere, -cidī, --</b>	fall upon; happen, occur
<b>adeō (adv.)</b>	so, so much, so far
<b>adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus</b>	come to, arrive
<b>animus, -ī, M.</b>	mind, rational spirit, soul
<b>auctōritās, -tātis, F.</b>	authority
<b>aut (conj.)</b>	or
<b>aut. . . aut</b>	either . . . or
<b>Carthāgō, -inis, F.</b>	Carthage, a city on the coast of North Africa
<b>colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum</b>	speak, talk, converse with
<b>dignus, -a, -um</b>	worthy, deserving, suitable (+ abl.)
<b>indignus, -a, -um</b>	unworthy, unsuitable (+ abl.)

dolor, -ōris, M.  
 efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus  
 etiam (adv.)  
 hūc (adv.)  
 illūc (adv.)  
 intendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus  
 inter (prep. + acc.)  
 ita (adv.)  
 modo (adv.)  
 nōtus, -a, -um  
 nūntiō (1)  
     nūntius, -ī, M.  
 nūper (adv.)  
 ōs, ōris, N.  
 ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus  
 parō (1)  
 paulus, -a, -um  
  
 pāx, pācis, F.  
 polliceor, -ērī, -itus sum  
 properō (1)  
 quālis, -e  
 rideō, -ēre, risī, risus  
 senex, senis  
 sic (adv.)  
 tālis, -e  
     tālis . . . quālis  
 tempestās, -tātis, F.  
 trāns (prep. + acc.)  
 tum or tunc (adv.)  
 ubique (adv.)  
 vēritās, -tātis, F.  
 vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus

pain, grief, sorrow  
 effect, bring about  
 even  
 to this place  
 to that place, up to that time  
 stretch out, extend, aim, exert  
 between, among  
 so, in this way  
 only; just, just now  
 known, well-known, customary  
 report, announce  
 messenger, message  
 recently  
 mouth, expression  
 show, expose, make plain  
 prepare, make ready, provide, get  
 little, small (compares irregularly: **minor, minus;**  
     **minimus, -a, -um**)  
 peace  
 promise  
 hasten  
 of what kind, what kind of  
 laugh (at)  
 old  
 so, in this way  
 such, of such a sort  
 such . . . as  
 weather, storm, season  
 across, on the other side of  
 then, at that time  
 everywhere, anywhere, wherever  
 truth  
 conquer, beat, overcome

## UNIT FOURTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Accidō, accidere, accidī**, 'fall upon, happen, occur', is a compound of **ad** and **cadō**; it lacks a fourth principal part and the perfect active stem loses the reduplication of the uncompounded form.

**Adveniō** is obviously a compound of **ad** and **veniō** and so it means 'come to, arrive'. From the fourth principal part there is formed a fourth declension noun, **adventus, adventūs, M.**, 'arrival'.

**Anima** (Unit Two) was defined as 'soul, spirit, life-force'; **animus, animī, M.**, is 'mind, rational spirit, soul'.

**Auctōritās, auctōritātis, F.**, is the abstract noun from **auctor**; it means 'authority'.

**Colloquor**, a compound of **com-** and **loquor**, means 'speak, talk, converse with'.

**Dignus, -a, -um**, 'worthy', and its opposite **indignus, -a, -um**, 'unworthy', both govern the ablative case: **Multis dōnīs est digna**, 'She is worthy of many gifts'.

**Intendō, intendere, intendī, intentus** and **ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus**, both have the same stem in the present and in the perfect active: **intendimus**, 'we stretch out', 'we have stretched out'; **ostendit**, 'he shows', 'he has shown'.

**Nōtus, -a, -um** is simply the perfect passive participle of **nōscō** used as an adjective meaning 'known, well-known, customary'. The original root of **nōscō** began with the letter **g-** (**gnōscō**). The Latin **g** is represented by the **k** in the German "kennen" and the English "know".

**Nūntiō** and **nūntius** are obviously related; **nūntiō**, a first conjugation verb, is 'report, announce', and **nūntius, nūntiī, M.**, is the one bringing the report, 'messenger', or the report itself, 'message'. There is also an adjective **nūntius, -a, -um**, 'announcing'.

**Ōs, ōris, N.**, is 'mouth, expression'. The diminutive **ōsculum, ōsculī, N.**, is both 'little mouth' and 'kiss'.

**Parō**, a first conjugation verb already mentioned (vocabulary notes in Unit Thirteen) means 'prepare, make ready, provide, get'. From the last principal part there is formed a fourth declension noun **parātus, parātūs, M.**, 'preparation'.

The root of **senex, senis**, 'old', is found in the words **senātor, senātōris, M.**, 'senator', and **senātus, senātūs, M.**, 'senate'. The senators originally were the older men who through their wisdom and experience were thought capable of guiding the state.

**Quālis, -e**, 'what kind of, of what kind', and **tālis, -e**, 'such, of such a sort', are correlatives: **Tālis dux erat quālis pater fuerat**, 'He was such a leader as his father had been; as a leader, he was of the same character as his father'.

**Tempestās, tempestātis, F.**, is 'weather', good or bad, as well as 'storm, season'.

**Vēritās, vēritātis, F.**, 'truth', is the abstract noun from **vērus, -a, -um**, 'true'.

**Vincō, vincere, vicī, victus** is 'conquer, beat, overcome'. Remember Caesar's expression, **Vēnī, vidī, vicī**, 'I came, I saw, I conquered', for the third principal part of this verb. Do not confuse the last principal part **victus** with the last principal part of **vivō**, 'live', which is **victus**.



## SUFFIXES ADDED TO PRODUCE NOUNS

The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tūra**, and **-tus** added to the root or stem of a verb produce abstract nouns and names of actions.

**opiniō**, **-ōnis**, F. (**opinor**, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, 'suppose, imagine'), 'opinion, supposition'

**āctiō**, **-ōnis**, F., 'doing, performing, action, act'

**mūnitiō**, **-ōnis**, F., 'defending, fortifying, protecting'

**iactūra**, **-ae**, F., 'a throwing, a throwing away'

**iūctūra**, **-ae**, F., 'a joining, uniting, juncture'

**arbitrātus**, **-ūs**, M., 'judgment, free-will, decision'

**vīctus**, **-ūs**, M., 'way of life'

The suffixes **-men**, **-mentum**, **-mōnium**, and **-mōnia** added to the root or stem of a verb produce nouns denoting acts, or means and results of acts.

**agmen**, **agminis**, N., 'a collected multitude in motion or moving forward, a line of battle, march'

**cōnāmen**, **-inis**, N., 'effort, exertion, struggle'

**hortāmen**, **-inis**, N., 'incitement, encouragement, exhortation'

**experīmentum**, **-ī**, N., 'proof, test, trial'

**mōmentum**, **-ī**, N., 'movement, motion'

**mūnimentum**, **-ī**, N., 'defense, fortification, protection'

**alimōnium**, **-ī**, N., (**alō**, **alere**, **alui**, **altus**, 'nourish, support'), 'nourishment, support'

**parsimōnia**, **-ae**, F. (**parcō**), 'sparingness, frugality, thrift'

The suffix **-tōrium** added to the stem or root of a verb produces a noun meaning the place of the action.

**audītōrium**, **-ī**, N., 'the place where something is heard, lecture room, hall of justice'

**dormītōrium**, **-ī**, N., (**dormiō**, **-īre**, **-īvī (-īī)**, **-ītus**, 'sleep'), 'sleeping room, dormitory'

The suffix **-ārius** added to the stem of a noun produces a noun meaning 'the person belonging to or the person engaged in or the person concerned with'.

**argentārius**, **-ī**, M., (**argentum**, **-ī**, N., 'silver'), 'a money changer, banker'

**apiārius**, **-ī**, M., (**apis**, **apis**, F., 'bee'), 'beekeeper'

The suffix **-ārium** added to the stem of a noun produces a noun meaning 'place for'.

**apiārium**, **-ī**, N., (**apis**, **apis**, F., 'bee'), 'beehive'

**aviārium**, **-ī**, N., (**avis**, **avis**, F., 'bird'), 'a place where birds are kept, aviary'

**librārium**, **-ī**, N., 'a place in which to keep books, bookcase'

## UNIT FOURTEEN — DRILL

## I. Relative Clauses of Characteristic, Indefinite Pronouns, Questions, etc.

1. a) Ea est quae pecūniam mīrātur.  
 b) Ea est quae pecūniam mīrētur.  
 c) Quis est quī pecūniam nōn mīrētur?  
 d) Nēmō est quī pecūniam nōn mīrētur.  
 e) Nēmō est quīn pecūniam mīrētur.  
 f) Homō quidam nōn vult mīrārī pecūniam.  
 g) Nōn tam stultus ('foolish') est ut pecūniam mīrētur.  
 h) Mīrātur eam quae pecūniam mīrētur.
2. a) Illi sunt quī Horātium maiōrem esse Vergiliō arbitrantur.  
 b) Sunt quī Horātium maiōrem esse Vergiliō dicant.  
 c) Quidam dicunt Horātium maiōrem esse Vergiliō.  
 d) Horātius dicitur ā quibusdam maior esse Vergiliō.  
 e) Alii rogant num Horātius maior sit Vergiliō; alii rogant cūr Horātius maior sit Vergiliō; quisque opīniōnem suam habet. Quot hominēs, tot sententiae.
3. a) Quis est quī tantum malum facere possit?  
 b) Is est quī tantum malum facere possit.  
 c) Quis crēdat eum tantum malum facere posse?  
 d) Quis scit cūr tantum malum fēcerit?  
 e) Dicitur hoc fēcisse prō fēminā quādam.  
 f) Nēmō scit quis sit fēmina.
4. a) Aliquis dīxit quendam vīcisse Caesarem. [**vīncō**, -ere, **vīcī**, **victus**, 'conquer']  
 b) Aliquis dīxit Caesarem ā quōdam victum esse.  
 c) Quidam dīxit aliquem vīcisse Caesarem.  
 d) Quidam dīxērunt aliquōs vīcisse Caesarem.  
 e) Quis est quī dīxit Caesarem victum esse?  
 f) Quis est quī dīxerit Caesarem victum esse?  
 g) Quis est quīn dīxerit Caesarem victum esse?  
 h) Sunt quī dicant eum bonum esse.  
 i) Nēmō est quī dicat eum bonum esse.  
 j) Nēmō est quīn huic faveat.
5. a) Hominēs quidam mīrantur verenturque Caesarem.  
 b) Rogant quālis vir sit.  
 c) Negat quidquam maius ab ūllō factum esse.  
 d) Caesar tālis est quālem omnēs verentur.  
 e) Caesar est quem omnēs vereantur.  
 f) Dicunt Caesarem tālem esse quālem omnēs vereantur.  
 g) Quisque dīcit idem.

- h) Dicunt Caesarem esse verendum.
  - i) Dicunt talem virum qualem Caesarem esse verendum.
  - j) Caesar dignus est qui timeatur. [dignus, -a, -um, 'worthy']
6. a) Nōne sum idem qui fui?
- b) Num sum idem qui fui?
  - c) Possum iterum fieri idem qui fui? [iterum, adv., 'again']
  - d) Quis est qui possit fieri idem qui fuit?
  - e) Negō quemquam posse fieri eundem qui fuerit.
  - f) Iuvenis fui, senior fiēbam, mox nihil fiam.
  - g) Utinam iuvenis nunc fierem.
  - h) Qui senēs fiunt, iuvenēs esse volunt.
  - i) Quis est quin sē senem fieri neget?
7. a) Rogat quis sibi dōnum dederit.
- b) Rogant num quis sibi dōnum dederit.
  - c) Rogant num quis sibi ipsi dōnum dederit.
  - d) Dicit nēminem sibi dōnum dedisse.
  - e) Negat quemquam sibi dōnum dedisse.
  - f) Dicit quendam sibi dōnum dedisse.
  - g) Dicit dōnum sibi ā nullō datum esse.
  - h) Crēdet vix cuiquam.
  - i) Crēdit nēminem in hāc urbe memorem esse sui.
  - j) Crēdit custōdem sē neglēctūrum esse.

## II. Purpose and Result Clauses

1. a) Parvā vōce loquor, ut audīs.
- b) Parvā vōce loquor ut audiās.
  - c) Tālī vōce loquor ut nōn audiar.
  - d) Tālī vōce loquor ut nōn audiās.
  - e) Tālis vōx mihi est quae audiātur.
  - f) Parvā vōce loquor nē audiar.
  - g) Magnā vōce locūtus sum ut audirēs.
  - h) Magnā vōce locūtus sum ut audirer.
  - i) Tantā vōce locūtus sum ut audirer.
  - j) Tantā vōce locūtus sum ut nōn audirer.
  - k) Quae vōx nōn erat tanta quae audiri nōn posset?
2. a) Mittunt militēs qui hostēs superant.
- b) Mittunt militēs qui hostēs superent.
  - c) Mittent militēs qui hostēs superent.
  - d) Misērunt militēs qui hostēs superārent.
  - e) Pūgnāvērunt militēs ut hostēs superārent.
  - f) Pūgnāvērunt militēs tantā virtūte ut hostēs superārent.

- g) Pūgnāvērunt militēs magnā virtūte ut hostēs superārent.  
 h) Pūgnāvērunt hostēs tantā virtūte ut nōn superārentur.  
 i) Pūgnāvērunt hostēs magnā virtūte nē superārentur.  
 j) Pūgnāvērunt militēs magnā virtūte ut hostēs superārentur.
3. a) Morātus sum ut hominī placērem.  
 b) Tam diū morātus es ut hominī placērēs.  
 c) Morātus est nē hominī placēret.  
 d) Morātī sumus ut hominī placērēmus.  
 e) Tam diū morātī sumus ut hominī placērēmus.  
 f) Tam diū morātī estis ut hominī nōn placērētur.  
 g) Morātī sunt nē hominī placērent.
4. a) Hortor ut veniat.  
 b) Hortātus sum ut venīret.  
 c) Verbīs multīs hortātus sum nē venīret.  
 d) Verbīs tālibus hortātus sum ut nōn venīret.  
 e) Verbīs tālibus hortātus sum ut venīret.  
 f) Sic hortābor ut nōn veniat.  
 g) Cum audāciā hortābor nē veniat.  
 h) Efficiāmus ut hortēmur nē veniat.
5. a) Curris quō celerius praemia accipiās.  
 b) Cucurristis quō celerius praemia acciperētis.  
 c) Tam cucurristis ut celerius praemia acciperētis.  
 d) Nōn cucurristis quō tardius praemia acciperētis. [**tardē**, adv., 'late, tardily']  
 e) Cucurristis quō praemia acciperētis.  
 f) Domum currō ubi praemia accipiam.  
 g) Adulēscēns effēcit ut praemia sibi acciperēmus.  
 h) Adulēscēns malus effēcit nē praemia acciperēmus.  
 i) Facite nē tam caeci fiātis ut haec nōn intellegātis.  
 j) Quis erat tam caecus quā haec intellegeret?

## UNIT FOURTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Tam celeriter cucurrit ut quisque eum admirārētur (admirātus sit).
2. Senī nūper erat tantus dolor ut ridēre nōn posset.
3. Tālis pāx est ut bellum ubique parētur.
4. Accidit ut tempestās sic mala esset ut nōs omnēs magnopere timērēmus.
5. Ita dīgnus laude erat ut omnēs eī ignōscerent.
6. Fit ut nēmō plūs umquam pollicitus sit quam ille.
7. Efficiāmus ut ōra nostra vērītatem ostendant.





hominum moveantur, videntēs eōrum, quibuscum ūsū iūnctī esse possunt, virtūtem et vēritātem? [*mīrus*, -a, -um, 'wonderful, strange'; *ūsus*, *here*, 'familiarity']

22. Neque enim quisquam est tam inimicus Mūsīs quī nōn trādī versibus aeternam suōrum factōrum fāmam facile patiātur. [*Mūsa*, -ae, F., 'Muse'; *here*, a goddess who inspires poets; *versus*, -ūs, M., 'a line of poetry']
23. Hic sunt nūntiī nōn parvae auctōritātis. Hic sunt nūntiī tantae auctōritātis ut multi in urbe diūtius mānsūrī sint quō cum eis plūs colloquantur.
24. Cīvēs civitātum quae habuissent rēgēs sic ridēbātis ut irātissimī fierent.
25. Quis nostrum tam animō dūrō fuit ut poētae morte nūper nōn movērētur?
26. Tanta illius belli fāma ad nostram civitātem dēlāta est ut duo virī maximae virtūtis mitterentur lēgātī ut vēritātem dē eius nātūrā cognōscerent.
27. Modo fac nē quid aliud hōc tempore agās nisi ut hunc dolōrem ex animō quam celerrimē pellās.
28. Neque is sum quī mortis periculum timeam. Sunt autem quī dē hōc timōre cōgitāre nōlint.
29. Sapientia est ūna quae tālem timōrem pellat ex animīs.
30. Sī sapientia esset ūna quae timōrem pelleret ex animīs, tam cupidi sapientiae essēmus ut multōs librōs legerēmus.
31. Fieri nōn potest ut eum tū nōn cognōveris.
32. Tam dēmēns erat ut nihil nisi dē ruīnā populi Rōmānī cōgitāret.
33. Omnibus parātis, tantis viribus ubique pūgnātum est ut nēmō urbem ingredi atque vincere posset; nisi quī sapiēs dē pāce loquī voluisset, multō diūtius pūgnātum esset.
34. Litterās tuās lēgimus simillimās eārum quās heri lēgimus, minimē dignās quae ā tē ad nōs mitterentur. Numquam tibi nocuimus; quam ob rem tālēs litterās mittis?
35. Ita efficitur ut omnis rēs pūblica in magnō periculō sit.
36. Accidit ut omnēs in nāve sē aut mortis aut servitūtis periculō trāderent.
37. Imperātor adeō irātus erat ut comitēs mentēs studiis et rēbus honestis intenderent quō melius sibi placērent.
38. Inventī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē istā cūrā liberārent et sē illā ipsā nocte paulō ante lūcem mē in meō lectō interfectūrōs esse pollicērentur. [*eques*, *equitis*, M., 'knight'; *lectus*, -ī, M., 'bed']
39. Quid est enim quod tibi iam in hāc urbe placēre possit? in quā nēmō est extrā istam turbam impiōrum hominum quī tē nōn timeat, nēmō quī nōn ōderit. [*extrā*, prep. + acc., 'outside']
40. Tunc tālis vir quālis dux iste indignus laude habēbātur; quam ob rem neque praemia neque glōriam parāvit.
41. Fieri nōn potest ut cognōscās unde vēnerit iste senex, quālis sit. Est tamen tam nōtae fāmae ut in ōre omnium semper sit.

42. Quālis vir scelera huius modī facere audeat?
43. Fēcit ut amīci nihil aliud eō tempore agerent nisi ut dolōrem ex sē ipsis quam primum expellerent.
44. Dignī erant quī civitatē dōnārentur.
45. Fieri nūllō modō poterat quīn victis parcerētur.
46. Nēmō tam impius est quīn hoc iūre factum esse fateātur.
47. Quae rēs efficiēbat ut cibus sine periculō portārī posset.
48. Tālis est quaeque rēs pūblica, quālis eius nātūra aut voluntās, quī illam regit. [voluntās, -tātis, F., 'desire, inclination']
49. Hic, hic sunt inter nōs, amīce, in hōc orbis terrārum gravissimō cōnsiliō, quī dē nostrum omnium ruīnā, quī dē huius urbis atque adeō dē orbis terrārum ruīnā cōgitent. [cōnsilium, -ī, N., here, 'the people who deliberate, a council'; adeō, adv., here, 'indeed']

## II.

1. They ran across the fields so quickly that they arrived home faster than their friends.
2. There is no one who does not know that the commander of the allies has been in charge of the troops for many years. ["has been in charge": Latin requires the present infinitive here to denote the present perfect idea. The fact that the action began in the past is represented by the adverbial "for many years".]
3. The storm was so great that everyone wondered why the ships had not been destroyed.
4. They so wanted to get help that they ran as quickly as possible to where they might get it.
5. He was the only one in Rome who did not know what his daughter was doing.
6. It is possible that the old men have suffered more sorrow than we know.

## III. Readings

### A. Petronius, *Satyricon* 111.1:

Mātrōna<sup>1</sup> quaedam Ephesī<sup>2</sup> tam nōtae erat pudicitiae,<sup>3</sup> ut vicinārum<sup>4</sup> quoque<sup>5</sup> gentium fēminās ad spectāculum<sup>6</sup> suī ēvocāret.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> mātrōna, -ae, F., 'a married woman'    <sup>2</sup> Ephesus, -ī, M., a town in Asia Minor  
<sup>3</sup> pudicitia, -ae, F., 'purity, chastity'    <sup>4</sup> vicinus, -a, -um, 'neighboring'    <sup>5</sup> quoque (adv.), 'also'  
<sup>6</sup> spectāculum, -ī, N., 'sight, spectacle'    <sup>7</sup> ēvocō (1), 'call forth, summon'

### B. Cicero chides the senate for their inaction regarding Catiline and his fellow conspirators and urges those who wish ill to the state to depart at once (*In Catilinam* I, selections from sections 12 and 13):

Nōnnūllī<sup>1</sup> sunt in hōc ōrdine<sup>2</sup> quī aut ea quae imminent<sup>3</sup> nōn videant aut ea quae vident dissimulant;<sup>4</sup> quī spem Catilinae mollibus<sup>5</sup> sententiis aluērunt;<sup>6</sup> auctōritatē secūti multī nōn solum<sup>7</sup> improbi,<sup>8</sup> vērū etiam<sup>7</sup> imperiti,<sup>9</sup> si in hunc animadvertissem,<sup>10</sup> crudēliter factum esse dicerent. Nunc intellegō, si iste, quō intendit, in Manliāna<sup>11</sup> castra<sup>12</sup> ierit, nēminem tam stultum<sup>13</sup> futūrum esse quī nōn videat coniūratiōnem<sup>14</sup> esse factam, nēminem tam improbum<sup>8</sup> quī nōn fateātur. Hōc autem ūnō interfectō, intellegō hanc rei pūblicae pestem<sup>15</sup> paulisper<sup>16</sup> reprimi,<sup>17</sup> nōn in perpetuum<sup>18</sup> comprimi<sup>19</sup> posse. Quod si<sup>20</sup> sē ēiēcērīt<sup>21</sup> sēcūmque suōs ēdūxerīt,<sup>22</sup> dēlēbitur nōn modo<sup>23</sup> haec tam adulta<sup>24</sup> rei pūblicae pestis,<sup>15</sup> vērū etiam<sup>23</sup> stirps<sup>25</sup> ac sēmen<sup>26</sup> malōrum omnium.

Quārē sēcēdant<sup>27</sup> improbi,<sup>8</sup> sēcernant<sup>28</sup> sē ā bonis, mūrō<sup>29</sup> dēnique,<sup>30</sup> id quod saepe iam dixi, discernantur<sup>31</sup> ā nōbis. Polliceor hoc vōbis, patrēs cōnscripti,<sup>32</sup> tantam in nōbis cōsulibus futūram esse diligentiam, tantam in vōbis auctōritatē, tantam in equitibus<sup>33</sup> Rōmānis virtutē, tantam in omnibus bonis cōnsēnsiōnem,<sup>34</sup> ut Catilinae profectiōne<sup>35</sup> omnia patefacta,<sup>36</sup> inlūstrāta,<sup>37</sup> oppressa, vindicāta esse<sup>38</sup> videātis.

<sup>1</sup> nōnnūllī, -ae, -a, 'some'    <sup>2</sup> ōrdō, -inis, M., 'order, class, body of men'    <sup>3</sup> imminēō, -ēre, -uī, --, 'threaten, be imminent'    <sup>4</sup> dissimulō (1), 'conceal, leave unnoticed'    <sup>5</sup> mollis, -e, 'gentle, mild'    <sup>6</sup> alō, -ere, alui, altus, 'nourish, support'    <sup>7</sup> nōn solum...vērū etiam (adv.), 'not only...but also'    <sup>8</sup> improbus, -a, -um, 'bad, wicked'    <sup>9</sup> imperītus, -a, -um, 'inexperienced, ignorant'    <sup>10</sup> animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versus, 'turn one's attention to, notice' (often with in + accusative)    <sup>11</sup> Manliānus, -a, -um, 'of Manlius (a Roman name)'    <sup>12</sup> castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp'    <sup>13</sup> stultus, -a, -um, 'foolish'    <sup>14</sup> coniūratiō, -ōnis, F., 'conspiracy'    <sup>15</sup> pestis, -is, F., 'infectious disease, pestilence'    <sup>16</sup> paulisper (adv.), 'for a short time'    <sup>17</sup> reprimō (re- + premō), 'hinder, repress'    <sup>18</sup> in perpetuum (adverbial phrase), 'forever'    <sup>19</sup> comprimō (com- + premō), 'suppress, subdue'    <sup>20</sup> quod sī, 'but if'    <sup>21</sup> ēiēcīō (ē + iaciō), -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, 'throw out'    <sup>22</sup> ēdūcō (ē + dūcō), 'lead out'    <sup>23</sup> nōn modo...vērū etiam (adv.), 'not only...but also'    <sup>24</sup> adultus, -a, -um, 'grown up, adult, advanced'    <sup>25</sup> stirps, stirpis, F., 'root'    <sup>26</sup> sēmen, -inis, N., 'seed'    <sup>27</sup> sēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, 'withdraw'    <sup>28</sup> sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, 'separate'    <sup>29</sup> mūrus, -ī, M., 'wall'    <sup>30</sup> dēnique (adv.), 'finally, at last'    <sup>31</sup> discernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, 'set apart'    <sup>32</sup> cōnscribō (com- + scribō), 'enroll'; patrēs cōnscriptī, 'senators'    <sup>33</sup> eques, -itis, M., 'knight'    <sup>34</sup> cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, F., 'agreement, harmony'    <sup>35</sup> profectiō, -ōnis, F., 'departure'    <sup>36</sup> patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, 'disclose'    <sup>37</sup> inlūstrō (1), 'elucidate, explain'    <sup>38</sup> vindicō (1), 'avenge, punish'

# UNIT FIFTEEN

## A. *cum* Clauses

**Cum** is not only a preposition meaning 'with', but it occurs also as a subordinating conjunction with the meanings 'when', 'since', and 'although'. The verb in such clauses is most often in the subjunctive, its tense determined by the rules for sequence of tenses after the main verb. The meaning of **cum** in such clauses must be determined from the context of the sentence.

### 1. TEMPORAL AND CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES

When the **cum** clause refers strictly to *time* and its action is coordinate with that of the main verb, it is a *temporal cum clause* and **cum** is translated 'when'. Such clauses have their verbs in the *indicative*.

**Cum tē vidēbō, fēlix erō.** (*At the very time*) *when I see you, I shall be happy.*

**Cum tē vīdī, fēlix eram.** (*At the very time*) *when I saw you, I was happy.*

If the **cum** clause states the *circumstances* in which the action of the main verb takes place, it is called a *circumstantial cum clause* and **cum** is translated 'when'. When the action in such **cum** clauses refers to *present* or *future* time, the *indicative* is used.

**Cum tē vidēbō, fēlix erō.** *Under the circumstances of my seeing you, I shall be happy; when I see you, I shall be happy.*

When the action in the circumstantial **cum** clause is in *past* time, the *subjunctive* is used.

**Cum tē vidērem, fēlix eram.** *When I saw you (i.e., not at a point of time, but under these circumstances), I was happy.*

### 2. CAUSAL CLAUSES

When **cum** translates as 'since' or 'because', the **cum** clause is *causal*. The verb in *causal cum clauses* is *always* in the *subjunctive*.



<b>Cum</b> tē videam, fēlix sum.	<i>Since I see you, I am happy.</i>
<b>Cum</b> tē viderim, fēlix sum.	<i>Since I saw you, I am happy.</i>
<b>Cum</b> tē vidērem, fēlix eram.	<i>Since I saw you, I was happy.</i>
<b>Cum</b> tē vīdissem, fēlix eram.	<i>Since I had seen you, I was happy.</i>

### 3. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

When **cum** translates ‘although’, the **cum** clause is *concessive*. Frequently **tamen**, ‘nevertheless’, in the main clause indicates that **cum** is to be taken as ‘although’, but the **tamen** is not always there. *Concessive cum clauses always have their verbs in the subjunctive.*

<b>Cum</b> tē videam, fēlix (tamen) sum.	<i>Although I see you, (nevertheless) I am happy.</i>
<b>Cum</b> tē viderim, fēlix (tamen) sum.	<i>Although I saw you, (nevertheless) I am happy.</i>
<b>Cum</b> tē vidērem, fēlix (tamen) eram.	<i>Although I saw you, (nevertheless) I was happy.</i>
<b>Cum</b> tē vīdissem, fēlix (tamen) eram.	<i>Although I had seen you, (nevertheless) I was happy.</i>

THUS:

	PRIMARY SEQUENCE	SECONDARY SEQUENCE
<b>cum</b> Temporal	indicative	indicative
<b>cum</b> Circumstantial	indicative	subjunctive
<b>cum</b> Causal	subjunctive	subjunctive
<b>cum</b> Concessive	subjunctive	subjunctive

### 4. *cum*, ‘whenever’

If **cum** means “whenever”, it takes a *perfect* indicative when the main verb is present, a *pluperfect* indicative when the main verb is imperfect.

<b>Cum</b> tē vīdī, fēlix sum.	<i>Whenever I see you, I am happy.</i>
<b>Cum</b> tē vīderam, fēlix eram.	<i>Whenever I saw you, I was happy.</i>

### B. *cum* Clauses and Ablatives Absolute

The sentences used to illustrate the ablative absolute construction in Unit Ten might also have been expressed with **cum** clauses with no change in meaning:

Coniuge veniente, fēmina discēdet.	} When her husband comes, the woman will depart.
Cum coniūnx veniet, fēmina discēdet.	
Coniuge veniente, fēmina discēdet.	} Since (although) her husband is coming, the woman will depart.
Cum coniūnx veniat, fēmina discēdet.	
Coniuge visō, fēmina discessit.	} When (after, since, although) she saw (had seen) her husband, the woman departed.
Cum coniugem vidisset, fēmina discessit.	



It will be noted in this last example that, whereas the ablative absolute with the perfect participle must be expressed in the passive because of the lack of a perfect active participle (since **videō**, **-ēre** is not a deponent verb) and also in order to avoid concordance of subjects in both clauses, the **cum** clause may use the active voice.

### C. Other Words Introducing Temporal, Causal, and Concessive Clauses

#### 1. TEMPORAL

ut  
 ubi  
 postquam  
 quandō

} + indicative

Ut (ubi, postquam, quandō) mē rīsit,      When (after) he laughed at me, I  
 irātus fiēbam.                                      became angry.

#### 2. CAUSAL

quoniam  
 quandō

} almost always with indicative

quod  
 quia

} + indicative or subjunctive; see section D1

Quoniam (quandō) mē rīsit,      Since (because) he laughed at me, I became  
 irātus fiēbam.                                      angry.

#### 3. CONCESSIVE

quamquam  
 etsī

} + indicative

quamvīs + subjunctive

(quam vīs, 'as you wish')

Quamquam (etsī) mē rīsit, irātus      Although he laughed at me, I did not  
 (tamen) nōn fiēbam.                                      (nevertheless) become angry.

Quamvīs mē risisset, irātus      Although he had laughed at me, I  
 (tamen) nōn fiēbam.                                      did not (nevertheless) become  
    angry.

### D. Conjunctions with Indicative or Subjunctive

Several conjunctions take either the indicative or the subjunctive. The distinction is based on the difference between these two moods, which was stated in Unit One: The indicative is the mood of fact, while the subjunctive is the mood of probability, intention, or idea.

1. **quod** OR **quia**, 'because'

Abest **quod** (**quia**) corpore validus nōn est. He is absent *because he is (actually)* not healthy in body (i.e., the speaker believes and accepts responsibility for the excuse).

Abest **quod** (**quia**) corpore validus nōn sit. He is absent *because he is (allegedly)* not healthy in body (i.e., the speaker does not accept responsibility for the excuse and so does not express it as a fact; it is within the realm of probability or idea).

This use of **quod** with the subjunctive is referred to as a **quod** clause of *alleged reason*.

2. **dum** OR **dōnec**, 'while, as long as, until'

**Dum** or **dōnec** meaning 'while, as long as' or 'until', when referring merely to a temporal idea, takes the indicative.

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) vēnī. He waited *until I (actually) came*.

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) rēginae salūtem dixī. He waited *until (while) I greeted* the queen.

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) voluit. He waited *as long as he wished*.

NOTE: **Dum**, 'while', normally uses the present indicative (the so-called historical present) to denote continued action in past time.

**Dum** haec geruntur, nūntius ad mē vēnit. *While these things were (are) going on*, a messenger came to me.

When a notion of purpose, intention, or a future idea is involved, the subjunctive is used.

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) venīrem. He waited *until I should come*; he waited *for me to come*. (i.e., there is nothing in the sentence to say that "I" actually *did* come; the clause is expressed as an idea or an intention, not a fact)

Exspectāvit **dum** (**dōnec**) rēginae salūtem dicerem. He waited *until I should greet* the queen; he waited *for me to greet* the queen.

3. **antequam** OR **priusquam**, 'before'

When **antequam** and **priusquam** refer strictly to time, they take the indicative.

**Antequam** (**Priusquam**) vēnī, *Before I came*, he went away. (stated as a fact)

When purpose, intention, or idea is involved, the subjunctive is used in secondary sequence.

**Antequam (Priusquam) venīrem,** *Before I could come,* he went away. (i.e.,  
discessit. nothing in the sentence states that,  
as a fact, "I" actually did come)

In primary sequence, the present or future perfect indicative is generally used (less frequently, the present subjunctive).

**Antequam (Priusquam) vēnērō,** *Before I (shall have) come,* he will leave.  
discēdet.

Frequently **ante/quam** or **prius/quam** is split (tmesis) so as to give the sentence a greater degree of cohesion:

**Ante** discessit **quam** venīrem. He went away *before* I could come.  
**Prius** clāmāvit **quam** mē vidit. He shouted *before* he saw me.

### E. Clauses of Proviso

**Dum, modo,** and **dummodo** (all meaning 'if only, provided that') are used to express conditional wishes with the present and imperfect subjunctives. The negative uses **nē**.

**Ōderint, dum (modo, dummodo) timeant.** Let them hate, *provided that they*  
*fear.*  
**Id saepe faciat, dum (modo, dummodo)** Let him do this often, *provided that*  
**nē miser fiat.** *he does not become unhappy.*

### F. Accusative of Exclamation

The accusative case is sometimes used in exclamations.

**Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs!** Oh, the times, oh, the customs!, What times (these  
are), what customs!  
**Patriam perditam!** Oh wasted land!  
**Puerum miserum!** Unhappy boy!

## UNIT FIFTEEN — VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus	be away, be absent
absēns, absentis	absent
adsum, adesse, adfui, --	be present
agitō (1)	disturb, stir up
antequam (conj.)	before
appāreō, -ēre, -ui, -itus	appear, come in sight, be apparent

<b>calamitās, -tātis, F.</b>	disaster, calamity
<b>contrā</b> (prep. + acc.; adv.)	against, facing; opposite, in opposition, in turn
<b>cum</b> (conj.)	when, since, although
<b>dēsīnō, -ere, dēsīi, --</b>	stop, cease (frequently with infinitive or ablative: <b>pūgnāre dēsīit</b> , 'he stopped fighting'; <b>inimīcitiā dēsīit</b> , 'he stopped (his) hostility')
<b>dōnec</b> (conj.)	while, until, as long as
<b>dum</b> (conj.)	while, until, as long as; if only, provided that
<b>dummodo</b> (conj.)	if only, provided that
<b>etsī</b> (conj.)	although, even if (+ indicative)
<b>exiguus, -a, -um</b>	small
<b>expectō</b> (1)	wait (for), expect
<b>fore</b>	= <b>futūrus, -a, -um esse</b> (future infinitive of <b>sum</b> )
<b>fors, fortis, -ium, F.</b>	chance
<b>fulgor, -ōris, M.</b>	lightning, flash, brightness
<b>grātus, -a, -um</b>	pleasing (+ dat.)
<b>igitur</b> (postpositive conj.)	therefore
<b>ingenium, -ī, N.</b>	nature, talent, disposition, natural quality
<b>inimīcitiā, -ae, F.</b>	hostility
<b>interdum</b> (adv.)	sometimes
<b>iūdex, iūdicis, M.</b>	judge; jury (pl.)
<b>iūdicium, -ī, N.</b>	trial, judgment, decision
<b>memoria, -ae, F.</b>	memory
<b>miscēō, -ēre, -uī, mixtus</b>	mix, intermingle, blend
<b>modo</b> (conj.)	if only, provided that
<b>nusquam</b> (adv.)	nowhere
<b>nūtrīx, nūtrīcis, F.</b>	nurse
<b>occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsus</b>	fall, set, die
<b>omnīnō</b> (adv.)	all in all, as a whole, entirely
<b>pereō, -īre, -īī (-īvī), -itus</b>	die, perish
<b>priusquam</b> (conj.)	before
<b>prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, --</b>	be useful, do good, benefit, profit (+ dat.)
<b>putō</b> (1)	think
<b>quāmvīs</b> (conj.)	although (+ subjunctive)
<b>quasi</b> (adv.)	as if, as it were
<b>quidem</b> (adv.)	indeed
<b>nē . . . quidem</b> (enclosing the word or words they emphasize)	not even
<b>quōad</b> (conj.)	as long as, as far as, until (takes same construction as <b>dum</b> and <b>dōnec</b> )

<b>quoniam</b> (conj.)	since (+ indicative)
<b>redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus</b>	return, go back
<b>simul ac</b> ( <i>or atque</i> ) (conj.)	as soon as (+ indicative)
<b>somnus, -ī, M.</b>	sleep, dream
<b>supersum, -esse, -fui, --</b>	be left over, survive
<b>ubi</b> (conj.)	when

## UNIT FIFTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Absum, abesse, āfui, āfuturus**, a compound of **ab** and **sum** meaning 'be away, be absent', has a present participle **absēns**, 'absent'; **adsum, adesse, adfui, --**, 'be present', has no fourth principal part. (Note that although **ab** as a prefix may be shortened to **ā-**, **ad** does not shorten except in such instances as **adspiciō**, 'look at', which is usually spelled **āspiciō**. This normally happens before **gn, sp, sc**, and **st**.)

**Prōsum**, another compound of **sum**, uses **-d-** as a connecting consonant between **prō** and **esse**, **prōdesse, prōfui, --**, 'be useful, do good, benefit, profit'. This connecting **-d-** is used to prevent hiatus (a pause between vowels).

**Supersum**, also lacking a fourth principal part, means 'be left over, survive.'

**Antequam** and **priusquam**, both meaning 'before', may be cut into two parts, **ante...quam, prius...quam** for greater cohesion in the sentence. This is called tmesis: **Ante (Prius) discessimus quam tē vidēre potuimus**, 'We left before we could see you'.

**Appāreō** is a compound of **ad** and **pāreō**; it means 'appear, come in sight, be apparent'.

**Dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsīi, --** is a compound of **dē** and **sinō** which originally meant 'let, set', but later was used exclusively as 'allow, permit'. **Dēsīnō**, literally 'set down', means 'stop, cease'.

**Exspectō**, a compound of **ex** and **spectō**, 'look out for', means 'wait (for), expect'.

**Fore** is often used instead of **futurus (-a, -um) esse**, the future infinitive of **sum**. **Āfore, affore (adsum), prōfore** also are used.

**Fors, fortis, F.**, is a noun meaning 'chance'. Notice that the genitive singular looks like the adjective **fortis** and that the ablative singular **forte**, 'by chance', looks like the neuter adjective **forte**.

**Igitur**, 'therefore', is a postpositive conjunction; it cannot be the first word in a clause.

We have already learned **amīcitia** and so **inimīcitia** is clearly 'hostility'.

**Iūdex, iūdicis, M.**, and **iūdicium, iūdicīi, N.**, both have the same root; **iūdex** is 'judge', and in the plural, 'jury', and **iūdicium** is 'trial, judgment, decision'.



**Nusquam**, 'nowhere', is the opposite of **usquam**, 'anywhere', and should not be confused with **numquam**, 'never'.

**Nūtrīx**, **nūtrīcis**, F., is 'she who suckles, nourishes, brings up' (**nūtriō**, **nūtrīre**, **nūtrīvī** (**nūtriū**), **nūtrītus**), thus 'nurse'.

**Occidō**, a compound of **ob** and **cadō**, means 'fall, set, die', and in this last meaning it is synonymous with **pereō** (a compound of **per** and **eō**, 'go through [life]', thus 'die, perish'). It gives the stem of "occident", the place of the falling (i.e., setting) sun, thus, the West.

**Redeō** is another compound of **eō** (**re-** and **eō**, with a connecting **-d-** to avoid hiatus); it means 'return, go back'.

**Quidem** is an adverb, 'indeed'; **nē...quidem**, 'not even', surround the word or words they emphasize: **Cum nullā nē sorōre quidem collocūta est**, 'She spoke with no woman, not even her sister'.

**Simul** is an adverb meaning 'at the same time, together', but **simul ac** or **simul atque** is a conjunction introducing a verb in the indicative and meaning 'as soon as'.

#### PREFIXES (from prepositions)

**ā-**, **ab-** (**abs-**, **au-**, **as-** [before **-p-**, very rare]), 'away'

**abdūcō**, 'lead away'

**aberrō**, 'wander away'

**absolvō**, 'loosen from, set free'

**abstineō**, 'keep off *or* away; abstain from'

**asportō**, 'carry off *or* away'

**aufugiō**, 'flee, run away; flee from'

**āvertō** (**vertō**, **-ere**, **vertī**, **versus**, 'turn'), 'turn away'

**ad-** (**ac-**, **af-**, **ag-**, **al-**, **ap-**, **ar-**, **as-**, **at-**), 'to, toward'

**accingō** (**cingō**, **-ere**, **cīnxī**, **cīnctus**, 'gird'), 'gird to'

**addūcō**, 'lead to'

**affor** (**for**, **fāri**, **fātus sum**, 'speak'), 'speak to'

**aggerō**, 'bring *or* bear to *or* toward'

**alloquor**, 'speak to'

**appōnō**, 'apply to, add'

**arrideō**, 'smile toward'

**assiliō** (**saliō**, **-ire**, **--**, **-itus**, 'leap'), 'leap to *or* upon'

**attrahō** (**trahō**, **-ere**, **trāxī**, **tractus**, 'draw, drag'), 'draw to *or* toward; attract'

**ante-**, 'before'

**antecurrō**, 'run before'

**anteeō**, 'go before'

**anteferō**, 'carry before, prefer, anticipate'

**circum-**, 'around, on all sides'

**circumagō**, 'drive around'

**circumdūcō**, 'lead around'

**circumspectō**, 'look around'

**(cum, preposition) com- (col-, con-, co-, cor-)**, 'together (with), completely'

**collaudō**, 'praise very much'

**collocō (locō (1), 'place'), 'place together'**

**comedō (edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsus, 'eat'), 'eat entirely'**

**conveniō**, 'come together'

**cooperiō (operiō, -īre, -uī, -tus, 'cover'), 'cover wholly'**

**corrivō (rīvō (1), 'lead, draw off'), 'conduct streams of water together'**

**dē-**, 'down, utterly, from'

**dēcēdō**, 'go away, withdraw, depart'

**dēcidō**, 'fall down'

**dērelinquō (relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictus, 'leave behind, abandon')  
'forsake wholly'**

**ē-, ex- (ef-), 'out'**

**ēdormiō (dormiō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -ītus, 'sleep'), 'sleep out, sleep away'**

**effundō (fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, 'pour'), 'pour out'**

**exeō**, 'go out'

**in- (il-, im-, ir-), 'in, on, against'**

**illigō (ligō (1), 'bind'), 'bind on'**

**immittō**, 'send into, send against'

**ineō**, 'go in'

**irrigō (rigō (1), 'wet, water'), 'lead (water) to (a place), irrigate'**

**inter-**, 'between'

**interpōnō**, 'put *or* place between *or* among'

**intersum**, 'be between'

**intervenīō**, 'come between'

**ob- (oc-, of-, op-), 'toward, to meet, against'**

**obveniō**, 'come to meet'

**occurrō**, 'run up to, run to meet'

**offulgeō**, 'shine against *or* upon'

**oppōnō**, 'set *or* place against'

**per-**, 'through, thoroughly'

**pererrō**, 'wander through'

**perfluō (fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxus, 'flow'), 'flow through'**

**permoveō**, 'move thoroughly, stir up thoroughly'

**permūniō**, 'fortify completely'

**permūtō**, 'change completely'

**post-**, 'after'

- postferō, 'put after'  
 postpōnō, 'put after, postpone'  
 prae-, 'before, previous'  
 praemittō, 'send forward, send before'  
 praemōnstrō, 'show beforehand'  
 praescribō, 'write before *or* in front *or* previously'  
 prō-, 'in front of, forth'  
 prōcēdō, 'go forth, proceed'  
 prōcidō, 'fall forward'  
 prōmoveō, 'move forward'  
 prōscribō, 'write before *or* in front of'  
 sub- (suc-, suf-, sum-, sup-, sur-, sus-), 'under, up from under'  
 subiciō, 'throw under, place under'  
 subigō, 'bring under, turn up from beneath'  
 succurrō, 'run under, run to the aid of'  
 suffundō (fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, 'pour'), 'pour below *or* underneath'  
 summittō, 'set *or* put under *or* below; send below *or* from below'  
 suppōnō, 'put, place, *or* set under'  
 surrepō (repō, repere, rep̄sī, reptus, 'creep'), 'creep under, creep along'  
 sustineō, 'hold up, support, sustain'  
 super-, 'over and above'  
 superpōnō, 'put *or* place over *or* upon'  
 supertegō, 'cover above, cover over'  
 trāns- (trā-, trān-), 'across'  
 trānseō, 'go across, cross over, pass over'  
 trāsmittō, 'send *or* carry across *or* over *or* through'  
 trādūcō, 'lead *or* bring across, transfer'  
 trānsiliō (saliō, -īre, --, salitus, 'leap, jump'), 'leap *or* jump across *or* over, hasten'

## UNIT FIFTEEN — DRILL

### I. *cum* Clauses

1. Cum verba tua audivissem, rem intellēxī.
2. Cum verba mea nōn audivisset, rem tamen intellēxit.
3. Cum verba vestra audivissēmus, rem intellēximus.
4. Ego cum ā tē monitus essem, nihil tamen fēcī.
5. Tū cum ā mē monitus sis, tamen nihil facis.
6. Cum ā vōbīs moniti essēmus, aliquid fēcimus.
7. Cum ā nōbīs moneāminī, aliquid facitis.
8. Cum urbs capta esset, militēs tamen mānsērunt.

9. Cum oppidum captum sit, milītēs tamen manent.
10. Cum urbs capiētur, fēminae clāmābunt.
11. Cum oppida capiantur, fēminae clāmābunt.
12. Cum periculum timeam, ex urbe proficiscor.
13. Cum tē videō, fēlix sum.
14. Cum periculum timuerim, ex urbe proficiscor.
15. Cum periculum timērem, ex urbe proficiscēbar.
16. Cum periculum timuissem, ex urbe profectus sum.
17. Cum periculum timuī, clāmō.
18. Cum periculum timueram, clāmābam.

## II. Exercises in Conjunctions with Indicative or Subjunctive, etc.

1. Dum Lesbiam amābat Catullus, Lesbia amābat alium.
2. Quamvis Lesbia amāret alium, Catullus eam amāvit.
3. Cum infēlix esset Catullus, tamen amābat Lesbiam.
4. Catullus domi manēbat dum Lesbia alium amābat.
5. Catullus domi manēbat dum Lesbia eum amāret.
6. Catullus quamquam domi mānserat, tamen Lesbiam amābat.
7. Catullus ā Lesbiā discessit antequam eum ōdisse incēpit illa.
8. Catullus ā Lesbiā discessit antequam eum ōdisse inciperet illa.
9. Dum Cicerō est cōsul, nōn timeō.
10. Dum Cicerō in urbe maneat, nōn timēbō.
11. Nōn discēdam dum Cicerō veniat.
12. Antequam Cicerō venīret, discessit turba.
13. Turba laudāvit Cicerōnem quod rem pūblicam servāvisset.
14. Turba laudāvit Cicerōnem, nōn quod inimicum superāvisset, sed quia rem pūblicam servāvit.
15. Turba laudāvit Cicerōnem quod cōsul optimus esset.
16. Quamvis turba laudāverit Cicerōnem, cōsilia eius nōn cēpit.
17. Nē Cicerōnem turba laudet, dummodo cōsilia eius capiat.
18. Domum cucurrit quia timuit.
19. Indignum senem! Domum cucurrit quia timēret.
20. Morāti sunt dōnec tempestās erat serēna.
21. Morāti sunt dōnec tempestās esset serēna.
22. Morārī cōstituērunt modo tempestās nē esset serēna.
23. Morārī cōstituērunt dum tempestās nē esset serēna.
24. Morārī cōstituērunt dummodo tempestās nē esset serēna.

## III. Other Words Introducing Temporal, Causal, and Concessive Clauses

1. Ubi hostēs victī sunt, laetī erāmus.
2. Postquam hostēs victī sunt, laetī erāmus.

3. Quandō hostēs victī sunt, laetī erāmus.
4. Ut ad patriam advēnimus, laetī erāmus.
5. Quoniam ad patriam advēnimus, laetī erāmus.
6. Etsi ad patriam advēnimus, laetī nōn erāmus.
7. Quamquam ad patriam advēnimus, laetī nōn erāmus.
8. Dum ea accidunt, militēs trāns flūmen quam celerrimē properāvērunt.
9. Dum nūntius multōs diēs morātur, lēgātus cum eis cōpiis quās ā rēge accēperat ad finēs sociōrum advēnit.

## UNIT FIFTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Cum āfuisti, misera sum.
2. Cum āfuerās, misera eram.
3. Cum nūper perierit, tamen memoria factōrum bonōrum manet.
4. Cum fulgor appāret, multī quidem timent.
5. Cum fulgor appāruit, multī timuērunt.
6. Cum inimicitia inter eōs maxima esset, iūdex cōstituit ut numquam inter sē miscēre dēbērent.
7. Cum pūgnāre dēsinerent, hostēs tamen mānsērunt.
8. Cum animus agitārētur, multa putāre nōn potuī.
9. Cum ingenium tuum mihi omninō grātum sit, tē semper adesse volō.
10. Interdum cum calamitās expectātur, somnus ā nōbis longē abest.

## UNIT FIFTEEN — EXERCISES

1. a) Dē futūrīs rēbus etsi semper difficile est dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possis accēdere. [**coniectūra**, -ae, F., 'guess, conjecture']  
b) Dē futūrīs rēbus cum semper difficile sit dicere, tamen interdum coniectūrā possis accēdere.
2. Quae cum ita essent, dixit sē quam celerrimē domum receptūrum esse.
3. Saepe magnum ingenium virtūtis priusquam rei pūblīcae prōdesse posset dēlētum est.
4. a) Rēx cum Rōmā rediret mortuus est.  
b) Rēx ubi Rōmā redierat mortuus est.
5. Rēge Rōmā redeunte, civēs dēmentēs effēcērunt ut servī inter sē inimiciam agitantēs miscērent.
6. Ō rēs horridās! Ō civitātem malam! Quis caelum terrīs miscēre velit, quis mare caelō?



7. Quae cum ita sint, effectum est ut nihil sit malum quod mūtārī nōn possit.
8. Perīre artem putāmus nisi appāret, cum dēsinat ars esse, si appāret.
9. Animus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, appāret.
10. Longum illud tempus cum nōn erō magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum.
11. Ex rēgnō prius ēgressus est quam rēx eum in fidem reciperet.
12. Ibi manēbat dum rēx eum in fidem reciperet (recēpit).
13. Ante vidēmus fulgōrem quam sonum audiāmus. [sonus, -ī, M., 'sound']
14. Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dicam.
15. a) Mē omnia expertūrum esse certum est priusquam peribō.  
b) Eum omnia expertum esse certum est priusquam periit.  
c) Mē omnia prius expertūrum esse certum est quam perierō.
16. Vita dum superest, bene est.
17. Ille imperātor tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit.
18. Dōnec grātus eram tibi, Persārum vixī rēge laetior. [Persae, -ārum, M., 'the Persians']
19. Morātus est dum frāter imperātōrem rogāret in quantā calamitāte essent.
20. Dummodo somnus celeriter accēdat, nūtricem nōn vocābimus.
21. Ībam forte viā sacrā, ut meus est mōs. [sacer, sacra, sacrum, 'sacred']
22. Postquam ē tantā tempestāte lūx rediit, nautae Rōmam sē recēpērunt.
23. Cum bene vivās, nē cōgitēs dē verbis malōrum; sapienti nē sit cūrae quid quisque loquātur.
24. Multa ante cōnēris quam virum inveniās bonum.
25. a) Cum (quamvis) exigua pars iūdicii superesset dum rēs cōstituerētur, nēmō tamen ex iūdicibus manēre voluit quod magnum futūrum esset periculum eis dē istō pessimō male loquentibus.  
b) Quamquam exigua pars iūdicii supererat, nēmō tamen manēre voluit.
26. Magnopere timētur quod ducēs in forō appāruerint ut culpam in omnēs inimicitiam inter sē agitantēs iacerent.
27. Cum somnō solūtus erō tibi dicam quid heri fēcērim.
28. Dixit sē somnō mox datūrum esse; eō modō fēliciōrem fore.
29. Ex eō bellō quod iam ā civibus domī timērī dēsierat, nē duo quidem ē mīlitibus prius tūti rediērunt quam pāx cōstituerētur.
30. Cum rūmōrēs pulsī sunt, hominēs multō sunt fēliciōrēs.
31. Cūrārum maxima nūtrix est nox, dummodo nōs somnō celeriter dēmus.
32. a) Cum senex iūdicium meae virtūtis fēcisset, omnēs cōstituērunt mē nēmini nocēre potuisse. Imperāvērunt igitur ut domum irem.  
b) Postquam (ubi) senex iūdicium meae virtūtis fēcit, omnēs cōstituērunt mē nēmini nocēre potuisse.
33. Tē iūdice, nōn ego calamitātem timeam dummodo mea verba contrā

imperatōrem civibus liberis prōsint; priusquam tū iūdex fiēbās, magnopere timui.

34. Dum cōnāmur, laudāmur. Homō nihil agēns nēmini placet.
35. Nē exigua quidem pars civitātis exspectāvit dum cōpiae sociōrum advenirent; dēsierunt autem nihil agere et cum audāciā hostēs ex urbe pepulērunt.
36. Cum ego loquī velim, nihil tamen dicam.
37. Illum absentem diū exspectāvimus, sed nusquam appāruit quod validus nōn fuit. Quoniam quidem validus nōn est, absit. Si occidat, miseri quasi perditī omnīnō sīmus.
38. Imperatōr contrā cōstituit exspectandam nāvem; quae ubi advēnit, omnibus prōfuit.
39. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 22, adapted:

Sophoclēs ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit; quod propter studium cum rem neglegere familiārem vidērētur, ā filiis in iūdicium vocātus est, ut, quia nostrō mōre solet male rem gerentēs patrēs ē bonis removēri, sic illum quasi dēsipientem ā rē familiārī removērent iūdicēs. Tum senex dicitur eam tragoediam quam in manibus habēbat et nūperrimē scripserat, *Oedipum Colōnēum*, lēgisse iūdicibus quaesivisseque num illud carmen dēsipientis vidērētur. Ille cum id lēgisset, sententiis iūdicum est liberātus. Quamquam Sophoclēs ā iūdicibus liberātus erat, filii tamen irātissimi erant quod eius bona capere nōn poterant.

[**dēsipiēns**, -entis, ‘foolish, insane’; **familiāris**, -e, ‘pertaining to the family’; **Oedipus Colōnēus**, ‘Oedipus at Colonus’ (a tragedy by Sophocles); **senec-tūs**, -tūtis, F., ‘old age’; **Sophoclēs**, -is, M., proper name; **tragoedia**, -ae, F., ‘tragedy’]

40. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 79–80, adapted slightly:  
Moriēns Cīrus maior haec dicit: “nōlite arbitrārī, ō mihi cārissimī filiī, mē, cum ā vōbis discesserō, nusquam aut nūllum fore. Nec enim, dum eram vōbiscum, animum meum vidēbātis, sed eum esse in hōc corpore ex his rēbus quās gerēbam intellegēbātis. Eundem igitur esse crēdite, etiam si nūllum vidēbitis. Nec vērō clārōrum virōrum post mortem honōrēs manērent, si nihil eōrum ipsōrum animī efficerent, quō diūtius memoriam suī tenērēmus. Mihi quidem numquam persuādērī potuit animōs dum in corporibus essent mortālibus vīvere, cum excessissent ex eīs morī.”  
[**Cīrus**, -ī, M., proper name; **excēdō** (ex + cēdō), ‘depart, withdraw’; **honor**, -ōris, M., ‘honor, distinction’; **mortālis**, -e, ‘mortal’]
41. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 76, adapted:

Omnīnō, ut mihi quidem vidētur, studiōrum omnium satietās vitae facit satietatem. Sunt pueritiae studia certa: num igitur ea optant adulēscētēs? Quoad puerī sumus, illa studia nōbis cārīōra sunt; simul ac adulēscētēs fīmus, alia studia nōbis placent. Sunt incipientis adulēscēntiae studia: num

ea iam vult aetās, quae media dicitur? Sunt etiam eius aetātis: nē ea quidem quaeruntur in senectūte. Sunt extrēma quaedam studia senectūtis: ut igitur aliārum aetātum studia occidunt, sic occidunt etiam senectūtis; quod cum fit, satietās vitae tempus bonum mortis affert.

[**adulēscētia**, -ae, F., 'young manhood'; **aetās**, -tātis, F., 'age, time of life'; **extrēmus**, -a, -um, 'last, outermost'; **pueritia**, -ae, F., 'boyhood, childhood'; **satietās**, -tātis, F., 'satiety, fullness'; **senectūs**, -tūtis, F., 'old age']

42. Nil recitās et vis, Māmerce, poēta vidēri.

Quidquid vis estō, dummodo nil recitēs.

(Martial 2.88)

[**estō**, 2nd person sing. future imperative of **sum**, 'you shall be' (see Appendix, pp. 353, 381); **Māmercus**, -ī, M., a proper name; **quidquid** (pron.), 'whatever'; **recitō** (1), 'recite']

43. Manent ingenia senibus, modo maneat studium et industria. [**industria**, -ae, F., 'diligence, activity']
44. Simul atque dē Caesaris adventū cognitum est, lēgātus ad eum vēnit. [**adventus**, -ūs, M., 'arrival'; **Caesar**, -aris, M., 'Caesar']
45. Dum ea Rōmāni parant, Saguntum summā vī oppūgnābātur. [**Saguntum**, -ī, N., 'Saguntum', a town in Spain; **summā**, *here*, 'very great']
46. Dum ea geruntur, eī Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem in eā parte vidēri. [**pulvis**, **pulveris**, M., 'dust']

## II.

1. Since someone is approaching, we shall bring it about that your friend does not harm anyone.
2. Although he delayed a long time, he could not wait for the nurse to approach.
3. When the people fear you, they hate you.
4. Let him come, provided that my opinions profit him.
5. He withdrew to his home because (he claimed) he was going to die soon.

## III. Readings

### A. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 7.24:

Facile indicābat<sup>1</sup> ipsa nātūra vim suam, cum hominēs, quod facere ipsi nōn possent, id rēctē<sup>2</sup> fieri in alterō iūdicārent.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **indicō** (1), 'disclose, show'    <sup>2</sup> **rēctē** (adv.), 'rightly'    <sup>3</sup> **iūdicō** (1), 'judge'

### B. Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.20.39:

Dionysii<sup>1</sup> māter, eius quī Syracosiorum<sup>2</sup> tyrannus<sup>3</sup> fuit, ut scriptum apud<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> **Dionysius**, -ī, M., 'Dionysius', tyrant of Sicily    <sup>2</sup> **Syracosius**, -a, -um, 'Syracusan'  
<sup>3</sup> **tyrannus**, -ī, M., 'tyrant, absolute ruler'    <sup>4</sup> **apud** (prep. + acc.), *here*, 'in the works of'

Philistum<sup>5</sup> est, et doctum hominem et diligentem<sup>6</sup> et aequalem<sup>7</sup> temporum illorum, cum praegnans<sup>8</sup> hunc ipsum Dionysium<sup>1</sup> alvō<sup>9</sup> contineret,<sup>10</sup> somniavit<sup>11</sup> sē peperisse<sup>12</sup> Satyriscum.<sup>13</sup> Huic interpretēs<sup>14</sup> portentorum,<sup>15</sup> quī Galeotae<sup>16</sup> tum in Siciliā<sup>17</sup> nōminābantur,<sup>18</sup> respondērunt, ut ait Philistus,<sup>5</sup> eum, quem illa peperisset,<sup>12</sup> clārrissimum Graeciae diūturnā<sup>19</sup> cum fortūnā<sup>20</sup> fore.

- <sup>5</sup> **Philistus**, -ī, M., 'Philistus', a Greek historian from Syracuse    <sup>6</sup> **diligēns**, -entis, 'diligent'  
<sup>7</sup> **aequālis**, -e, 'contemporary with' (+ gen.)    <sup>8</sup> **praegnāns**, -antis, 'pregnant'    <sup>9</sup> **alvus**, -ī, F., 'womb'    <sup>10</sup> **contineō** (com- + teneō), 'contain'    <sup>11</sup> **somniō** (1), 'dream'  
<sup>12</sup> **pariō**, -ere, **peperi**, **partus**, 'bring forth, give birth to'    <sup>13</sup> **Satyriscus**, -ī, M., 'a little satyr'    <sup>14</sup> **interpretes**, -pretis, M. & F., 'interpreter, seer'    <sup>15</sup> **portentum**, -ī, N., 'portent'  
<sup>16</sup> **Galeotae**, -ārum, M., 'Galeotae', a group of Sicilian seers    <sup>17</sup> **Sicilia**, -ae, F., 'Sicily'  
<sup>18</sup> **nōminō** (1), 'name'    <sup>19</sup> **diūturnus**, -a, -um, 'of long duration'    <sup>20</sup> **fortūna**, -ae, F., 'fortune'

C. Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.25.54:

Adiungāmus<sup>1</sup> philosophis<sup>2</sup> doctissimum hominem, poētā quidem divinū,<sup>3</sup> Sophoclem;<sup>4</sup> quī cum ex aede<sup>5</sup> Herculis<sup>6</sup> patera<sup>7</sup> aurea gravis subrepta esset,<sup>8</sup> in somnīs vidit ipsum deum dicentem, quī id fēcisset. Quod semel<sup>9</sup> ille iterumque<sup>10</sup> neglēxit. Ubi idem saepius āscendit<sup>11</sup> in Arēopagum,<sup>12</sup> dētulit rem; Arēopagitae<sup>13</sup> comprehendī<sup>14</sup> iubent eum, quī ā Sophocle<sup>4</sup> erat nōminātus;<sup>15</sup> is, quaestiōne<sup>16</sup> adhibitā,<sup>17</sup> cōfessus est pateramque<sup>7</sup> rettulit. Quō factō fānum<sup>18</sup> illud Indicis<sup>19</sup> Herculis<sup>6</sup> nōminātum est.<sup>15</sup>

- <sup>1</sup> **adiungō** (ad- + iungō), 'join, add'    <sup>2</sup> **philosophus**, -ī, M., 'philosopher'    <sup>3</sup> **divīnus**, -a, -um, 'divine, divinely inspired'    <sup>4</sup> **Sophoclēs**, -is, M., 'Sophocles', the Greek tragic poet  
<sup>5</sup> **aedēs**, -is, F., 'temple'    <sup>6</sup> **Herculēs**, -is, M., 'Hercules'    <sup>7</sup> **patera**, -ae, F., 'dish' (from which libations were poured)    <sup>8</sup> **subripiō**, -ere, -ripiui, -reptus, 'steal'  
<sup>9</sup> **semel** (adv.), 'once, a single time'    <sup>10</sup> **iterum** (adv.), 'again'    <sup>11</sup> **āscendō**, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, 'ascend, go up'    <sup>12</sup> **Arēopagus**, -ī, M., a hill in Athens, upon which the court called the 'Areopagus' held sessions  
<sup>13</sup> **Arēopagitēs**, -ae, M., a member of the Areopagus  
<sup>14</sup> **comprehendō**, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, 'seize'    <sup>15</sup> **nōminō** (1), 'name'    <sup>16</sup> **quaestiō**, -ōnis, F., 'trial, inquiry'    <sup>17</sup> **adhibeō** (ad + habeō), 'employ, hold'    <sup>18</sup> **fānum**, -ī, N., 'temple, holy place'    <sup>19</sup> **index**, **indicis**, M., 'informer'

D. Martial 12.12:

Omnia prōmittis<sup>1</sup> cum tōtā nocte bibisti;<sup>2</sup>  
 māne<sup>3</sup> nihil praestās,<sup>4</sup> Pollio,<sup>5</sup> māne<sup>3</sup> bibe.<sup>2</sup>

- <sup>1</sup> **prōmittō** (prō + mittō), 'promise'    <sup>2</sup> **bibō**, -ere, bibī, —, 'drink'    <sup>3</sup> **māne** (adv.), 'in the morning'    <sup>4</sup> **praestō**, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, 'perform'    <sup>5</sup> **Polliō**, -ōnis, M., a man's name

E. A DREAM COMES TRUE (Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 1.24.50):

Apud<sup>1</sup> Agathoclem<sup>2</sup> scriptum in historiā<sup>3</sup> est Hamilcarem<sup>4</sup> Karthāginiēnsē,<sup>5</sup>

- <sup>1</sup> **apud** (prep. + acc.), *here*, 'in the works of'    <sup>2</sup> **Agathoclēs**, -is, M., the name of an historian  
<sup>3</sup> **historia**, -ae, F., 'history, work of history'    <sup>4</sup> **Hamilcar**, -caris, M., a Carthaginian general, father of Hannibal    <sup>5</sup> **Karthāginiēnsis**, -e, 'Carthaginian'



cum oppugnāret Syracūsās,<sup>6</sup> visum esse audire vōcem, sē postridiē<sup>7</sup> cēnātūrum<sup>8</sup> Syracūsīs;<sup>6</sup> cum autem is diēs illūxisset,<sup>9</sup> magnam sēditionem<sup>10</sup> in castris<sup>11</sup> eius inter Poenōs<sup>12</sup> et Siculōs<sup>13</sup> militēs esse factam; quod cum sēnsissent Syracūsānī,<sup>14</sup> inprōvisō<sup>15</sup> eōs in castra<sup>11</sup> irrūpisse,<sup>16</sup> Hamilcaremque<sup>4</sup> ab eis vīvum<sup>17</sup> esse sublātum.<sup>18</sup> Ita rēs somnium<sup>19</sup> comprobāvit.<sup>20</sup>

<sup>6</sup> Syracūsae, -ārum, F., 'Syracuse', the chief town of Sicily    <sup>7</sup> postridiē (adv.), 'the next day'    <sup>8</sup> cēnō (1), 'dine'    <sup>9</sup> illūcēscō, -ere, -lūxī, --, 'become light, dawn'    <sup>10</sup> sēditiō, -ōnis, F., 'uprising'    <sup>11</sup> castra, -ōrum, N. pl., 'camp'    <sup>12</sup> Poenus, -a, -um, 'Carthaginian'    <sup>13</sup> Siculus, -a, -um, 'Sicilian'    <sup>14</sup> Syracūsānus, -a, -um, 'Syracusan'    <sup>15</sup> inprōvisō (adv.), 'unexpectedly'    <sup>16</sup> irrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, 'rush in'    <sup>17</sup> vīvus, -a, -um, 'alive'    <sup>18</sup> tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, 'carry off'    <sup>19</sup> somnium, -ī, N., 'dream'    <sup>20</sup> comprobō (1), 'verify'



# UNIT SIXTEEN

## A. The Gerund

It has been said that the infinitive is a neuter *verbal noun* and that it may be used as the subject of a verb.

**Legere** est difficile. *To read* is (a) difficult (thing); *reading* is difficult.

Yet, the infinitive retains its character as a verb by taking an object or by being modified by an adverb.

**Ducem dēligere** est difficile. It is (a) difficult (thing) *to choose a leader*; *choosing a leader* is difficult.

When the verbal noun is not functioning as the subject of a verb, a specific form, called the *gerund*, is used. The infinitive supplies the nominative of the gerund. The other cases are formed by adding **-nd-** to the present stem of the verb (for i-stems of the third conjugation and for all fourth conjugation verbs, an **-ie-** will appear before the **-nd-**), plus the neuter endings of the second declension. These forms are in fact the same as the neuter singular of the future passive participle, except that there is no nominative.

The gerund has no plural.

Therefore, the forms of the gerund of **dēligō**, **-ere**, 'choose', are:

(Nom.	dēligere	choosing)
Gen.	dēligendī	of choosing
Dat.	dēligendō	to/for choosing
Acc.	dēligendum	choosing
Abl.	dēligendō	from/with/in/by choosing

The gerund functions in the various grammatical cases like any other noun, but it still retains its verbal force and so may control an object and may be modified by an adverb. Intransitive verbs which govern the dative case will do so in the gerund form as well.

<b>Legendō</b> legere discimus.	We learn to read <i>by</i> ( <i>means of</i> ) <i>reading</i> .	(ABLATIVE OF MEANS)
Cupidus <b>legendī</b> est.	He is desirous <i>of</i> <i>reading</i> .	(OBJECTIVE GENITIVE WITH <b>cupidus</b> )
<b>Ducī</b> libenter <b>pārendō</b> fortiōrēs fiēmus.	<i>By obeying the leader</i> willingly, we shall become stronger.	(ABLATIVE OF MEANS; INTRANSITIVE VERB GOVERNING DATIVE)

## B. The Gerundive

The gerundive is a verbal adjective and is sometimes called the future passive participle. The forms for the gerundive of **dēligō**, -ere, 'choose', are **dēligendus**, -a, -um.

Although the gerund may govern an object, in such instances Latin frequently prefers to use a gerundive construction instead, except when that object is a neuter adjective or pronoun. Observe:

GERUND:	<b>Librōs legendō</b> legere discimus.	<i>By reading books</i> we learn to read.
GERUNDIVE:	<b>Librīs legendīs</b> legere discimus.	<i>By means of books to-be-read</i> we learn to read; <i>by reading</i> <i>books</i> we learn to read.
GERUND:	Cupidus <b>librōs legendī</b> est.	He is desirous <i>of reading books</i> .
GERUNDIVE:	Cupidus <b>librōrum</b> <b>legendōrum</b> est.	He is desirous <i>of books-to-be-</i> <i>read</i> ; he is desirous <i>of</i> <i>reading books</i> .

## C. The Gerund and Gerundive Used to Express Purpose

Purpose may be expressed by the gerund and gerundive in two common ways:

### 1. Ad + THE ACCUSATIVE

**Ad** + the accusative of the gerund may express purpose.

**Ad legendum** venit. He comes *to (towards) reading, for the purpose of reading, in order to read*.

The gerund, as always, may take a direct object:

**Ad legendum librōs** venit. He comes to read books.

But when the gerund would take an object, the gerundive construction is preferred in Latin:

**Ad librōs legendōs** venit. He comes *to (towards) books to-be-read*; he comes *for the purpose of reading books*; he comes *to read books*.

2. GENITIVE FOLLOWED BY **causā**, 'for the sake of'

The genitive of the gerund, followed by **causā**, may be used to express purpose.

**Legendī causā** venit. He comes *for the sake of reading*; he comes *to read*.

**Librōs legendī causā** venit. He comes *for the sake of reading books*; he comes *to read books*.

Again, when the gerund would govern an object (except in the case of neuter adjectives or pronouns), the gerundive construction is preferred:

**Librōrum legendōrum causā** venit. He comes *for the sake of books to-be-read*; he comes *for the sake of reading books*; he comes *to read books*.

The reason for the exception in the case of neuter adjectives or pronouns is the confusion in gender which might arise. Consider:

**Multa videndī causā** venit. He comes to see many things.

BUT:

**Multōrum videndōrum causā** venit. He comes to see many things (or) men.

It is unclear in the latter case whether the gender is masculine or neuter.

The constructions discussed above are alternate ways of expressing the same idea as purpose clauses:

Venit **ut** librōs **legat**. He comes *in order that he may read books*. He comes *to read books*.

## D. Impersonal Verbs

A small number of verbs in Latin are found only in the third person singular, the infinitive, and sometimes the participle because of their peculiar meanings. Such verbs are called *impersonal* verbs because of their lack of a personal subject and require in English the word "it" to function as the subject. Some verbs of this type are:

licet, licēre, licuit	it is permitted
oportet, oportēre, oportuit	it is necessary, it is proper
miseret, miserēre, miseruit	it pities; it moves to pity
piget, pigēre, piguit	it disgusts
taedet, taedēre, taeduit	it bores, it disgusts
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit	it repents
pudet, pudēre, puduit	it shames
necesse est	it is necessary

The constructions with these verbs are as follows:

1. WITH ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

**oportet; necesse est; licet**

Oportet <b>mē abire</b> .	It is necessary (proper) <i>that I go away</i> ; It is necessary (proper) <i>for me to go away</i> ; I must go away.
Necesse est <b>mē abire</b> .	It is necessary <i>that I go away</i> ; I must go away.
Licet <b>mē abire</b> .	It is permitted <i>that I go away</i> ; I can (am permitted to) go away.

2. WITH DATIVE AND INFINITIVE

**necesse est; licet**

Necesse est <b>mihi abire</b> .	It is necessary <i>for me to go away</i> ; I must go away.
Licet <b>mihi abire</b> .	It is permitted <i>for me to go away</i> ; I can (am permitted to) go away.

3. WITH SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSE INTRODUCED BY **ut** (EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED)

**necesse est; licet**

Necesse est ( <b>ut</b> ) <b>abeam</b> .	It is necessary <i>that I go away</i> ; I must go away.
Licet ( <b>ut</b> ) <b>abeam</b> .	It is permitted <i>that I go away</i> ; I can (am permitted to) go away.

NOTE that there is *no* distinction in meaning in the three uses of **necesse est** and of **licet**.

4. WITH OBJECTIVE GENITIVE AND ACCUSATIVE

**miseret; piget; taedet; paenitet; pudet**

These impersonals take the genitive of the thing which arouses the feeling and the accusative of the person concerned.

Miseret <b>mē dolōris</b> .	It pities <i>me of (his) grief</i> ; I pity <i>(his) grief</i> .
Paenitet <b>mē sceleris</b> .	It repents <i>me of (my) crime</i> ; I am sorry <i>for (my) crime</i> .

Instead of a genitive, an infinitive, a **quod** clause, or a neuter pronoun is sometimes used to express the source of the feeling. When this occurs, the infinitive, the **quod** clause, or the neuter pronoun is the subject of the verb.

**Legere** mē taedet.

*Reading bores me.*

**Mē** paenitet **quod tanta scelera in**  
**hāc cīvitatē facta sunt.**

*The fact that (see p. 294) such great crimes have been committed in this state repents me; I am sorry that such great crimes have been committed in this state.*

**Hoc** mē pudet.

*This shames me; I am ashamed of this.*

### E. The Impersonals *interest* and *rēfert*

These two impersonals, which mean 'it concerns, it is of interest, it is in the interest of', take the genitive of the person concerned and an infinitive, an **ut** clause, or a demonstrative pronoun in the neuter singular to express the thing which is of concern. But instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the following adjectival forms in the ablative case are used: **meā**, **tuā**, **suā**, **nostrā**, **vestrā**.

**Ducis** interest (rēfert) opus  
**cōficere.**

*It is in the interest of the leader to complete (his) work.*

**Ducis** interest (rēfert) **ut** celeriter  
**abeās.**

*It is in the interest of the leader that you go away quickly; it concerns the leader that you go away quickly.*

**Hoc ducis** interest (rēfert).

*This is in the interest of the leader.*

**BUT:**

**Meā** interest (rēfert) **ut** celeriter  
**abeās.**

*It is of interest (with respect to my [affair]) to me that you go away quickly; it concerns me that you go away quickly.*

In the latter case, **meā** is in fact modifying the noun **rē**, which is the first part of the verb **rēfert**. The use of the ablative **meā** with **interest** is on analogy with **rēfert**.

## UNIT SIXTEEN — VOCABULARY

**abeō**, -īre, -iī, (-īvī), -itus

go away, depart

**adversus**, -a, -um

opposite, hostile, adverse

**aliēnus**, -a, -um

belonging to another, strange, out of place

**āmittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus

let go, lose

**aperiō**, -īre, -ui, **apertus**

open

**causa**, -ae, F.

cause, reason

**causā** (preceded by the genitive) for the sake of



<b>cotīdiē</b> or <b>cotīdiē</b> (adv.)	daily
<b>decōrus</b> , -a, -um	fitting, suitable; handsome
<b>dēsum</b> , <b>dēesse</b> , <b>dēfui</b> , --	be missing, fail (often + dat.)
<b>discō</b> , -ere, <b>didici</b> , --	learn
<b>frūstrā</b> (adv.)	in vain
<b>infirmus</b> , -a, -um	weak, unhealthy
<b>instituō</b> , -ere, -uī, -ūtus	set (up), establish, arrange
<b>interest</b> , -esse, -fuit, --	it is of importance, it concerns, it is of interest
<b>lābor</b> , <b>lābī</b> , <b>lāpsus sum</b>	slip, glide, fall
<b>lēx</b> , <b>lēgis</b> , F.	law
<b>libenter</b> (adv.)	freely, willingly, gladly
<b>licet</b> , -ēre, -uit ( <b>licitum est</b> )	it is permitted
<b>miseret</b> , -ēre, -uit ( <b>miseritum est</b> )	it pities, it moves to pity
<b>necesse</b> (indeclinable adj.)	necessary
<b>oportet</b> , -ēre, -uit, --	it is necessary, it is proper
<b>paenitet</b> , -ēre, -uit, --	it repents
<b>piget</b> , -ēre, -uit ( <b>pigitum est</b> )	it disgusts
<b>pudet</b> , -ēre, -uit ( <b>puditum est</b> )	it shames
<b>rēfert</b> , -ferre, -tulit, --	it is of importance
<b>scriptor</b> , -ōris, M.	writer
<b>stō</b> , <b>stāre</b> , <b>stetī</b> , <b>stātus</b>	stand
<b>studiōsus</b> , -a, -um	fond of, partial to, studious (+ gen.)
<b>sustineō</b> , -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus	support, maintain
<b>taedet</b> , -ēre, -uit ( <b>taesum est</b> )	it bores, it disgusts
<b>ūtilis</b> , -e	useful, beneficial
<b>vel</b> (conj.)	or
<b>vel . . . vel</b>	either . . . or
<b>vetus</b> , -eris	old
<b>violō</b> (1)	do violence to, break (an agreement, the law)

## UNIT SIXTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Aliēnus**, -a, -um has the stem of **alius**, -a, -ud as its base, with the adjectival ending **-ēnus**, -a, -um, 'belonging to', added; thus, **aliēnus** means 'belonging to another, strange, out of place'.

The ablative of the noun **causa**, 'cause, reason', is used as a preposition governing the genitive case; **causā** is placed after the genitive it governs: **Militēs ex oppidō pācis causā discessērunt**, 'The soldiers withdrew from the town for the sake of peace'.

**Infirmus, -a, -um** means literally 'not strong', therefore 'weak, unhealthy'.

**Stō, stāre, steti, stātus** is the verb 'stand'. There is also a verb **sistō, sistere, stiti, stātus** meaning 'cause\* to stand, make stand, place, set up, establish'. Connected with these two verbs is another, **statuō, statuere, statui, statūtus**, 'cause to stand, set up, establish'. These verbs have many compounds:

**astō, astāre, astiti, --**, 'stand at *or* near'

**circumstō, circumstāre, circumsteti, --**, 'stand around'

**īnstō, īnstāre, īnstiti, īnstātus**, 'stand on *or* upon, insist, threaten'

**obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātus**, 'stand before *or* against; hinder'

**dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, dēstitus**, 'set down, stand off, stop'

**īnsistō, īnsistere, īnstiti, --**, 'stand upon, pursue'

**obsistō, obsistere, obstiti, obstitus**, 'set *or* place before; set oneself against, oppose, resist'

**persistō, persistere, perstiti, --**, 'continue steadfastly'

**resistō, resistere, restiti, --**, 'stand back, stand still, stop'

**cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitūtus**, 'cause to stand, set up, establish; decide'

**dēstituō, dēstituere, dēstitui, dēstitūtus**, 'set down, leave alone, abandon'

**īstituō, īstituere, īstitui, īstitūtus**, 'put *or* place into; set up, establish, arrange'

**restituō, restituere, restitui, restitūtus**, 'set up again, restore'

**Studiōsus, -a, -um**, literally 'full of zeal', means 'fond of, partial to, studious,' and governs the genitive case.

**Ūtilis, -e** has the same root as **ūtor** and thus means 'useful, beneficial'.

**PREFIXES** (not from prepositions)

**dis-** (**dī-**, **dif-**), 'apart'

**dīdūcō**, 'draw apart, separate, divide'

**dīfugiō**, 'flee in different directions, scatter'

**dīspellō**, 'drive apart, scatter, disperse'

**dīspōnō**, 'place here and there, distribute regularly, arrange'

**in-** (**il-**, **im-**, **ir-**), 'not'

**illiterātus, -a, -um**, 'unlettered, uneducated'

**immemor, immemoris**, 'unmindful, forgetful'

**inaudītus, -a, -um**, 'unheard (of), strange'

**irrevocābilis, -e**, 'not to be called back, irrevocable, uncontrollable'

**re-**, 'back, again'

**recēdō**, 'go back, withdraw, retire'

**recidō**, 'fall back'

**reficiō**, 'make again, remake, restore, renew'

sē-, 'apart'

sēcēdō, 'go apart, go away, withdraw'

sēdūcō, 'lead apart, draw aside'

#### DENOMINATIVE VERBS

Many verbs in Latin were formed from nouns or adjectives; although these denominative verbs are found in all conjugations, most of them are in the first conjugation.

**bellō** (1), 'wage, carry on war, fight in war' (from **bellum**)

**corōnō** (1), 'crown' (from **corōna**)

**culpō** (1), 'reproach, blame, condemn' (from **culpa**)

**custōdiō**, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus, 'watch, protect, defend, preserve' (from **custōs**)

**dīgnor** (1), 'deem worthy' (from **dīgnus**)

**dominor** (1), 'be lord and master, rule, domineer' (from **dominus**)

**dūrō** (1), 'make hard, harden, last' (from **dūrus**)

**fīniō**, -īre, -īvī (-īī), -ītus, 'limit, restrain, check' (from **fīnis**)

**flōreō**, -ēre, -uī, --, 'bloom, blossom, flower' (from **flōs**, **flōris**, M., 'blossom, flower')

**locō** (1), 'place, lay, set' (from **locus**)

**metuō**, -ere, metuī, --, 'fear, be afraid' (from **metus**)

**saeviō**, -īre, -īī, -ītus, 'be fierce, rage' (from **saevus**)

### UNIT SIXTEEN — DRILL

1. a) Legere est bonum.  
b) Amor legendī est bonus.  
c) Legendō praefuisti.  
d) Ad legendum omnibus adfuit.  
e) Legendō multum cognōvimus.
2. a) Rōmam ivimus ad Caesarem videndum.  
b) Rōmam ivimus Caesaris videndī causā.
3. a) Impii plēbem agitābant ad pūgnandum.  
b) Impii plēbem agitābant pūgnandī causā.
4. a) Omnēs patī necesse est.  
b) Omnibus patī necesse est.  
c) Necesse est (ut) omnēs patiantur.
5. a) Rēgis rēfert rēgnum regere.

- b) Rēgis rēfert ut rēgnum regat.
- c) Meā rēfert rēgi pārēre.
- 6. a) Cōnsulis intererat malōs perire.
- b) Cōnsulis intererat ut malī perirent.
- c) Meā intererat ut malī perirent.
- 7. Et meā et urbis interfuit quid agerēs.
- 8. Estne periculum in currendō per viās urbis?
- 9. Magna sunt gaudia docendi.
- 10. Cicerō clārus erat arte loquendi.
- 11. a) Iuvenēs cupidi fuērunt puellās pulchrās videndi.
- b) Iuvenēs gaudium cēpērunt ē puellis pulchris videndis.
- 12. Studium plūra habendī pectora multōrum implet.
- 13. a) Rōmae adfuimus ad magnās divitiās parandās.
- b) Parāre magnās dīvitiās est difficillimum.
- c) Quid agerēs magnārum divitiārum parandārum causā?
- 14. Nostrā patriā discessimus ad vivendum sine inimiciā.
- 15. Diūtissimē exspectandō infēlicēs sumus.
- 16. Morandō domī placuistis vestris parentibus; domī morāti estis vestris parentibus placendi causā.

## UNIT SIXTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES

### (SECTIONS A, B, C)

- 1. Celeriter abire ab hāc terrā est magnum gaudium.
- 2. Mihi timor abeundi ab hāc terrā est magnus.
- 3. Eum instituendō lēgēs praefēcimus.
- 4. Mea bona āmittere ōdi.
- 5. Semper in discendō vītam agere dēbēmus.
- 6. Cupidus amīci videndī Rōmam ivi.
- 7. Mihi timor lēgum violandārum est magnus.
- 8. Novōrum verbōrum discendōrum studiōsī sumus.
- 9. Lēgis violandae studiōsī nōn sumus.
- 10. In novīs rēbus discendis vītam agere dēbēmus.
- 11. Ab hāc terrā abivī ad pecūniam multam faciendam (pecūniae multae faciendae causā).
- 12. Ab hāc terrā abivī rēgnī novi instituendī causā.
- 13. Rēgnum novum instituērunt fēliciter vivendī causā.
- 14. Multa didicimus ad bene vītam agendam.
- 15. Hic scriptor multa ad bene scribendum didicit.

## UNIT SIXTEEN — EXERCISES

## I.

1. Tam studiōsus librōrum legendōrum fuit ut omnēs ē villā ducis clāri removēret.
2. Rōmam vēnit ad auxilium ā militibus rēgis quaerendum.
3. Cottidiē currendō salūtem corporis sustineō; numquam ab hōc modō vivendi lāpsus sum.
4. Carminibus canendīs poēta pecūniam accēpit.
5. Cīvēs fortēs rei pūblicae hostium superandōrum causā oppūgnāre incēpērunt.
6. a) Mē semper necesse erat intellegere illa quae ā duce dicta sunt.  
b) Semper necesse erat ut intellegerem quae ā duce dicta essent.
7. Omnēs oportet vitam quam optimē agere; tempus enim celerrimē lābitur. Nisi quid boni ēgerimus, frūstrā vivēmus.
8. Rēgi mori necesse est ut libertās in hāc rē pūblicā instituātur.
9. Pācis temporibus licet ut portae urbis antiq̄uae mūnitae aperiantur.
10. Si hominibus lēgēs violāre licet, quam ob rem iussis cōsulis ā nōbis pārendum est?
11. Custōdem honestum piumque sceleris parvī tam paenituit ut multa dōna ārīs deōrum immortalium offerret.
12. Nesciō cūr tē gravis dolōris omnium virōrum corporibus infirmīs misereat.
13. Bonōs honestōsque taedet pigetque virōrum malōrum quī lēgēs ā rēge īstitūtās violāre volunt.
14. Cuius rēfert ut lēgēs ūtilēs instituat salūtis omnium gentium servandae causā?
15. Nostrā interest sapientiam legendīs libris scriptōris sapientis discere.
16. Neque cuiquam nostrum licuit istā lēge ūtī.
17. Male imperandō summum imperium āmittitur.
18. Dē civitātibus novīs instituendis litterae ad mē mittēbantur.
19. Quamquam studiōsus erat bene regendī, amor populi ei dēerat.
20. Pācis petendae causā, ducem oportēbat pollicērī sē nēmini post bellum nocitūrum esse.
21. Rogāvit num id scelus sit, cuius paenitēre fuerit necesse.
22. Gerenda bella sunt ut sine noxā in pāce vivātur; hostibus victis, pāce perfectā, populi nōn rēfert ut tot fortissimī mortuī sint quod prō patriā et omnium libertāte perierint.
23. Mē paenitet causam rei pūblicae bene nōn sustinendī; sed maximē meā interfuit ut tūtus viverem.
24. Pudet pigetque meī mē.
25. Nostra māter, tuī nōs miserēret nisi tam cupida coniugis perdendī essēs!



26. a) Ad pācem parandam cīvēs sibi hostēs foedere iūnxērunt.  
b) Pācis parandae causā cīvēs sibi hostēs foedere iūnxērunt.  
c) Ut pācem parārent, cīvēs sibi hostēs foedere iūnxērunt.
27. a) Operis melius cōficiendī causā coniūnx auxilium parābat.  
b) Ad opus melius cōficiendum coniūnx auxilium parābat.  
c) Quō melius opus cōficeret coniūnx auxilium parābat.
28. Bellis gerendis patriae validiōrēs fiunt.
29. Bene regendō dux amōrem comitum capit.
30. Sequāmur nātūram optimam bene vivendī ducem!
31. Istius vērē ducis hoc rēferre vidētur.
32. Neque rēfert cuiusquam utrum rēx cupidus sit auctōritātis ostendendae necne. Cīvēs ei favent, nec suā interest quō modō viribus ūtātur, dummodo sibi ipsīs nē noceat.
33. Ac si quis est tālis quālis esse omnis oportēbat, quī irātus fit quod istōs hostēs, civitātī inimicōs, nōn interfēcērim potius quam ex urbe pepulerim, nōn est istud mea culpa, sed temporum. [**potius quam**, 'rather than']
34. Necesse est hominēs adsint vel bellō vel pāci parātī.
35. Adversis ventīs nautae ad insulam accēdere nōn potuērunt; nāvēs adversō flūmine feruntur. Quī proximō in litore stetērunt nihil auxilii ferre poterant.
36. Fēlix est quī libenter potuit rērum cognōscere causās multis libris legendis et multa discendō.
37. Crēdendum erit veteribus si cupidī erimus bene vivendī. Exempla optima ante oculōs stant. Necesse est ea videāmus.
38. Quae dōna decōra abeuntibus dedistī?
39. Pepercit dux neque suis comitibus neque aliēnīs. Nēmō in omnibus prōvinciae urbibus vel in hāc ipsā erat tūtus.
40. Bonus etiam causam dandī cōgitat.
41. Respondit ad cōsiliū capiendū temporis opus esse.
42. A SYLLOGISM PROVING THAT THERE IS SUCH A THING AS DIVINATION (Cicero, *Dē Divinātiōne* 101–2, adapted):  
Sī sunt dī neque ante dicunt hominibus quae futūra sint, aut nōn diligunt hominēs, aut quid futūrum sit nesciunt; aut arbitrantur nihil interesse hominum scire quid sit futūrum; aut nōn putant esse suae glōriae praesignificāre hominibus quae sunt futūra; aut ea nē ipsī quidem dī significāre possunt. At neque nōn diligunt nōs (sunt enim clārissimī bonique hominum amīci); neque nesciunt ea quae ab ipsīs cōstitutā sunt; neque nostrā nihil interest scire ea quae futūra sunt (erimus enim fēliciōrēs et tūtiōrēs, certiōrēs dē illō quod accidet, si sciēmus); neque hoc aliēnum dūcunt glōriā suā (nihil est enim beneficentiā clārius meliusque); neque nōn possunt futūra praenōscere; nōn igitur dī sunt nec significant nōbīs futūra; sunt

autem dī; significant igitur ad nōs dē rēbus futūris monendōs; et nōn, sī significant futūra, nullās dant viās nōbīs ad signa intellegenda (frūstrā enim significārent); nec, sī dant viās, nōn est divinātiō; est igitur divinātiō. [at (conj.), 'but'; **beneficentia**, -ae, F., 'kind deed, service'; **diligō**, -ere, **dilēxī**, **dilēctus**, 'esteem, be fond of'; **divinātiō**, -ōnis, F., 'divination'; **nihil** (here, as adv.), 'not at all'; **praenōscō** (prae + nōscō), 'know beforehand'; **praesignificō** (1), 'show beforehand, express beforehand'; **significō** (1), 'show, report, express']

43. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 69, adapted:

Quid est in hominis nātūrā diū? Dā enim summum tempus, exspectēmus longam aetātem, mihi autem nē longum quidem quicquam vidētur, in quō est aliquī finis. Cum enim id advēnit, tum illud quod praeteriit efflūxit; id solum remanet, quod virtūte et bonīs factīs cōsecūtus sīs; hōrae quidem cēdunt et diēs et mēnsēs et annī, nec praeteritum tempus umquam redit, nec quid sequātur scīrī potest; quod cuique temporis ad vīvendum datur, eō dēbet esse contentus. [aetās, -tātis, F., 'age, life'; cōsequor (com- + sequor), 'obtain, acquire'; contentus, -a, -um, 'content'; effluō, -ere, -flūxī, --, 'flow forth, escape'; mēnsis, -is, M., 'month'; praetereō (praeter, 'beyond', + eō), 'pass by']

## II.

1. The queen was so ashamed of her burning love for the handsome leader that she drove him from her state.
2. In order to terrify the citizens, the legate ordered the troops that they attack and destroy their province.
3. The art of writing a poem is so difficult that very few men are desirous of learning how it should be done.
4. After the torches had been carried into the (city) gates, the king was able to show the lofty walls to the guests from the province who had come to learn the art of fortifying towns.
5. Learning about other people's laws bores me; I don't even have time to read our own.

## III. Readings

### A. Cicero, *In Catilinam* II.7.15:

Numquam ego ab dis immortalibus optābō, Quiritēs,<sup>1</sup> invidiae meae relevandae<sup>2</sup> causā ut Catilinam dūcere exercitum<sup>3</sup> hostium atque in armis volitāre<sup>4</sup> audiātis, sed triduō<sup>5</sup> tamen audiētis.

<sup>1</sup> Quiritēs, -ium, M., 'fellow citizens'  
<sup>4</sup> volitō (1), 'hasten about'

<sup>2</sup> relevō (1), 'diminish'

<sup>3</sup> exercitus, -ūs, M.,  
<sup>5</sup> triduum, -ī, N., 'a space of three days'

B. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 5.15:

Etenim,<sup>1</sup> cum complector<sup>2</sup> animō, quattuor<sup>3</sup> reperiō<sup>4</sup> causās cūr senectūs<sup>5</sup> misera videātur: ūnam, quod āvocet<sup>6</sup> ā rēbus gerendis; alteram, quod corpus faciat infirmius; tertiam,<sup>7</sup> quod privet<sup>8</sup> omnibus ferē<sup>9</sup> voluptātibus;<sup>10</sup> quartam,<sup>11</sup> quod haud<sup>12</sup> procul<sup>13</sup> absit ā morte. Eārum, sī placet, causārum quanta quamque<sup>14</sup> sit iūsta<sup>15</sup> ūna quaeque videāmus.

<sup>1</sup> etenim (adv.), 'truly, and indeed'    <sup>2</sup> complector, -plecti, -plexus sum, 'embrace intellectually, think over'    <sup>3</sup> quattuor (indeclinable adj.), 'four'    <sup>4</sup> reperiō, -ire, repperi, repertus, 'discover'    <sup>5</sup> senectūs, -tūtis, F., 'old age'    <sup>6</sup> āvocō (1), 'call away or off'    <sup>7</sup> tertius, -a, -um, 'third'    <sup>8</sup> privō (1), 'deprive'    <sup>9</sup> ferē (adv.), 'almost, practically'    <sup>10</sup> voluptās, -tātis, F., 'pleasure'    <sup>11</sup> quartus, -a, -um, 'fourth'    <sup>12</sup> haud (adv.), 'not at all'    <sup>13</sup> procul (adv.), 'at a distance'    <sup>14</sup> quam (adv.), 'how'    <sup>15</sup> iūstus, -a, -um, 'just'

C. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 17.59:

Multās ad<sup>1</sup> rēs perūtilēs<sup>2</sup> Xenophontis<sup>3</sup> librī sunt, quōs legite, quaesō,<sup>4</sup> studiōsē, ut facitis. Quam<sup>5</sup> cōpiōsē<sup>6</sup> ab eō agrī cultūra<sup>7</sup> laudātur in eō librō, quī est dē tuendā<sup>8</sup> rē familiārī,<sup>9</sup> quī *Oeconomicus*<sup>10</sup> īnscibitur!<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ad, here, 'for'    <sup>2</sup> perūtilis, -e, 'very useful'    <sup>3</sup> Xenophōn, Xenophontis, M., 'Xenophon', a Greek historian    <sup>4</sup> quaesō, -ere, -ivi, -itus, 'beg, entreat'    <sup>5</sup> quam (adv.), 'how'    <sup>6</sup> cōpiōsē (adv.), 'copiously, abundantly'    <sup>7</sup> cultūra, -ae, F., 'cultivation'    <sup>8</sup> tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, 'care for, protect'    <sup>9</sup> familiāris, -e, 'belonging to the household'    <sup>10</sup> oeconomicus, -a, -um, 'pertaining to domestic economy', here, the title of a book by Xenophon (understand liber)    <sup>11</sup> īnscibō (in + scribō), 'entitle, name'

D. Cicero, *Dē Amicitia* 26.98:

Nūlla est igitur haec amicitia, cum alter vērū audire nōn vult, alter ad mentiendum<sup>1</sup> parātus est.

<sup>1</sup> mentior, mentīrī, mentitus sum, 'lie, tell a falsehood'

## E. Martial 12.23:

Dentibus<sup>1</sup> atque comīs<sup>2</sup> — nec tē pudet — ūteris ēmptis.<sup>3</sup>

Quid faciēs oculō, Laelia?<sup>4</sup> Nōn emitur.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> dēns, dentis, M., 'tooth'    <sup>2</sup> coma, -ae, F., 'hair' (of the head)    <sup>3</sup> emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptus, 'buy'    <sup>4</sup> Laelia, -ae, F., a woman's name

F. Seneca writes to his friend, Lucilius, on the subject of masters and slaves (*Epistulae Mōrālēs* XLVII.1–5):

Libenter ex iis, quī ā tē veniunt, cognōvī familiārīter<sup>1</sup> tē cum servīs tuīs vivere. Hoc prūdētiā<sup>2</sup> tuam, hoc ēruditiōnem<sup>3</sup> decet.<sup>4</sup> "Servi sunt."

<sup>1</sup> familiārīter (adv.), 'in a friendly way'    <sup>2</sup> prūdētiā, -ae, F., 'discretion'    <sup>3</sup> ēruditiō, -ōnis, F., 'erudition, knowledge'    <sup>4</sup> decet, -ēre, decuit, 'it fits, it suits' (impersonal verb)

Immō<sup>5</sup> hominēs. "Servī sunt." Immō<sup>5</sup> contubernālēs.<sup>6</sup> "Servī sunt." Immō<sup>5</sup> humilēs amīci. "Servī sunt." Immō<sup>5</sup> cōnservi,<sup>7</sup> sī cōgitāveris tantundem<sup>8</sup> in utrōsque<sup>9</sup> licēre fortūnae.<sup>10</sup>

Itaque<sup>11</sup> rideō istōs, quī turpe<sup>12</sup> existimant<sup>13</sup> cum servō suō cēnāre.<sup>14</sup> Quārē, nisi quia superbissima<sup>15</sup> cōnsuētūdō<sup>16</sup> cēnantī<sup>14</sup> dominō stantium servōrum turbam circumdedit?<sup>17</sup> Ēst<sup>18</sup> ille plūs quam capit, et ingenti aviditāte<sup>19</sup> onerat<sup>20</sup> distentum<sup>21</sup> ventrem<sup>22</sup> ac dēsuetū<sup>23</sup> iam ventris<sup>22</sup> officiō,<sup>24</sup> ut maiōre operā<sup>25</sup> omnia ēgerat<sup>26</sup> quam ingessit;<sup>27</sup> at<sup>28</sup> infēlicibus servīs movēre labra<sup>29</sup> nē in hōc<sup>30</sup> quidem, ut loquantur, licet. Virgā<sup>31</sup> murmur<sup>32</sup> omne compescitur,<sup>33</sup> et nē fortuita<sup>34</sup> quidem verberibus<sup>35</sup> excepta sunt,<sup>36</sup> tussis,<sup>37</sup> sternūmenta,<sup>38</sup> singultūs.<sup>39</sup> Magnō malō ūllā vōce interpellātum<sup>40</sup> silentium<sup>41</sup> luitur.<sup>42</sup> Nocte tōtā iēiūni<sup>43</sup> mūtique<sup>44</sup> perstant.<sup>45</sup>

Sic fit, ut istī dē dominō loquantur, quibus cōram<sup>46</sup> dominō loquī nōn licet. At<sup>28</sup> illī, quibus nōn tantum<sup>47</sup> cōram<sup>46</sup> dominīs, sed cum ipsis erat sermō,<sup>48</sup> quōrum ōs nōn cōnsuēbātur,<sup>49</sup> parātī erant prō dominō porrigere<sup>50</sup> cervicem,<sup>51</sup> periculum imminēns<sup>52</sup> in caput<sup>53</sup> suum āvertere;<sup>54</sup> in convīviis<sup>55</sup> loquēbantur, sed in tormentis<sup>56</sup> tacēbant. Deinde<sup>57</sup> eiusdem arrogantiae<sup>58</sup> prōverbium<sup>59</sup> iactātur, tot hostēs esse quot servōs. Nōn habēmus illōs hostēs, sed facimus.

<sup>5</sup> immō (adv.), 'no, but...' <sup>6</sup> contubernālis, -is, M. & F., 'comrade' <sup>7</sup> cōnservus, -ī, M., 'fellow slave' <sup>8</sup> tantusdem, tantadem, tantundem, 'just so much' <sup>9</sup> uterque, utraque, utrumque, 'each (of two), both'; in utrōsque, 'to (for) both (of you)' <sup>10</sup> fortūna, -ae, F., 'fortune' <sup>11</sup> itaque (adv.), 'and so' <sup>12</sup> turpis, -e, 'foul, ugly' <sup>13</sup> existimō (1), 'think' <sup>14</sup> cēnō (1), 'dine' <sup>15</sup> superbus, -a, -um, 'haughty' <sup>16</sup> cōnsuētūdō, -tūdinis, F., 'habit, custom' <sup>17</sup> circumdō (circum + dō), 'put around' <sup>18</sup> ēst, 3rd person sing. of edō, edere (ēsse), ēdī, ēsus, 'eat' <sup>19</sup> aviditās, -tātis, F., 'greed' <sup>20</sup> onerō (1), 'burden, load down' <sup>21</sup> distentus, -a, -um, 'full, distended' <sup>22</sup> venter, ventris, M., 'belly' <sup>23</sup> dēsuetō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, 'become unaccustomed' <sup>24</sup> officiū, -ī, N., 'duty, task' <sup>25</sup> opera, -ae, F., 'effort' <sup>26</sup> ēgerō (ē + gerō), here, 'vomit' (lit., 'carry out') <sup>27</sup> ingerō (in + gerō), 'throw in, heap on' <sup>28</sup> at (conj.), 'but' <sup>29</sup> labrum, -ī, N., 'lip' <sup>30</sup> in hōc (understand tempore) <sup>31</sup> virga, -ae, F., 'rod, whip' <sup>32</sup> murmur, murmuris, N., 'murmur' <sup>33</sup> compescō, -ere, -pescui, --, 'restrain, check' <sup>34</sup> fortuitus, -a, -um, 'casual, accidental' <sup>35</sup> verber, verberis, N., 'lash' <sup>36</sup> excipiō (ex + capiō), 'except' <sup>37</sup> tussis, -is (acc. -im), F., 'cough' <sup>38</sup> sternūmentum, -ī, N., 'sneeze' <sup>39</sup> singultus, -ūs, M., 'sobbing' <sup>40</sup> interpellō (1), 'interrupt' <sup>41</sup> silentium, -ī, N., 'silence' <sup>42</sup> luō, -ere, luī, luitūrus, 'atone for' <sup>43</sup> iēiūnus, -a, -um, 'hungry, thirsty' <sup>44</sup> mūtus, -a, -um, 'mute' <sup>45</sup> perstō, -āre, -stiti, -stātus, 'stand firm' <sup>46</sup> cōram (prep. + abl.), 'in the presence of, facing' <sup>47</sup> nōn tantum... sed, 'not only... but' <sup>48</sup> sermō, -ōnis, M., 'conversation' <sup>49</sup> cōnsuō, -ere, -suī, -sūtus, 'sew (stitch) together' <sup>50</sup> porrigō, -ere, porrēxi, porrēctus, 'offer' <sup>51</sup> cervix, -icis, F., 'neck' <sup>52</sup> imminēō, -ēre, --, --, 'threaten' <sup>53</sup> caput, capitis, N., 'head' <sup>54</sup> āvertō, -ere, -verti, -versus, 'turn off, divert' <sup>55</sup> convīvium, -ī, N., 'banquet' <sup>56</sup> tormentum, -ī, N., 'torture' <sup>57</sup> deinde (adv.), 'finally' <sup>58</sup> arrogantia, -ae, F., 'arrogance' <sup>59</sup> prōverbium, -ī, N., 'proverb'



# UNIT SEVENTEEN

## A. Clauses of Fearing

Verbs or expressions of fearing take subjunctive clauses introduced by **nē** for the positive and **ut** for the negative. While this may seem a curious reversal, it is a logical construction. In the earliest stages of the language, the constructions were *paratactic*; *parataxis* is the absence of subordination and the arrangement of several clauses side by side.

Timeō. I fear. Ut veniat! I wish he would come!

Timeō. I fear. Nē veniat! I wish he would not come!

(*Veniat* is an optative subjunctive; see Unit Twelve.)

As the language developed, the constructions became *hypotactic*; *hypotaxis* is the subordination of one clause to another. Thus:

Timeō **ut** veniat. I fear that he is *not* coming; I fear that he will *not* come.  
(It is logical that one would fear that the *opposite* of his wish might come about.)

Timeō **nē** veniat. I fear that he *is* coming (*will* come).

Clauses of fearing follow the normal rules for sequence of tenses. While the present subjunctive may refer to an act that is either contemporaneous with or subsequent to the action of the main verb, when stress is laid on the subsequence (futura) of the action, the active periphrastic is occasionally used:

Timeō **ut** veniat. I fear *that he is not coming*; I fear *that he will not come*.

Timeō **ut** ventūrus sit. I fear *that he will not come* (emphasis on futurity).

Sometimes, **nē...nōn** are found instead of **ut** to introduce a negative clause of fearing:

Timeō **nē nōn** veniat. I fear *that he is not coming* (*will not come*).

## B. Clauses of Doubting

When **dubitō** (1) means 'hesitate', it takes an infinitive:

Hoc **facere** dubitō. I hesitate *to do* this.



When it means 'doubt', it takes the following constructions which are regularly used with words or expressions of doubting:

1. When the word or expression of doubting is positive (as opposed to negative), it introduces an indirect question.

Dubitō **num** abitūrus sit. I doubt *whether (that) he will go away.*

Dubitō **an** abeat. I doubt *whether (that) he is going away.*

2. When the word or expression of doubting is negative, a subjunctive clause introduced by **quīn** (translated literally 'but that') is used.

Nōn dubitō **quīn** abeat. I don't doubt *(but) that he is going away.*

Nōn dubitō **quīn** abitūrus sit. I don't doubt *(but) that he will go away.*

Nōn dubium est **quīn** abeat. It is not doubtful *(but) that he is going away.*

Quis dubitat **quīn** abeat? Who doubts *(but) that he is going away?*

In the last sentence, **quis dubitat** is an example of a *virtual negative*; that is, the implication is that *no one doubts* that he is going away.

### C. Clauses of Prevention

To express prohibition or prevention, the following constructions are used:

1. **Vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus**, 'forbid', and **prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus**, 'prohibit', take a simple infinitive.

Tē vetō **abire**. I forbid you *to go away.*

Tē prohibeō **abire**. I prohibit you *to go (from going) away.*

2. The following verbs are among those which take a subjunctive construction:

**dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus** deter, prevent

**impediō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itus** prevent

**obstō, -āre, -stifī, -stātus** hinder, stand in the way of

If the verb of prevention is *positive*, the subjunctive clause will be introduced by **quōminus** (= **quō minus**, 'by which the less') or **nē**, 'in order that not'. These clauses are analogous to relative clauses of purpose introduced by **quō** (see Unit Fourteen), and **quōminus** in effect is standing for **ut eō minus**, 'in order that by this the less'.

(Tē) dēterreō **quōminus** I deter you *by which the less you go away*; I deter you *from going away.*

(Tē) dēterreō **nē** abeās. I deter you *in order that you not go away*; I deter (prevent) you *from going away.*

When the verb of prevention is *negative*, the subjunctive clause is introduced by **quōminus**, 'by which the less', or **quīn**, 'but that'.

Nōn (tē) dēterreō I don't deter you *by which the less you go away*; I  
quōminus abeās. don't deter you *from going away*.

Nōn (tē) dēterreō I don't deter you *but that you go away*; I don't deter  
quīn abeās. you *from going away*.

#### D. The Supine

The gerund is a verbal noun. There is another variety of verbal noun in Latin called the *supine*. As we might expect, it is neuter singular, but it has only two cases, the accusative and the ablative, each of which has a specific use. The supine, then, is not nearly as versatile as the gerund and, in fact, occurs infrequently. It is formed on the fourth principal part of the verb.

	I	II	III	IV
ACCUSATIVE	optātum	implētum	inceptum	sēsum
ABLATIVE	optātū	implētū	inceptū	sēnsū

The *accusative* of the supine is used without a preposition after verbs of motion to express *purpose*.

It urbem **captum**. He goes *to capture* the city.

The *ablative* of the supine is used with some adjectives as an *ablative of respect*.

Hic liber facilis est **lētū**. This book is easy *with respect to reading*; this  
book is easy *to read*.

## UNIT SEVENTEEN — VOCABULARY

aetās, aetātis, F.	time of life, age, life
celeritās, -tātis, F.	speed, swiftness
dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus	defend
dēnique (adv.)	finally, at last
dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus	stop, desist
dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus	deter, prevent, hinder, keep from
dubius, -a, -um	doubtful
dubium, -ī, N.	doubt, hesitation
dubitō (1)	hesitate (with inf.); doubt (with indirect question or <b>quīn</b> + subjunctive)
impediō, -īre, -ivī (-īi), -ītus	deter, impede, prevent
metuō, -ere, metuī, --	fear

<b>nemus, nemoris, N.</b>	grove, wood
<b>obitus, -ūs, M.</b>	a going down, setting; downfall, ruin
<b>obstō, -āre, -stīfī, -stātus</b>	stand in the way of, hinder (+ dat.)
<b>orior, -īrī, ortus sum</b>	rise, arise, begin
<b>ortus, -ūs, M.</b>	rising, source
<b>pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus</b>	arrive (at) (+ <b>ad</b> )
<b>prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus</b>	keep from, prohibit, prevent
<b>quīn (conj.)</b>	but that, that not (used after expressions of prevention, negative doubting, etc.)
<b>quōminus (conj.)</b>	by which the less, that not, from (used in positive or negative clauses of prevention)
<b>radius, -ī, M.</b>	rod, ray
<b>religiō, -ōnis, F.</b>	religious awe, reverence, integrity, sanctity
<b>relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus</b>	leave behind, abandon
<b>reliquus, -a, -um</b>	remaining; rest of
<b>retegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus</b>	uncover, reveal
<b>tergum, -ī, N.</b>	back
<b>turpis, -e</b>	foul, ugly
<b>ūnā (adv.)</b>	together, at the same time
<b>vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum</b>	hunt, go hunting
<b>vertō, -ere, vertī, versus</b>	turn
<b>animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus</b>	turn one's attention to, notice
<b>vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus</b>	forbid

## UNIT SEVENTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Aetās, aetātis, F.**, is 'time of life, age, life'; do not confuse it with **aestās, aestātis, F.**, 'summer'.

**Celeritās, celeritātis, F.**, is 'the state of being swift', thus, 'speed, swiftness'.

**Dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus**, has the same stem in the present and perfect active; and so **dēfendimus** is 'we defend' or 'we have defended'.

**Dēterreō**, a compound of **dē** and **terreō**, means 'frighten from', and so 'deter, prevent, hinder, keep from'.

**Dubius, -a, -um** is the adjective 'doubtful'. Its stem comes from **duo** and **habeō**, 'hold two'; its primary meaning is 'moving in two directions alternately, fluctuating'. It then gets to mean 'vacillating in mind, uncertain, doubting, doubtful'.

Another adjective, **anceps, ancipitis**, has a similar history of meaning. Literally, it means 'two-headed' (**ambi-**, shortened to **an-**, 'both', + **ceps** from **caput**,

**capitis**, N., 'head'); the meaning then expands to 'that extends on two opposite sides', and then, 'fluctuating, doubtful'.

The neuter adjective **dubium** used substantively is 'doubt, hesitation'. The verb **dubitō** with an infinitive is 'hesitate'; without an infinitive it means 'doubt' and takes a construction using the subjunctive. **Dubitō** has **habeō** hidden in its stem as **dēbeō** does (**dē** + **habeō**). **Dēbeō** means literally 'hold from'; if one holds something from someone, he owes it to him, or he is under obligation to give it back. From there, the two meanings of **dēbeō** emerge: 'owe' and 'be bound to, ought'. **Dubitō** is a contraction of **duhibitāre** (**duo** + a frequentative of **habeō**), 'to have or hold as two'.

**Impediō** is a fourth conjugation denominative verb from **pēs**, **pedis**, 'foot'. When one gets something in the way of his foot, he becomes hindered and so the verb means 'deter, impede, prevent'. **Impedimenta**, **impedimentōrum**, N. pl., is the Latin word for 'baggage'.

**Obitus** is the fourth declension noun from **obeō**, 'go to meet, go down, die, travel, perform'; therefore **obitus** means 'visit, going down, setting, downfall, ruin, death'.

**Ortus**, 'rising', is the fourth declension noun from **orior**, 'rise'.

**Perveniō**, a compound of **per** and **veniō**, means 'arrive at'; **ad** is used with this verb: **Ad Italiam heri pervēnimus**, 'We arrived at Italy yesterday'.

**Relinquō**, **relinquere**, **reliquī**, **relictus**, 'leave behind, abandon', has an **-n-** only in the present stem; the English words "relinquish" and "derelict" might be helpful in remembering the roots of the principal parts of this verb.

**Retegō** (**re-** + **tegō**) does *not* mean 'cover again' but 'uncover, reveal'.

**Ūnā** is an adverb meaning 'together, at the same time'; often it is used with **cum**: **Ad Italiam ūnā cum sorōre ivi**, 'I went to Italy together with my sister'. Of course, this same sentence could be translated, 'I went to Italy with one sister', but usually this ambiguity does not occur.

**Vertō**, **vertere**, **vertī**, **versus**, has the same stem in the present and perfect active; **vertit** is both 'he turns' and 'he has turned'. Since this verb has many compounds, if one thinks of English derivatives, it is easy to remember the principal parts. For example, consider "convert, conversion; invert, inversion". **Animadvertō** means literally 'turn the mind to', and so 'notice'.

**Vetō**, 'forbid', is one of the few verbs of the first conjugation that do not follow the usual pattern of principal parts: **vetō**, **vetāre**, **vetuī**, **vetitus**.

## FREQUENTATIVE VERBS

Frequentative (sometimes called iterative) verbs are usually first conjugation verbs that are formed from the stem of the perfect passive participle of another verb (of any conjugation) and have the idea of repeated or forcible action, although sometimes this idea is lost.



**captō** (1), 'strive to seize, lay hold with zeal *or* longing; catch at' (from **capiō**)

**clāmitō\*** (1), 'cry out violently *or* aloud' (from **clāmō**)

**cursō** (1), 'run here and there *or* back and forth' (from **currō**)

**dictō** (1), 'say often' (from **dicō**)

**factitō†** (1), 'make *or* do frequently; be wont to make *or* do' (from **faciō**)

**fugitō** (1), 'flee eagerly *or* in haste; shun' (from **fugiō**)

**habitō** (1), 'have frequently, be wont to have; inhabit' (from **habeō**)

**lectitō†** (1), 'gather *or* collect eagerly *or* often; read often *or* with eagerness *or* with attention' (from **legō**)

**scriptitō†** (1), 'write often, compose' (from **scribō**)

\* Frequentatives made from first conjugation verbs end in **-itō** rather than **-ātō**.

† Here **-itō** has been added to the participial stem.

The following, although frequentatives, have lost the frequentative meaning:

**ductō** (1), 'lead, draw, conduct; delude' (from **dūcō**)

**inceptō** (1), 'begin, undertake, attempt' (from **incipiō**)

**gestō** (1), 'bear, carry, have' (from **gerō**)

**Vīsō**, **visere**, **vīsī**, **vīsus**, although not a first conjugation verb, is a frequentative meaning 'look at attentively'. From this verb another frequentative is formed, **vīsītō** (1), 'see, go to see, visit'.

## INCHOATIVE VERBS

Inchoative (also called inceptive) verbs add the ending **-scō**, **-scere** either to the present stem of another verb or to the stem of a noun or adjective in order to indicate the beginning of an action. The inchoative verb has no perfect tense of its own, but it may use that of the verb on which it is based.

**ardescō**, **-ere**, **arsī**, --, 'take fire, kindle, be inflamed, gleam'

(**ardeō**, **-ēre**, **arsī**, **arsus**, 'be on fire, burn')

**calescō**, **-ere**, **caluī**, --, 'grow warm'

(**caleō**, **-ēre**, **caluī**, --, 'be hot')

**candescō**, **-ere**, **canduī**, --, 'become bright'

(**candeō**, **-ēre**, **canduī**, --, 'glitter, shine')

**fervescō**, **-ere**, --, --, 'become boiling'

(**ferveō**, **-ēre**, **ferbuī**, --, 'be boiling hot, boil')

**liquescō**, **-ere**, **licuī**, --, 'become fluid *or* liquid, melt'

(**liqueō**, **-ēre**, **liquī** *or* **licuī**, --, 'be fluid *or* clear')

**lūcescō**, **-ere**, --, --, 'begin to shine, grow light'

(**lūceō**, **-ēre**, **lūxī**, --, 'be light, clear; shine')

**rubescō**, **-ere**, **rubuī**, --, 'grow red'

(**rubeō**, **-ēre**, **rubuī**, --, 'be red')



**valēscō, -ere, valūī, --, 'grow strong'**  
**(valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, 'be strong')**  
**irāscor,\* -ī, irātus sum, 'grow angry'**  
**(īra, -ae, F., 'anger')**  
**mitēscō,\* -ere, --, --, 'grow mild'**  
**(mitis, -e, 'mild')**

\* Note that a connecting vowel is sometimes added between the stem and the inchoative suffix.

Some verbs although inchoative in form have no inchoative force in their meaning:

**crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, 'grow, spring forth'**  
**ignōscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtus, 'be forgiving, forgive, pardon'**  
**obliscor, -ī, oblitus sum, 'forget'**  
**proficiscor, -ī, profectus sum, 'set forth, set out, start'**

## UNIT SEVENTEEN — DRILL

1. Verēmur nē fulgor domūs dēleat.
2. Timuērunt nē hostēs oppidum oppugnātūrī essent.
3. Veritī sumus ut iuvenēs lēgibus novīs pārērent.
4. Timuistis nē veterēs in prōvinciā novā ūtilēs nōn essent.
5. Dē hōc tibi dicere dubitābam.
6. Quis est quī dubitet quīn multō optimus magister sis?
7. Dubitāvimus an senēs primā lūce ventūrī essent.
8. Dubitātis num multum discāmus.
9. Nōn dubitāmus quīn multum discāmus.
10. Ivērunt Rōmam Caesarem vīsum.
11. Dolor erat difficilis lātū.
12. Liber erat facilis lēctū.
13. Nōn est dubium quīn liber facilis lēctū sit.
14. a) Civēs verentur ut urbs quam optimē mūniātur.  
 b) Lēgātum igitur ad cōsulem auxilium rogātum mittent.  
 c) Dubium est an eīs cum veniā respōnsūrus sit.
15. Tē vetō istud facere.
16. a) Dēterrēbō quōminus istud faciās.  
 b) Dēterrēbō nē istud faciās.  
 c) Nōn dēterrēbō quōminus istud faciās.  
 d) Num dēterreō quīn istud faciās?

## 17. Tuus pater mäterque veniunt.

Rewrite this sentence after each of the following introductory words or phrases:

- a) Timeō ut
- b) Timeō nē
- c) Vetō
- d) Dēterreō
- e) Nōn dēterreō

## 18. Soror frātrī dōnum dat.

Rewrite this sentence after the five introductory words or phrases given under 17 above.

## UNIT SEVENTEEN — PRELIMINARY EXERCISES (SECTIONS A, B)

1. Metuō ut ūnā vēnātūrī simus.
2. Timuistī nē illō tempore relictus essēs?
3. Verēmur ut adulēscētēs urbem nostram cum celeritātē dēfendant.
4. Metuisne nē facta turpia sociōrum nōn cēlāta sint?
5. Timeō nē reliquī ad urbem nōn perveniant.
6. Dubitō num religiō nōbis prōfutūra sit.
7. Dubitāsne an nōs ad hās rēs animadvertāmus?
8. Dubium nōn est quīn mihi magnus metus sit.
9. Nōn dubitāvērunt quīn ortum sōlis vidērent.
10. Dubitāre numquam dēsiit num ad āram pervenirēs.
11. Quis dubitat quīn sōl oriātur?
12. Dubitāvērunt an hostēs patriam invāsissent.

## UNIT SEVENTEEN — EXERCISES

## I.

1. Vereor ut vincēns tuis parsūrus sit.
2. Ūnum illud timēbam nē quid turpius facerem, vel dicam, iam effēcissem.
3. Nōn dubium est quīn uxōrem nōlit fīlius. [uxor, uxōris, F., 'wife']
4. Nōn dubitārī dēbet quīn fuerint ante Homērum poētae. [Homērus, -ī, M., 'Homer', a Greek epic poet]
5. Nōn dēterret sapientem mors quōminus rei pūblicae auxiliō sit.
6. Aetās nōn impedit quōminus sapiēns bene vivendī cupidus sit.
7. Adest vir summā auctōritātē et religiōne et fidē quī nōs dēterrere potest nē plūra loquāmur.

8. Tū modo nē mē prohibeās accipere, sī quid det mihi, [**modo** (adv.), 'just']
9. Dēsinite dubitāre utrum sit ūtilius.
10. Honestumne factū sit dubitant.
11. Spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae.
12. Metuō quid futūrum dēnique sit.
13. Difficile est mihi omnia dē quibus dubitō ad tē referre.
14. Neque enim dubitandum putō quā aqua dūcenda sit in illam cīvitātem.
15. Opus est quam primum aliquō quod aquam in cīvitātem cum celeritāte dūcat.
16. Vērē spērō tē eā quā dēbēbis diligentīā hoc opus factūrum.
17. Vēnātum Aenēās ūnāque miserrima Dīdō  
in nemus ire parant, ubi prīmōs crāstinus ortūs  
extulerit Tītān radiisque retēxerit orbem.

(Vergil, *Aeneid* iv.117-119)

[**Aenēās**, proper name, a Roman hero; **Dīdō**, proper name, the queen of Carthage; **crāstinus**, -a, -um, 'pertaining to tomorrow, tomorrow's'; **Tītān**, a god, 'the sun']

18. Sapientēs antīquī sōlis et lūnae reliquōrumque sīderum ortūs, obitūs, mōtūsque cognōscere voluērunt.
19. Tū prō tuā sapientiā quid optimum factū sit vidēbis; omnēs multō prius animadvertērunt tē intellegentiōrem esse illis hanc cīvitātem regentibus.  
[**prō**, *here*, 'by virtue of']
20. Omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt, nec prius fugere destitērunt, quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt.
21. Lēgātum suum ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque parcat.
22. a) Vōs dēfendere relictam urbem vetāmus.  
b) Dubium est an relictam urbem dēfēnsūrus sit.  
c) Eis obstat quōminus relictam urbem dēfendant.
23. Ortō sōle, nēmō erat quī dubitāret quā cōpiaē nostrae eō diē omnīnō superārent.
24. Cum tanta scelera fēcissent, omnēs impiī metuērunt ut sōl eō diē horridō orīrētur.
25. Nōn vērō periculum erat nē nōn mortem optandam putāret.
26. Num est periculum nē quis putet turpe esse?
27. Veritus est nē vērārī nōn posset.
28. Nē quod bellum orīrētur metus erat.
29. Vidēsne enim, quae dubia sint, ea crēdi prō certis?

## II.

1. He was (a man) of such sanctity that he kept the leaders from committing crimes.

2. a) We fear that he will reveal the crimes of this house.  
 b) We fear that he revealed the crimes of this house.  
 c) We fear that he is revealing the crimes of this house.  
 d) We feared that he would reveal the crimes of this house.
3. The honorable men doubted whether his lifetime had been well spent.
4. The honorable men did not doubt that his lifetime had been well spent.
5. Stop hunting! I forbid you to kill more animals.

## UNIT SEVENTEEN — CONNECTED READINGS

Caesar, *Gallie War* VI.11

Quoniam ad hunc locum<sup>1</sup> perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant<sup>2</sup> hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pāgis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritatem eōrum<sup>3</sup> iūdicīō habēre existimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.<sup>4</sup> Idque eius rei causā antiquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxilii egēret; suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumveniri nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritatem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā<sup>5</sup> tōtius Galliae; namque omnēs civitatēs divisae sunt in duās partēs.

**aliter** (*adv.*), otherwise  
**antiquitus** (*adv.*), in ancient times, long ago  
**arbitrium**, -i, *N.*, decision, judgment  
**circumveniō** (*circum* + *veniō*), surround  
**dividō**, -ere, -visi, -visus, divide  
**egeō**, -ēre, -uī, --, be in need of (+ *gen.*)  
**existimō** (*I*), think, estimate, judge, deem  
**factiō**, -ōnis, *F.*, faction, (political) party  
**nātiō**, -ōnis, *F.*, nation

**pāgus**, -i, *M.*, district  
**potēns**, **potentis**, powerful  
**princeps**, **principis**, *M.*, leader, chief  
**prōpōnō** (*prō* + *pōnō*), set forth, report  
**ratiō**, -ōnis, *F.*, plan, reason, rationale  
**sēsē**, = *sē*  
**singulī**, -ae, -a, single, one by one  
**summa**, -ae, *F.*, control, main point

<sup>1</sup> **hunc locum**: i.e., in his narrative. Caesar has been writing about his conquests in Gaul and Germany and now pauses to speak about the culture of these countries.

<sup>2</sup> **quō differant**: indirect question dependent on **prōpōnere**; **quō** = **quō modō**

<sup>3</sup> **eōrum**: refers to the Gauls

<sup>4</sup> **redeat**: subjunctive in a relative clause of characteristic; translate 'is referred'

<sup>5</sup> **in summā**: 'generally'

Caesar, *Gallie War* VI.12

Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis principēs erant Aeduī,<sup>6</sup> alterius Sēquani.<sup>6</sup> Hi cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antiquitus erat in Aeduīs<sup>6</sup> magnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum<sup>7</sup> sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē magnis iactūris pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō complūribus factis secundis atque omnī nōbilitate Aeduōrum<sup>6</sup> interfectā, tantum<sup>8</sup> potentiā antecesserant ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs<sup>6</sup> ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab his principum filiōs acciperent, et publicē iūrāre cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs<sup>6</sup> cōnsiliū<sup>9</sup> initūrōs, et partem finitimī agri per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius principātum obtinērent. Quā necessitate adductus Diviciācus<sup>10</sup> auxiliū petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtatiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs<sup>6</sup> redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs, quod ii qui sē ad eōrum amicitiam aggregāverant

accipiō (ad + capiō), take over, receive  
addūcō (ad + dūcō), lead to, influence  
adiungō (ad + iungō), join to, attach  
adventus, -ūs, *M.*, arrival  
aggregō (*l*), add, adhere; join  
antecēdō (ante + cēdō), go before, excel  
antiquitus (*adv.*), in ancient times, long ago  
cliēns, clientis, *M.*, dependent  
clientēla, -ae, *F.*, dependent, dependency  
cōgō, -ere, cōēgi, cōactus, compel  
commūtatiō, -ōnis, *F.*, change  
comparō (*l*), acquire  
complūrēs, -a (-ia), several  
dignitās, -tātis, *F.*, dignity  
factiō, -ōnis, *F.*, faction, (political) party  
finitimus, -a, -um, nearby, neighboring  
grātia, -ae, *F.*, grace, favor  
iactūra, -ae, *F.*, loss; expense, cost  
ineō (in + eō), go into, begin  
infectus, -a, -um (in + faciō), not done  
iūrō (*l*), swear  
necessitās, -tātis, *F.*, need, necessity

nōbilitās, -tātis, *F.*, nobility  
obses, obsidis, *M. + F.*, hostage  
obteneō (ob + teneō), obtain  
occupō (*l*), occupy  
perdūcō (per + dūcō), lead to, win over, persuade  
pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, promise  
possideō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessus, seize, possess  
potentia, -ae, *F.*, power  
princeps, principis, *M.*, leader, chief  
principātus, -ūs, *M.*, leadership  
proelium, -i, *N.*, battle  
publicē (*adv.*), in public  
reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus, return  
restituō, -ere, restitui, restitūtus, set up again, restore  
secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable  
senātus, -ūs, *M.*, senate  
trādūcō (trāns + dūcō), lead over, win over  
valeō, -ēre, -ui, valitus, be well, be strong, be influential

<sup>6</sup> Aeduī, Sēquani: Gallic tribes

<sup>7</sup> Ariovistus: a German king

<sup>8</sup> tantum: *here*, as adverb, 'so much, to such a degree'

<sup>9</sup> cōnsiliū: the partitive genitive is dependent on nihil

<sup>10</sup> Diviciācus: a chief of the Aedui who was a friend of Caesar



meliorē condiōne atque aequiorē imperiō sē ūti vidēbant, reliquis rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitāteque amplificātā, Sēquani<sup>6</sup> principātum dimiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī<sup>11</sup> successerant; quōs<sup>12</sup> quod adaequāre apud Caesarem<sup>13</sup> grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimicitias nūllō modō cum Aeduīs<sup>6</sup> coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs<sup>11</sup> in clientēlam dicābant.<sup>14</sup> Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs Aeduī<sup>6</sup> habērentur, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī<sup>11</sup> obtinērent.

**adaequō** (l), be equal (to)

**aequus**, -a, -um, equal; level; equitable, just

**amplificō** (l), make bigger, amplify

**clientēla**, -ae, *F.*, dependent, dependency

**colligō** (com- + legō), gather, collect

**condiciō**, -ōnis, *F.*, condition, terms

**coniungō** (com- + iungō), join, join together

**dicō** (l), declare, proclaim

**dignitās**, -tātis, *F.*, dignity

**diligenter** (*adv.*), diligently

**dimittō** (dis- + mittō), dismiss, give up

**grātiā**, -ae, *F.*, grace, favor

**obtineō** (ob + teneō), obtain

**princeps**, **principis**, *M.*, leader, chief

**principātus**, -ūs, *M.*, leadership

**repente** (*adv.*), suddenly

**secundus**, -a, -um, second; favorable

**status**, -ūs, *M.*, state, condition, situation

**succēdō** (sub + cēdō), go beneath, approach, advance

**tueor**, -ēri, **tūtus sum**, watch, protect

<sup>11</sup> **Rēmī**: a Gallic tribe

<sup>12</sup> **quōs**: subject accusative of the infinitive **adaequāre**

<sup>13</sup> **apud Caesarem**: 'in Caesar's eyes'

<sup>14</sup> **Sē . . . in clientēlam dicābant**: i.e., 'they attached themselves (to)'

# UNIT EIGHTEEN

## A. Subjunctive by Attraction

We have seen earlier (Unit Seven, section J) that relative clauses in indirect statements usually have their verbs in the subjunctive. This is also frequently the case with relative and other subordinate clauses within clauses whose verbs are in the subjunctive, provided that the subordinate clause is an integral part of the idea of the main clause. The verbs in such subordinate clauses are said to be *attracted* into the subjunctive by the sheer force of the verb that governs the larger construction.

Rōmam profectus est ut illam urbem	He set out for Rome in order that
quō amīcī īssent periculō servāret.	he might save from danger that
	city where his friends <i>had gone</i> .

## B. *futūrum esse ut; fore ut*

Although Latin has a future passive infinitive, it is not commonly found and consequently its form and use have been omitted from this book. When a future passive idea had to be expressed in indirect statement, a periphrasis was used as follows:

He knows <i>that</i> the citizens <i>will be conquered</i> .	Scit <b>futūrum esse ut</b> cīvēs
He knows <i>that it will be (with the result) that</i>	<b>superentur.</b>
the citizens <i>be conquered</i> .	

The futurity is expressed in **futūrum esse**; the verbal idea in the English indirect statement is expressed in an **ut** clause of result (**ut . . . superentur**).

**Fore** is an alternate way of expressing **futūrum esse**.

Sentit <b>fore</b> ut ipse ā civibus	He feels <i>that it will be</i> that he (himself) be
laudētur.	praised by the citizens; he feels that he (himself) will be praised by the citizens.
Dixit <b>fore</b> ut librī ā poētīs	He said <i>that it would be</i> that books be written
scriberentur.	by the poets; he said that books would be written by the poets.

This construction is also used to stand for an *active* idea in future time when the verb in question has no fourth principal part and therefore can have no future active infinitive.

Putat fore ut ille vir carmen scribere possit. He thinks *that it will be that* that man *be able* to write a poem; he thinks *that* that man *will be able* to write a poem.

Possum, posse, potui has no fourth principal part and so no future active infinitive; the periphrasis is essential in this case to express the future idea.

### C. The Historical Infinitive

Occasionally an infinitive is used in narrative passages instead of a finite verb where the English demands a finite verb. Such infinitives are called *historical* infinitives and emphasize the pure verbal action rather than the agents of that action.

In viis urbis heri currere, clamare, fortiter pugnare. In the streets of the city yesterday (there were) *running, shouting, fighting* bravely; in the streets of the city yesterday (men/they) were *running, shouting, fighting* bravely.

The historical infinitive, in which one can most clearly see the function of the infinitive as a pure verbal noun, is one of the earliest uses of the infinitive.

Yesterday in the streets of the city *running* (occurred), *shouting* (occurred), brave *fighting* (occurred).

The subject of an historical infinitive is in the *nominative* case.

Homō acriter pugnare. *The man* fought fiercely.

### D. Shortened or Syncopated Forms of the Perfect Active System of Verbs

Forms of the perfect tenses which have -vi- or -ve- in them are sometimes shortened or syncopated by dropping the -vi- or -ve-. Observe:

amāstī	FOR	amāvistī
amārunt		amāvērunt
amārim		amāverim
audisse		audīvisse
audissem		audīvissem
dēlērunt		dēlēvērunt
dēlēssem		dēlēvissem
laudāssēmus		laudāvissēmus
amāstis		amāvistis

**E. -ēre for -ērunt in the Third Person Plural, Perfect Active Indicative**

The ending **-ēre** is sometimes used in poetry and high style prose as an alternate for **-ērunt**:

amāvēre	FOR	amāvērunt
dixēre		dixērunt

**F. The Greek Accusative: Accusative of Respect or Accusative After Verbs in the Middle Voice**

The ablative case is regularly used in Latin to express *respect* or *specification* (see Unit Eight, section D). Occasionally in poetry and in late Latin the accusative is found with this function. This is really a Greek construction which has been borrowed by the Latin.

**Ferrum** cingitur. He is girded *with respect to a sword*; he girds on a sword.

The Greek verb has three voices: active, passive, and middle. The middle voice often has the same forms as the passive, but it is used in a reflexive sense; that is, the subject at the same time performs the action and experiences its effect(s). In the example above, **cingitur** may be explained as the equivalent of a Greek middle, meaning literally 'he girds (a sword) on himself'. If we interpret **cingitur** in this way, then **ferrum** may be explained alternatively as the *object* of the middle verb **cingitur**. Whichever way we choose to interpret the grammar, the construction involved is a Greek one.

The accusative of respect is frequently used to express the *part affected*:

**Caput** vulnerātus est. He was wounded *with respect to his head*; he was wounded *in the head*.

**Ōs** pallōre suffūsa est. She was suffused *with respect to her face* with pallor; she was suffused with pallor *in her face*.

**G. Adverbial Accusative**

Closely allied to the accusative of respect is the so-called *adverbial accusative*. What is in fact an accusative of respect functions adverbially:

<b>Maximam partem</b> ille vir sapientissimus est.	<i>With respect to the greatest part</i> , that man is very wise; <i>for the most part</i> that man is very wise.
--	---

<b>Id</b> temporis magnus numerus lēgātōrum ad urbem vēnit.	<i>With respect to that</i> of time, a great number of legates came to the city; <i>at that</i> time a great number of legates came to the city.
---	--

**Multum** labōrat ut ā civibus laudētur. He works *with respect to much* in order that he may be praised by the citizens; he works *a lot* in order that he may be praised by the citizens.

### H. Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting

The genitive is frequently used with verbs and expressions of remembering and forgetting.

**Mātris et patris** bene memini. I remember *my mother and father* well.

**Dolōris** nūper oblitus eram. I had recently forgotten *my grief*.

**Virtūtis** eōrum nōn oblivīscor. I do not forget their *courage*.

Note that the accusative is also found with verbs and expressions of remembering and forgetting.

### I. Genitive of Indefinite Value

A few neuter adjectives and some nouns implying utter worthlessness, such as **as**, **assis**, M., 'as' (a small denomination of money), **floccus**, -ī, M., 'a lock of wool', and **nihilum**, -ī, N., 'nothing', are sometimes used in the genitive case to express the value of a person, thing, or situation when that value is not specifically determined or is indefinite. This use of the genitive is generally found with verbs meaning 'consider', 'reckon', and 'value'.

**Magni** mē habet. He considers me *of great (value)*.

**Parvi** suam civitatem facit. He reckons (makes) his state *of little (value)*.

**Familiam suam flocci** dūcit. He considers his family *of a lock of wool*; he doesn't care *at all* for his family; he doesn't give *a damn* for his family.

### J. Ablative of Price

The instrumental ablative (ablative of means) is used with some expressions to express the price of something.

**Villam suam magnō (pretiō)** vendidit. He sold his country house *by means of a great price*; he sold his country house *at a great price*.

**Nēmō** est qui **pāce** bellum mūtet. There is no one who would (ex)change war *by means of peace*; there is no one who would exchange war *for peace*.

### K. *quod*, 'the fact that'

A substantive clause introduced by **quod**, 'the fact that', and with its verb in the indicative is sometimes used as the subject or object of another verb, or in apposition to the subject of that other verb.



<b>Quod</b> ille coniugem tantum amat mē movet.	<i>The fact that</i> that man loves (his) wife so much moves me. (subject of main verb)
Alterum est periculum, <b>quod</b> iste plūs imperiī vult.	The other danger is <i>the fact that</i> that man (of yours) wants more power. (in apposition to subject of main verb)
Neglēxērunt <b>quod</b> ego civitāti multōs annōs prōsum.	They have neglected <i>the fact that</i> I have been useful to the state for many years. (object of main verb)

## UNIT EIGHTEEN — VOCABULARY

aestimō (1)	estimate, reckon
as, assis, -ium, M.	as (a small denomination of money)
cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīctus	surround, gird
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus	buy
honor, honōris, M.	honor, distinction, office
meminī, meminisse (defective verb)	remember
nihilum, -ī, N.	nothing
numerus, -ī, M.	number
oblīviscor, oblīviscī, oblītus sum	forget
pretium, -ī, N.	price; value
pūgna, -ae, F.	battle, fight
quod sī	but if
vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditus	sell
vulnerō (1)	wound

## UNIT EIGHTEEN — NOTES ON VOCABULARY

**Cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīctus**, 'surround, gird', lengthens the -i- in the perfect active stem since it is followed by -nx- and in the perfect passive stem since it is followed by -nct-.

In the perfect forms of **emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus**, 'buy', the e- is long. **Ēmptor**, 'buyer', is a well-known word because of the famous expression, **Caveat ēmptor**, 'Let the buyer beware' (**caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus**, 'be on guard, take care, beware').

**Meminī**, 'remember', is a defective verb like **ōdī**; it is found only in the perfect tenses and the perfect tense is translated as present, the pluperfect as past, and the future perfect as future. Often this verb governs the genitive: **Patriae meministī**? 'Do you remember your native land?'

**Numerus, numerī, M.**, is not only 'number' but can also mean 'a group': **Iste in numerō nostrō nōn est**, 'That (awful) man is not in our group (crowd)'.

**Obliviscor, obliviscī, oblītus sum**, 'forget', often governs the genitive case: **In mediō bellō metūs oblītus est**, 'In the midst of the war he forgot his fear'.

**Pūgna, pūgnae, F.**, 'battle, fight', is related to **pūgnō**; they both have the same root.

**Quod sī** means 'but if'. Remember that **quod** has several different meanings: 'because', 'which' (the neuter relative pronoun), 'which?', 'what?' (interrogative adjective), and 'the fact that'.

**Vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus**, is a contraction of **vēnum dō**, 'give a sale', and so it means 'sell'.

**Vulnerō**, a first conjugation verb, 'wound' is a denominative verb from **vulnus, vulneris, N.**, 'wound'.

### COMPOUND WORDS

In addition to using prefixes and suffixes to compound words, Latin may combine a noun stem with a verb or verb stem, an adverb with a verb, or an adjective with a noun. Other combinations also exist.

**manumittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus**, 'set at liberty, free a slave'

**armiger, -a, -um**, 'bearing weapons, armed, warlike'

(used substantively, **armiger, -ī, M.**, 'armor-bearer, shield-bearer')

**benedicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus**, 'commend, praise'

**caelicola, -ae, M.** (**caelum + colō, ere, coluī, cultus**, 'dwell'), 'god'

**magnanimus, -a, -um** 'great-souled, magnanimous'

**avipēs, -pedis (avis, avis, F., 'bird'), 'bird-footed, swift-footed'**

Some of the principles of Latin word formation are illustrated in the accompanying diagram of the verb **amō**.



## UNIT EIGHTEEN — DRILL

1. Multi hominēs familiam parvi habuēre.
2. Cottidiē multum studēmus ut multa discāmus.
3. Dixit futūrum esse ut dux ā militibus nōn metuerētur.
4. Populus tōtus spērat fore ut hostēs vincantur.
5. Memorēs periculi magnā cum cūrā in nemus ingressi sunt.
6. Remānsit Aenēās clārāque in lūce refulsit ('gleamed') ōs umerōsque ('shoulders') deō similis.
7. Signum Iūnō mōnstrārat; sic nam fore bellō ēgregiam et facilem victū per aetātēs gentem. [ēgregius, -a, -um, 'outstanding']
8. Quod populus tōtus eum timet duci saevō magnopere placet.
9. Ōdit quod populus tōtus eum timet.
10. Cum villam amīci relinquere properārent, statuās tamen plūrimā pecūniā ēmtās ('bought') animadvertēre.
11. Cum multum laudāssent fortiōra facta ducis, omnēs dixērunt eum nōn diū victūrum.
12. Cēlāta corpus umbris, fēmina saeva cui nōn erat fidēs per ardēns oppidum errāvit.
13. Postquam in tēctum ingressi sunt, aliī rēgem quaerere; aliī aliōs visōs interficere; quaerere loca cēlāta; clausa ('closed') aperīre; strepitū ('noise') et tumultū ('confusion') omnia miscēre dum rēx invenīrētur.
14. Nēmō est cui quotquot ('however much') sit pecūniae placeat.
15. Relinquāmus omnēs terram quam incolāmus ut libertātem vitamque novam petāmus.

## UNIT EIGHTEEN — EXERCISES

## I.

1. Ille amicitiam parvi habet, quī pecūniam amīcis semper praepōnat.
2. Illud cōsiliū boni faciō.
3. Quinque librōs duōbus ferris ēmi.
4. Postquam domum multā cum pecūniā rediēre, meministine quantum istae ā civibus suis laudātae sint? Pecūniane eis tanti (pretii) erat?
5. Fāma Caesaris erat plūris civibus Rōmānis quam aliōrum ducum. Virium ac virtūtis eius numquam obliti sunt. Eārum etiam nunc meminērunt.
6. Cum vidērem fore ut cum nūntiō colloquī nōn possem, cōstituī mē quam celerrimē domum recipere ubi cognōscerem quid in campō nūper accidisset.
7. Metū mortis neglēctō, cōpiae pericula pūgnae nihili aestimārunt.
8. Ille miser virtūtem honōremque pecūniā vendidit. Cīvēs eum nunc parvī dūcunt. Quod iste sē ita gessit hominēs mōrum bonōrum in omnī orbe terrarum taedet.

9. Quis fāmam divitiis mūtārit? Nēmō est qui crēdat futūrum esse ut tālis esse miser umquam dēsinat.
10. Putant fore ut nēmō ē civibus metuat nē plūs imperiī capere velit.
11. Si carmina illius poētae audisset, ea magnī habuisset.
12. Pollicitus est sē Rōmam properātūrum esse; aliōs illūc iam properāsse.
13. Carmina Paulus emit, recitat sua carmina Paulus.  
Nam quod emās possis iūre vocāre tuum.  
(Martial 2.20)

[Paulus, -ī, M., proper name; recitō (1), 'recite']

14. Quis autem eum magnī dūcat quem multum metuat vel ā quō sē metui putet?
15. Ab aliō expectēs alterī quod fēceris.
16. Mors tam mihi grāta est ut, quō propius ad eam accēdam, quasi terram vidēre videar post longum in nāve iter.
17. Quod sī quem socium caput vulnerātum in urbe vidisti, mōnstrā eum mihi sine morā! [caput, capitis, N., 'head']
18. Mūtā iam istam mentem, mihi crēde, obliviscere timōris atque dubii!
19. Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,  
rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum  
omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis.  
(Catullus 5.1–3)

[sevērus, -a, -um, 'stern, severe']

20. Istōs hominēs, ferra cinctōs, populus maximē timet. Nam imperātor omnēs rēs horridās per eōs agere, in amīcis habēre, eōs maximī aestimat.

## II.

1. Although the man was wounded in the foot, he forgot his pain and, for the most part, fought courageously.
2. He said that he would not be able to sell his sword for much money; in times of peace, others don't value such weapons highly.
3. The fact that he bought his own safety at the price of the freedom of his people disgusts me.
4. I wanted to gird myself with a sword in order that I might drive back the soldiers who were rushing into the city.



## UNIT EIGHTEEN — CONNECTED READINGS

Caesar, *Gallie War* vi.14 (For an adaptation of the content of *Gallie War* vi.13, which provides the link between the connected reading in Unit Seventeen and that which follows, see the exercises of Unit Thirteen.)

Druidēs<sup>1</sup> ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dicuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūlli XX in disciplinā permanent. Neque fās esse existimant ea litteris mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicis privātisque ratiōnibus, Graecis litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplinam efferrī velint, neque eōs quī discunt litteris cōnfisōs minus memoriae studēre<sup>2</sup> — quod ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārū diligentiam in perdiscendō ac memoriam remittant. In primis hoc volunt persuādere, nōn interire animās,<sup>3</sup> sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtutem excitārī<sup>4</sup> putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac terrārū magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūti trādunt.

cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, trust fully (+ *dat.*)  
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, be accustomed  
conveniō (com- + veniō), gather, come together

disciplina, -ae, *F.*, training

disputō (l), dispute

ēdiscō (ē + discō), learn thoroughly, learn by heart

excitō (l), arouse, excite

existimō (l), think, judge, deem

fās, *N.* (*indeclinable*), right, divine right

ferē (*adv.*), almost

intereō (inter + eō), die

iuventūs, -tūtis, *F.*, young manhood, youth

magnitudō, -tūdinis, *F.*, size, magnitude

mandō (l), entrust

mundus, -ī, *M.*, world

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, not none, *i.e.*, some

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, weigh out, pay

perdiscō (per + discō), learn thoroughly

permaneō (per + maneō), stay through, continue, persist

plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, most (of), the larger part (of)

potestās, -tātis, *F.*, power

praesidium, -ī, *N.*, help, aid

praetereā (*adv.*), besides

primus, -a, -um, first

in primis, especially, first of all

privātus, -a, -um, private

propinquus, -a, -um, near, close by

propinquus, -ī, *M.*, relative

ratiō, -ōnis, *F.*, reason, plan; account

remittō (re- + mittō), send back; relax, weaken

sponte (*abl. F.*), of one's own will, voluntarily

trānseō (trāns + eō), cross over

tribūtum, -ī, *N.*, tribute, tax

versus, -ūs, *M.*, a line of poetry, verse

vulgus, -ī, *N.*, common people, crowd

<sup>1</sup> Druidēs, -um, *M.*: the Druids, the priests and wise men of Gaul

<sup>2</sup> studēre: *here*, 'pay attention to'

<sup>3</sup> nōn interire animās, *sed* . . . ad aliōs . . . : The entire clause is in apposition to *hoc*.

<sup>4</sup> excitārī: Supply *hominēs* as the subject.

Caesar, *Gallie War* vi.15

Alterum genus<sup>5</sup> est equitum. Hi, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita<sup>6</sup> plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiā potentiamque nōvērunt.

Caesar, *Gallie War* vi.16

Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur aut prō victimis hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent, administrisque ad<sup>7</sup> ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur,<sup>8</sup> nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; pūblicēque eiusdem generis habent institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvis hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut in aliquā noxā sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia dēficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

administer, administrī, *M.*, attendant  
admodum (*adv.*), in a high degree, very much  
adventus, -ūs, *M.*, arrival  
afficiō (ad + faciō), do to, affect  
ambactus, -ī, *M.*, dependent, vassal  
amplus, -a, -um, great, ample  
circumveniō (circum + veniō), surround  
cliēs, clientis, *M.*, dependent  
compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, fill completely  
comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, seize, catch, arrest  
contextō, -ere, -texui, -textus, weave together; plait  
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus, give up, surrender  
dēficiō (dē + faciō), fail, give out  
dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, go down, descend; resort  
eques, equitis, *M.*, horseman, knight  
exanimō (*l*), exhaust; take breath from, kill  
ferē (*adv.*), almost  
fūrtum, -ī, *N.*, theft  
grātia, -ae, *F.*, grace, favor  
immānis, -e, great, huge, large  
immolō (*l*), sacrifice, immolate  
incidō (in + cadō), fall upon; happen  
iniūria, -ae, *F.*, injury, wrong; outrage  
innocēns, innocentis, innocent

latrōcinium, -ī, *N.*, robbery  
magnitūdō, -tūdinis, *F.*, size, magnitude  
membrum, -ī, *N.*, limb  
morbis, -ī, *M.*, disease  
nātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, nation  
plācō (*l*), placate, appease  
potentia, -ae, *F.*, power, influence  
proelium, -ī, *N.*, battle  
prōpulsō (*l*), drive off  
pūblicē (*adv.*), in public  
quotannis (*adv.*), yearly  
reddō, -ere, reddidī, redditus, return, give back, give in return  
religiō, -ōnis, *F.*, here, religion  
sacrificium, -ī, *N.*, sacrifice  
simulācrum, -ī, *N.*, image, statue  
succendō, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus, ignite from below, burn  
supplicium, -ī, *N.*, punishment  
utī, = ut  
versō (*l*), keep turning; *in passive*, be engaged, be busy  
victima, -ae, *F.*, victim, sacrificial animal  
vīmen, -inis, *N.*, pliant twig  
vīvus, -a, -um, living, alive  
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, vow

<sup>5</sup> *alterum genus*: The first class of people mentioned in Gaul was the Druids; now Caesar turns his attention to the knights. See sentence 51 in Unit Thirteen.

<sup>6</sup> *ut . . . ita*: used correlatively (e.g., 'As' Maine goes, 'so' goes the nation.)

<sup>7</sup> *ad*: here, 'for'

<sup>8</sup> *reddātur*: present subjunctive representing the indicative in a present general condition in indirect statement. See *Appendix*, pp. 397-399.

Caesar, *Gallie War* vi.17

Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt; huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,<sup>9</sup> hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad<sup>10</sup> quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs habent opiniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dimicāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvoent; cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locis cōnsecrātis cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

Caesar, *Gallie War* vi.18

Galli sē omnēs ab Dite<sup>11</sup> patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium finiunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sic observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquis vitāe institūtis hōc ferē ab reliquis differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur, filiumque puerili aetate in pūblicō in cōspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

adeō (ad + eō), approach  
adolēscō, -ere, adolēvī, adultus, grow up  
artificium, -i, *N.*, handicraft  
assistō, -ere, -stitī, --, stand near  
caelestis, -e, heavenly  
colō, -ere, -uī, cultus, cultivate, worship  
cōnsecrō (l), consecrate  
cōnspectus, -ūs, *M.*, view, sight  
cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, observe, see  
cruciātus, -ūs, *M.*, torture  
dēpellō (dē + pellō), drive away  
dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, vōtus, vow, dedicate  
dimicō (l), fight  
exstruō, -ere, -trūxī, -trūctus, pile up  
ferē (*adv.*), almost  
finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus, set limits to  
immolō (l), sacrifice, immolate  
initium, -i, *N.*, beginning  
institūtum, -i, *N.*, practice, custom  
inventor, -ōris, *M.*, inventor, founder  
liberi, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, children  
mēnsis, -is, -ium, *F.*, month  
mercātūra, -ae, *F.*, trade  
militia, -ae, *F.*, warfare, military service

morbus, -i, *M.*, disease  
mūnus, -eris, *N.*, gift; duty, task  
nātālis, -e, pertaining to birth, of birth  
observō (l), observe  
occultō (l), hide  
palam (*adv.*), openly  
plērumque (*adv.*), generally, for the most part  
praedicō (l), proclaim  
prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give forth; hand down  
proelium, -i, *N.*, battle  
prōgnātus, -a, -um, descended  
puerilis, -e, of a boy, boyish, childish  
quaestus, -ūs, *M.*, profit, gain  
quispiam, quidpiam (*indef. pron.*), anyone, anything  
simulācrum, -i, *N.*, image, statue  
spatium, -i, *N.*, space, distance, period  
subsequor (sub + sequor), follow closely  
supplicium, -i, *N.*, punishment  
sustineō (sub + teneō), sustain, endure  
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, take away, remove  
tumulus, -i, *M.*, mound, tomb

<sup>9</sup> ferunt: *here*, 'they say, they call'

<sup>10</sup> ad: *here*, 'for, in regard to'

<sup>11</sup> Dis, Ditis, *M.*: Dis, Pluto, Hades (god of the underworld)

Caesar, *Gallie War* VI.19

Viri, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō habētur fructūsque<sup>12</sup> servantur; uter eōrum vitā superāvit,<sup>13</sup> ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus<sup>12</sup> superiōrum temporum pervenit. Viri in<sup>14</sup> uxōrēs, sicuti in<sup>14</sup> liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in servilem modum<sup>15</sup> quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est,<sup>16</sup> igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō<sup>17</sup> cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvis cordi fuisse<sup>18</sup> arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō suprā hanc memoriā<sup>19</sup> servī et clientēs quōs ab iis dilēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstis fūnebris cōfectis, ūnā cremābantur.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, value, appraisal

cliēs, clientis, *M.*, dependent

commūnicō (l), join to an equal part, unite

comperiō, -ire, comperi, compertus, find out, discover

coniūctim (*adv.*), jointly

cōnstāt (*impersonal verb*), it is evident, it is agreed (+ *subject acc. and inf.*)

conveniō (com- + veniō), gather, come together

cor, cordis, *N.*, heart

cremō (l), burn, cremate

cultus, -ūs, *M.*, cultivation, refinement

dēcēdō (dē + cēdō), go away from, withdraw; die

diligō, -ere, dilēxi, dilēctus, esteem highly, love

dōs, dōtis, *F.*, dowry

excruciō (l), torment, afflict, vex

fūnebris, -e, pertaining to a funeral (*neuter plural as noun*, funeral rites)

fūnus, -eris, *N.*, funeral

illūstris, -e, illustrious, distinguished

iūstus, -a, -um, just

liberī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, children

magnificus, -a, -um, magnificent

nex, necis, *F.*, death

perveniō (per + veniō), arrive at, reach

potestās, -tātis, *F.*, power, influence

prō (*prep. + abl.*), in consideration of, in accordance with

propinquus, -a, -um, near, close by

propinquus, -i, *M.*, relative

quaestiō, -ōnis, *F.*, inquiry

ratiō, -ōnis, *F.*, account

servilis, -e, pertaining to a slave, servile

sicuti (*adv.*), just as

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, sumptuous

superior, superius, former, past

suprā (*prep. + acc.*), above, beyond

suspiciō, -ōnis, *F.*, suspicion

tormentum, -i, *N.*, torment, torture, anguish, pain

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, both

uxor, uxōris, *F.*, wife

vivus, -a, -um, alive, living

<sup>12</sup> fructūs: 'profit, interest'

<sup>13</sup> uter eōrum vitā superāvit: i.e., whichever one survives the other

<sup>14</sup> in: here, 'over'

<sup>15</sup> in servilem modum: 'as in the case of slaves'. According to Roman custom, freeborn people could not be tortured; slaves could.

<sup>16</sup> sī compertum est: i.e., that the death of the father of the household was not natural

<sup>17</sup> prō: here, 'in keeping with'

<sup>18</sup> vīvis cordi fuisse: double dative construction; translate 'to have been dear to the heart of the living'

<sup>19</sup> suprā...memoriā: 'shortly before our own time'



Caesar, *Gallic War* VI.20

Quae civitatēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre existimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,<sup>20</sup> sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā finitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō<sup>21</sup> aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt<sup>22</sup> occultant, quae esse ex ūsū<sup>23</sup> iūdicāvērunt multitudinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

Caesar, *Gallic War* VI.21

Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent quī rēbus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiīs student.<sup>24</sup> Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt.<sup>25</sup> Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs rei militāris cōnsistit; ā parvis<sup>26</sup> labōri ac dūritiae student.

administrō (l), serve, provide for; execute  
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, see, perceive  
commodus, -a, -um, suitable  
commūnicō (l), communicate  
concēdō (com- + cēdō), yield, allow  
concilium, -ī, N., assembly  
cōnsistō, -ere, cōnstīti, --, depend upon  
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, F., custom  
divinus, -a, -um, divine  
dūritia, -ae, F., harshness  
existimō (l), estimate, judge, deem  
facinus, -oris, N., crime  
falsus, -a, -um, false  
finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, close by  
impellō (in + pellō), drive on, impel  
imperitus, -a, -um, inexperienced  
iūdicō (l), judge

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, help; delight  
labor, -ōris, M., labor, toil, hardship  
magistrātus, -ūs, M., magistracy; public officer  
militāris, -e, pertaining to the military, military  
multitūdō, -tūdinis, F., crowd, multitude  
nēve (conj.), and not, and lest  
occultō (l), hide  
prōdō, -ere, prōdidī, prōditus, give forth; hand down; reveal  
sacrificium, -ī, N., sacrifice  
sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus, guarantee, arrange  
temerārius, -a, -um, rash, reckless  
utī, = ut  
vēnātiō, -ōnis, F., hunting

<sup>20</sup> sānctum: explained by utī . . . commūnicet

<sup>21</sup> quō = aliquō

<sup>22</sup> vīsa sunt: here, 'seemed best'

<sup>23</sup> ex ūsū: 'of advantage'

<sup>24</sup> student: here, 'attach importance to'

<sup>25</sup> accēpērunt: accipiō here has the force 'hear of'

<sup>26</sup> ā parvis: 'from childhood'



Caesar, *Gallie War* vi.22

Agricollūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs<sup>27</sup> gentibus cognātiōibusque hominum,<sup>28</sup> quīque ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est<sup>29</sup> agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō trānsire cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt causās: nē assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs atque humiliōrēs possessiōibus expellant; nē accūrātius quam ad frīgora atque aestūs vitandōs aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequāri videat.

accūrātē (*adv.*), carefully  
aedificō (I), build  
aequitās, -tātis, *F.*, fairness, equality  
aequō (I), make equal  
aestus, -ūs, *M.*, heat  
agricollūra, -ae, *F.*, agriculture  
aliō (*adv.*), to another place  
assiduus, -a, -um, continual  
attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, allot  
carō, carnis, *F.*, meat  
cāseus, -ī, *M.*, cheese  
coeō (com- + eō), go together, unite  
cognātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, blood relationship,  
association, affinity  
cōgō, -ere, cōgē, cōactus, bring together;  
compel  
commūtō (com- + mūtō), cf. mūtō (I)  
cōnsistō, -ere, cōstitī, --, depend upon  
cōnsuētūdō, -tūdinis, *F.*, custom, habit

contineō (com- + teneō), keep together,  
hem in; restrain  
cupiditās, -tātis, *F.*, desire  
dissēsiō, -ōnis, *F.*, dissension  
factiō, -ōnis, *F.*, faction, (political) party  
frīgus, -oris, *N.*, cold  
lac, lactis, *N.*, milk  
lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide  
magistrātus, -ūs, *M.*, magistracy, public  
officer  
possessiō, possessiōnis, *F.*, possession  
potēns, potentis, powerful  
princeps, principis, *M.*, leader, chief  
proprius, -a, -um, special, particular, proper;  
one's own  
singulī, -ae, -a, one by one, single  
trāseō (trāns + eō), go across, cross  
victus, -ūs, *M.*, food, nourishment  
vitō (I), avoid

<sup>27</sup> in annōs singulōs: 'each year'

<sup>28</sup> cognātiōibus hominum: 'groups of relatives'

<sup>29</sup> vīsum est: 'it seemed best'

Caesar, *Gallic War* VI.23

Civitatibus maxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātis finibus sōlitudinēs habēre. Hoc proprium virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agrīs finitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiorēs arbitrantur, repentinae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut illātum dēfendit<sup>30</sup> aut infert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint et vitae necisque habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent infāmiam quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ac dēsidiāe minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis<sup>31</sup> ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem fore, quī sequi velint<sup>32</sup> profiteantur,<sup>33</sup> cōsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitudīne collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī<sup>34</sup> quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērēunt ab iniuriā prohibent sāctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque commūnicātur.

collaudō (com- + laudō), cf. laudō  
 commūnicō (l), share, communicate  
 commūnis, -e, common  
 concilium, -ī, N., assembly  
 cōsistō, -ere, cōstiti, --, take a stand, halt  
 cōsurgō, -ere, -surrēxi, -surrēctus, rise up together  
 contrōversia, -ae, F., controversy  
 dērogō (l), take away from  
 dēsertor, -ōris, M., deserter  
 dēsidia, -ae, F., sloth, laziness  
 exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, train, exercise  
 existimō (l), estimate, judge, deem  
 extrā (prep. + acc.), outside of  
 fās, N. (indeclinable), right, divinely right  
 finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, close by  
 incursiō, -ōnis, F., incursion, attack  
 infāmia, -ae, F., ill repute  
 iniuriā, -ae, F., wrong, injury; injustice  
 iuventūs, -tūtis, F., youth, young manhood  
 latrōcinium, -ī, N., robbery  
 lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide  
 magistrātus, -ūs, M., public office; public officer; magistrate  
 minuō, -ere, minui, minūtus, lessen, diminish

multitūdō, -tūdinis, F., crowd, multitude  
 nex, necis, F., death  
 pāgus, -ī, M., district  
 pateō, -ēre, -uī, --, lie open  
 postea (adv.), afterwards  
 potestās, -tātis, F., power  
 praedicō (l), proclaim  
 princeps, principis, M., leader, chief  
 probō (l), approve  
 prōditor, -ōris, M., traitor  
 profiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum, declare publicly, acknowledge  
 prope (prep. + acc.), near, close to  
 proprius, -a, -um, special, particular, one's own  
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indefinite pron.), whoever, whatever  
 regiō, -ōnis, F., region  
 repentinus, -a, -um, sudden  
 sāctus, -a, -um, holy, sacred  
 simul (adv.), at the same time  
 sōlitūdō, -tūdinis, F., solitude; empty space  
 tollō, -ere, sustuli, sublātus, remove  
 vāstō (l), devastate, lay waste  
 victus, -ūs, M., food

<sup>30</sup> dēfendit: here, 'ward off'

<sup>31</sup> quis = aliquis

<sup>32</sup> velint: subjunctive by attraction

<sup>33</sup> profiteantur: subjunctive in an indirect command, dependent on dixit; assume the ellipsis of et ut after fore.

<sup>34</sup> quī: assume the ellipsis of eōs as the antecedent of quī

Caesar, *Gallie War* vi.24

Ac fuit antea tempus cum Germānōs Galli virtūte superarent, ultrō bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum<sup>35</sup> colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam,<sup>36</sup> quam Eratostheni<sup>37</sup> et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae<sup>38</sup> Tectosagēs<sup>39</sup> occupāverunt atque ibi cōnsēderunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opiniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā quā ante Germāni permanent, eōdem victū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallis autem prōvinciārum<sup>40</sup> propinquitās et trānsmarinārum rērum nōtitia multa<sup>41</sup> ad<sup>42</sup> cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur, paulātim assuēfacti superārī multisque victi proeliis nē sē quidem ipsi cum illis virtūte comparant.

**anteā** (*adv.*), beforehand, formerly  
**appellō** (I), call, name  
**assuēfaciō**, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, accustom  
**bellicus**, -a, -um, warlike, pertaining to war  
**colōnia**, -ae, *F.*, settlement  
**comparō** (I), compare  
**cōnsidō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessus, sit, settle  
**contineō** (com- + teneō), keep together, keep in, contain  
**cultus**, -ūs, *M.*, cultivation  
**egestās**, -tātis, *F.*, lack, poverty  
**fertilis**, -e, fertile  
**inopia**, -ae, *F.*, lack, need  
**iūstitia**, -ae, *F.*, justice  
**largior**, -irī, -itus sum, bestow generously

**multitūdō**, -tūdinis, *F.*, crowd, multitude  
**nōtitia**, -ae, *F.*, knowledge  
**occupō** (I), seize  
**patientia**, -ae, *F.*, patience, endurance  
**paulātim** (*adv.*), little by little  
**permaneō** (per + maneō), cf. maneō  
**proelium**, -i, *N.*, battle  
**propinquitās**, -tātis, *F.*, nearness, proximity  
**sēdēs**, -is, *F.*, seat; settlement  
**sēsē**, = sē  
**silva**, -ae, *F.*, forest  
**trānsmarinus**, -a, -um, pertaining to across the sea; overseas  
**ultrō** (*adv.*), of one's own accord  
**victus**, -ūs, *M.*, living, way of life

<sup>35</sup> **Rhēnus**, -ī, *M.*: the Rhine river

<sup>36</sup> **Hercyniam silvam**: the Hercynian forest, a forest in southern Germany

<sup>37</sup> **Eratosthenēs**, -is, *M.*: a Greek scholar in the Hellenistic period

<sup>38</sup> **Volcae**: a tribe in southern Gaul

<sup>39</sup> **Tectosagēs**, -um, *M.*: a branch of the Volcae tribe in southern Gaul

<sup>40</sup> **prōvinciārum**: the Roman provinces which were considered civilizing factors in Gaul

<sup>41</sup> **multa**: object of largitur

<sup>42</sup> **ad**: here, 'for the purpose of'

# REVIEW—UNITS TWELVE TO EIGHTEEN

## Review of Syntax

1. Nē offerāmus nōs periculis sine causā.  
(hortatory subjunctive; dative with compound verb)
2. Cōgitat quantum in illō sceleris fuerit.  
(indirect question)
3. Accēdente senectūte, quīdam irātiōrēs fiunt quod multis ante annis plūra agere potuerint: plūs est adulēscētibz viriū quam senibz. [**senectūs**, -tūtis, F., 'old age']  
(**quod** clause of alleged reason)
4. Nescit plēbz quō modō comitēs servet; numquam ulli pauperi ab imperātōre parsum est.  
(indirect question; impersonal passive with an intransitive verb governing the dative)
5. Eis diēbz nēmō erat quī divitiās virtūtī praeferret.  
(relative clause of characteristic; dative with compound verb)
6. Quid dē ūsū pācis cōstituāmus? Utrum aliquid nunc cōstituāmus an morēmur dum lēgātus adveniat?  
(deliberative subjunctives; double direct question; **dum** with subjunctive expressing anticipation)
7. Magni est iūdicis cōstituere quid quemque cuique praestāre oporteat. [**praestō**, -āre, -stitī, -stitus, 'excel, be superior to']  
(adverbial accusative; dative with compound verb; impersonal verb; indirect question)
8. Faciam ut intellegās quid hī dē tē sentiant.  
(substantive clause of result after **faciam ut**; indirect question)
9. Exiguū enim tempus aetātis satis longum est ad bene honestēque vivendum.  
(**ad** + gerund expressing purpose)
10. Quō dē genere mortis difficile dictū est.  
(ablative of supine — ablative of respect)



11. Exclūsi eōs quōs tū ad mē salūtātum miserās. [**exclūdō**, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, 'shut out'; **salūtō** (1), 'greet']  
(accusative of supine expressing purpose)
12. Vivis, et vivis nōn ad dēpōnendam sed ad cōfirmandam audāciam. [**cōfirmō** (1), 'confirm, strengthen'; **dēpōnō** (dē + pōnō), 'set aside']  
(ad + accusative + gerundive expressing purpose)
13. Ō deōs immortalēs! Multōs dolōrēs ipse sufferam, dum modo ā vōbis huius horridi belli periculum dēpellātur. [**dēpellō** (dē + pellō), 'drive away, off, from']  
(accusative of exclamation; subjunctive clause of proviso)
14. Nūllum est dubium quīn nōs omnēs multa prius mala sufferāmus quam iste ex urbe dēnique pellātur.  
(negative clause of doubting with **quīn**; **priusquam** with subjunctive expressing anticipation)
15. Timēmus ut multi ē pūgnantibus superfutūri sint. Nēmō autem dēterrēri poterit quōminus agat quid putet rei pūblicae prōfutūrum esse.  
(clause of fearing introduced by **ut**; clause of prevention introduced by **quōminus**; indirect question; dative with compound verb)
16. Rogantī melius quam imperantī pāreās.  
(dative with intransitive verb; potential subjunctive)
17. Lēgātum mittit quī petat ut vōbiscum loquī liceat.  
(relative clause of purpose; impersonal verb)
18. Tamne parvī animī videāmur omnēs quī rei pūblicae atque his vītae periculis intersumus ut nōbiscum peritūra omnia arbitrēmur? Anima enim immortalis est; numquam peribit. [**intersum** (inter + sum), 'be engaged in, be involved in']  
(deliberative subjunctive; dative with compound verb; clause of result)
19. Cum vīta sine amīcis multōs metūs habeat, amīciatīs maximī aestimāre dēbēmus. Verbōrum illius sapientis nōli oblivīscī: Tālis igitur inter virōs amicitia tantās opportunitātēs habet, quantās vix possum dicere. [**opportunitās**, -tātis, F., 'opportunity']  
(cum causal clause; genitive of indefinite value; genitive with expressions of remembering or forgetting)
20. Cum illi ipsī vēnissent quōs ego ad mē id temporis ventūrōs esse praedixeram, maximē timēbam. [**praedicō** (prae + dicō), 'foretell, predict'] (cum circumstantial clause; adverbial accusative)
21. Nōn dubitat quīn sit māter peritūra.  
(**quīn** in clause of negative doubting)
22. Ipse negat fore ut villam multā pecūniā vendere possit.  
(the periphrasis **fore** (futūrum) **ut** + subjunctive to make up for the lack of the future active infinitive in some verbs; ablative of price)



23. Quamdiū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vivēs, et vivēs ita ut nunc vivīs, multis custōdibus circumdatus, nē commovēre tē contrā rem pūblicam possis. [**circumdō** (**circum** + **dō**), 'surround'; **commoveō** (**com-** + **moveō**), 'move thoroughly, excite']  
(relative clause of characteristic or purpose)
24. Quid enim malī vel sceleris fierī vel cōgitārī potest?
25. His et tālibus pūgnīs inter nōs discessum est.  
(impersonal use of the passive)
26. Beneficium dandō accēpit, quī dīgnō dedit. [**beneficium**, -ī, N., 'good deed']  
(ablative of gerund)
27. Sed quam multōs fuisse putātis quī quae ego dēferrem nōn crēderent!  
[**quam**, adv., 'how' — in exclamations]  
(relative clause of characteristic; subjunctive by attraction)
28. Quamvis turpis quī monet nullī nocet. [**quamvis** [adv.], 'no matter how']  
(dative with special intransitive verb)
29. Haec habuī dē amicitīā quae dicerem.  
(relative clause of purpose)
30. Num quid malī aut sceleris cōgitārī potest quod nōn iste fēcirit?  
(direct question with **num**; relative clause of characteristic)
31. Quis rēx umquam fuit, quis populus, quī nōn ūterētur signīs ā dīs datīs? neque solum in pāce, sed in bellō multō etiam magis, quō maius erat periculum.  
(relative clause of characteristic)
32. Fac ut veniās.  
(substantive clause of result)
33. Ō tempora mala! Ō rem pūblicam perditam!  
(accusatives of exclamation)
34. Illō tempore omnia in peius ruere, omnēs hominēs maiōribus peiōrēs fieri.  
(historical infinitives)
35. Quid nunc rogem tē ut veniās? Nōn rogem! Sine tē igitur sim!  
(adverbial accusative; deliberative subjunctive; potential subjunctive; hortatory subjunctive)
36. Postquam labōrantēs mūnīvere moenia oppidī, ūnus pedem vulnerātus est.  
(accusative of respect)
37. Cum incolae cōsulem laudāssent, nihil tamen prō eōrum salūte cōstituere potuit.  
(**cum** concessive clause)
38. Cucurrit quō celerius Caesarem vidēret; cucurrit quō Caesarem vidēret; cucurrit Caesaris videndī causā.  
(relative clause of purpose; purpose clause introduced by an adverb; genitive plus gerundive followed by **causā** to express purpose)
39. Hoc amō, quod possum quā mihi placet ire viā.  
(**quod**, 'the fact that')

40. Quin loquar haec, numquam mē potest dēterrēre.  
(negative clause of prevention introduced by **quīn**)
41. Tantum abest ab eō ut malum mors sit ut verear nē hominī sit nihil bonum aliud.  
(adverbial accusative; substantive clause of result after **tantum abest ut**; clause of result; positive clause of fearing introduced by **nē**)
42. Cum loqui incēpi, vereor nē dum dēfendam meōs, nōn parcam tuis.  
(**cum** meaning 'whenever'; negative clause of fearing introduced by **nē... nōn**; subjunctive by attraction)
43. Dubitāvi hōs hominēs multā pecūniā emerem an nōn emerem.  
(positive clause of doubting with alternative indirect question; ablative of price)
44. Maximō sum gaudiō affectus cum audivī cōsulem tē factum esse. [**afficiō** (**ad** + **faciō**), 'affect']  
(**cum** temporal clause)
45. Nōne verētur nē rogātūrī sīmus cūr iūdex sē dāmnāverit?  
(direct question with **nōne**; positive clause of fearing; indirect question; indirect reflexive)
46. Meā rēfert ut idem duo hominēs veniant.  
(impersonal verb)
47. Utinam ille omnis sēcum suās cōpiās ēdūxisset!  
(optative subjunctive)
48. Aeneas replies to Dido's reproaches for leaving her by expressing his concern for her and, afterwards, by stating that he is not leaving of his own accord but out of necessity. (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.333–6)

Ego tē, quae plūrima fandō

ēnumerāre valēs, numquam, rēgīna, negābō

prōmeritam,<sup>1</sup> nec mē meminisse pigēbit Elissae

dum memor<sup>2</sup> ipse mei, dum spiritus hōs regit artūs.

<sup>1</sup> supply **esse**      <sup>2</sup> supply **sum**

[**artus**, -ūs, M., 'joint, limb'; **Elissa**, -ae, F., 'Dido'; **ēnumerō** (1), 'e-count'; **for**, **fārī**, **fātus sum**, 'speak, tell'; **prōmereor**, -ērī, -itus **sum**, 'deserve, earn'; **spiritus**, -ūs, M., 'breath, soul, life'; **valeō**, -ēre, **valui**, **valitus**, 'be able']

(ablative of gerund; impersonal verb; genitives with verb and expression of remembering, **dum** + indicative)

49. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis quī erant in agrīs reliqui discessērunt. [**occupō** (1), 'occupy']  
(**dum** with present indicative to denote continued action in past time)

## UNITS 12-18: Self-Review

### I.

Translate the following passage; the words in boldface type relate to questions in part II.

NOTE: While serving as provincial governor in Cilicia (Asia Minor), Cicero wrote this letter to Marcus Caelius Rufus, an orator and friend who was in Rome serving as an **aedile**, a public official in charge of public works and recreation. Caelius had written repeatedly to Cicero, keeping him abreast of political news from Rome and also requesting that Cicero be on the lookout for exotic animals that he could import and use for sports events. (It has been slightly adapted.)

**Putaresne** umquam fieri posse ut mihi verba omnino **deessent**? Non careo solum istā tuā<sup>1</sup> oratoriā,<sup>2</sup> sed illo etiam ingenio exiguo quo nuper ad litteras **scribendas** utebar. Cum senatus<sup>3</sup> **muneris**<sup>4</sup> mei oblitus sit, vereor ut Romam multos annos rediturus sim et — quod peius est — ne te absente in hāc terrā alienā **peream**.

Magnum desiderium<sup>5</sup> — mirabile dictu — urbis me tenet, desiderium meorum atque in primis<sup>6</sup> tui. Rogitant legati comitesque, quoniam provinciae me tantopere taedet, quam ob rem diutius hīc **maneam**. Tanta onera<sup>7</sup> in re publicā sustinere potui et solitus sum ut totum negotium<sup>8</sup> in hoc ultimo<sup>9</sup> loco viribus meis indignum omnibus arbitrandum sit.

Desine quaerere de pantheris;<sup>10</sup> iussu meo diligenter **agitatur** ab eis qui venari solent; sed permagna paucitas est, et eae, quae vere sunt, dicuntur queri<sup>11</sup> quod nihil cuiquam insidiarum in meā provinciā nisi sibi fiat. Itaque plurimae, ut quidam credunt, in Carian<sup>12</sup> ex hac regione<sup>13</sup> horridā se recipere constituerunt. Quicquid<sup>14</sup> erit, tibi erit, sed quot futurae sint plane<sup>15</sup> nescio.

Mihi mehercle<sup>16</sup> magnae curae est aedilitas<sup>17</sup> tua. Meā maxime refert ut ludos<sup>18</sup> quam gratissimos facias.<sup>18</sup> Tu velim ad me de omni rei publicae casu quam celerrime perscribas; ea enim certissima putabo quae ex te **cognoro**.

<sup>1</sup> *istā tuā*: *tuā* added for emphasis    <sup>2</sup> *ōrātōria*, -ae, F., 'oratory, oratorical skill'  
<sup>3</sup> *senātus*, -ūs, M., 'the senate'    <sup>4</sup> *mūneris*, N., 'duty, office, service'    <sup>5</sup> *dēsiderium*, *dēsideriū*, N., 'ardent desire, longing'    <sup>6</sup> *in primis*, 'especially'    <sup>7</sup> *onus*, *oneris*, N., 'load, burden'    <sup>8</sup> *negōtium*, *negōtīū*, N., 'business'    <sup>9</sup> *ultimus*, -a, -um, 'farthest, most distant'    <sup>10</sup> *panthēra*, -ae, F., 'panther'    <sup>11</sup> *queror*, *querī*, *questus sum*, 'lament, complain'    <sup>12</sup> *Cārian* (acc. sing. of *Cāria*, -ae, F.), 'Caria', a province in Asia Minor  
<sup>13</sup> *regiō*, *regiōnis*, F., 'district, territory'    <sup>14</sup> *quisquis*, *quidquid* or *quicquid* (indefinite pron.), 'whoever, whatever'    <sup>15</sup> *plānē* (adv.), 'plainly, clearly'    <sup>16</sup> *mehercle* (an oath), 'by Hercules!'    <sup>17</sup> *aedilitās*, *aedilitātis*, F., 'the office of an aedile, aedileship'    <sup>18</sup> *lūdus*, *lūdī*, M., 'game, exhibition'; *lūdōs facere*, 'to stage games'

## II.

The questions below refer to the words and phrases in boldface type in the passage you have just translated.

1. Identify the tense and mood of **putares**. How is it used here?
2. Explain the reason for the mood of **deessent**.
3. a) What part of speech is **scribendas**?  
b) What idea does the phrase **ad litteras scribendas** express?
4. What is the case and reason for the case of **muneris**?
5. What is the syntax of **peream**?
6. Identify the form and give the syntax of **dictu**.
7. Identify the mood and give the reason for the mood of **maneam**.
8. Comment on the use of the word **agitatur**.
9. **Cognoro** is a syncopated form. What would the full form be?

## III.

Translate the following sentences. The words in boldface type relate to questions on syntax and form in Part IV.

1. Num metus tibi obstitit quominus **meminisses** quid fieret?
2. Pollicemur fore ut foedus quam primum fiat.
3. Aliquis **videat** utrum consilium de civitatibus instituendis invenire possimus necne.
4. Odioso imperatum est ne **cui** armigerorum in urbe viventium parcat.
5. His intellectis, erant tamen qui pugnare **desinerent** priusquam amicis **proderant**.
6. Ipsi non dubitemus quin domum vendendo multam pecuniam capere **possit**.
7. Non dubitare expectare dum dux **adveniret**. Idem vero **omnibus** praefectus erat quo manus militum **esset** tutior.
8. Cum nuntiassent quid vellent, legati tamen efficere non poterant ut omnes **sibi** parerent.
9. Quod quidam cupidi divitiarum sunt nos non **movet**; speramus autem eos divitiarum tam cupidos non fore ut honoris obliviscantur.
10. **Nihil** metuerunt ne iudices salutem **parvi** aestimaturi sint.

## IV.

The questions below refer to the words in boldface type in the sentences in part III.

1. Explain the tense and mood of **meminisses** (sentence 1).
2. Identify the mood and use of **videat** (sentence 3).



3. What does the form **cui** stand for in sentence 4?
4. What is the mood and the reason for the mood of **desinerent** (sentence 5)?
5. What is the mood and the reason for the mood of **proderant** (sentence 5)?
6. Identify the mood and give the reason for the mood of **possit** (sentence 6).
7. What is the syntax of **adveniret** (sentence 7)?
8. Give the case and the reason for the case of **omnibus** (sentence 7).
9. Identify the mood and give the reason for the mood of **esset** (sentence 7).
10. Write a brief commentary on the use of the reflexive **sibi** in sentence 8.
11. What is the subject of **movet** (sentence 9)?
12. What is the syntax of **nihil** (sentence 10)?
13. Identify the case and give the reason for the case of **parvi** (sentence 10).

### Answer Key — UNITS 12–18: Self-Review

#### I.

Would you have thought that it was ever possible that words entirely failed me? I lack not only that oratorical skill of yours, but also that small talent which I recently used (enjoyed) for writing a letter. Since the senate has forgotten my service, I fear that I will not return to Rome for many years and — what is worse — that, in your absence, I will perish in this foreign land.

A great longing for the city holds me — remarkable (wonderful, able to be wondered at) to say — a longing for my friends and family (my people) and especially for you. Legates and companions keep on asking why I remain here (any) longer, since the province bores me so greatly. I have been able to endure (support) and have been accustomed to so many responsibilities (burdens) in the state that the whole business in this most distant place must be judged by everyone (all) unworthy of my strength.

Stop asking about the panthers; by my order, there is diligent activity (there is a stirring up diligently) by those men who are accustomed to hunt; but there is a very great scarcity (fewness) [of panthers] and those which are actually here (which truly exist) are said to be complaining because (allegedly) no treachery happens to anyone in my province except (if not) to them. And so most, as certain men believe, have decided to withdraw into Caria from this horrible district. Whatever there is (will be), will be for you, but I clearly don't know how many there will be.

By Hercules, your aedileship is a great concern to me. It especially interests me that you stage as pleasing games as possible. I should wish that you write to me thoroughly about every occurrence with reference to the state as quickly as possible; indeed, I shall consider (think) those things which I know (I'll have learned) from you most reliable (most certain).



## II.

1. Imperfect subjunctive as the main verb in the sentence (an independent usage of the subjunctive) expressing a potential idea in past time
2. Subjunctive in a substantive clause of result
3. a) Gerundive (adjective)  
b) *ad* is used with a noun and a gerundive to express purpose
4. Genitive case with an expression of forgetting
5. Present subjunctive in primary sequence in a clause expressing positive fearing
6. Ablative form of the supine of *dicere* functioning as an ablative of respect
7. Subjunctive in an indirect question in primary sequence
8. Impersonal passive usage stressing verbal action
9. *cognōverō*

## III.

1. Fear did not keep (hinder, stand in your way) you (did it) from remembering what was happening (did it)?
2. We promise that a treaty will be made as soon as possible (that it will be that a treaty be made. . .).
3. Let someone see whether we can find (discover) a plan about establishing states or not.
4. The hateful man has been ordered (It has been ordered to the hateful man) that no one of the arm bearers living (who live) in the city be spared (that it not be spared to anyone of the arm bearers. . .).
5. With these things understood (although these things had been understood), there were nevertheless those who (men of the sort who) stopped fighting before they profited (did good to) (their) friends.
6. We ourselves would (could, might) not doubt (but) that by selling (his) home he is able to take (get) much money.

7. They did not hesitate to wait { until the leader (guide) should (could) arrive.  
for the leader (guide) to arrive.  
provided that the leader (guide) arrive. }

The same one (man), truly (indeed), had been put in command of all (the men) by which (in order that) the band of soldiers might be safer (rather safe).

8. Although they had reported (announced) what they were wanting (wanted), the legates nevertheless were not able to (could not) bring it about (effect) that all (men) obey(ed) them.
9. (The fact) that certain men are desirous of wealth (riches) does not move us; we hope, moreover (however), that they (these/those men) will not be so desirous of wealth (riches) that they are forgetful of (forget) honor (distinction).

10. They have feared not at all that the judges (jurymen) will (are going to) estimate (reckon) health (safety) of small value (worth).

#### IV.

1. Pluperfect subjunctive of a defective verb; thus the pluperfect = imperfect.  
It is in a relative clause of prevention in secondary sequence.
2. Subjunctive; independent use, either jussive, potential, or optative
3. *alicui*
4. Subjunctive; relative clause of characteristic (secondary sequence)
5. Indicative; to state a fact (temporal clause referring strictly to time)
6. Subjunctive in a negative clause of doubting (primary sequence)
7. Imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence in a **dum** clause expressing anticipation (The king hasn't arrived yet; there is no certainty that he will ever arrive.) Also possible as a proviso clause
8. Dative with a compound verb
9. Subjunctive; relative clause of purpose (secondary sequence)
10. **Sibi** is dative case because the intransitive verb **pāreō** governs the dative. It is an indirect reflexive since it does not refer to the subject of the clause in which it occurs (**omnēs**), but rather to the subject of the main verb of the sentence (**lēgātī**).
11. The whole clause **quod . . . sunt**
12. Adverbial accusative
13. Genitive of indefinite value

This appendix will be useful as a reference for complete paradigms, explanations, and examples of syntactical structures and as a comprehensive review of the forms and syntax of Latin. In many cases, a greater number of illustrative sentences is provided in the appendix than in the actual text.

In order to enhance the value of the book as a tool for the reading of a wide variety of Latin authors, the appendix also contains some syntactical explanations which have not been included in the main body of the text.

Refer to the alphabetical index for cross-referencing between the text and the appendix.

## NOUNS

### Declension Endings

SINGULAR								
I	II		III		IV		V	
F.*	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.†	
Nom. -a	-us (-er, -r)	-um	--	--	-us	-ū	-ēs	
Gen. -ae	-ī	-ī	-is	-is	-ūs	-ūs	-eī	
Dat. -ae	-ō	-ō	-ī	-ī	-uī	-ū	-eī	
Acc. -am	-um	-um	-em	--	-um	-ū	-em	
Abl. -ā	-ō	-ō	-e	-e (-ī)	-ū	-ū	-ē	

PLURAL								
I	II		III		IV		V	
F.*	M.	N.	M. & F.	N.	M.	N.	F.†	
Nom. -ae	-ī	-a	-ēs	-a(-ia)	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	
Gen. -ārum	-ōrum	-ōrum	-um(-ium)	-um(-ium)	-uum	-uum	-ērum	
Dat. -īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus	
Acc. -ās	-ōs	-a	-ēs(-īs)	-a(-ia)	-ūs	-ua	-ēs	
Abl. -īs	-īs	-īs	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ēbus	

\* Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except for those that denote males, such as *nauta*, 'sailor'.

† Most nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, except for *diēs*, which is generally masculine.

Note that the *vocative* case is the same as the nominative except in nouns of the second declension whose nominative singular ends in **-us**; their vocative ends in **-e**. If such a noun has a stem ending in **-i** (before the **-us** ending), the vocative form ends in a single **-ī**: **Marcus**, vocative **Marce**; **Rōmānus**, vocative **Rōmāne**; **filius**, vocative **fili**; **gladius**, vocative **gladi**.

The *locative* case endings for the first two declensions are the same as the genitive singular if the word is singular, or the ablative plural if the word is plural: **Rōma**, locative **Rōmae**; **Athēnae**, locative **Athēnīs**. For nouns of the third declension, the locative ends in **-e** or **-ī** in the singular: **Carthāgō**, locative **Carthāginē**; **rūs**, locative **rūrī**. In the plural the ending **-ibus** is used.

### First Declension

#### SINGULAR

Nom.	fēmina	(the/a) woman (subject)
Gen.	fēminae	of the (a) woman, (the/a) woman's
Dat.	fēminae	to/for (the/a) woman
Acc.	fēminam	(the/a) woman (object)
Abl.	fēminā	from/with/in/by (the/a) woman

#### PLURAL

Nom.	fēminae	(the) women (subject)
Gen.	fēminārum	of (the) women, women's
Dat.	fēminīs	to/for (the) women
Acc.	fēminās	(the) women (object)
Abl.	fēminīs	from/with/in/by (the) women

Masculine nouns in the first declension are declined like **fēmina**.

### Second Declension

#### SINGULAR

	M.	M.	M.	N.
Nom.	nātus	puer	liber	saxum
Gen.	nātī	puerī	librī	saxī
Dat.	nātō	puerō	librō	saxō
Acc.	nātum	puerum	librum	saxum
Abl.	nātō	puerō	librō	saxō

#### PLURAL

	M.	M.	M.	N.
Nom.	nātī	puerī	librī	saxa
Gen.	nātōrum	puerōrum	librōrum	saxōrum
Dat.	nātīs	puerīs	librīs	saxīs
Acc.	nātōs	puerōs	librōs	saxa
Abl.	nātīs	puerīs	librīs	saxīs

Although none are included in this book, feminine nouns ending in **-us** in the second declension are declined like **nātus** (except for **domus** which, although primarily fourth declension, has alternate second declension endings in cases other than the nominative, dative, and ablative plural).

### Third Declension

SINGULAR					
	M.	M.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	rūmor	homō	miles	servitūs	sīdus
Gen.	rūmōris	hominis	militis	servitūtis	sīderis
Dat.	rūmōrī	hominī	militi	servitūtī	sīderī
Acc.	rūmōrem	hominem	militem	servitūtem	sīdus
Abl.	rūmōre	homine	milite	servitūte	sīdere
PLURAL					
	M.	M.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	rūmōrēs	hominēs	militēs	servitūtēs	sīdera
Gen.	rūmōrum	hominum	militum	servitūtum	sīderum
Dat.	rūmōribus	hominibus	militibus	servitūtibus	sīderibus
Acc.	rūmōrēs	hominēs	militēs	servitūtēs	sīdera
Abl.	rūmōribus	hominibus	militibus	servitūtibus	sīderibus

Nouns of this declension are i-stem if:

1. the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables.
2. the stem ends in a double consonant or **-x** (exceptions: **māter**, **frāter**, **pater**, even though the first rule also applies).
3. they are neuter nouns whose nominative singular ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.

### Third Declension: i-Stems

SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ignis	nox	mare
Gen.	ignis	noctis	maris
Dat.	ignī	noctī	marī
Acc.	ignem	noctem	mare
Abl.	igne (or ignī)	nocte	marī
PLURAL			
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ignēs	noctēs	maria
Gen.	ignium	noctium	[marium]
Dat.	ignibus	noctibus	maribus
Acc.	ignēs,	noctēs,	maria
	ignīs	noctīs	
Abl.	ignibus	noctibus	maribus



## SINGULAR

	N.	N.	N.
Nom.	animal	[moene	exemplar
Gen.	animālis	moenis	exemplāris
Dat.	animāli	moeni	exemplāri
Acc.	animal	moene	exemplar
Abl.	animāli	moeni]	exemplāri

## PLURAL

	N.	N.	N.
Nom.	animālia	moenia	exemplāria
Gen.	animālium	moenium	exemplārium
Dat.	animālibus	moenibus	exemplāribus
Acc.	animālia	moenia	exemplāria
Abl.	animālibus	moenibus	exemplāribus

Third Declension: Irregular Noun *vis*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	F.	F.
Nom.	<i>vis</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>
Gen.	--	<i>vīrium</i>
Dat.	--	<i>vīribus</i>
Acc.	<i>vim</i>	<i>vīrēs, vīris</i>
Abl.	<i>vī</i>	<i>vīribus</i>

## Fourth Declension

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M.	N.	M.	N.
Nom.	<i>frūctus</i>	<i>genū*</i>	<i>frūctūs</i>	<i>genua</i>
Gen.	<i>frūctūs</i>	<i>genūs</i>	<i>frūctuum</i>	<i>genuum</i>
Dat.	<i>frūctui</i>	<i>genū</i>	<i>frūctibus</i>	<i>genibus</i>
Acc.	<i>frūctum</i>	<i>genū</i>	<i>frūctūs</i>	<i>genua</i>
Abl.	<i>frūctū</i>	<i>genū</i>	<i>frūctibus</i>	<i>genibus</i>

\* *genū*, 'knee' (not included in this book).

Although none are included in this book (with the exception of **domus**), feminine nouns in the fourth declension are declined like **frūctus**.

**Fifth Declension**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	F.	F.
Nom.	rēs	rēs
Gen.	rei	rērum
Dat.	rei	rēbus
Acc.	rem	rēs
Abl.	rē	rēbus

**ADJECTIVES****First-Second Declension**

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	magnus	magna	magnum
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō
	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Acc.	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	dexter	dextra	dextrum
Gen.	dextrī	dextrae	dextrī
Dat.	dextrō	dextrae	dextrō
Acc.	dextrum	dextram	dextrum
Abl.	dextrō	dextrā	dextrō

	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	dextrī	dextrae	dextra
Gen.	dextrōrum	dextrārum	dextrōrum
Dat.	dextrīs	dextrīs	dextrīs
Acc.	dextrōs	dextrās	dextra
Abl.	dextrīs	dextrīs	dextrīs

## ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE SINGULAR IN -ius

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtus	tōta	tōtum	alius	alia	aliud
Gen.	tōtius	tōtius	tōtius	alterius*	alterius*	alterius*
Dat.	tōtī	tōtī	tōtī	aliī	aliī	aliī
Acc.	tōtum	tōtam	tōtum	aliū	aliā	aliud
Abl.	tōtō	tōtā	tōtō	aliō	aliā	aliō

\* The genitive of *alter* is generally used for the genitive of *alius* in order to avoid confusion between *alius* (nominative) and *alius* (genitive).

## PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	tōtī	tōtae	tōta	aliī	aliae	alia
Gen.	tōtōrum	tōtārum	tōtōrum	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum
Dat.	tōtīs	tōtīs	tōtīs	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs
Acc.	tōtōs	tōtās	tōta	aliōs	aliās	alia
Abl.	tōtīs	tōtīs	tōtīs	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs

The other adjectives in this category are: *alter*, *ūllus*, *nūllus*, *uter*, *neuter*, *sōlus*, *ūnus*.

## Third Declension

## ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (ācrīs)	ācrēs (ācrīs)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

ADJECTIVES OF TWO  
TERMINATIONSADJECTIVES OF  
ONE TERMINATION

## SINGULAR

## SINGULAR

	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	omnis	omne	ingēns	
Gen.	omnis	omnis	ingentis	
Dat.	omnī	omnī	ingenti	
Acc.	omnem	omne	ingentem	ingēns
Abl.	omnī	omnī	ingenti	

	PLURAL		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	omnēs	omnia	ingentēs	ingentia
Gen.	omnium	omnium	ingentium	
Dat.	omnibus	omnibus	ingentibus	
Acc.	omnēs (-is)	omnia	ingentēs (-is)	ingentia
Abl.	omnibus	omnibus	ingentibus	

### Present Participles

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	optāns		optantēs	optantia
Gen.	optantis		optantium	
Dat.	optanti		optantibus	
Acc.	optantem	optāns	optantēs (-is)	optantia
Abl.	optanti (-e)		optantibus	

### Comparative Degree of Adjectives

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs (-is)	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre (-ī)	fortiōre (-ī)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

### Other Adjectives

#### THE NUMERICAL ADJECTIVE **duo**

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	duo	duae	duo
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Acc.	duōs (-o)	duās	duo
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

#### THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE **hic**

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hic	haec	hoc

#### THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE **ille**

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ille	illa	illud

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

	PLURAL			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illi	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis

THE INTENSIVE  
ADJECTIVE **ipse**

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
Gen.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Abl.	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

THE DEMONSTRATIVE  
ADJECTIVE **iste**

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	iste	ista	istud
Gen.	istius	istius	istius
Dat.	istī	istī	istī
Acc.	istum	istam	istud
Abl.	istō	istā	istō

	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	istī	istae	ista
Gen.	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	istīs	istīs	istīs
Acc.	istōs	istās	ista
Abl.	istīs	istīs	istīs

THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE **is**

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, ii	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs



THE ADJECTIVE **idem**

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	idem	eadem	idem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eidem	eidem	eidem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

## PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	eidem (idem)	eadem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eisdem (isdem)	eisdem (isdem)	eisdem (isdem)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eisdem (isdem)	eisdem (isdem)	eisdem (isdem)

THE INTERROGATIVE  
ADJECTIVE **quī**

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quam	quod
Abl.	quō	quā	quō

## PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

THE INDEFINITE  
ADJECTIVE **aliquī**

## SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquī	aliqua	aliquod
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

## PLURAL

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

## PRONOUNS

## Personal Pronouns

## FIRST PERSON

Nom.	ego, I
Gen.	meī, of me

## SECOND PERSON

## SINGULAR

tū, you
tuī, of you

## THIRD PERSON

The adjective **is**, **ea**,  
**id** is used for the

FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	THIRD PERSON
	SINGULAR	
Dat. mihi, to/for me	tibi, to/for you	personal pronoun
Acc. mē, me	tē, you	of the third person.
Abl. mē, from/with/in/by me	tē, from/with/in/by you	
	PLURAL	
Nom. nōs, we	vōs, you	
Gen. nostrum, nostrī*, of us	vestrum, vestrī*, of you	
Dat. nōbis, to/for us	vōbis, to/for you	
Acc. nōs, us	vōs, you	
Abl. nōbis, from/with/in/by us	vōbis, from/with/in/by you	

\* **Nostrum** and **vestrum** are used as partitive genitives, **nostrī** and **vestrī** as objective genitives.

### Reflexive Pronoun

Nom. --
Gen. suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves
Dat. sibi, to/for himself, herself, itself, themselves
Acc. sē (sēsē), himself, herself, itself, themselves
Abl. sē (sēsē), from/with/in/by himself, herself, itself, themselves

### THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN **quis**

	SINGULAR	
	M. & F.	N.
Nom.	quis	quid
Gen.	cuius	cuius
Dat.	cui	cui
Acc.	quem	quid
Abl.	quō	quō

### THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN **quidam**

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quidam	quaedam	quiddam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quiddam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
	PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quibus	quibus	quibus

## VERBS

## Personal Endings

ACTIVE	PASSIVE	PERFECT ACTIVE
SINGULAR	SINGULAR	SINGULAR
1st -ō or -m	1st -or or -r	1st -ī
2nd -s	2nd -ris and -re	2nd -istī
3rd -t	3rd -tur	3rd -it
PLURAL	PLURAL	PLURAL
1st -mus	1st -mur	1st -imus
2nd -tis	2nd -minī	2nd -istis
3rd -nt	3rd -ntur	3rd -ērunt (-ēre)

*First Conjugation: optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus, 'desire, wish (for), choose'*

## INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
optō, I desire, I am desiring, I do desire, I always desire	optor, I am (being) desired
optās, you desire, etc.	optāris, optāre, you are (being) desired
optat, he/she/it desires, etc.	optātur, he/she/it is (being) desired
optāmus, we desire, etc.	optāmur, we are (being) desired
optātis, you desire, etc.	optāminī, you are (being) desired
optant, they desire, etc.	optantur, they are (being) desired
IMPERFECT	
optābam, I was desiring, I used to desire, I kept on desiring, I desired (habitually)	optābar, I was (being) desired
optābās, you were desiring, etc.	optābāris, optābāre, you were (being) desired
optābat, he/she/it was desiring, etc.	optābātur, he/she/it was (being) desired
optābāmus, we were desiring, etc.	optābāmur, we were (being) desired
optābātis, you were desiring, etc.	optābāminī, you were (being) desired
optābant, they were desiring, etc.	optābantur, they were (being) desired

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## FUTURE

optābō, I shall desire, I shall be  
desiring  
optābis, you will desire, etc.  
optābit, he/she/it will desire, etc.  
optābimus, we shall desire, etc.  
optābitis, you will desire, etc.  
optābunt, they will desire, etc.

optābor, I shall be desired  
optāberis, optābere, you will be  
desired  
optābitur, he/she/it will be  
desired  
optābimur, we shall be desired  
optābimini, you will be desired  
optābuntur, they will be desired

## PERFECT

optāvī, I have desired, I desired,  
I did desire  
optāvistī, you have desired, etc.  
optāvit, he/she/it has desired, etc.  
optāvimus, we have desired, etc.  
optāvistis, you have desired, etc.  
optāvērunt, optāvēre, they have  
desired, etc.

optātus (-a, -um) sum, I have been  
desired, I was desired  
optātus (-a, -um) es, you have been  
desired, etc.  
optātus (-a, -um) est, he/she/it has  
been desired, etc.  
optātī (-ae, -a) sumus, we have been  
desired, etc.  
optātī (-ae, -a) estis, you have been  
desired, etc.  
optātī (-ae, -a) sunt, they have been  
desired, etc.

## PLUPERFECT

optāveram, I had desired  
optāverās, you had desired  
optāverat, he/she/it had desired  
optāverāmus, we had desired  
optāverātis, you had desired  
optāverant, they had desired

optātus (-a, -um) eram, I had been  
desired  
optātus (-a, -um) erās, you had  
been desired  
optātus (-a, -um) erat, he/she/it  
had been desired  
optātī (-ae, -a) erāmus, we had been  
desired  
optātī (-ae, -a) erātis, you had been  
desired  
optātī (-ae, -a) erant, they had been  
desired

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## FUTURE PERFECT

optāverō, I shall have desired

optātus (-a, -um) erō, I shall have  
been desired

optāveris, you will have desired

optātus (-a, -um) eris, you will  
have been desiredoptāverit, he/she/it will  
have desiredoptātus (-a, -um) erit, he/she/it will  
have been desired

optāverimus, we shall have desired

optātī (-ae, -a) erimus, we shall  
have been desired

optāveritis, you will have desired

optātī (-ae, -a) eritis, you will have  
been desired

optāverint, they will have desired

optātī (-ae, -a) erunt, they will  
have been desired

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

optem

opter

optēs

optēris, optēre

optet

optētur

optēmus

optēmur

optētis

optēmini

optent

optentur

## IMPERFECT

optārem

optārer

optārēs

optārēris, optārēre

optāret

optārētur

optārēmus

optārēmur

optārētis

optārēmini

optārent

optārentur

## PERFECT

optāverim

optātus (-a, -um) sim

optāveris

optātus (-a, -um) sis

optāverit

optātus (-a, -um) sit

optāverimus

optātī (-ae, -a) simus

optāveritis

optātī (-ae, -a) sitis

optāverint

optātī (-ae, -a) sint



## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PLUPERFECT

optāvissem	optātus (-a, -um) essem
optāvissēs	optātus (-a, -um) essēs
optāvisset	optātus (-a, -um) esset
optāvissēmus	optātī (-ae, -a) essēmus
optāvissētis	optātī (-ae, -a) essētis
optāvissent	optātī (-ae, -a) essent

## PARTICIPLES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

optāns, desiring

--

## PERFECT

--

optātus, -a, -um, (having been)  
desired

## FUTURE

optātūrus, -a, -um, about to desire,  
going to desire, ready to desireoptandus, -a, -um, to be desired,  
having to be desired

## INFINITIVES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

optāre, to desire

optārī, to be desired

## PERFECT

optāvisse, to have desired

optātus, -a, -um esse, to have been  
desired

## FUTURE

optātūrus, -a, -um esse, to be about  
to desire, to be going to desire, to  
be ready to desireoptātum irī, to be about to be  
desired, to be going to be desired,  
to be ready to be desired

## IMPERATIVES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## PRESENT

optā, desire!

optāte, desire!

optāre, be desired!

optāminī, be  
desired!

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## FUTURE\*

2nd optātō, you shall desire!	optātōte, you shall desire!	optātor, you shall be desired! --	
3rd optatō, he/she/it shall desire!	optāntō, they shall desire!	optātor, he/she/it shall be desired!	optantor, they shall be desired!

\* The formation and use of the future imperative are discussed on pages 362 and 381–382.

## Periphrastic Conjugations

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

optātūrus (-a, -um) sum, I am about to desire, I am going to desire, I am ready to desire	optandus (-a, -um) sum, I am having-to-be desired, I should be desired, I ought to be desired, I must be desired, I have to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) es, you are about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) es, you are having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūrus (-a, -um) est, he/she/it is about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) est, he/she/it is having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūrī (-ae, -a) sumus, we are about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) sumus, we are having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūrī (-ae, -a) estis, you are about to desire, etc.	optandī (-ae, -a) estis, you are having-to-be desired, etc.
optātūrī (-ae, -a) sunt, they are about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) sunt, they are having-to-be desired, etc.

## IMPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) eram, I was about to desire, I was going to desire, I was ready to desire	optandus (-a, -um) erās, you had to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) erās, you were about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) erās, you had to be desired
optātūrus (-a, -um) erat, he/she/it was about to desire, etc.	optandus (-a, -um) erat, he/she/it had to be desired
optātūrī (-ae, -a) erāmus, we were about to desire, etc.	optandi (-ae, -a) erāmus, we had to be desired

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## IMPERFECT

optātūrī (-ae, -a) erātis, you were  
about to desire, etc.  
optātūrī (-ae, -a) erant, they were  
about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) erātis, you had to  
be desired  
optandī (-ae, -a) erant, they had to  
be desired

## FUTURE

optātūrus (-a, -um) erō, I shall be  
about to desire, I shall be going to  
desire, I shall be ready to desire  
optātūrus (-a, -um) eris, you will be  
about to desire, etc.  
optātūrus (-a, -um) erit, he/she/it  
will be about to desire, etc.  
optātūrī (-ae, -a) erimus, we shall be  
about to desire, etc.  
optātūrī (-ae, -a) eritis, you will be  
about to desire, etc.  
optātūrī (-ae, -a) erunt, they will be  
about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) erō, I shall have to  
be desired  
optandus (-a, -um) eris, you will  
have to be desired  
optandus (-a, -um) erit, he/she/it  
will have to be desired  
optandī (-ae, -a) erimus, we shall  
have to be desired  
optandī (-ae, -a) eritis, you will have  
to be desired  
optandī (-ae, -a) erunt, they will  
have to be desired

## PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuī, I have been  
(I was) about to desire, going to  
desire, ready to desire  
optātūrus (-a, -um) fuistī, you have  
been about to desire, etc.  
optātūrus (-a, -um) fuit, he/she/it has  
been about to desire, etc.  
optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuimus, we have  
been about to desire, etc.  
optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuistis, you have  
been about to desire, etc.  
optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuērunt, fuēre, they  
have been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuī, I had to be  
desired  
optandus (-a, -um) fuistī, you had to  
be desired  
optandus (-a, -um) fuit, he/she/it  
had to be desired  
optandī (-ae, -a) fuimus, we had to  
be desired  
optandī (-ae, -a) fuistis, you had to  
be desired  
optandī (-ae, -a) fuērunt, fuēre, they  
had to be desired

## PLUPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fueram, I had  
been about to desire, I had been  
going to desire, I had been ready  
to desire

optandus (-a, -um) fueram, I had  
had to be desired

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PLUPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerās, you had  
been about to desire, etc.

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerat, he/she/it  
had been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerāmus, we had  
been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerātis, you had  
been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerant, they had  
been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuerās, you had  
had to be desired

optandus (-a, -um) fuerat, he/she/it  
had had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerāmus, we had  
had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerātis, you had  
had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerant, they had  
had to be desired

## FUTURE PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerō, I shall  
have been about to desire, I shall  
have been going to desire, I shall  
have been ready to desire

optātūrus (-a, -um) fueris, you will  
have been about to desire, etc.

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerit, he/she/it  
will have been about to desire,  
etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuerō, I shall  
have had to be desired

optandus (-a, -um) fueris, you will  
have had to be desired

optandus (-a, -um) fuerit, he/she/it  
will have had to be desired

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerimus, we shall  
have been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fueritis, you will  
have been about to desire, etc.

optātūrī (-ae, -a) fuerint, they will  
have been about to desire, etc.

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerimus, we shall  
have had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fueritis, you will  
have had to be desired

optandī (-ae, -a) fuerint, they will  
have had to be desired

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

optātūrus (-a, -um) sim

optātūrus (-a, -um) sis

optātūrus (-a, -um) sit

optātūrī (-ae, -a) simus

optātūrī (-ae, -a) sitis

optātūrī (-ae, -a) sint

optandus (-a, -um) sim

optandus (-a, -um) sis

optandus (-a, -um) sit

optandī (-ae, -a) simus

optandī (-ae, -a) sitis

optandī (-ae, -a) sint

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## IMPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) essem  
 optātūrus (-a, -um) essēs  
 optātūrus (-a, -um) esset  
 optātūri (-ae, -a) essēmus  
 optātūri (-ae, -a) essētis  
 optātūri (-ae, -a) essent

optandus (-a, -um) essem  
 optandus (-a, -um) essēs  
 optandus (-a, -um) esset  
 optandi (-ae, -a) essēmus  
 optandi (-ae, -a) essētis  
 optandi (-ae, -a) essent

## PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerim  
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fueris  
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fuerit  
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerimus  
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fueritis  
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuerint

optandus (-a, -um) fuerim  
 optandus (-a, -um) fueris  
 optandus (-a, -um) fuerit  
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuerimus  
 optandi (-ae, -a) fueritis  
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuerint

## PLUPERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuisset  
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fuissēs  
 optātūrus (-a, -um) fuisset  
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuissēmus  
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuissētis  
 optātūri (-ae, -a) fuissent

optandus (-a, -um) fuisset  
 optandus (-a, -um) fuissēs  
 optandus (-a, -um) fuisset  
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuissēmus  
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuissētis  
 optandi (-ae, -a) fuissent

(Periphrastics have no participles.)

## INFINITIVES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

optātūrus (-a, -um) esse, to be about  
 to desire, to be going to desire,  
 to be ready to desire

optandus (-a, -um) esse, to have to  
 be desired

## PERFECT

optātūrus (-a, -um) fuisse, to have  
 been about to desire, etc.

optandus (-a, -um) fuisse, to have  
 had to be desired

## FUTURE

--

--

(Periphrastics have no imperatives.)



*Second Conjugation: impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus, 'fill, fill up'*

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

impleō	impleor
implēs	implēris, implēre
implet	implētur
implēmus	implēmur
implētis	implēmini
implent	implentur

## IMPERFECT

implēbam	implēbar
implēbās	implēbāris, implēbāre
implēbat	implēbātur
implēbāmus	implēbāmur
implēbātis	implēbāmini
implēbant	implēbantur

## FUTURE

implēbō	implēbor
implēbis	implēberis, implēbere
implēbit	implēbitur
implēbimus	implēbimur
implēbitis	implēbimini
implēbunt	implēbuntur

## PERFECT

implēvī	implētus (-a, -um) sum
implēvistī	implētus (-a, -um) es
implēvit	implētus (-a, -um) est
implēvimus	implētī (-ae, -a) sumus
implēvistis	implētī (-ae, -a) estis
implēvērunt, implēvēre	implētī (-ae, -a) sunt

## PLUPERFECT

implēveram	implētus (-a, -um) eram
implēverās	implētus (-a, -um) erās
implēverat	implētus (-a, -um) erat
implēverāmus	implētī (-ae, -a) erāmus
implēverātis	implētī (-ae, -a) erātis
implēverant	implētī (-ae, -a) erant

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## FUTURE PERFECT

implēverō	implētus (-a, -um) erō
implēveris	implētus (-a, -um) eris
implēverit	implētus (-a, -um) erit
implēverimus	implētī (-ae, -a) erimus
implēveritis	implētī (-ae, -a) eritis
implēverint	implētī (-ae, -a) erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

impleam	implear
impleās	impleāris, impleāre
impleat	impleātur
impleāmus	impleāmur
impleātis	impleāmini
impleant	impleantur

## IMPERFECT

implērem	implērer
implērēs	implērēris, implērēre
implēret	implērētur
implērēmus	implērēmur
implērētis	implērēmini
implērent	implērentur

## PERFECT

implēverim	implētus (-a, -um) sim
implēveris	implētus (-a, -um) sis
implēverit	implētus (-a, -um) sit
implēverimus	implētī (-ae, -a) simus
implēveritis	implētī (-ae, -a) sitis
implēverint	implētī (-ae, -a) sint

## PLUPERFECT

implēvissem	implētus (-a, -um) essem
implēvisseēs	implētus (-a, -um) essēs
implēvisset	implētus (-a, -um) esset
implēvisseēmus	implētī (-ae, -a) esseēmus
implēvisseētis	implētī (-ae, -a) essētis
implēvissent	implētī (-ae, -a) essent

## PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
implēns		--	
PERFECT			
--		implētus, -a, -um	
FUTURE			
implētūrus, -a, -um		implendus, -a, -um	

## INFINITIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
implēre			implēri
PERFECT			
implēvisse			implētus, -a, -um esse
FUTURE			
implētūrus, -a, -um esse			implētum iri

## IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
implē	implēte	implēre	implēmini
FUTURE			
2nd implētō	implētōte	implētor	--
3rd implētō	implentō	implētor	implentor

## PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb "to be" make up the periphrastic conjugations. See **optō** for examples.

*Third Conjugation: dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, 'lead; consider'*

## INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
	PRESENT	
dūcō		dūcor
dūcis		dūceris, dūcere
dūcit		dūcitur

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

dūcimus	dūcimur
dūcitis	dūcimini
dūcunt	dūcuntur

## IMPERFECT

dūcēbam	dūcēbar
dūcēbās	dūcēbāris, dūcēbāre
dūcēbat	dūcēbātur
dūcēbāmus	dūcēbāmur
dūcēbātis	dūcēbāmini
dūcēbant	dūcēbantur

## FUTURE

dūcam	dūcar
dūcēs	dūcēris, dūcēre
dūcet	dūcētur
dūcēmus	dūcēmur
dūcētis	dūcēmini
dūcent	dūcentur

## PERFECT

dūxī	ductus (-a, -um) sum
dūxisti	ductus (-a, -um) es
dūxit	ductus (-a, -um) est
dūximus	ductī (-ae, -a) sumus
dūxistis	ductī (-ae, -a) estis
dūxērunt, dūxēre	ductī (-ae, -a) sunt

## PLUPERFECT

dūxeram	ductus (-a, -um) eram
dūxerās	ductus (-a, -um) erās
dūxerat	ductus (-a, -um) erat
dūxerāmus	ductī (-ae, -a) erāmus
dūxerātis	ductī (-ae, -a) erātis
dūxerant	ductī (-ae, -a) erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

dūxerō	ductus (-a, -um) erō
dūxeris	ductus (-a, -um) eris
dūxerit	ductus (-a, -um) erit

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## FUTURE PERFECT

dūxerimus	ducti (-ae, -a) erimus
dūxeritis	ducti (-ae, -a) eritis
dūxerint	ducti (-ae, -a) erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

dūcam	dūcar
dūcās	dūcāris, dūcāre
dūcat	dūcātur
dūcāmus	dūcāmur
dūcātis	dūcāmini
dūcant	dūcantur

## IMPERFECT

dūcerem	dūcerer
dūcerēs	dūcerēris, dūcerēre
dūceret	dūcerētur
dūcerēmus	dūcerēmur
dūcerētis	dūcerēmini
dūcerent	dūcerentur

## PERFECT

dūxerim	ductus (-a, -um) sim
dūxeris	ductus (-a, -um) sis
dūxerit	ductus (-a, -um) sit
dūxerimus	ducti (-ae, -a) simus
dūxeritis	ducti (-ae, -a) sitis
dūxerint	ducti (-ae, -a) sint

## PLUPERFECT

dūxissem	ductus (-a, -um) essem
dūxisse	ductus (-a, -um) essēs
dūxisset	ductus (-a, -um) esset
dūxisse	ducti (-ae, -a) essemus
dūxissetis	ducti (-ae, -a) essētis
dūxisissent	ducti (-ae, -a) essent



## PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT	
dūcēns		--	
		PERFECT	
--		ductus, -a, -um	
		FUTURE	
ductūrus, -a, -um		dūcendus, -a, -um	

## INFINITIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT	
dūcere		dūci	
		PERFECT	
dūxisse		ductus, -a, -um esse	
		FUTURE	
ductūrus, -a, -um esse		ductum iri	

## IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
dūc*	dūcite	dūcere	dūcimini
FUTURE			
2nd dūcitō	dūcitōte	dūcitor	--
3rd dūcitō	dūcuntō	dūcitor	dūcuntor

\* dūcō, dicō, faciō, and ferō drop the final -e.

## PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb "to be" make up the periphrastic conjugations. See *optō* for examples.

*Third Conjugation i-Stems: incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, 'begin'*

## INDICATIVE

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		PRESENT	
incipiō		incipior	
incipis		inciperis, incipere	
incipit		incipitur	

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

incipimus	incipimur
incipitis	incipimini
incipiunt	incipiuntur

## IMPERFECT

incipiēbam	incipiēbar
incipiēbās	incipiēbāris, incipiēbāre
incipiēbat	incipiēbātur
incipiēbāmus	incipiēbāmur
incipiēbātis	incipiēbāmini
incipiēbant	incipiēbantur

## FUTURE

incipiam	incipiar
incipiēs	incipiēris, incipiēre
incipiet	incipiētur
incipiēmus	incipiēmur
incipiētis	incipiēmini
incipient	incipientur

## PERFECT

incēpī	inceptus (-a, -um) sum
incēpisti	inceptus (-a, -um) es
incēpit	inceptus (-a, -um) est
incēpimus	inceptī (-ae, -a) sumus
incēpistis	inceptī (-ae, -a) estis
incēpērunt, incēpēre	inceptī (-ae, -a) sunt

## PLUPERFECT

incēperam	inceptus (-a, -um) eram
incēperās	inceptus (-a, -um) erās
incēperat	inceptus (-a, -um) erat
incēperāmus	inceptī (-ae, -a) erāmus
incēperātis	inceptī (-ae, -a) erātis
incēperant	inceptī (-ae, -a) erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

incēperō	inceptus (-a, -um) erō
incēperis	inceptus (-a, -um) eris
incēperit	inceptus (-a, -um) erit
incēperimus	inceptī (-ae, -a) erimus
incēperitis	inceptī (-ae, -a) eritis
incēperint	inceptī (-ae, -a) erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

incipiam

incipiar

incipiās

incipiāris, incipiāre

incipiat

incipiātur

incipiāmus

incipiāmur

incipiātis

incipiāmini

incipiant

incipiantur

## IMPERFECT

inciperem

inciperer

inciperēs

inciperēris, inciperēre

inciperet

inciperētur

inciperēmus

inciperēmur

inciperētis

inciperēmini

inciperent

inciperentur

## PERFECT

incēperim

inceptus (-a, -um) sim

incēperis

inceptus (-a, -um) sis

incēperit

inceptus (-a, -um) sit

incēperimus

incepti (-ae, -a) simus

incēperitis

incepti (-ae, -a) sitis

incēperint

incepti (-ae, -a) sint

## PLUPERFECT

incēpissēm

inceptus (-a, -um) essem

incēpissēs

inceptus (-a, -um) essēs

incēpisset

inceptus (-a, -um) esset

incēpissēmus

incepti (-ae, -a) essēmus

incēpissētis

incepti (-ae, -a) essētis

incēpissent

incepti (-ae, -a) essent

## PARTICIPLES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

incipiēns

--

## PERFECT

--

inceptus, -a, -um

## FUTURE

inceptūrus, -a, -um

incipiendus, -a -um

## INFINITIVES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

incipere

incipi

## PERFECT

incēpisse

inceptus, -a, -um esse

## FUTURE

inceptūrus, -a, -um esse

inceptum iri

## IMPERATIVES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

SINGULAR PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL

## PRESENT

incipe

incipite

incipere

incipimini

## FUTURE

2nd incipitō

incipitōte

incipitor

--

3rd incipitō

incipiuntō

incipitor

incipiuntor

## PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb "to be" make up the periphrastic conjugations. See **optō** for examples.

*Fourth Conjugation: sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, 'feel, perceive'*

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

sentiō

sentior

sentis

sentīris, sentīre

sentit

sentitur

sentimus

sentimur

sentitis

sentimini

sentiant

sentiantur

## IMPERFECT

sentiēbam

sentiēbar

sentiēbās

sentiēbāris, sentiēbāre

sentiēbat

sentiēbātur

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## IMPERFECT

sentiēbāmus  
sentiēbātis  
sentiēbant

sentiēbāmur  
sentiēbāmini  
sentiēbantur

## FUTURE

sentiam  
sentiēs  
sentiet  
sentiēmus  
sentiētis  
sentient

sentiar  
sentiēris, sentiēre  
sentiētur  
sentiēmur  
sentiēmini  
sentientur

## PERFECT

sēnsi  
sēnsisti  
sēnsit  
sēnsimus  
sēnsistis  
sēnsērunt, sēnsēre

sēnsus (-a, -um) sum  
sēnsus (-a, -um) es  
sēnsus (-a, -um) est  
sēnsī (-ae, -a) sumus  
sēnsī (-ae, -a) estis  
sēnsī (-ae, -a) sunt

## PLUPERFECT

sēnseram  
sēnsērās  
sēnserat  
sēnsērāmus  
sēnsērātis  
sēnserant

sēnsus (-a, -um) eram  
sēnsus (-a, -um) erās  
sēnsus (-a, -um) erat  
sēnsī (-ae, -a) erāmus  
sēnsī (-ae, -a) erātis  
sēnsī (-ae, -a) erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

sēnsērō  
sēnseris  
sēnserit  
sēnserimus  
sēnseritis  
sēnserint

sēnsus (-a, -um) erō  
sēnsus (-a, -um) eris  
sēnsus (-a, -um) erit  
sēnsī (-ae, -a) erimus  
sēnsī (-ae, -a) eritis  
sēnsī (-ae, -a) erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

sentiam  
sentiās  
sentiat

sentiar  
sentiāris, sentiāre  
sentiātur



## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

sentiāmus	sentiāmur
sentiātis	sentiāmini
sentiant	sentiantur

## IMPERFECT

sentīrem	sentīrer
sentīrēs	sentīrēris, sentīrēre
sentīret	sentīrētur
sentīrēmus	sentīrēmur
sentīrētis	sentīrēmini
sentīrent	sentīrentur

## PERFECT

sēnsirim	sēnsus (-a, -um) sim
sēnsiris	sēnsus (-a, -um) sis
sēnsirit	sēnsus (-a, -um) sit
sēnsirimus	sēnsī (-ae, -a) simus
sēnsiritis	sēnsī (-ae, -a) sitis
sēnsirint	sēnsī (-ae, -a) sint

## PLUPERFECT

sēnsissem	sēnsus (-a, -um) essem
sēnsissēs	sēnsus (-a, -um) essēs
sēnsisset	sēnsus (-a, -um) esset
sēnsissēmus	sēnsī (-ae, -a) essemus
sēnsissētis	sēnsī (-ae, -a) essētis
sēnsissent	sēnsī (-ae, -a) essent

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

sentiēns	--
----------	----

## PERFECT

--	sēnsus, -a, -um
----	-----------------

## FUTURE

sēnsūrus, -a, -um	sentiendus, -a, -um
-------------------	---------------------

## INFINITIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT			
sentire		sentiri	
PERFECT			
sēnsisse		sēnsus, -a, -um esse	
FUTURE			
sēnsūrus, -a, -um esse		sēnsūm iri	

## IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
sentī	sentite	sentire	sentimini
FUTURE			
2nd sentitō	sentitōte	sentitor	--
3rd sentitō	sentiantō	sentitor	sentiantor

## PERIPHRASTICS

As in the first conjugation, the future active and passive participles and forms of the verb "to be" make up the periphrastic conjugations. See **optō** for examples.

*Deponent Verbs*

**precor, precārī, precātus sum**, 'beg, request'  
**vereor, verērī, veritus sum**, 'fear'  
**ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum**, 'enter, proceed'  
**experior, experīrī, expertus sum**, 'try, experience'

## First Conjugation

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT
precor, I beg, I am begging, I do beg, I (always) beg	precābar, I was begging, etc.
precāris, precāre, you beg, etc.	precābāris, precābāre, you were begging, etc.
precātur, he/she/it begs, etc.	precābātur, he/she/it was begging, etc.

## PRESENT

precāmur, we beg, etc.  
 precāminī, you beg, etc.  
 precantur, they beg, etc.

## FUTURE

precābor, I shall beg, etc.  
  
 precāberis, precābere, you will  
 beg, etc.  
 precābitur, he/she/it will beg, etc.  
  
 precābimur, we shall beg, etc.  
 precābiminī, you will beg, etc.  
 precābuntur, they will beg, etc.

## PLUPERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) eram, I had begged  
  
 precātus (-a, -um) erās  
 precātus (-a, -um) erat  
 precāti (-ae, -a) erāmus  
 precāti (-ae, -a) erātis  
 precāti (-ae, -a) erant

## IMPERFECT

precābāmur, we were begging, etc.  
 precābāminī, you were begging, etc.  
 precābantur, they were begging,  
 etc.

## PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) sum, I have  
 begged, etc.  
 precātus (-a, -um) es  
  
 precātus (-a, -um) est  
  
 precāti (-ae, -a) sumus  
 precāti (-ae, -a) estis  
 precāti (-ae, -a) sunt

## FUTURE PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) erō, I shall have  
 begged  
 precātus (-a, -um) eris  
 precātus (-a, -um) erit  
 precāti (-ae, -a) erimus  
 precāti (-ae, -a) eritis  
 precāti (-ae, -a) erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

precē  
 precēris, precēre  
 precētur  
  
 precēmur  
 precēminī  
 precentur

## PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) sim  
 precātus (-a, -um) sis  
 precātus (-a, -um) sit  
  
 precāti (-ae, -a) simus  
 precāti (-ae, -a) sitis  
 precāti (-ae, -a) sint

## IMPERFECT

precārer  
 precārēris, precārēre  
 precārētur  
  
 precārēmur  
 precārēminī  
 precārentur

## PLUPERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) essem  
 precātus (-a, -um) essēs  
 precātus (-a, -um) esset  
  
 precāti (-ae, -a) essemus  
 precāti (-ae, -a) essētis  
 precāti (-ae, -a) essent

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

precāns, begging

## PERFECT

precātus, -a, -um, having begged

## FUTURE ACTIVE

precātūrus, -a, -um, about to beg, going to beg, ready to beg

## FUTURE PASSIVE

precandus, -a, -um, to be begged, having to be begged

## INFINITIVES

## PRESENT

precārī, to beg

## PERFECT

precātus (-a, -um) esse, to have begged

## FUTURE

precātūrus (-a, -um) esse, to be about to beg, to be going to beg, to be ready to beg

## IMPERATIVES

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## PRESENT

precāre, beg!

precāminī, beg!

## FUTURE

2nd precātor, you shall beg!

---

3rd precātor, he/she/it shall beg!

precantor, they shall beg!

## Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

vereor

ingredior

experior

verēris, verēre

ingrederis, ingredere

experiris, experire

verētur

ingreditur

experitur

verēmur

ingredimur

experimur

verēmini

ingredimini

experimini

verentur

ingrediuntur

experiantur

## IMPERFECT

verēbar	ingrediēbar	experiēbar
verēbāris, verēbāre	ingrediēbāris, ingrediēbāre	experiēbāris, experiēbāre
verēbātur	ingrediēbātur	experiēbātur
verēbāmur	ingrediēbāmur	experiēbāmur
verēbāmini	ingrediēbāmini	experiēbāmini
verēbantur	ingrediēbantur	experiēbantur

## FUTURE

verēbor	ingrediar	experiar
verēberis, verēbere	ingrediēris, ingrediēre	experiēris, experiēre
verēbitur	ingrediētur	experiētur
verēbimur	ingrediēmur	experiēmur
verēbimini	ingrediēmini	experiēmini
verēbuntur	ingredientur	experientur

## PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) sum	ingressus (-a, -um) sum	expertus (-a, -um) sum
veritus (-a, -um) es	ingressus (-a, -um) es	expertus (-a, -um) es
veritus (-a, -um) est	ingressus (-a, -um) est	expertus (-a, -um) est
veritī (-ae, -a) sumus	ingressī (-ae, -a) sumus	expertī (-ae, -a) sumus
veritī (-ae, -a) estis	ingressī (-ae, -a) estis	expertī (-ae, -a) estis
veritī (-ae, -a) sunt	ingressī (-ae, -a) sunt	expertī (-ae, -a) sunt

## PLUPERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) eram	ingressus (-a, -um) eram	expertus (-a, -um) eram
veritus (-a, -um) erās	ingressus (-a, -um) erās	expertus (-a, -um) erās
veritus (-a, -um) erat	ingressus (-a, -um) erat	expertus (-a, -um) erat
veritī (-ae, -a) erāmus	ingressī (-ae, -a) erāmus	expertī (-ae, -a) erāmus
veritī (-ae, -a) erātis	ingressī (-ae, -a) erātis	expertī (-ae, -a) erātis
veritī (-ae, -a) erant	ingressī (-ae, -a) erant	expertī (-ae, -a) erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) erō	ingressus (-a, -um) erō	expertus (-a, -um) erō
veritus (-a, -um) eris	ingressus (-a, -um) eris	expertus (-a, -um) eris
veritus (-a, -um) erit	ingressus (-a, -um) erit	expertus (-a, -um) erit
veritī (-ae, -a) erimus	ingressī (-ae, -a) erimus	expertī (-ae, -a) erimus
veritī (-ae, -a) eritis	ingressī (-ae, -a) eritis	expertī (-ae, -a) eritis
veritī (-ae, -a) erunt	ingressī (-ae, -a) erunt	expertī (-ae, -a) erunt



## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

verear	ingrediar	experiar
vereāris, vereāre	ingrediāris, ingrediāre	experiāris, experiāre
vereātur	ingrediātur	experiātur
vereāmur	ingrediāmur	experiāmur
vereāmini	ingrediāmini	experiāmini
vereantur	ingrediantur	experiantur

## IMPERFECT

verērer	ingrederer	experirer
verērēris, verērēre	ingrederēris, ingrederēre	experirēris, experirēre
verērētur	ingrederētur	experirētur
verērēmur	ingrederēmur	experirēmur
verērēmini	ingrederēmini	experirēmini
verērentur	ingrederentur	experirentur

## PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) sim	ingressus (-a, -um) sim	expertus (-a, -um) sim
veritus (-a, -um) sis	ingressus (-a, -um) sis	expertus (-a, -um) sis
veritus (-a, -um) sit	ingressus (-a, -um) sit	expertus (-a, -um) sit
veritī (-ae, -a) simus	ingressī (-ae, -a) simus	expertī (-ae, -a) simus
veritī (-ae, -a) sitis	ingressī (-ae, -a) sitis	expertī (-ae, -a) sitis
veritī (-ae, -a) sint	ingressī (-ae, -a) sint	expertī (-ae, -a) sint

## PLUPERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) essem	ingressus (-a, -um) essem	expertus (-a, -um) essem
veritus (-a, -um) essēs	ingressus (-a, -um) essēs	expertus (-a, -um) essēs
veritus (-a, -um) esset	ingressus (-a, -um) esset	expertus (-a, -um) esset
veritī (-ae, -a) essēmus	ingressī (-ae, -a) essēmus	expertī (-ae, -a) essēmus
veritī (-ae, -a) essētis	ingressī (-ae, -a) essētis	expertī (-ae, -a) essētis
veritī (-ae, -a) essent	ingressī (-ae, -a) essent	expertī (-ae, -a) essent

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

verēns	ingrediēns	experiēns
--------	------------	-----------

## PERFECT

veritus, -a, -um	ingressus, -a, -um	expertus, -a, -um
------------------	--------------------	-------------------

## FUTURE ACTIVE

veritūrus, -a, -um	ingressūrus, -a, -um	expertūrus, -a, -um
--------------------	----------------------	---------------------

## FUTURE PASSIVE

verendus, -a, -um	ingrediendus, -a, -um	experiendus, -a, -um
-------------------	-----------------------	----------------------

## INFINITIVES

## PRESENT

verēri

ingredi

experiri

## PERFECT

veritus (-a, -um) esse

ingressus (-a, -um) esse

expertus (-a, -um) esse

## FUTURE

veritūrus (-a, -um)  
esseingressūrus (-a, -um)  
esseexpertūrus (-a, -um)  
esse

## IMPERATIVES

SINGULAR PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL

SINGULAR PLURAL

## PRESENT

verēre verēmini

ingredere ingredimini

experire experimini

## FUTURE

2nd verētor --

ingreditor --

experitor --

3rd verētor verentor

ingreditor ingrediuntor

experitor experiuntor

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, 'be'

possum, posse, potui, --, 'be able'

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

sum, I am

possum, I am able, I can

es, you are

potes, you are able, etc.

est, he/she/it/there is

potest, he/she/it is able, etc.

sumus, we are

possumus, we are able, etc.

estis, you are

potestis, you are able, etc.

sunt, they/there are

possunt, they are able, etc.

## IMPERFECT

eram, I was

poteram, I was able, I could

erās, you were

poterās, you were able, etc.

erat, he/she/it/there was

poterat, he/she/it was able, etc.

erāmus, we were

poterāmus, we were able, etc.

erātis, you were

poterātis, you were able, etc.

erant, they/there were

poterant, they were able, etc.

## FUTURE

erō, I shall be

poterō, I shall be able

eris, you will be

poteris, you will be able

erit, he/she/it/there will be

poterit, he/she/it will be able

## FUTURE

erimus, we shall be  
eritis, you will be  
erunt, they/there will be

poterimus, we shall be able  
poteritis, you will be able  
poterunt, they will be able

## PERFECT

fui, I have been, I was  
fuisti, you have been, etc.  
fuit, he/she/it/there has been, etc.

potui, I have been (was) able, I  
could  
potuisti, you have been (were)  
able, etc.  
potuit, he/she/it has been (was)  
able, etc.  
potuimus, we have been (were)  
able, etc.  
potuistis, you have been (were)  
able, etc.  
potuerunt, potuere, they have been  
(were) able, etc.

fuius, we have been, etc.  
fuistis, you have been, etc.  
fuērunt, fuere, they/there have been,  
etc.

## PLUPERFECT

fueram, I had been  
fuerās, you had been  
fuerat, he/she/it/there had been  
fuerāmus, we had been  
fuerātis, you had been  
fuerant, they/there had been

potueram I had been able  
potuerās, you had been able  
potuerat, he/she/it had been able  
potuerāmus, we had been able  
potuerātis, you had been able  
potuerant, they had been able

## FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, I shall have been  
fueris, you will have been  
fuerit, he/she/it/there will have been

potuerō, I shall have been able  
potueris, you will have been able  
potuerit, he/she/it will have been  
able

fuerimus, we shall have been  
fueritis, you will have been  
fuerint, they/there will have been

potuerimus, we shall have been able  
potueritis, you will have been able  
potuerint, they will have been able

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

sim	sīmus	possim	possimus
sis	sītis	possis	possitis
sit	sint	possit	possint

## IMPERFECT

essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

## PERFECT

fuerim	fuerimus	potuerim	potuerimus
fueris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

## PLUPERFECT

fuissem	fuissēmus	potuissem	potuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis	potuissēs	potuissētis
fuisset	fuissent	potuisset	potuissent

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

-- potēns, (being) able, powerful

## PERFECT

-- --

## FUTURE

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be, --  
going to be, ready to be

## INFINITIVES

## PRESENT

esse, to be posse, to be able

## PERFECT

fuisse, to have been potuisse, to have been able

## FUTURE

futūrus, -a, -um esse (fore), to be --  
about to be, to be going to be,  
to be ready to be

## IMPERATIVES

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## PRESENT

es, be!

este, be!

--

--

## FUTURE

2nd estō,

estōte,

--

--

you shall be!

you shall be!

3rd estō,

suntō,

--

--

he/she/it shall be!

they shall be!

## eō, ire, iī (ivī), itus, 'go'

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
eō	ibam	ibō
is	ibās	ibis
it	ibat	ibit
imus	ibāmus	ibimus
itis	ibātis	ibitis
eunt	ibant	ibunt
PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
iī (ivī)	ieram (iveram)	ierō (iverō)
istī (ivistī)	ierās (iverās)	ieris (iveris)
iit (ivit)	ierat (iverat)	ierit (iverit)
iimus (ivimus)	ierāmus (iverāmus)	ierimus (iverimus)
istis (ivistis)	ierātis (iverātis)	ieritis (iveritis)
iērunť, iēre (ivērunť, ivēre)	ierant (iverant)	ierint (iverint)

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
eam	irem	ierim (iverim)	issem (ivissem)
eās	irēs	ieris (iveris)	issēs (ivissēs)
eat	iret	ierit (iverit)	isset (ivisset)
eāmus	irēmus	ierimus (iverimus)	issēmus (ivissēmus)
eātis	irētis	ieritis (iveritis)	issētis (ivissētis)
eant	irent	ierint (iverint)	issent (ivissent)

## PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	
iēns, <i>gen. euntis</i>	--
PERFECT	
--	itum
FUTURE	
itūrus, -a, -um	eundum



## INFINITIVES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

ire

---

## PERFECT

isse (ivisse)

---

## FUTURE

itūrus (-a, -um) esse

---

## IMPERATIVES

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## PRESENT

ī

īte

## FUTURE

2nd itō

itōte

3rd itō

euntō

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, 'bring, carry, bear, endure'

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

ferō

feror

fers

ferris, ferre

fert

fertur

ferimus

ferimur

fertis

ferimini

ferunt

feruntur

## IMPERFECT

ferēbam

ferēbar

ferēbās

ferēbāris, ferēbāre

ferēbat

ferēbātur

ferēbāmus

ferēbāmur

ferēbātis

ferēbāminī

ferēbant

ferēbantur

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## FUTURE

feram	ferar
ferēs	ferēris, ferēre
feret	ferētur
ferēmus	ferēmur
ferētis	ferēmini
ferent	ferentur

## PERFECT

tulī	lātus (-a, -um) sum
tulistī	lātus (-a, -um) es
tulit	lātus (-a, -um) est
tulimus	lāti (-ae, -a) sumus
tulistis	lāti (-ae, -a) estis
tulērunt, tulēre	lāti (-ae, -a) sunt

## PLUPERFECT

tuleram	lātus (-a, -um) eram
tulerās	lātus (-a, -um) erās
tulerat	lātus (-a, -um) erat
tulerāmus	lāti (-ae, -a) erāmus
tulerātis	lāti (-ae, -a) erātis
tulerant	lāti (-ae, -a) erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	lātus (-a, -um) erō
tuleris	lātus (-a, -um) eris
tulerit	lātus (-a, -um) erit
tulerimus	lāti (-ae, -a) erimus
tuleritis	lāti (-ae, -a) eritis
tulerint	lāti (-ae, -a) erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

feram	ferar
ferās	ferāris, ferāre
ferat	ferātur
ferāmus	ferāmur
ferātis	ferāmini
ferant	ferantur

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## IMPERFECT

ferrem	ferrer
ferrēs	ferrēris, ferrēre
ferret	ferrētur
ferrēmus	ferrēmur
ferrētis	ferrēmini
ferrent	ferrentur

## PERFECT

tulerim	lātus (-a, -um) sim
tuleris	lātus (-a, -um) sis
tulerit	lātus (-a, -um) sit
tulerimus	lāti (-ae, -a) simus
tuleritis	lāti (-ae, -a) sitis
tulerint	lāti (-ae, -a) sint

## PLUPERFECT

tulissem	lātus (-a, -um) essem
tulissēs	lātus (-a, -um) essēs
tulisset	lātus (-a, -um) esset
tulissēmus	lāti (-ae, -a) essēmus
tulissētis	lāti (-ae, -a) essētis
tulissent	lāti (-ae, -a) essent

## PARTICIPLES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

ferēns	---
--------	-----

## PERFECT

---	lātus, -a, -um
-----	----------------

## FUTURE

lātūrus, -a, -um	ferendus, -a, -um
------------------	-------------------

## INFINITIVES

## ACTIVE

## PASSIVE

## PRESENT

ferre	ferri
-------	-------

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
PERFECT		
tulisse		lātus (-a, -um) esse
FUTURE		
lātūrus (-a, -um) esse		lātum iri

## IMPERATIVES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
PRESENT			
fer	ferite	ferre	ferimini
FUTURE			
2nd fertō	fertōte	fertor	--
3rd fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

**volō, velle, voluī, --, 'wish, want, be willing'**

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, --, 'be unwilling'**

**mālō, mälle, māluī, --, 'prefer'**

## INDICATIVE

PRESENT		
volō	nōlō	mālō
vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
vult	nōn vult	māvult
volumus	nolumus	mālumus
vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPERFECT		
volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās
volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat
volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus
volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis
volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant
FUTURE		
volam	nōlam	mālam
volēs	nōlēs	mālēs
volet	nōlet	mālet

volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus
volētis	nōlētis	mālētis
volent	nōlent	mālent

## PERFECT

voluī	nōluī	māluī
voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī
voluit	nōluit	māluit
voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus
voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis
voluērunt, voluēre	nōluērunt, nōluēre	māluērunt, māluēre

## PLUPERFECT

volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās
voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat
voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus
voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis
voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant

## FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

velim	nōlim	mālim
velis	nōlis	mālis
velit	nōlit	mālit
velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
velitis	nōlitis	mālitis
velint	nōlint	mālint

## IMPERFECT

vellem	nōllem	māllem
vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
vellet	nōllet	māllet
vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
vellent	nōllent	māllent



## PERFECT

voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
volueris	nōlueris	mālueris
voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
volueritis	nōlueritis	mālueritis
voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

## PLUPERFECT

voluissē	nōluissē	māluissē
voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

volēns	nōlēns	--
--------	--------	----

## PERFECT

--	--	--
----	----	----

## FUTURE

--	--	--
----	----	----

## INFINITIVES

## PRESENT

velle	nōlle	mālle
-------	-------	-------

## PERFECT

voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse
----------	----------	----------

## FUTURE

--	--	--
----	----	----

## IMPERATIVES

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## PRESENT

--	nōlī	nōlīte	--
----	------	--------	----

## FUTURE

--	2nd nōlītō	nōlītōte	--
	3rd nōlītō	nōluntō	

**fiō, fieri, factus sum**, 'be made, be done, happen, become'

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

fiō, I am made,  
I become

fis

fit

fimus

fitis

fiunt

## IMPERFECT

fiēbam, I was made,  
I became

fiēbās

fiēbat

fiēbāmus

fiēbātis

fiēbant

## FUTURE

fiam, I shall be made,  
I shall become

fiēs

fiet

fiēmus

fiētis

fient

## PERFECT

factus (-a, -um) sum

factus (-a, -um) es

factus (-a, -um) est

facti (-ae, -a) sumus

facti (-ae, -a) estis

facti (-ae, -a) sunt

## PLUPERFECT

factus (-a, -um) eram

factus (-a, -um) erās

factus (-a, -um) erat

facti (-ae, -a) erāmus

facti (-ae, -a) erātis

facti (-ae, -a) erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

factus (-a, -um) erō

factus (-a, -um) eris

factus (-a, -um) erit

facti (-ae, -a) erimus

facti (-ae, -a) eritis

facti (-ae, -a) erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

fiam

fiās

fiat

fiāmus

fiātis

fiant

## IMPERFECT

fierem

fierēs

fieret

fierēmus

fierētis

fierent

## PERFECT

factus (-a, -um) sim

factus (-a, -um) sis

factus (-a, -um) sit

facti (-ae, -a) simus

facti (-ae, -a) sitis

facti (-ae, -a) sint

## PLUPERFECT

factus (-a, -um) essem

factus (-a, -um) essēs

factus (-a, -um) esset

facti (-ae, -a) essēmus

facti (-ae, -a) essētis

facti (-ae, -a) essent

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

--

## PERFECT

factus, -a, -um, having been made, having become

## FUTURE

faciendus, -a, -um, having to be made, having to become

## INFINITIVES

## PRESENT

fieri, to be made, to become

## PERFECT

factus (-a, -um) esse, to have been made, to have become

## FUTURE

factum iri, to be about (going, ready) to be made, to be about (going, ready) to become

## IMPERATIVES

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## PRESENT

fi, be made, become!

fite, be made, become!

## FUTURE

2nd fitō, you shall be made,  
you shall become! --

3rd fitō, he/she/it shall be made, --  
he/she/it shall become!

*Formation of the Future Imperative*

The future imperative is a rare form in Latin. It exists in the second and third persons, singular and plural. To form the future *active* imperative, take the present stem and for the second and third persons singular, add the ending -tō. For the second person plural, add -tōte to the present stem, and for the third person plural, add -ntō to the stem.

The future *passive* imperative lacks a second person plural. The endings which are added to the present stem are -tor for the second and third persons singular and -ntor for the third person plural.

In the third conjugation, the -e- of the present stem is changed to -i-, but in the third person plural to -u-. In i-stems of the third conjugation and in the fourth conjugation, an -i- appears before the -u-.

Thus:

## ACTIVE

SINGULAR	2nd	optātō	implētō	dūcitō	incipitō	sentitō
	3rd	optātō	implētō	dūcitō	incipitō	sentitō
PLURAL	2nd	optātōte	implētōte	dūcitōte	incipitōte	sentitōte
	3rd	optantō	implentō	dūcuntō	incipiuntō	sentiantō

## PASSIVE

SINGULAR	2nd	optātor	implētor	dūcitor	incipitor	sentitor
	3rd	optātor	implētor	dūcitor	incipitor	sentitor
PLURAL	2nd	--	--	--	--	--
	3rd	optantor	implentor	dūcuntor	incipiuntor	sentiantor

## REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF NOUNS

### Apposition

Apposition may occur in all cases in Latin.

- NOMINATIVE:** 1. Marcus, **bonus vir**, in agris labōrat. Marcus, *a good man*, is working in the fields.  
 2. **Nūntiī** ad insulam ivimus. We went *as messengers* to the island; We, *messengers*, went to the island.  
 3. **Amicus tuus** tibi loquor. I speak to you *as your friend*; I, *your friend*, speak to you.
- GENITIVE:** Memorēs invidiae tuae, **culpae magnae**, ex urbe ibimus. Mindful of your envy, *a great fault*, we shall go out of the city.
- DATIVE:** Sorōri **Annae** dōnum dedit. He gave a gift to his sister *Anna*.
- ACCUSATIVE:** Marcum **ducem** cōpiārū in Italiam misērunt. They sent Marcus, *the leader* of the troops, into Italy; They sent Marcus into Italy *as leader* of the troops.
- ABLATIVE:** Socii in patriā **Asiā** visi sunt. The allies were seen in their native land *of Asia* (literally, their native land, *Asia*).

### Nominative Case

The nominative case is used for the subject of a finite verb and for the predicate nominative.

1. **Nautae** vēla ad insulam dedērunt. *The sailors* set sail to the island.
2. Marcus est **vir** honestus. Marcus is a distinguished *man*. (predicate nominative)
3. Marcus **vir** honestus vidētur. Marcus seems a distinguished *man*. (predicate nominative)
4. Marcus **honestus** vidēbātur. Marcus seemed *distinguished*. (predicate adjective)
5. **Pueri puellaeque** in tēctum missi sunt. *The boys and girls* were sent into the house. (For the masculine verb, see *Additional Rules*, p. 400)
6. **Mare, sidera, animālia, terraque** ā dis immortalibus facta est. *The sea, stars, animals and land* were made by the immortal gods. (For the singular verb, see *Additional Rules*, p. 400)

### Genitive Case

The genitive case, in general, is used for a noun which is dependent upon another noun. In addition, it may depend upon a verb or an adjective. Thus:

**GENITIVE OF POSSESSION** (not discussed in the text)

1. Tēctum **mei amīci** igni dēlētum est. *My friend's* house was destroyed by fire.

2. Māter **ducis** ab incolis laudāta est. The mother *of the leader* was praised by the inhabitants.
3. Iuvenis frātre[m] gladiō **patris** interfēcit. The young man killed his brother with his *father's* sword.
4. Poēta **cuius** liber est nōtus auxilium ā rēge petivit. The poet *whose* book is well known sought aid from the king.

#### PARTITIVE GENITIVE (GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE) (Unit 9G)

The genitive is sometimes used in Latin to express the *whole* group or unit of which the word on which the genitive depends expresses the *part*.

1. Quid **malī** in nostrō oppidō est? What *evil* is in our town?
2. Pars **oppidi** flammis dēlēta erat. Part *of the town* had been destroyed by flames.
3. Nihil **bonī** in hāc urbe vidēre possumus. We are able to see nothing *good* in this city.
4. Plūs **pecūniae** nōs habēmus quam vōs. We have more *money* than you (do).

BUT:

1. Ūnus ē **libris** ad nōs missus est. One *of the books* was sent to us.
2. Quīnque ē **militibus** interfecti sunt. Five *of the soldiers* were killed.
3. Quīdam **ex hominibus** in viā ambulābat. A certain one *of the men* was walking in the street.

#### GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION (QUALITY) (Unit 10D)

A noun in the genitive case, when modified by an adjective, may be used to describe or express a quality of another noun.

1. Vir **magnae sapientiae** ab omnibus laudātur. A man *of great wisdom* is praised by all.
2. Verba **eius modi** ā populō omni audita sunt. Words *of this kind* have been heard by all the people.
3. Cicerō fuit homō **magnae fāmae**. Cicero was a man *of great reputation*.

#### GENITIVE OF MATERIAL (not discussed in the text)

The genitive is used to express the material of which something is composed.

1. Urna **auri** ā nātis inventa est. An urn *of gold* was found by the children.
2. Tēlane **ferri** habēs? Do you have weapons *of iron*?
3. Magnum agrum **frumentī** vidimus. We have seen a large field *of grain*.  
[frumentum, -i, N., 'grain']
4. Turba **fēminarum** in viā vīsa est. A crowd *of women* was seen in the street.

#### APPOSITIONAL GENITIVE (not discussed in the text)

The genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition.



1. Nōmen **rēgis** ā populō Rōmānō nōn dilēctum est. The name *of king* was not esteemed by the Roman people. [**diligō**, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, 'esteem']
2. Difficile est artem **rei militāris** docēre. It is difficult to teach the art *of warfare*. [**rēs militāris**, **rei militāris**, F., 'warfare']
3. Opportūnitās **libri legendi** nōbis nōn offertur. The opportunity *of reading a book* is not offered to us. [**opportūnitās**, -tātis, F., 'opportunity']

#### PREDICATE GENITIVE (GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC) (Unit 11D)

A noun in the genitive case which stands alone (or modified by an adjective) in the predicate denotes a characteristic or a class.

1. Est **boni imperātōris** bene dūcere. It is *the mark of a good commander* to lead well.
2. **Digni civis** est dē cūris patriae cōgitāre. It is *the mark of a worthy citizen* to think about the cares of his native land.
3. Sapienter regere est **honesti regis**. Ruling wisely is *the mark of a respected king*.

The genitive serves as the object of a verbal idea of nouns, adjectives, and is used with some verbs. Thus:

#### GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF ACCUSING AND CONDEMNING (Unit 2F)

The genitive is used with verbs of accusing and condemning to express the charge or penalty.

1. Hostēs **gravium scelerum** dāmnāvērunt. They condemned the enemy *for serious crimes*.
2. Fēminās **irae** dāmnāmus. We condemn the women *for their anger*.
3. Nautās **insidiarum** dāmnābitis. You will condemn the sailors *for their treachery*.

#### OBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Unit 11C)

There is a verbal idea understood in nouns and adjectives of feeling or action. The noun that is the *object* of this verbal idea is called the objective genitive.

1. Dux **belli** hortātus est ut militēs quam fortissimē pūgnārent. The leader *of the war* urged that the soldiers fight as bravely as possible.
2. Incolae **oppidi** ruīnam **tēctorum** timuērunt. The inhabitants *of the town* feared the destruction *of the houses*.
3. Erant multi rūmōrēs dē spē **pācis**. There were many rumors about the hope *of peace*.
4. Multa pecūnia saepe est **invidiae** causa. A lot of money is often the cause of *envy*.
5. Iūnō dē Iovis amōre **pulchrarum fēminarum** monēbātur. Juno was warned about Jupiter's love *of beautiful women*.

6. Iuvenis studiōsus **legendī** multa didicit. The young man, fond of reading, learned many things.

BUT NOTE also, in contrast, the SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE (Unit 11C):

There is a verbal idea understood in nouns and adjectives of feeling or action. The noun that is the *subject* of this verbal idea is called the subjective genitive.

1. Iūnō dē **Iovis** amōre pulchrārū fēminārū monēbātur. Juno was warned about *Jupiter's* love of beautiful women.
2. Irā **rēgīnae** populum terret. The *queen's* anger is frightening the people.
3. Mīlitēs insidiīs **hostiū** superātī sunt. The soldiers were conquered by the treachery of *the enemy*.
4. Ob **rēgis** cūrā dē salūte populi urbs quam optimē mūnita est. On account of the *king's* concern about the safety of the people, the city has been fortified as well as possible.
5. Facta fortissima **mīlitū** ā ducibus laudāta sunt. The very brave deeds of *the soldiers* were praised by the leaders.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS (Unit 16D4)

Some impersonal verbs take the genitive of the thing which arouses the feeling and the accusative of the person concerned.

1. Mē **invidiae** pudet. I am ashamed of *my jealousy*.
2. Vōs **belli longī** piget? Are you disgusted with *the long war*?
3. Quōs **superātōrū** miseret? Who pities *the conquered*?
4. **Ducis** interest inimicōs interficī. It is in *the leader's* interest that his enemies be killed.

GENITIVE WITH EXPRESSIONS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING (Unit 18H)

The genitive is frequently used with verbs and expressions of remembering and forgetting.

1. **Factōrū fortium** ducum nostrōrū semper meminerimus. We shall always remember *the brave deeds* of our leaders.
2. **Veniae nostrae** oblivisceris? Are you forgetting *our kindness*?
3. Memorēs **patriae** magnō cum studiō pūgnābimus. Mindful of *our native land* we shall fight with great zeal.

Note that the accusative may also be used in these constructions.

GENITIVE OF INDEFINITE VALUE (Unit 18I)

A few neuter adjectives and some nouns implying utter worthlessness, such as **as**, **floccus**, and **nihilum**, are sometimes used in the genitive case to express the value of a person, thing, or situation when that value is not specifically determined or is indefinite. This use of the genitive is generally found with verbs meaning 'consider', 'reckon', and 'value'.

1. Tēctum **magnī** habeo. I have a house *of great value*.
2. Inimicōs **parvī** facimus. We reckon our enemies *of little worth*.
3. Quid **tantī** aestimāmus? What do we estimate *of such great value*?
4. Tē **floccl** dūcō. I don't give *a damn* for you.

GENITIVE OF FULLNESS AND WANT (not discussed in the text)

Words expressing fullness and emptiness often govern the genitive.

1. Servi urnam {plēnam **aquae**  
inānem **aquae**} in mēnsā posuērunt. The slaves placed on the  
table the urn {full of water  
empty of water}. [**plēnus**, -a, -um, 'full'; **inānis**, -e, 'empty']
2. Militēs fortēs **timōris** semper nōn egent. Brave soldiers do not always lack  
*fear*. [**egeō**, -ēre, -uī, --, 'lack, be without']
3. Marcus agrum pauperem **aquae** coluit. Marcus tilled a field poor *in water*.  
[**colō**, -ere, -uī, **cultus**, 'till']

GREEK GENITIVE (EPEXEGETICAL GENITIVE) (not discussed in the text)

Following Greek usage, adjectives meaning 'skilled in, having knowledge of' may govern the genitive.

1. Puerum peritum **legendī** laudābāmus. We kept on praising the boy skilled  
*in reading*. [**perītus**, -a, -um, 'skilled in']
2. Vir doctus **litterārum** fuit. He was a man learned in *literature*. [**doctus**, -a, -um, 'learned']
3. Dux **bellī gerendī** scitus ā cīvibus factus est. A leader skilled in *waging war*  
was chosen (*literally*, 'made') by the citizens. [**scītus**, -a, -um, 'skilled in']

The genitive is sometimes governed by other words, e.g., **causā** and **grātiā**. Thus:

GENITIVE WITH **causā** AND **grātiā**

**Causā** and **grātiā**, both meaning 'for the sake of', govern the genitive and are placed *after* it.

1. **Glōriae causā** (**grātiā**), bellum gessimus. We waged war *for the sake of glory*.
2. Gēns hostilis bella gerēbat **vincendī causā** (**grātiā**). The hostile people used  
to wage wars *for the sake of conquering* (i.e., *in order to conquer*).
3. Nātōs ad prōvinciam misērunt **auxiliī petendī causā** (**grātiā**). They sent their  
sons to the province *for the sake of seeking* (i.e., *in order to seek*) aid.

### Dative Case

The basic use of the dative case is referential. The person or thing to whom or which the action or idea refers, is of advantage, or disadvantage, is put into the dative case. Thus:

1. **Vōbīs** Rōmam ire licet. *You* are permitted to go to Rome.
2. Librum **nautae** ēmi. I bought a book *for the sailor*.
3. Dōnum **mātrī nostrae** invēnimus. We have found a gift *for our mother*.
4. Tua facta fortia in **mihi** mentem vērunt. Your brave deeds came into mind *for my advantage*; Your brave deeds came into *my* mind.
5. Hoc **mihi** āctum est. This was done *for me* (i.e., *for my advantage* or *for my disadvantage*).
6. Cōnsulem **tibi** laudāvisti. You praised the consul *for your advantage*.
7. Pontem **hostibus** dēlēvimus. We destroyed the bridge *for the enemy's disadvantage*. [**pōns, pontis**, M., 'bridge']

The following specialized uses of the referential dative also occur:

#### DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT (Unit 1H3)

The indirect object occurs with verbs of *giving*, *telling*, and *showing*. The person to whom something is given, told, or shown is put into the dative case.

1. Librum **magistrō** mōnstrāvimus. We showed the book *to the teacher*.
2. Liber **magistrō** datus est. The book was given *to the teacher*.
3. Rēgina **poetae** multa respondit. The queen answered many things *to the poet*.  
*Or: The queen gave many answers to the poet.*
4. Quid **rēginae** dictum est? What was said *to the queen*?
5. Nōli **timōri** cedere. Don't yield *to fear*.

#### DATIVE WITH CERTAIN ADJECTIVES (not discussed in the text)

Adjectives meaning 'near (to), fit (for), friendly (to), pleasing (to), similar (to)', etc., and their opposites take the dative case.

1. Servus **dominō** cārus fuit. The slave was dear *to his master*.
2. Hostēs proximī **oppidō** iam erunt. The enemy by this time will be very near *the town*.
3. Cōsul amicus **plēbi** factus est. A consul friendly *to the common people* was chosen.
4. Filius simillimus **patri** videtur. The son seems very like *his father*.

#### DATIVE WITH CERTAIN INTRANSITIVE VERBS (Unit 13B)

Certain intransitive verbs in Latin govern the dative case. Some common examples are: **crēdō**, **faveō**, **ignōscō**, **imperō**, **noceō**, **parcō**, **pāreō**, **placeō**, **persuādeō**, **studeō**.

1. **Quibus** crēdis? *Whom* do you believe?
2. Magister **puellis** fāvit. The teacher favored *the girls*.
3. Dōnum **frātrī** placuit? Did the gift please *your brother*?
4. Servi **dominō** pārent. The slaves obey *their master*.



5. Imperātor **cōpiis** imperāvit ut pūgnārent. The commander ordered *the troops* to fight.

#### DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR (Unit 5E)

With forms of the verb **sum**, the dative is sometimes used to show possession. The *possessor* is put into the dative case.

1. **Incolis** multa tēcta erant. *The inhabitants* had many houses.
2. Cōnsilium bonum fuerat **ducibus**. *The leaders* had had a good plan.
3. **Vōbis**ne est magna cōpia pecūniae? Do *you* have a large supply of money?

#### DATIVE OF AGENT (Unit 5D)

With the passive periphrastic the personal agent is normally expressed by the dative case without a preposition.

1. Quid **puellae** agendum est? What must *the girl* do? (*Literally*, What must be done *by the girl*?)
2. Oppidum **militibus** oppūgnandum erat. The town had to be attacked *by the soldiers*.
3. Aliquid magni **civibus** agendum erit. *The citizens* will have to do something great.

#### DATIVE WITH COMPOUND VERBS (Unit 13D)

Many verbs compounded with such prefixes as **ad-**, **ante-**, **circum-**, **con-**, **in-**, **inter-**, **ob-**, **post-**, **prae-**, **prō-**, **sub-**, **super-** govern the dative case. When the original verb is transitive, the compounded form governs an accusative as well.

1. Hostēs bellum **prōvinciae** inferunt. The enemies inflict a war on *the province*.
2. Vir **amicō** in viā occurrit. The man met *his friend* in the street. [**occurrō**, **-ere**, **-currī**, **-cursus**, 'meet']
3. Dux optimōs **nāvibus** praefēcit. The leader put the best men in command of *the ships*.
4. Marcus **cōpiis** praeerit. Marcus will be in command of *the troops*.

#### ETHICAL DATIVE (not discussed in the text)

The ethical dative is a personal pronoun in the dative case not closely connected with the rest of the sentence; it does not depend on any one word.

1. Nihil boni **mihi** hīc invenīri potest. Nothing good can be found here *in my opinion*.
2. Illud **mihi** scelus non est. That is not a crime *as far as I'm concerned*.
3. Quod cōnsilium **tibi** ā ducibus legētur? What plan will be chosen by the leaders *in your opinion*?
4. Illud **tibi** est fortis viri factum! That is the deed of a brave man *for you*!
5. Vita **mihi** sine spē est mors. Life without hope, *for me* (i.e., *as far as I'm concerned*), is death.



In addition to these basic referential uses, a noun in the dative case can express the purpose for which an action is performed or for which something exists. This is often used in conjunction with another noun in the dative case which is purely referential in nature. Thus:

#### DATIVE OF PURPOSE (SERVICE) (Unit 8H)

1. Aurum **auxiliō** oppidō missum est. The gold was sent *as an aid* to the town.
2. Magna cōpia pecūniae est **magnae cūrae**. A large supply of money is *a great concern* (i.e., it serves *as a great concern*).
3. Hostēs fuērunt **timōri** populō. The enemy were *a fear* to the people (i.e., they served *as a source of fear* for the people).
4. Amicō librum **dōnō** dedit. He gave his friend a book *for a gift* (i.e., to serve *as a gift*).
5. **Magnō auxiliō** nostris amicis fuimus. We were *a great aid* to our friends.

#### Accusative Case

The accusative case is used as the direct object of a verb or as the object of certain prepositions.

#### ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT (Unit 1H4)

1. **Multōsne maiōrēs frātrēs** habēs? Do you have *many older brothers*?
2. **Impiōs** nōn laudābimus. We shall not praise *wicked men*.
3. **Mōtūs** siderum nōn intellēxit. He did not understand *the movements* of the stars.

#### COGNATE ACCUSATIVE (not discussed in the text)

The direct object whose meaning is very closely related to that of the verb is called a cognate accusative (e.g., to dream a dream, dance a dance, sing a song).

1. **Vitam** bonam et fēlicem vivit. He lives a good and happy *life*.
2. **Somnium** longum et grātum somniāvī. I dreamed a long and pleasing *dream*.  
[**somnium**, -ī, N., 'dream'; **somniō** (1), 'dream']
3. Militēs multa **facta** fortia fēcērunt. The soldiers did many brave *deeds*.

#### DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE (not discussed in the text)

Some verbs take two accusatives.

1. **Nōs** **litterās** docēre volunt. They want to teach *us literature*.
2. **Amicī** **nōs** **pecūniam** ōrāvērunt. Our friends asked *us for money*.
3. **Vōs** **auxilium** rogāmus. We ask *you for aid*.
4. **Factum** **tē** cēlāvī. I have hidden the *deed* from *you*.

### GREEK ACCUSATIVE: ACCUSATIVE OF RESPECT OR ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS IN THE MIDDLE VOICE (Unit 18F)

Occasionally in poetry and late Latin the accusative is used to express *respect* or *specification*. It is frequently used to express the *part affected*. The accusative is used as the object of a verb which looks passive, but which may be considered the equivalent of a Greek middle voice.

1. Multi **oculōs** vulnerātī sunt. Many men were wounded *in their eyes*.
2. Fēmina **caput** tēcta per viās oppidī sine servīs ambulāvit. The woman having covered *her head* walked through the streets of the town without slaves. [**caput**, **capitis**, N., 'head']
3. **Caput** cinctus laurō deus magnum amōrem puellae cecinit. Having bound his *head* with laurel, the god sang of his great love for the girl. [**caput**, **capitis**, N., 'head'; **laurus**, -ī, F., 'laurel']

### SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE (not discussed in the text; but see Unit 6C)

The subject of the infinitive is put into the accusative case.

1. Nōs ire nōlunt. They are unwilling *for us* to go.
2. Fēminās ē tēctis expulsās esse dicit. He says that *the women* were driven out of the houses.
3. Dux **militēs** oppidum oppūgnāre iussit. The leader ordered *the soldiers* to attack the town.

BUT: the subject of an historical infinitive is in the nominative case.

4. **Servī** libenter fugere. *The slaves* fled gladly.

### ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE (Unit 7I)

The accusative, usually without a preposition, is used to express duration of time or extent of space. It answers the question "for how long?", whether it be of time or distance.

1. In insulā **quīnque diēs** manēbimus. We shall remain on the island *for five days*.
2. Nōs **duās hōrās** expectāvērunt. They waited for us *for two hours*.
3. Rōmam **multōs annōs** incoluērunt. They lived in Rome *for many years*.
4. Puerī parvī saxum magnum **quīnque pedēs** portāvērunt. The small boys carried the large rock *for five feet*.

### ACCUSATIVE OF EXCLAMATION (Unit 15F)

The accusative case is sometimes used in exclamations.

1. Ō impiās fēminās! Oh wicked women!
2. Mē miserum! Unhappy me!
3. Infēlicem diem! Unfortunate day!

## ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE (Unit 18G)

A word in the accusative case may be used adverbially.

1. **Quid** hoc tibi vidētur? *In what way* does this seem best to you? [**videor**, 'seem (best)']
2. **Nihil** hoc meā interest. This is *in no way* of interest to me.
3. **Maximam partem** id mihi nōn placet. *For the most part* this does not please me.

## PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE (Unit 1H4)

The prepositions **per**, **trāns**, **inter**, **post**, **intrā** ('within'), **apud**, **contrā**, **super** ('above'), etc., govern the accusative case.

1. **Ob/Propter nostram culpam** patria dēlēta est. *Because of our fault* our native land has been destroyed.
2. **Militēs post bellum** ad patriam redibunt. The soldiers will return to their native land *after the war*.
3. **Pueri per multās viās** oppidi cucurrērunt. The boys ran *through many streets* of the town.
4. **Trāns flūmen** fūgimus. We fled *across the river*.

## ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH (Unit 6F)

Place to which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **ad**. With names of cities, small islands, towns, and the words **domus** and **rūs**, no preposition is used.

1. **Nautae vēla ad insulam** dabunt. The sailors will set sail *to the island*.
2. **Ad Italiam** imus. We are going *to Italy*.

BUT:

3. **Rōmam** imus. We are going *to Rome*.

## ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE INTO WHICH (not discussed in the text)

Place into which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **in**, 'into'.

1. **Fēminae in viam** ambulant. The women are walking *into the street*.
2. **Incolae in patriam** rediērunt. The inhabitants went back *into their native land*.
3. **Nautae in aquam** ibunt. The sailors will go *into the water*.

BUT:

4. **In viā** ambulant. They are walking *in the street*. (place where)

## Ablative Case

The basic function of the ablative case is to answer the questions "from?, where?, how?, when?, by?"; it can frequently be rendered literally by the

prepositions “from, with, in, by”. For convenience, the uses are arranged below according to whether or not they require prepositions in Latin.

## WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

### ABLATIVE OF MEANS (INSTRUMENT) (Unit 3E)

The ablative without a preposition is used to express the *means* or *instrument* by which something is done.

1. Tēcta prōvinciae **igni** dēlēta sunt. The houses of the province were destroyed *by fire*.
2. Nāti **gladiis** militum territi erant. The children had been frightened *by the swords* of the soldiers.
3. Urna pulchra **aquā** implētur. The beautiful urn is being filled *with water*.
4. Cōsul populum **spē** salūtis hortātus est. The consul encouraged the people *with the hope* of safety.

Some additional uses of the ablative of means are:

### ABLATIVE OF ROUTE (not discussed in the text)

Ībam forte **Viā Sacrā**. I was walking by chance *along the Sacred Way*.  
[sacer, sacra, sacrum, ‘sacred’]

### ABLATIVE OF PRICE (Unit 18J)

The instrumental ablative (ablative of means) is used with some expressions to indicate the price of something.

1. Domum **multā pecūniā** ēmimus. We bought a house *for a lot of money*.
2. Patriam **aurō** trādīdit. He handed over his native land *for gold*.
3. Iuvenem **duce seniōre** mūtāre nolumus. We do not want to exchange a young leader *for an older one*.
4. Servōs **magnō pretiō** vendidit. He sold the slaves *for a great price*.

### ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN DEPONENT VERBS (not discussed in the text)

Ūtor ‘use’, fruor ‘enjoy’, fungor ‘perform’, potior ‘gain possession of’, and vēscor ‘eat’ take the ablative case.

1. Auxiliō amicōrum ūtitur. He makes use of his friends’ *aid*.
2. Dōnō frātris frūctus es? Did you enjoy your brother’s *gift*? [fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, ‘enjoy’]
3. Miseri animālibus mortuīs vēscuntur. The wretched men are eating *dead animals*. [vēscor, -ī, —, ‘eat’]

### opus est + ABLATIVE (Vocabulary, Unit 7)

1. Nōbis bonō amicō opus est. We need *a good friend*.



This idea may also be expressed:

2. **Bonus amicus** nōbīs opus est. (i.e., with the nominative)

or less frequently:

3. Nōbīs **boni amici** opus est. (i.e., with the genitive)

#### ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION (Unit 10D)

A noun in the ablative case, when modified by an adjective, may be used to describe or express a quality of another noun.

1. Virum **ūnō oculō** vidimus. We saw a man *with one eye*.
2. Fēmina **manibus pulchris** litterās longās scripsit. The woman *with the beautiful hands* wrote a long letter.
3. Patria **maximā fāmā** erat pulcherrima. The country *with a very great reputation* was very beautiful.

#### ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN OR WITHIN WHICH (Unit 7H)

Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative. A preposition is not regularly used.

1. **Paucis annis** patriam novam incolēmus. We shall inhabit a new land *in a few years*.
2. **Eō tempore** multōs amicōs vidimus. We saw many friends *at that time*.
3. **Proximō mēse** socii ad tēctum ducis venient. *Next month* the allies will come to the leader's house. [**mēsis, mēsis, -ium**, M., 'month']
4. **Proximā nocte** socii ad tēctum ducis vērunt. *Last night* the allies came to the leader's house. [**proximus, -a, -um, here, 'last'**]

#### ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON (Unit 9C)

The ablative, without a preposition, is used with an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree to denote comparison.

1. Iuvenēs facta fortiōra **patribus** fēcērunt. The young men did braver deeds *than their fathers (did)*.
2. Tū fēlicior **mē** es. You are happier *than I*.
3. Puella pulchrior **mātre pulchrā** est. The girl is more beautiful *than her beautiful mother*.

Note that the same idea may be expressed using **quam**:

4. Iuvenēs facta fortiōra **quam patrēs** fēcērunt.
5. Tū fēlicior **quam ego** es.
6. Puella pulchrior **quam māter pulchra** est.

#### ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE (Unit 9D)

The ablative, without a preposition, is used with comparatives to express the degree in which the two things being compared differ. Less frequently, this



kind of ablative is also found with a superlative in statements in which there is an implicit comparative judgment made.

1. Puella **multō** pulchrior mātrem pulchrā est. The girl is *much* more beautiful than her beautiful mother.
2. Marcus **duobus pedibus** altior quam frāter est. Marcus is *two feet* taller than his brother.
3. Hic nūtiūs Rōmā **quīnque diēbus** post missus est. This messenger was sent to Rome *five days* later.
4. Is **multō** pulcherrimus hīc est. He is *by far* the most handsome man here.

#### ABLATIVE OF CAUSE (Unit 10C)

The ablative, generally without a preposition, is sometimes used to express *cause*.

1. Rēginam **irā crūdēli** timēmus. We fear the queen *because of her cruel anger*.
2. Militēs **metū** pūgnāre nōn potuerunt. The soldiers were not able to fight *because of fear*.
3. Imperātor lēgātum **virtūte** laudāvit. The commander praised the legate *because of his courage*.

#### ABLATIVE OF RESPECT (SPECIFICATION) (Unit 8D)

The *respect* in which a statement is true is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

1. Puella erat pulchra **visū**. The girl was beautiful *to see*.
2. Illa erat pulchra **corpore et animō**. She was beautiful *in body and mind*.
3. Hostēs nōs **virtūte** vicērunt. The enemy excelled us *in courage*.

#### ABLATIVE OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE (not discussed in the text)

The ablative case, without a preposition, may be used to express the circumstances in which the action of the sentence occurs.

1. **Ventis secundis** multōs diēs nāvigāvimus. We sailed for many days *with favorable winds*. [**secundus**, -a, -um, 'favorable'; **nāvigō** (1), 'sail']
2. Sacrificium **bonis ominibus** fit. The sacrifice is being made *under good omens*. [**sacrificium**, -i, N., 'sacrifice'; **ōmen**, **ōminis**, N., 'omen']
3. Flūmen ad litus **magnō strepitū** ruit. The river rushes to the shore *with a great noise*. [**strepitus**, -ūs, M., 'noise']

Note that the ablative absolute may be used to express attendant circumstance:

4. Dis grātiās **manibus** ad caelum **sublātis** agēmus. We shall give thanks to the gods *with hands raised* to heaven. [**grātiās agere**, 'to give thanks' + dative; **tollō**, -ere, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, 'lift, raise']
5. Ōrātor turbae **fulgore** ad dextram **visō** locūtus est. The speaker spoke to the crowd *with lightning seen* toward the right.

### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (Unit 10A)

The ablative absolute composed of a noun and participle in the ablative case (or two nouns, or a noun and adjective, or pronoun and adjective with the participle of the verb "to be" understood) has no close syntactical connection with the rest of the sentence. It functions as an adverb giving the circumstances, time, cause, condition, or concession in which the action of the main verb occurs.

1. **Lēgātō** auxilium **ferente**, cōpiae hostēs superant. *With the legate bringing aid, the troops overcome the enemy.*
2. **Cicerōne cōsule**, multi fuērunt laeti. *When Cicero was consul, many men were happy.* [**Cicerō**, -ōnis, M., 'Cicero']
3. **Fulgōre vīsō** plēbs territa fūgit. *When the lightning had been seen, the terrified (common) people fled.*
4. **Multīs nāvibus dēlētīs**, hostēs victi sunt. *The enemy were conquered after many of their ships had been destroyed.*
5. **Hōc factō**, laeti tamen fuimus. *Although this had happened, nevertheless we were happy.*
6. **Marcō laetō**, laeti tamen nōn fuimus. *Although Marcus was happy, nevertheless we were not happy.*

### ADJECTIVES WITH THE ABLATIVE (not discussed in the text)

**Frētus**, -a, -um, 'relying upon, dependent upon', and **dignus**, -a, -um, 'worthy', govern the ablative.

1. Senex frētus **nātis** vivit. *The old man lives dependent upon his sons.*
2. Frēti **fidē tuā** nōn timēbimus. *Relying upon your trustworthiness, we shall not fear.*
3. Ille est dignus **multīs bonīs**. *That man is worthy of many good things.*

## WITH PREPOSITIONS

### ABLATIVE OF PERSONAL AGENT (Unit 4E)

The *agent* or *person* who performs the action of a passive verb is regularly expressed in the ablative case preceded by the preposition **ā** or **ab**, 'by'.

1. Illi **ab omnibus** in oppidō visī sunt. *Those men were seen by everyone in town.*
2. Rēx **ā populō** timētur. *The king is feared by the people.*
3. Bellum **ab incolīs** prōvinciae gestum est. *War was waged by the inhabitants of the province.*

### PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ABLATIVE

The prepositions **cum**, **in**, **ā** (**ab**), **ē** (**ex**), **dē**, **sine**, **prō**, **sub**, **super** ('above'), etc., govern the ablative case.

1. Socii **cum** **hostibus** pūgnāvērunt. The allies fought *with the enemy*.
2. Ducēs **dē** **multīs** cōgitābant. The leaders thought *about many things*.
3. Nihil **sine** **pecūniā** emere potest. He can buy nothing *without money*.
4. Hostēs **prō** **moenibus** pūgnāvērunt. The enemy fought *in front of the city walls*.

#### ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT (Unit 7G)

The ablative is used with the preposition **cum** to denote accompaniment.

1. Fēminae **cum** **nautīs** ambulābant. The women were walking *with the sailors*.
2. Nautae **cum** **multīs** **sociīs** vēla dabunt. The sailors will set sail *with many allies*.
3. Incolae prōvinciae **cum** **amicīs** ex oppidō discessērunt. The inhabitants of the province left the town *with their friends*.

#### ABLATIVE OF PLACE IN WHICH (PLACE WHERE) (Unit 6G)

Place where is expressed by **in** with the ablative, except for the names of small islands, towns and cities, and with the words **domus** and **rūs**.

1. Erant multī montēs **in** **īnsulā**. There were many mountains *on the island*.
2. Pecūnia **in** **cellīs** cēlāta est. The money was hidden *in the storerooms*.
3. Plūrīmī **in** **pāce** vivere volunt. Most men want to live *in peace*.

BUT:

4. **Rōmae** esse volunt. They want to be *in Rome*.

#### ABLATIVE OF PLACE AWAY FROM WHICH (Unit 6E2)

**Ā** (**ab**) with the ablative expresses the direction away from a place; however, no preposition is used with the names of small islands, towns and cities, and with the words **domus** and **rūs**.

1. **Ab** **īnsulā** quam celerrimē discessimus. We went *away from the island* as quickly as possible.
2. Animālia **ab** **ārīs** pepulimus. We drove the animals *away from the altars*.
3. Turbamne **ā** **tēctō** cōsulis ducēs? Will you lead the crowd *away from the consul's house*?

BUT:

4. **Rōmā** ad Asiam vēnimus. We came *from Rome* to Asia.

#### ABLATIVE OF PLACE OUT OF WHICH (Unit 6E2)

**Ē** (**ex**) with the ablative expresses the direction out of a place.

1. Parva animālia **ē** **marī** in terram vēnērunt. Small animals came *out of the sea* onto land.
2. Servi quī **ex** **Āfricā** vēnerant in multis urbibus visī sunt. Slaves who had come *out of Africa* were seen in many cities.

3. **Puerōs ē tēctō** in viam mittis? Are you sending the boys *out of the house* into the street?

#### ABLATIVE OF PLACE DOWN FROM WHICH (Unit 6E2)

**Dē** with the ablative expresses the direction down from a place.

1. Incolae saxa **dē moenibus** iēcērunt. The inhabitants threw rocks *down from the city walls*.
2. **Dē monte** magnā cum cūrā ambulāvērunt. They walked *down the mountain* with great care.
3. Quidam **dē monte** ad mortem cecidit. A certain man fell *down the mountain* to his death.

### WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

#### ABLATIVE OF MANNER (MODAL ABLATIVE) (Unit 3F)

The ablative case may be used *with* or *without* the preposition **cum** to denote the *way* or *manner* in which something is done. **Cum** is required when the noun in the ablative is *not* modified by an adjective; when it is modified, **cum** is optional.

1. Militēs **magnō (cum) studiō** pūgnāvērunt. The soldiers fought *with great zeal (very zealously)*.
2. Nāti litterās longās **magnā (cum) cūrā** scripsērunt. The children wrote a long letter *with great care (very carefully)*.
3. Nūntiī **cum virtūte** locūtī sunt. The messengers spoke *with courage (courageously)*.
4. Socii cōnsilia **cum diligentīā** fēcērunt. The allies made plans *with diligence (diligently)*.

#### ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION (Unit 6E)

Some verbs which express or imply separation or deprivation are accompanied by the ablative case. The prepositions **ā (ab)**, **ē (ex)**, or **dē** are sometimes used with this construction, but more usually the ablative occurs alone.

1. Multi miserī **spē** carent. Many unhappy men lack *hope*.
2. Virī (**ā**) **cūrīs** liberātī vitam fēlicem ēgērunt. The men freed *from their cares* lived a happy life.
3. Fāma imperātōrem **ā noxā** nōn solvit. His reputation did not free the commander *from harm*.

#### ABLATIVE OF MATERIAL (not discussed in text)

The ablative case may be used, sometimes with the prepositions **dē** or **ex**, to show the material from which an object is made.

1. Urnam **ex aurō** numquam vidimus. We have never seen an urn *of gold*.



2. Statua **dē marmore** in forō posita est. A statue (made) *of marble* was placed in the forum. [**marmor**, -oris, M., 'marble']
3. Mēnsa minima **ex aurō** facta mihi mōnstrāta est. A very small table made *of gold* was shown to me.
4. Agrī **multis flōribus pulcherrimis** cōstant. The fields consist of *many very beautiful flowers*. [flōs, flōris, M., 'flower'; cōnstō, -āre, cōstitī, -stātus, 'consist of']

#### ABLATIVE OF ORIGIN (ALLIED WITH ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION) (Unit 6E1)

The ablative, with or without a preposition, expresses the origin or descent of a person or thing.

1. Cōsul **gente clārā** nātus est. The consul was descended *from a famous race*.
2. Hic ē **mātre pulchrā** nātus est. This man was born *of a beautiful mother*.
3. Flūmen **ā marī** oritur. The river rises *from the sea*.

#### Locative Case (Unit 6G)

The names of towns, cities, and small islands and the words **domus** and **rūs** use the locative case to express *place where*, which for other nouns is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**.

1. Aenēas **Carthāgine** nōn diū remānsit. Aeneas did not remain *in Carthage* for a long time.
2. Servi vitam fēlicem **Rōmae** nōn semper vixērunt. Slaves did not always live a happy life *in Rome*.
3. Multa aedificia pulchra **Athēnis** fuērunt. There were many beautiful buildings *in Athens*. [aedificium, -i, N., 'building']

#### Vocative Case (Unit 8G)

The vocative is the case of *direct address*.

1. **Puerī**, nōlite id facere. *Boys*, don't do this.
2. Librum novum, **scriptor clāre**, mihi lege. Read me your new book, *famous writer*.
3. Venī, **filī mī**, mēcum. Come with me, *my son*.

## REVIEW OF THE SYNTAX OF VERBS

### Infinitives

The infinitive is an abstract verbal noun. (Unit 1C)

### COMPLEMENTARY (Unit 5G)

There are verbs in Latin which frequently require an infinitive to complete



their meaning. Some of these are verbs which express ability, will, desire, and the like. The infinitive completes the idea of the verb.

1. Ad Italiam **īre** solēmus. We are accustomed *to go* to Italy.
2. Clāriſſimum virum **vidēre** potes? Can you *see* the very famous man?
3. Honestus vir **esse** vidētur. He seems *to be* an honorable man.
4. Parentēs et amīcōs nōlī **relinquere**. Don't *abandon* your parents and friends.

#### INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT (Unit 11E)

The infinitive is, in fact, a neuter noun and thus can be the subject of a verb.

1. **Vidēre** est crēdere. *Seeing* is believing. (*Literally, 'To see is to believe'. Crēdere is a predicate nominative.*)
2. Difficile nōn est vitam bene **agere**. It is not difficult *to conduct* life well.
3. Hoc est bonum: bene **agere** et multōs amīcōs **habēre**. This is good: *to do* well and *to have* many friends.
4. Facta fortia **perficere** optimum vidētur. *To accomplish* brave deeds seems best.
5. Est nātī omnibus dictis parentis **crēdere**. It is the mark of a child *to believe* all the sayings of his parent.
6. Bene **vīvere** oportet. It is proper *to live* well. (This also occurs with other impersonal verbs.)

#### OBJECT INFINITIVE (Unit 5G)

An infinitive (sometimes with subject accusative) may be used as the object of another verb.

1. Rōmam **īre** volumus. We want *to go* to Rome.
2. Dux militēs oppidum **oppugnāre** iussit. The leader ordered the soldiers *to attack* the town.
3. Vōs hoc **facere** vetat. He forbids you *to do* this.
4. Dux militēs sē **recipere** prohibuit. The leader prevented the soldiers from *withdrawing*.

A further use of the object infinitive is:

#### THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT (Unit 6C)

After words which express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, and the like, statements are made indirectly. The verb of this indirect statement is in the infinitive and the subject of the infinitive is in the accusative case.

1. Nōs felicēs mox **futūrōs esse (fore)** spērat. He hopes that we *will* soon be happy.
2. Tē hoc **fēcisse** pūtāvimus. We thought that you *had done* this.
3. Nōs rūs **īre** scivīt. He knew that we *were going* to the country.

## HISTORICAL INFINITIVE (Unit 18C)

The infinitive is used in narrative passages instead of a finite verb to emphasize the pure verbal action rather than the agents of that action. The subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative case.

1. Multi in oppidō **clāmāre**. Many men in the town *shouted*.
2. Militēs multā cum vī **pūgnāre**. Soldiers *fought* with a lot of force.
3. Alii per viās oppidi **currere**, alii apertē **plōrāre**, alii manūs ad deōs **tollere**. Some *ran* through the streets of the town, others *wept* openly, others *raised* their hands to the gods. [**apertē**, adv., 'openly'; **plōrō** (1), 'weep'; **tollō**, -ere, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, 'raise, lift']

## EPEXEGETICAL INFINITIVE (not discussed in the text)

An infinitive may be dependent upon an adjective, as happens in Greek.

1. Poēta carmen dignum **legī** fēcit. The poet composed a poem worthy *to be read*.
2. Servus erat peritus **docēre**. The slave was skilled in *teaching*. [**peritus**, -a, -um, 'skilled']
3. Hic vir aptus erat **regere**. This man was fit *to rule*. [**aptus**, -a, -um, 'fit']

## INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS (not discussed in the text)

The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as a main verb in exclamations.

1. Tālem scelerātum imperium **obtinuisse**! (To think) that such a scoundrel *has obtained* power!; Such a scoundrel *has obtained* power?! [**scelerātus**, -ī, M., 'scoundrel'; **obtinēō** (**ob** + **teneō**), 'get hold of, obtain']
2. Mē ut hunc diem vidērem **vixisse**! (To think) that I *have lived* to see this day!; I *have lived* to see this day?!
3. Mē tē facere hoc nōn **dare**! I not *grant* you to do this?!

Sometimes the enclitic **-ne** is added to the emphatic word to lay stress on the interrogative nature of the exclamation:

4. Mēne ā tē **victum esse**! I *beaten* by you?!

## Imperatives (Units 1A5, 8F)

The imperative mood expresses the action as a command.

1. Timōrem mortis **superā**! *Overcome* your fear of death!
2. Librum hūc **fer**! *Bring* the book here!
3. Verba sapientis **audite**! *Listen to* the words of the wise man!
4. Noxam **patere**! *Endure* the injury!

The future imperative is used to stress the futurity of the command (particularly when another verb in the sentence is in the future or future perfect tense). It is also used in legal terms.

1. Cum tē vidēbō, respōnsum mihi **dīcītō**. When I see you, *you shall tell* me your answer. [**respōnsum**, -ī, N., 'answer']
2. Mox veniet; poenās **datō**. He will come soon; *he shall pay* the penalty.
3. Rēs pūblica ā duōbus cōsulibus **regitor**. The republic *shall be ruled* by two consuls.

Some verbs, like **meminī**, 'remember', regularly use the future imperative instead of the present:

4. **Mementōte** hōrum factōrum fortium! *Remember* (pl.) these brave deeds!

### Indicative Mood

The indicative mood is the mood of fact and is used for making direct statements and asking direct questions. (Unit 1A5)

1. Hās litterās ad amīcum **mittēs**? *Will you send* this letter to your friend?
2. Liber quī ā clārissimō auctōre **scriptus erat** omnibus praesentibus **lēctus est**. The book which *had been written* by the very famous author *was read* to all who were present. [**praesēns**, **praesentis**, 'present']
3. Servus ad poenās trāditus scelus **negāvit**. The slave handed over to punishment *denied* his crime.

### CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (**quamquam** and **etsī**) (Unit 15C3)

1. **Quamquam** rūš incolimus, fēlicēs nōn sumus. *Although we live* in the country, we are not happy.
2. **Etsī** rūš urbe māluērunt, tamen Rōmam incoluērunt. *Although they preferred* the country to the city, nevertheless they lived in Rome.
3. **Quamquam** eōs viderāmus, tamen loquī nōluimus. *Although we had seen* them, nevertheless we did not want to speak.

BUT:

4. **Cum** eōs vīdissēmus, tamen loquī nōluimus. *Although we had seen* them, nevertheless we did not want to speak.
5. **Quamvis** eōs vīdissēmus, tamen loquī nōluimus. *Although we had seen* them, nevertheless we did not want to speak.
6. **Eīs** ā nōbīs vīsīs, tamen loquī nōluimus. *Although they had been seen* by us, nevertheless we did not want to speak. (Ablative Absolute)

CAUSAL CLAUSES (**quoniam/quandō**, **quod/quia** take the indicative to express actual fact) (Unit 15C2)

1. **Quoniam** } **sumus** amīcī, amīcītiā nōn negābimus. *Since we are* friends, we shall not deny our friendship.  
**Quandō** }

2. **Quoniam** } **labōrāverant**, fēlicēs erant. *Since they had worked*, they were happy.  
**Quandō** }
3. **Quod** } **sumus** amīcī, amīcitiā nōn negābimus. *Because we (actually) are*  
**Quia** } friends, we shall not deny our friendship.

BUT:

4. **Cum** sīmus amīcī, amīcitiā nōn negābimus. *Since we are* friends, we shall not deny our friendship.
5. **Quod** } **labōrāvissent**, fēlicēs erant. *Because they (allegedly) had worked*, they  
**Quia** } were happy.
6. **Amīcō meō fēlicī**, fēlix sum. *Since my friend is happy*, I am happy. (Ablative Absolute)

#### CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES (Unit 15A1)

1. **Cum** parentēs **vidēmus**, fēlicēs sumus. *When we see* our parents, we are happy.
2. **Cum** parentēs **vidēbimus**, fēlicēs erimus. *When we (shall) see* our parents, we shall be happy.
3. **Cum** parentēs **viderimus**, fēlicēs erimus. *When we shall have seen* our parents, we shall be happy.

BUT:

4. **Cum** parentēs **vidērēmus**, fēlicēs erāmus. *When we saw* our parents, we were happy. (In past time, the subjunctive is used.)

#### TEMPORAL CLAUSES (Unit 15A1 and C1)

1. **Ut** }  
**Ubi** } **tē rideō**, mē ipsum rideō. *When I laugh at you*, I laugh  
**Quandō** } at my very self.  
**Cum** (stresses time) }
2. **Ut** }  
**Ubi** } in viā **ambulābam**, Marcō occurri. *When I was walking*  
**Quandō** } in the street, I met Marcus. [**occurrō**, -ere, **occurri**,  
**Cum** (stresses time) } **occursus**, 'meet']
3. **Ut** }  
**Ubi** } amīcōs **vidērunt**, fēlicēs visī sunt. *When they saw their*  
**Quandō** } friends, they seemed happy.  
**Cum** (stresses time) }
4. **Postquam** amīcōs **vidērunt**, fēlicēs visī sunt. *After they saw* their friends, they seemed happy.

BUT:

5. **Amicīs vīsīs**, fēlicēs vīsī sunt. *When their friends had been seen*, they seemed happy. (Ablative Absolute)
6. **Cum amicōs vidērent**, fēlicēs vīsī sunt. *When they saw* their friends, they seemed happy. (stresses circumstances)

**dum, dōnec**, 'while, until'; **simul ac (atque)**, 'as soon as'; **quōad**, 'as long as, as far as, until' (Unit 15D2)

1. **Simul ac eum vidī**, eum dilēxī. *As soon as I saw* him, I liked him. [**diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus**, 'esteem, like']

2. 

<b>Quōad</b>	}	ventī secundī <b>fuērunt</b> , nautae vēla dedērunt. <i>While</i> the winds <i>were</i> favorable, the sailors set sail. [ <b>secundus, -a, -um</b> , 'favorable']
<b>Dum</b>		
<b>Dōnec</b>		

3. 

<b>Quōad</b>	}	rēx <b>vīxit</b> , populus liber nōn erat. <i>While</i> the king <i>lived</i> , the people were not free.
<b>Dum</b>		
<b>Dōnec</b>		

4. **Dum** paucōs diēs in urbe **morāmur**, amici nostrī rūs ivērunt. *While we delayed* in the city for a few days, our friends went to the country.

BUT:

5. 

Cōnsilia nostra perficere nōn possumus,	<b>dum</b>	}	<b>adveniās</b> . We are not able to complete our plans <i>until you arrive</i> . (subjunctive stresses anticipation)
	<b>dōnec</b>		
	<b>quōad</b>		

**antequam, priusquam**, 'before' (Unit 15D3)

1. **Antequam** urbem **reliquimus**, eum vidimus. *Before we abandoned* the city, we saw him.
2. Multa cōnsilia **prius** fēcērunt **quam** librum **scripsērunt**. They made many plans *before they wrote* the book.
3. Cum cūrā **ante** audī **quam** ridēs. Listen carefully *before you laugh*.
4. Eum vidēre volō **antequam** perierit. I want to see him *before he dies*.

BUT:

5. Mortuus est **antequam** eum **vidērem**. He died *before I could see* him.

**quod**, 'the fact that' (Unit 18K)

A substantive clause introduced by **quod**, 'the fact that', and with its verb in the indicative is sometimes used as the subject or object of another verb, or in apposition to the subject of that other verb.



1. **Quod fēlix es, negāre nōn possumus.** *The fact that you are happy we cannot deny.*
2. **Quod tē amō mē fēlicem facit.** *The fact that I love you makes me happy.*
3. **Alia causa timōris est quod nōs ōdit.** *Another cause of fear is the fact that he hates us.*

**cum**, ‘whenever’ (perfect indicative when the main verb is present; pluperfect indicative when the main verb is imperfect) (Unit 15A4)

1. **Cum plēbs ducibus pāruiť, pāx in rē públicā est.** *Whenever the common people obey their leaders, there is peace in the republic.*
2. **Nautae vēla dabant cum ventī secundi fuerant.** *The sailors used to set sail whenever the winds were favorable. [secundus, -a, -um, ‘favorable’]*
3. **Cum parentēs viderāmus, fēlicēs erāmus.** *Whenever we saw our parents, we were happy.*

**BUT:**

4. **Cum parentēs vidimus, fēlicēs erāmus.** *When we saw our parents, we were happy. (stresses time — a single action)*
5. **Cum parentēs vidērēmus, fēlicēs erāmus.** *When we saw our parents, we were happy. (stresses circumstances — a single action)*

**CONDITIONS**

**SIMPLE OR GENERAL CONDITIONS** (indicative in both clauses) (Unit 2E1)

1. **Sī in agrō es, labōrās.** *If you are in the field, you are working.*
2. **Sī in agrō fuistī, labōrāvistī.** *If you were in the field, you worked.*
3. **Sī in agrō fuerās, labōrāverās.** *If you had been in the field, you had worked.*

**FUTURE MORE VIVID CONDITIONS** (future indicative in both clauses; for emphasis, future perfect indicative in protasis) (Unit 2E2a)

1. **Sī in agrō eris, labōrābis.** *If you are (will be) in the field, you will work.*
2. **Sī in agrō fueris, labōrābis.** *If you are (will have been) in the field, you will work. (emphatic)*
3. **Sī domum veniet, statuem vidēbit.** *If he comes (will come) home, he will see the statue.*
4. **Sī deōs precātus erit, impetrābit.** *If he begs (will have begged) the gods, he will gain his request. (emphatic) [impetrō (1), ‘gain one’s request’]*

**IMPERSONAL PASSIVES** (Unit 13C)

1. **In oppidō agitātum est.** *There was a disturbance in the town.*
2. **Domō discēditur.** *There is a departure from the house; they are leaving the house.*

3. Hostibus ā duce **parcētur**. The enemy *will be spared* by the leader.
4. Puellis ā magistrō **favēbātur**. The girls *were favored* by the teacher.

NOTE that this construction may be used with the subjunctive also:

5. In oppidō **agitētur**. *Let there be a disturbance* in the town.
6. Sī puellis ā magistrō **faveātur**, infēlix sim. If the girls *should be favored* by the teacher, I would be unhappy.

### Subjunctive Mood

The subjunctive mood is the mood used to express idea, intent, desire, uncertainty, potentiality, or anticipation. (Unit 1A5)

## INDEPENDENT USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

### HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A1)

The present subjunctive is used to express an exhortation in the first person. The negative is introduced by **nē**.

1. Tēcum **veniam**. *Let me come* with you.
2. Nē rūs **relinquāmus**. *Let us not abandon* the country.
3. Auxilium ad miserōs **ferāmus**. *Let us bring* aid to the wretched men.

### JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A1)

The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the second and third persons. The negative is introduced by **nē**.

1. Crūdēlis senem **nē interficiat**. *Let the cruel man not kill* the old man.
2. Iram rēginae **timeant**. *Let them fear* the queen's anger.
3. Pecūniam oblātam **capiās**. *Take* the offered money.
4. Rēs meliōrēs **nē spērētis**. *Don't hope for* better matters.

In the second person, occasionally, when the verb is negative, the perfect subjunctive is found instead of the present:

5. Rēs meliōrēs **nē spērāveritis**. *Don't hope for* better matters.

### DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A3)

The present and imperfect subjunctive may be used to deliberate about a course of action. This is frequently found in a rhetorical question. The negative is introduced by **nōn**.

1. Rūs **redeam**? *Should I go back* to the country? *Am I to return* to the country?
2. Eum iterum **nōn videam**? *Should I not see* him again? [**iterum**, adv., 'again']
3. Dōnum frātrī eius **darem**? *Should I have given* a gift to his brother?

## OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A4)

A wish for the future which is capable of fulfillment is expressed by the present subjunctive alone or is introduced by **utinam** or **ut**. The negative is introduced by **utinam nē** or **nē**.

Wishes incapable of fulfillment utilize the imperfect subjunctive for present time and the pluperfect for past time.

1. (**Utinam**) meliōrēs rēs mihi **sint**! *If only affairs will be better for me!*
2. (**Ut**) diūtius vivere **possēmus**! *If only we could live longer!*
3. (**Utinam**) sapientior **fuisset**! *If only he had been wiser!*
4. (**Utinam**) **nē adesset**! *If only he were not present!*

## POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 12A2)

The subjunctive may be used independently to express an action which might possibly or conceivably occur. For present or future potentiality, the present subjunctive is used. For past potentiality, the imperfect subjunctive is used. The negative is expressed by **nōn**.

1. Hoc **nōn faciās**. *You wouldn't do this.*
2. Servi in bellō **pūgnent**. The slaves *might fight* in the war.
3. Tēcum **irēmus**. *We would have gone with you; we might have gone with you.*

## USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Primary Tenses	Present	Present ( <i>same time as or subsequent to the action of the main verb</i> )
	Future	
	Perfect ("have" or "has")	Perfect ( <i>prior to the action of the main verb</i> )
	Future Perfect	
Secondary Tenses	Imperfect	Imperfect ( <i>same time as or subsequent to the action of the main verb</i> )
	Perfect	
	(English past)	Pluperfect ( <i>prior to the action of the main verb</i> )
	Pluperfect	

PURPOSE CLAUSES (**ut** + subjunctive; negative **nē**) (Unit 3G)

1. Multō cum vigōre lābōrāvimus **ut** magna praemia **acciperēmus**. We worked with much vigor in order *that we might receive* great rewards.
2. **Nē** inimīcī **vidērentur**, dōna pulchra accēpērunt. In order *that they might not seem* unfriendly, they accepted the beautiful gifts.
3. Magistrōs laudat **ut** sibi (ipsī) **faveant**. He praises his superiors in order *that they will favor* him.

## RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE (Unit 14E)

**Quō** introduces a purpose clause which contains a comparative. A purpose clause may be introduced by a relative pronoun when its antecedent, usually not the subject of the main verb, is clearly expressed in the main clause.

1. **Quō** melius **intellegās**, tōtam rem tibi expōnam. In order *that you may understand* better, I shall explain the whole matter for you.
2. Eum hīs cōsiliīs praefēcimus, **quī** multam fāmam **obtinēret**. We put him in charge of these plans in order *that he might gain* much fame. [**obtinēō** (**ob** + **teneō**), 'get hold of, obtain']
3. Poēta carmen scrīpsit **quod** rēgīnae **placēret**. The poet wrote a poem *in order that he might please* the queen.

## PURPOSE CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY ADVERBS (Unit 14E)

Purpose clauses may be introduced by an adverb (**ubi**, **unde**, **quō**).

1. In tēctō sē cēlāvit **ubi** tūtus esset. He hid in the house in order *that he might be safe there*.
2. Nāvēs in portū parant **unde** vēla **dent**. They are preparing the ships in the harbor in order *that they may set sail from there*. [**portus**, -ūs, M., 'harbor']
3. Eunt **quō** tūtī **sint**. They are going *where they may be safe*.

By way of review, note the following seven ways of expressing purpose. There is no difference in the meaning of the sentences below:

1. Amīcōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **ut** multa **vidērent**.
2. Amīcōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **quī** multa **vidērent**.
3. Amīcōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **ad videndum** multa.
4. Amīcōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **ad multa videnda**.
5. Amīcōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **videndī** multa **causā** (**grātiā**). [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']
6. Amīcōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus **multōrum videndōrum causā** (**grātiā**). [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']
7. Amīcōs nostrōs Rōmam mīsimus multa **vīsum**.

We sent our friends to Rome to see many things.

KEY: (1) **ut** + subjunctive; (2) relative clause of purpose; (3) **ad** + accusative of the gerund; (4) **ad** + accusative + gerundive; (5) **causā** or **grātiā** + genitive of the gerund; (6) **causā** or **grātiā** + genitive + gerundive; (7) supine in **-um** with a verb of motion

## INDIRECT COMMANDS (Unit 3H)

1. Servōs monet **nē** verba **rīdeant**. He is warning the slaves that they not *laugh* at his words.



2. Amicōs hortātī sumus **nē** opera **neglegant**. We have urged our friends that they *not neglect* their works.
3. Nōbīs imperātum est **ut** vīribus ac virtūte **ūterēmur**. We were ordered that we *use* our strength and courage.

### RESULT CLAUSES (Unit 14A)

Clauses expressing the result of an action are introduced by **ut** for the positive, **ut nōn** (**nēmō**, **nihil**, **numquam**, etc.) for the negative, and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

1. Tam crūdēlis est **ut** ab omnibus **timeātur**. He is so cruel *that he is feared* by all.
2. Tantō vigōre discipulī respondent **ut** magistrō **placeant**. The students answer with such great liveliness *that they please* the teacher. [**discipulus**, -ī, M., 'student']
3. Nōn satis celeriter cucurrērunt **ut** periculum **nōn fugerent** (**fūgerint**). They did not run quickly enough *with the result that they did not flee* the danger.
4. Ventī ita validī erant **ut nēmō** vēla dare **posset** (**potuerit**). The winds were so strong *that no one could* set sail.

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT (Unit 14B)

Certain verbs and expressions have result clauses either as their object or subject.

1. Effēcērunt **ut** pāx fieret (**facta sit**). They brought it about *that peace was made*.
2. Fit **ut** nōs **sīmus** amīcī. It happens *that we are* friends.
3. Fac **ut** hoc quam celerrimē **fiat**. See to it *that this is done* as quickly as possible.

With **faciō** and **efficiō**, the negative is often expressed by **nē**, particularly when there is an implicit notion of command in the sentence:

4. Fac **nē** sit mora. See to it *that there isn't* a delay.

### RELATIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT (Unit 14D)

A relative clause of characteristic may be fused with a result clause to produce a relative clause of result. The relative pronoun is standing for the **ut** which would normally introduce the clause of result.

1. Quod factum tantum fuit **quod** omnēs **mīrārentur**? What deed was so great *that all (people) admired it*?
2. Tam clārus est **quem** omnēs **sciunt**. He is so famous *that all (people) know him*.
3. Tam senex est **quī** morī **velit**. He is so old *that he wants* to die.

### fore ut + SUBJUNCTIVE (Unit 18B)

**Fore ut** is used with the subjunctive often in place of a future *passive* infinitive in indirect statement or in place of a future *active* infinitive when the verb lacks a fourth principal part.



1. Spērat **fore ut** impii ex urbe **expellantur**. He hopes that the wicked men *will be driven* out of the city.
2. Scivit **fore ut** multum ab eis libris **discerēmus**. He knew that *we would learn* a lot from those books.
3. Tibi diximus **fore ut** id **accideret**. We told you that *this would happen*.
4. Putās **fore ut** ei **adsint**? Do you think that *they will be present*?

#### RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC (GENERIC RELATIVE CLAUSES) (Unit 14C)

The relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod** plus the subjunctive can be used to describe the antecedent of the pronoun in terms of the general qualities or characteristics of the group to which the antecedent belongs. The negative clause is often introduced by **quīn**.

1. **Sunt quī** eum **laudent**. *There are those who praise him; There are those who would praise him.*
2. **Nēmō est quī** eum tē **mālit**. *There is no one who prefers him to you; There is no one who would prefer him to you.*
3. **Quid erat quod** nōbis **timendum esset**? *What was there which we had to fear?*
4. **Sōlus erit quīn** hoc **faciat**. *He will be the only one who doesn't do this; He will be the only one who won't do this; He will be the only one who wouldn't do this.*

#### CLAUSES OF FEARING (Unit 17A)

Clauses of fearing are introduced by **nē** for the positive and **ut** (occasionally, **nē...nōn**) for the negative.

1. Metuunt **ut** hostēs urbem **reliquerint**. They fear *that the enemy has not abandoned* the city.
2. Veriti sumus **nē** nōs **ōdissent**. We feared *that they hated* us.
3. Timet **ut** cōpiīs **praesit**. He is afraid *that he will not be in charge of* the troops.
4. Timent **nē nōn** vērītatem sibi **dictūrus sis**. They fear *that you will not tell* them the truth.

#### INDIRECT QUESTIONS (Unit 12C)

Indirect questions are subordinate noun clauses which serve as the object (and, less frequently, the subject) of the words on which they depend. These words usually, but not always, express or imply actions that take place in the head, such as saying, thinking, seeing, perceiving, knowing, asking, and the like. Indirect questions are introduced by an interrogative word and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

1. Nōn intellegit **quō modō** hoc **fiat**. He does not understand *how this is done*.
2. **Quid sciat** incertum est. It is uncertain *what he knows*.
3. Nōn exposuisti **cūr** hūc **venīrēs**. You did not explain *why you were coming* here.

4. **Quā dē causā hoc factūrus sis** manifestum est. It is clear *for what reason you will do this*. [**manifestus**, -a, -um, 'evident, clear']

### CONDITIONS

PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS (imperfect subjunctive in both clauses) (Unit 2E3a)

1. Si rēx **essem**, imperium mihi **esset**. If *I were* king, *I would have* power.
2. Nisi frāter meus **essēs**, poenās **darēs**. If *you were* not my brother, *you would pay* the penalty.
3. Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam **facerent**, cōnsul eōs **opprimeret**. If *they were making* a plot against the state, the consul *would suppress* them.

PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITIONS (pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses) (Unit 2E3b)

1. Si dē nōbīs **cōgitāvissētis**, hoc numquam **fēcissētis**. If *you had thought* about us, *you would never have done* this.
2. Si oppidum moenibus **dēfēsum esset**, hostēs nōn **invāsissent**. If the town *had been defended* by walls, the enemy *would not have invaded* it.
3. Nisi auxilium **tulissētis**, mortuī **essēmus**. If *you had not brought* aid, *we would have died*.

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONS (present subjunctive in both clauses; occasionally perfect subjunctive in protasis) (Unit 2E2b)

1. Si iuvenem **laudēs**, fēlix **sit**. If *you should praise* the young man, *he would be* happy.
2. Si oppidum ab hostibus **vincātur**, incolae servī **fiant**. If the town *should be conquered* by the enemy, the inhabitants *would become* slaves.
3. Nisi auxilium ad incolās **ferātur**, **patiantur**. If aid *should not be brought* to the inhabitants, *they would suffer*.

Note that conditions can be mixed as logic requires (Unit 2E4):

1. Si eum **vidisset**, fēlix **esset**. If *she had seen* him, *she would be* happy.
2. Si periculum **sit**, **clāmābō**. If *there should be* danger, *I shall shout*.
3. Si Rōmae **essem**, iter longum **fēcissem**. If *I were* in Rome, *I would have made* a long journey.

### SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT (Unit 7J)

Subordinate clauses within an indirect statement normally have their verbs in the subjunctive, the tense of which is determined by the verb or phrase of the head introducing the indirect statement.

1. Virum quem **vidērēmus** esse frātre[m] poētae dixerunt. They said that the man whom *we saw* was the poet's brother.

2. Deōs praemia populō cui **faveant** datūrōs esse sentit. He feels that the gods will give rewards to the people whom *they favor*.
3. Sē ducibus quī reī publicae **praeessent** crēditūrōs esse arbitrātī sunt. They thought that they would believe the leaders who *were in charge of* the state.

CAUSAL CLAUSES (**cum** + subjunctive) (Unit 15A2 and D1)

**Quod** or **quia** is used with the subjunctive to give an *alleged* reason.

1. **Cum** cōnsilia eōrum **ridērēmus**, magistri nōs ōderant. *Since we laughed at* their plans, our superiors hated us.
2. Haec facere scivimus, **cum** nōbīs ā tē **exposita essent**. We knew how to do these things, *since they had been explained* to us by you. [**sciō**, here, 'know how']
3. **Cum** in Italiā **sīmus**, Rōmam ibimus. *Since we are* in Italy, we shall go to Rome.
4. Rōmam vērērunt {**quod**  
**quia**} nōs vidēre **vellent**. They came to Rome *because* they (allegedly) wanted to see us.

BUT:

5. Quid faciat nescit {**quoniam**  
**quandō**} haec nōn **exposita sunt**. He does not know what to do *since* these things *have not been explained*.
6. Quid faciat nescit {**quod**  
**quia**} haec nōn **exposita sunt**. He does not know what to do *because* these things (actually) *have not been explained*.
7. Quid faciat nescit, **hīs** nōn **expositis**. He does not know what to do *since these things have not been explained*. (Ablative Absolute)

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES (**cum** + subjunctive; **quamvis** + subjunctive; **ut** + subjunctive) (Unit 15A3 and C3; **ut** + subj. not discussed in the text)

1. **Cum** in Italiā **sīmus**, Rōmam tamen nōn ibimus. *Although we are* in Italy, nevertheless we shall not go to Rome.
2. **Cum** ad rēgem **missī essent**, eum vidēre nōn potuērunt. *Although they had been sent* to the king, they were not able to see him.
3. Tē vidēre volō, **cum** tē hōc tempore nōn **amem**. I want to see you, *although I do not love* you at this time.
4. **Quamvis** mē ad tē venīre **volueris**, tamen hoc nōn faciam. *Although you wanted* me to come to you, nevertheless I shall not do it.
5. Illūc ivi **ut** nōllem. I went there {*even though*  
*granted that*} *I did not want* to.

BUT:

6. **Quamquam** } **Etsi** } *mē ad tē venīre voluistī, tamen hoc nōn faciam. Although you wanted me to come to you, nevertheless I shall not do it.*
7. **His expositis**, tamen quid facerēmus nescivimus. *Although these things had been explained, nevertheless we did not know what to do. (Ablative Absolute)*

CIRCUMSTANTIAL CLAUSES (**cum** + subjunctive when the action is in past time; **cum** + indicative when the action is in present or future time) (Unit 15A1)

1. **Cum fulgor visus esset**, multi timuērunt. *When the lightning had been seen, many feared.*
2. **Cum tectum ardēret**, omnēs clāmāvērunt. *When the house was burning, all (people) shouted.*
3. **Cum hunc cōpiīs praefēcissent**, milītēs vicērunt. *When they had put this man in charge of the troops, the soldiers conquered the enemy.*

BUT:

4. **Hōc cōpiīs praefectō**, milītēs hostēs vicērunt. *When this man had been put in charge of the troops, the soldiers conquered the enemy. (Ablative Absolute)*
5. **Cum fulgor visus erat**, multi timuērunt. *When the lightning had been seen, many feared. (The indicative is used to stress time.)*

ANTICIPATION (Unit 15D2 and D3)

One of the basic uses of the subjunctive is to express anticipation.

1. **Dūm** } **Dōnec** } hoc faciās, infēlix erō. *Until you do this, I shall be unhappy.*  
**Quōad** }
2. Labōrem neglēxērunt **dūm** } **dōnec** } litterās tuās acciperent. They neglected their  
**quōad** }  
*work until they could receive your letter. [labor, -ōris, M., 'work']*
3. Hoc faciēmus **antequam** tē videāmus. We shall do this *before we see you.*
4. **Ante** aderō **quam** adveniās. I shall be present *before you arrive.*
5. **Prius** eum laudāvērunt **quam** eum scīrent. They praised him *before they could know him.*

BUT:

1. Labōrem neglēxērunt **dum** litterās tuās accēpērunt. They neglected their work *until they received your letter. (The indicative is used to express fact, not anticipation.)*



2. **Prius** eum laudāvērunt **quam** eum scīvērunt. They praised him *before they* (actually) *knew* him.

AND:

3. **Ante** aderō **quam** **advenīs** (**advēneris**). I shall be present *before you arrive*. (The present or future perfect indicative frequently is used with **antequam** and **priusquam** in primary sequence even when there is a notion of anticipation.)

CLAUSES OF PROVISO (**dum**, **modo**, and **dummodo** + present or imperfect subjunctive; the negative uses **nē**) (Unit 15E)

1. Hoc faciēmus { **dummodo**  
**dum**  
**modo** } auxilium offerās. We shall do this *provided that*  
*you offer* help.

2. Auxilium offerēmus { **dum**  
**modo**  
**dummodo** } quaerātur. We shall offer help *provided it*  
*is sought*.

3. Nautae vēla dabunt { **modo**  
**dum**  
**dummodo** } ventī secundī sint. The sailors will set sail  
*provided that* the winds *are* favorable. [**secundus**, -a, -um, 'favorable']

4. { **Dum**  
**Dummodo**  
**Modo** } nē tibi **noceam**, faciam quid dēbeam. *Provided that I do not harm*  
*you, I shall do what I must.*

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION (Unit 18A)

Frequently relative and other subordinate clauses within clauses whose verbs are in the subjunctive have verbs which are attracted into the subjunctive provided that the subordinate clause is an integral part of the idea of the main clause.

1. Rōmam ire volō ut tēctum in quō **vīxerit** poēta clārissimus videam. I want to go to Rome to see the house in which the very famous poet *lived*.  
2. Tam crūdēlis erat ut omnis populus dum **vīveret** eum timēret. He was so cruel that all the people while *he lived* feared him.  
3. Quis est quī tēctum in quō **vīvat** poēta clārissimus vidēre velit? Who is there who wants to see the house in which the very famous poet *lives*?

CLAUSES OF DOUBTING (Unit 17B)

**Num** or **an** + subjunctive is used after a positive expression of doubting; **quīn** + subjunctive after a negative one.



1. Dubitō **num veniat**. I doubt *whether (that) he is coming (he will come)*.
2. Dubitāvērunt **an hoc facerēmus**. They doubted *whether (that) we were doing (would do) this*.
3. Dubitāsne **num diē cōstitūtā adventūrī sint?** Do you doubt *whether (that) they will arrive* on the day which has been decided?
4. Nōn est dubium **quīn tē timeat**. There isn't a doubt (*but*) *that he fears* you.
5. Quis dubitet **quīn impius sit?** Who would doubt (*but*) *that he is* wicked?

#### CLAUSES OF PREVENTION (Unit 17C)

If the verb of prevention is positive, the subjunctive clause will be introduced by **quōminus** or **nē**; if negative, by **quōminus** or **quīn**.

1. Hostēs cōpiās nostrās dēturrerunt  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{quōminus} \\ \text{nē} \end{matrix} \right\}$  **advenīrent**. The enemy prevented our troops *from arriving*.
2. Ignis nōn impedit  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{quīn} \\ \text{quōminus} \end{matrix} \right\}$  in tēctum **ingrediāmur**. The fire will not hinder *us from entering* the house.
3. Pueri obstant  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{nē} \\ \text{quōminus} \end{matrix} \right\}$  opus tuum **perficiās?** Are the children hindering *you from completing* your work?

#### SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES WITH IMPERSONAL VERBS (**ut** or **nē** expressed or implied + subjunctive) (Unit 16D3 and E)

1. Necesse est (**ut**) Marcus nāvibus **praesit**. It is necessary *that* Marcus *be in charge of* the ships.
2. Licet (**ut**) rēgem **videāmus**. It is permitted *for us to see* the king. OR: *We are permitted to see* the king.
3. Patriae interest **ut** hostēs **discēdant**. It is in the interest of the country *that* the enemy *withdraw*.
4. Tuā rēfert **nē** illūc **eās**. It is to (in) your interest *not to go* there.

#### Participles (Unit 5B)

A participle is a verbal adjective.

#### PARTICIPLES AS ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

1. Virum ā periculō **fugientem** vidimus. We saw the man *fleeing* from danger.
2. Oppidum ab hostibus **captum** incēsum est. The town *captured* by the enemy was set on fire. [**incendō**, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, 'set on fire']
3. Servus ā tēctō dominī **fugitūrus** timuit. The slave, *about to flee* from his master's house, was afraid.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

See page 376.

## Gerunds (Unit 16A)

The gerund is a verbal noun found only in the singular. It lacks a nominative case which is supplied by the infinitive.

1. Timor **scribendī** multōs scribere prohibet. The fear *of writing* keeps many people from writing.

2. Rūs ivimus **venandī**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{causā} \\ \text{grātiā} \end{array} \right\}$ . We went to the country for the sake *of hunting*.

OR: We went to the country to *hunt*. [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']

3. Marcum **canendō** praefēcimus. We put Marcus in charge of *the singing*.

4. Ad **venandum** rūs ivimus. We went to the country to *hunt*.

5. **Eundō** rūs patri placuimus. *By going* to the country we pleased our father.

BUT: Rūs ivimus **venandōrum animālium**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{causā} \\ \text{grātiā} \end{array} \right\}$ . We went to the country to *hunt animals*. [**grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of'] (The gerundive is used instead of a gerund with an object.)

## Gerundives (Unit 16B)

The gerundive is a verbal adjective. It is frequently used instead of a gerund which governs an object except when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun.

1. Timor librōrum **scribendōrum** multōs scribere prohibet. The fear *of writing* books keeps many people from writing.

2. Multī linguam antiquam **discendam** odērunt. Many people hate *learning* an ancient language. [**lingua**, -ae, F., 'tongue, language']

3. Linguā antiquā **discendā** ūtimur. We enjoy *learning* an ancient language. [**lingua**, -ae, F., 'tongue, language']

4. Rōmam ad Caesarem **videndum** ivimus. We went to Rome to *see* Caesar. [**Caesar**, -aris, M., 'Caesar']

5. Rōmam Caesaris **videndī**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{causā} \\ \text{grātiā} \end{array} \right\}$  ivimus. We went to Rome for the sake of *seeing* (to *see*) Caesar. [**Caesar**, -aris, M., 'Caesar'; **grātiā**, preceded by gen., 'for the sake of']

## Supines (Unit 17D)

The supine is a verbal noun which occurs only in the accusative and ablative singular. The accusative case is used, without a preposition, to express purpose after a verb of motion, and the ablative, with certain adjectives, expresses respect.

1. Rōmam Caesarem **vīsum** ivimus. We went to Rome *to see* Caesar. [Caesar, -aris, M., 'Caesar']
2. Ā periculō **fugitum** cucurrimus. We ran *to flee* from danger.
3. Librum — mirābile **dictū**! — perfēcimus. We have finished the book — wonderful *to say*! [**mīrābilis**, -e, 'wonderful, marvelous']

## CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT STATEMENT

In order to put a conditional statement into the indirect form after a verb or expression of the head, the apodosis is recast in the subject accusative and infinitive construction; the protasis will have its verb in the subjunctive, regardless of its mood in the direct statement. Observe the following:

### Simple (General) Conditions

**APODOSIS:** The subject accusative and infinitive construction is used in indirect statement; the tense of the infinitive is relative to that of the main verb of the head.

**PROTASIS:** The verb is in the subjunctive, the tense of which is determined by sequence relative to the main verb of the head.

Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam faciunt, cōnsul eōs opprimit.

If they plot against the state, the consul oppresses them.

Dicit (dicet) si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam faciant, cōnsulem eōs opprimere.

He says (will say) that, if they plot against the state, the consul oppresses them.

Dixit si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōnsulem eōs opprimere.

He said that, if they plotted against the state, the consul oppressed them.

Si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam faciēbant, cōnsul eōs opprimēbat.

If they plotted against the state, the consul oppressed them.

Dicit (dicet) si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcērint, cōnsulem eōs oppressisse.

He says (will say) that, if they plotted against the state, the consul oppressed them.

Dixit si insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōnsulem eōs oppressisse.

He said that, if they had plotted against the state, the consul had oppressed them.

### Future More Vivid Conditions and Future Less Vivid Conditions

Note that no distinction is made between these two kinds of conditions in indirect statement.

**APODOSIS:** The subject accusative and infinitive construction is used in indirect statement; the tense of the infinitive will always be future.

**PROTASIS:** The verb is always in the subjunctive, the tense of which is determined by sequence relative to the main verb of the head.

**MORE VIVID:**

*Sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*facient*  
*fēcerint*}, *cōnsul eōs opprimet.*

If {they plot  
*plot* (will have plotted)} against the state, the consul will oppress them.

**LESS VIVID:**

*Sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*faciant*  
*fēcerint*}, *cōnsul eōs opprimat.*

If {they should plot  
*should plot* (should have plotted)} against the state, the consul would oppress them.

**MORE VIVID:**

*Dicit (dicet) sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*faciant*  
*fēcerint*}, *cōnsulem eōs oppres-*  
*sūrum esse.*

He says (will say) that, if {they plot  
*plot* (will have plotted)} against the state, the consul will oppress them.

**LESS VIVID:**

*Dicit (dicet) sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*faciant*  
*fēcerint*}, *cōnsulem eōs oppres-*  
*sūrum esse.*

He says (will say) that, if {they should plot  
*should plot* (should have plotted)} against the state, the consul would oppress them.

**MORE VIVID:**

*Dixit sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*facerent*  
*fēcissent*}, *cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum*  
*esse.*

He said that, if {they plotted  
*plotted* (will have plotted)} against the state, the consul would oppress them.

**LESS VIVID:**

*Dixit sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam* {*facerent*  
*fēcissent*}, *cōnsulem eōs oppressūrum*  
*esse.*

He said that, if {they should plot  
*should plot* (should have plotted)} against the state, the consul would oppress them.

### Present and Past Contrary-to-Fact Conditions

**APODOSIS:** The subject accusative and infinitive construction is used in indirect statement; the infinitive is always composed of the future active participle plus **fuisse**.

**PROTASIS:** The verb is always in the subjunctive, the tense of which is the same as it would have been in the direct statement, *regardless* of the tense sequence relative to the main verb of the head.

#### PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

**Sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōsul eōs opprimeret.**

If they were plotting against the state, the consul would oppress them.

#### PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

**Sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōsul eōs oppressisset.**

If they had plotted against the state, the consul would have oppressed them.

#### PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

**Dicit (dicet) sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.**

He says (will say) that, if they were plotting against the state, the consul would oppress them.

#### PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

**Dicit (dicet) sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.**

He says (will say) that, if they had plotted against the state, the consul would have oppressed them.

#### PRESENT CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

**Dixit sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam facerent, cōsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.**

He said that, if they were plotting against the state, the consul would oppress them.

#### PAST CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

**Dixit sī insidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcissent, cōsulem eōs oppressūrum fuisse.**

He said that, if they had plotted against the state, the consul would have oppressed them.

## CONDITIONS IN OTHER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

In order to put a conditional statement into the indirect form after a verb of commanding, fearing, or the like, the observations made above about the protasis of each type of condition will apply, but the apodosis will be recast in



the appropriate construction dependent on the verb of commanding, fearing, or the like.

*Sī Caesar veniet, vincet.* If Caesar comes, he will conquer.

*Timeō, sī Caesar veniat, nē vincat (victūrus sit).* I fear that, if Caesar *comes*, *he will conquer*.

## ADDITIONAL RULES

A collective noun usually takes a verb in the singular, but the plural is found when individuals are thought of: *Quisque domum ire voluērunt*, 'Each one wanted to go home'.

A compound subject, even when the subjects are singular, takes a verb in the plural: *Māterne et pater tuus venient?* 'Will your mother and father come?' When the compound subject is in different persons, the verb is usually in the first person rather than the second person and in the second person rather than the third person: *Sī tū et tuus frāter domum ibitis, ego et mea soror illūc ibimus*, 'If you and your brother go home, my sister and I will go there'. When there is a compound subject in the third person, the verb may agree with the nearest one: *Multi pueri parvi et ūna puella parva aderat*, 'Many little boys and one little girl were present'.

Two negatives are equivalent to an affirmative: *nōn numquam*, 'sometimes'; *nōn nulli*, 'some'; *Nēmō nōn veniet*, 'Everyone will come'; *Nōn possum nōn venīre*, 'I must come'.

When several nouns of different gender are described by one adjective, the masculine gender predominates over the feminine if *persons* are being described; if *things* of different genders are described by one adjective, the adjective will be neuter: *Meus frāter sororque sunt pii*, 'My brother and sister are pious'; *Virtūs et vigor sunt bona*, 'Courage and vigor are good'. Sometimes the adjective will agree with the nearest noun: *Virtūs et vigor sunt bonus*, 'Courage and vigor are good'.

There is no one word in Latin for "yes" or for "no". Sometimes the verb is repeated for "yes" or repeated with *nōn* for "no": *Venīsne?*, 'Are you coming?' *Veniō*, 'Yes'. *Nōn veniō*, 'No'. There are other ways of saying "yes" including: *aiō, etiam, ita, vērō, certē*. Some ways of saying "no" are: *negō, nōn, minimē, nullō modō, nōn quidem*.

*Nescio quis* is used as an indefinite pronoun meaning 'someone or other' and *nescio quid*, 'something or other'. *Quis* and *quid* are declined, but *nescio* remains the same: *Nescio quis clāmābat*, 'Someone or other kept shouting'; *Nescio quem dāmnāvērunt*, 'They condemned someone or other'; *Nescio quid dixit*, 'He said something or other'. Note that this phrase does not introduce an indirect question.

## ROMAN NAMES

Roman citizens usually had three names: the **praenōmen** (or personal name), the **nōmen** (or family name), the **cōgnōmen** (the name designating the branch of the family).

e.g. Marcus Tullius Cicero

Gaius Julius Caesar

Publius Vergilius Maro

The **praenōmina** were relatively few in number and were customarily abbreviated in the following way:

A.	= Aulus	P.	= Publius
App.	= Appius	Q.	= Quintus
C.	= Gaius	Ser.	= Servius
Cn.	= Gnaeus	Sex.	= Sextus
D.	= Decimus	Sp.	= Spurius
L.	= Lucius	T.	= Titus
M.	= Marcus	Ti.	= Tiberius
M'.	= Manius		

## A NOTE ON QUANTITATIVE RHYTHM

Accentual or *qualitative* rhythm in poetry is based on a sequence of stressed and unstressed syllables.

˘     /     ˘     /     ˘     /     ˘  
By brooks too broad for leaping

˘     /     ˘     /     ˘     /  
The light-foot lads are laid.

˘     /     ˘     /     ˘     /     ˘  
And rose-lipt girls are sleeping

˘     /     ˘     /     ˘     /  
In fields where roses fade.

(A. E. Housman)

The rhythm of classical Latin poetry is *quantitative*, not *qualitative*. It is based on a sequence of syllables which are *temporally* long or short; that is, a long syllable takes more time to pronounce than a short one. To give a rough illustration, one might say that a long syllable is equivalent to a half note while the short syllable is equivalent to a quarter note. On the most basic level, this rhythmic scheme admits of no stress, although one syllable in each foot does in practice receive a *slight* accent which is called *ictus* [*ictus*, -ūs, M., 'blow, beat'].

In order to *scan* or construct a schematic representation of a line of verse, the quantitative length of each of the syllables in that line must be determined. In working this out, division into words is disregarded and the entire line is considered as one cluster of sounds. The rules for syllabification and for determining the quantitative length of syllables are the same as those given in the Introduction (pp. 2-3): A syllable is *long by nature* if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong; a syllable is *long by position* if it contains a vowel which is followed by two consonants. The letter **x** (= **ks**) is said to be a double consonant. The letters **qu** (= **kw**) function as one sound cluster; the **u** is not a separate syllable. The combination **qu** does not make for length by position. EXCEPTION: When the two consonants following a vowel are a mute (plosive) (**p**, **b**, **t**, **d**, **c(k)**, **g**) followed by **l** or **r**, the poet has the license to regard the syllable as either long or short.

According to this scheme, the following verses are scanned as shown:

— — √ — — — √ — √ — — — √  
 Quem bāsiābis ? Cui labella mordēbis ?  
 (Catullus 8.19; p. 124)

— √ √ — √ √ — — — — √ √ — √  
 Quem recitās meus est, Ō Fidentīne, libellus:  
 — √ √ — √ √ — — √ √ — √ √  
 sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus.  
 (Martial 1.38; p. 124)

— — — √ √ — √ √ — √ √ — √ √ — √  
 Ō passi graviōra, dabit deus his quoque finem.  
 (Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.199; p. 191)

Note that the symbol — is used for long syllables, and √ is used for short syllables. Do not confuse the symbol for long syllables with the macron, which is used to mark long vowels.

Occasionally, *elision*, or the full or partial suppression of a final syllable, occurs in the scansion and reading of poetry. Elision is found in the following instances:

1. When a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word which begins with a vowel or diphthong:

√ √ — √ √ — — — √ √ — √  
 ...revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem  
 (Vergil, *Aeneid* 1.202; p. 191)

Note that the quantity of the full syllable formed by elision is determined by the length (natural or positional) of the second of the two original syllables. In the example above, the syllable is short because the first syllable of **animōs** is short.

- u — —      u u — u —      u — u  
 Adeste, hendecasyllabi, quot estis

Nūlla fidēs ūllō fuit unquam in foedere tanta

— ♪	dactyl
— —	spondee
♪ ♪ —	anapest
♪ —	iamb
— ♪	trochee
— ♪ ♪ —	choriamb

— —|—|— —| —|—| —| —|  
 Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?  
 — —|—| —|—|—| —|—| —| —|—| —|—|  
 Ō passi graviōra, dabit deus his quoque finem.

The rhythmic analysis of Latin poetry is both intricate and fascinating. Although the observations offered above have been necessarily simplified, they should

help to give at least an initial impression of the rhythm and the music of the selections of poetry encountered at this early stage in one's study of the Latin language and literature. By applying these rules, it will be possible to read the selections in this book with some attention to their rhythm and so with greater appreciation.



## NUMERALS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
I	ūnus, -a, -um 'one'	prīmus, -a, -um 'first'	singulī, -ae, -a 'one by one, one each'	semel 'once'
II	duo, duae, duo 'two'	secundus, -a, -um (alter, altera, alterum) 'second'	binī, -ae, -a 'two by two, two each'	bis 'twice'
III	trēs, tria 'three'	tertius, -a, -um 'third'	ternī, -ae, -a (trīnī, -ae, -a) 'three by three, three each'	ter 'three times'
IV (IIII)	quattuor <sup>1</sup> 'four'	quārtus, -a, -um 'fourth'	quaternī, -ae, -a 'four by four, four each'	quater 'four times'
V	quīque	quīntus, -a, -um	quīnī, -ae, -a	quīnquē(n)s
VI	sex	sextus, -a, -um	sēnī, -ae, -a	sexīē(n)s
VII	septem	septimus, -a, -um	septēnī, -ae, -a	septīē(n)s
VIII	octo	octāvus, -a, -um	octōnī, -ae, -a	octīē(n)s
IX (VIII)	novem	nōnus, -a, -um	novēnī, -ae, -a	novīē(n)s
X	decem	decimus, -a, -um	dēnī, -ae, -a	decīē(n)s

<sup>1</sup> Unless otherwise specified, the numbers are indeclinable.

NUMERALS—*cont.*

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
XI	undecim	undecimus, -a, -um	undēnī, -ae, -a	undeciē(n)s
XII	duodecim	duodecimus, -a, -um	duodēnī, -ae, -a	duodeciē(n)s
XIII	tredecim (decem [et] trēs)	tertius, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um (decimus, -a, -um [et] tertius, -a, -um)	ternī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	ter deciē(n)s
XIV (XIIII)	quattuordecim	quārtus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	quaternī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	quater deciē(n)s
XV	quindecim	quīntus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	quīnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	quīnquiē(n)s deciē(n)s (quīndeciē[n]s)
XVI	sēdecim	sextus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	sēnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	sexiē(n)s deciē(n)s (sēdeciē[n]s)
XVII	septendecim	septimus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um	septēnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a	septiē(n)s deciē(n)s
XVIII	duodēvigintī (octōdecim)	duodēvīcē(n)simus, -a, -um (octāvus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um)	octōnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a (duodēvīcēnī, -ae, -a)	duodēvīciē(n)s (octiē[n]s deciē[n]s)

XIX (XVIII)	ūndēvigintī (novendecim)	ūndēvicē(n)simus, -a, -um (nōnus, -a, -um decimus, -a, -um)	novēnī, -ae, -a dēnī, -ae, -a (ūndēvicēnī, -ae, -a)	ūndēvicē(n)s (noviē[n]s deciē[n]s)
XX	vīgintī	vicē(n)simus, -a, -um (vīgēnsimus, -a, -um)	vicēnī, -ae, -a	vicē(n)s
XXI	vīgintī ūnus, -a, -um (ūnus, -a, -um et vīgintī)	vicē(n)simus, -a, -um prīmus, -a, -um (ūnus, -a, -um et vicē[n]simus, -a, -um)	vicēnī, -ae, -a singulī, -ae, -a	semel et vicē(n)s (vicē[n]s semel)
XXX	trīgintā	trīcē(n)simus, -a, -um	trīcēnī, -ae, -a	trīciē(n)s
XL (XXXX)	quadrāgintā	quadrāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a	quadrāgiē(n)s
L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	quīnquāgēnī, -ae, -a	quīnquāgiē(n)s
LX	sexāgintā	sexāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	sexāgēnī, -ae, -a	sexāgiē(n)s
LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	septuāgēnī, -ae, -a	septuāgiē(n)s
LXXX	octōgintā	octōgē(n)simus, -a, -um	octōgēnī, -ae, -a	octōgiē(n)s
XC (LXXXX)	nōnāgintā	nōnāgē(n)simus, -a, -um	nōnāgēnī, -ae, -a	nōnāgiē(n)s
C	centum	centē(n)simus, -a, -um	centēnī, -ae, -a	centiē(n)s

NUMERALS—*cont.*

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	ADVERBS
CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentē(n)simus, -a, -um	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentiē(n)s
CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentē(n)simus, -a, -um	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentiē(n)s
CCCC	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentē(n)simus, -a, -um	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentiē(n)s
D	quingentī, -ae, -a	quingentē(n)simus, -a, -um	quingentī, -ae, -a	quingentiē(n)s
DC	sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentē(n)simus, -a, -um	sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentiē(n)s
DCC	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentē(n)simus, -a, -um	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentiē(n)s
DCCC	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentē(n)simus, -a, -um	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentiē(n)s
DCCCC	nongentī, -ae, -a	nongentē(n)simus, -a, -um	nongentī, -ae, -a	nongentiē(n)s (nongentiē[n]s)
M	mille <sup>2</sup>	millē(n)simus, -a, -um	millēnī, -ae, -a (singula mill[ī]ia) <sup>3</sup>	milliē(n)s (milliē[n]s)

<sup>2</sup> The singular is indeclinable; the plural is *millia*, -ium (third declension i-stem).<sup>3</sup> Both parts decline.

# VOCABULARIES

These lists (Latin-English and English-Latin) contain all the words necessary to do the exercises in this book. Words that are glossed in the main body of the text and that do not appear in the formal Unit Vocabularies are not included.





# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The entry (1) after a verb form indicates that the verb belongs to the first conjugation and has the regular principal parts in **-āre, -āvi, -ātus**. The numbers in the left-hand column refer to the Unit in which the word or phrase first appears.

## UNIT

### A

- 2     **ā, ab** (*prep. + abl.*), (away) from; by (*only with living beings*)
- 16   **abeō, abire, abii** (*abivī*), **abitus**, go away, depart
- 15   **absēns, absentis**, absent
- 15   **absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus**, be away, be absent
- 6     **ac or atque** (*conj.*), and
- 5     **accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessus**, go to, approach
- 14   **accidō, accidere, accidi**, --, fall upon; happen, occur
- 12   **accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus**, receive, accept; hear
- 8     **ācer, ācris, ācre**, sharp, keen, fierce
- 3     **acerbus, acerba, acerbum**, bitter, harsh
- 2     **ad** (*prep. + acc.*), to, toward
- 14   **adeō** (*adv.*), so, so much, so far
- 13   **admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis, F.**, admiration
- 15   **adsum, adesse, adfuī**, --, be present
- 13   **adulēscēns, adulēscēntis**, young, youthful
- 14   **adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventus**, come to, arrive
- 16   **adversus, adversa, adversum**, opposite, hostile, adverse
- 18   **aestimō** (1), estimate, reckon
- 17   **aetās, aetātis, F.**, time of life, age, life
- 4     **aeternus, aeterna, aeternum**, eternal; **in aeternum**, forever
- 10   **afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus**, bring to, present
- 3     **ager, agrī, M.**, field
- 11   **aggredior, aggredi, aggressus sum**, go to, approach

## UNIT

- 15 **agitō** (1), disturb, stir up  
 4 **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus**, do, drive, discuss, spend (*time*), conduct  
 9 **aiō** (*defective verb*), say, affirm (*present aiō, ais, ait, --, --, aiunt; imperfect aiēbam, etc., complete; present subjunctive --, aiās, aiat, --, --, aiant*)  
 16 **aliēnus, aliēna, aliēnum**, belonging to another, strange, out of place  
 13 **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod** (*adj.*), some, any  
 13 **aliquis, aliquid** (*pron.*), someone, something; anyone, anything  
 10 **alius, alia, aliud**, other, another; **alius...alius**, one...another; **aliū...aliū**, some...others  
 10 **alter, altera, alterum**, the other (*of two*)  
 4 **altus, alta, altum**, high, tall, deep  
 1 **ambulō** (1), walk  
 9 **amīcitia, amīcitiae, F.**, friendship  
 4 **amīcus, amīca, amīcum**, friendly (+ *dat.*)  
 16 **āmittō, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus**, let go, lose  
 7 **amō** (1), love  
 7 **amor, amōris, M.**, love  
 12 **an** (*conj.*), or (*introducing the second part of a double question*); whether (*introducing a single indirect question*); --...**an**, whether...or; --...**an nōn**, whether...or not (*in direct double questions*)  
 2 **anima, animae, F.**, soul, spirit, life force  
 17 **animadvertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus**, turn one's attention to, notice  
 6 **animal, animālis, animālium, N.**, animal  
 14 **animus, animī, M.**, mind, rational spirit, soul  
 7 **annus, annī, M.**, year  
 5 **ante** (*prep. + acc.; adv.*), before, in front of; *as adverb* before, previously  
 15 **antequam** (*conj.*), before  
 5 **antīquus, antīqua, antīquum**, ancient  
 16 **aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertus**, open  
 15 **appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritus**, appear, come in sight, be apparent  
 10 **apud** (*prep. + acc.*), at, near, among; at the house of  
 1 **aqua, aquae, F.**, water  
 2 **āra, ārae, F.**, altar  
 11 **arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum**, think, believe, judge  
 5 **ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsus**, burn, be on fire; desire  
 5 **arma, armōrum, N. pl.**, arms, weapons  
 10 **ars, artis, artium, F.**, skill, art

## UNIT

- 18 as, assis, assium, *M.*, as (*a small denomination of money*)  
 7 Asia, Asiae, *F.*, Asia  
 6 Athēnae, Athēnārum, *F. pl.*, Athens  
 6 atque or ac (*conj.*), and  
 7 auctor, auctōris, *M.*, producer, founder, author  
 14 auctōritās, auctōritātis, *F.*, authority  
 10 audācia, audāciae, *F.*, boldness, courage  
 10 audāx, audācis, bold, courageous  
 11 audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare  
 3 audiō, audire, audivī, auditus, hear, listen (to)  
 10 auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus, carry away  
 12 aura, aurae, *F.*, breeze, wind, air  
 5 aureus, aurea, aureum, golden, of gold  
 6 aurōra, aurōrae, *F.*, dawn  
 5 aurum, aurī, *N.*, gold  
 14 aut (*conj.*), or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or  
 5 autem (*postpositive conj.*), however, moreover  
 10 auxiliium, auxiliī, *N.*, aid

## B

- 3 bellum, bellī, *N.*, war  
 5 bene (*adv.*), well  
 3 bonus, bona, bonum, good

## C

- 9 cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsus, fall  
 3 caecus, caeca, caecum, blind, hidden, secret  
 4 caelum, caelī, *N.*, heaven, sky  
 15 calamitās, calamitātis, *F.*, disaster, calamity  
 3 campus, campī, *M.*, plain, level surface  
 5 canō, canere, cecinī, cantus, sing (of)  
 2 capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, take, capture  
 6 careō, carēre, caruī, caritus, lack, be without (+ *abl.*)  
 8 carmen, carminis, *N.*, song, poem, incantation  
 14 Carthāgō, Carthāginis, *F.*, Carthage (*a city on the coast of North Africa*)  
 4 cārus, cāra, cārum, dear (+ *dat.*)  
 9 cāsus, cāsūs, *M.*, fall, accident, occurrence, chance  
 16 causa, causae, *F.*, cause, reason; causā (*preceded by gen.*), for the sake of

## UNIT

- 5 cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessus, go, move, yield  
 13 celer, celeris, celere, swift  
 17 celeritās, celeritātis, *F.*, speed, swiftness  
 2 cella, cellae, *F.*, storeroom, (small) room  
 2 cēlō (1), hide, conceal  
 11 cēna, cēnae, *F.*, dinner  
 10 certus, certa, certum, certain, sure  
 4 cibus, cibi, *M.*, food  
 18 cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, surround, gird  
 4 circum (*prep.* + *acc.*), around  
 7 cīvis, cīvis, cīvium, *M. or F.*, citizen  
 8 cīvitās, cīvitātis, *F.*, citizenship; state  
 1 clāmō (1), shout  
 3 clārus, clāra, clārum, bright, clear, famous  
 10 coepī, coepisse, coeptus, began (*defective verb; it occurs only in the perfect system*)  
 2 cōgitō (1), think, ponder, consider  
 5 cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn; *in perfect* know  
 14 colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum, speak, talk, converse with  
 12 comes, comitis, *M. or F.*, companion  
 10 cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus, bring together, collect; compare;  
*reflexive sē cōnferre, take oneself (i.e., to a place), go*  
 7 cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus, complete  
 11 cōnfiteor, cōnfitēri, cōnfessus sum, confess  
 10 coniūnx, coniugis, *M. or F.*, husband, wife, spouse  
 11 cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, try, attempt  
 9 cōnsilium, cōnsiliū, *N.*, counsel, plan, advice  
 13 cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitutī, cōstitutus, set, establish, decide  
 11 cōnsul, cōnsulis, *M.*, consul  
 15 contrā (*prep.* + *acc.*; *adv.*), against, facing; opposite, in opposition, in turn  
 12 cōpia, cōpiae, *F.*, abundance, supply; *pl.* troops  
 1 corōna, corōnae, *F.*, crown, wreath  
 1 corōnō (1), crown  
 6 corpus, corporis, *N.*, body  
 16 cottidiē or cotidiē (*adv.*), daily  
 11 crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus, be credulous, believe; be trusting, trust  
 (+ *dat.*)  
 9 crūdēlis, crūdēle, cruel



## UNIT

- 2 **culpa, culpaē, F.**, guilt, fault  
 1 **cum** (*prep.* + *abl.*), with  
 15 **cum** (*conj.*), when, since, although  
 11 **cupidus, cupida, cupidum**, desirous, eager, fond of (+ *gen.*)  
 12 **cūr** (*adv.*), why, for what reason  
 1 **cūra, cūraē, F.**, care, concern, anxiety  
 13 **currō, currere, cucurri, cursus**, run  
 10 **custōs, custōdis, M.**, guardian

## D

- 2 **dāmnō** (1), condemn, sentence  
 1 **dē** (*prep.* + *abl.*), concerning, about; (down) from  
 4 **dea, deae, F.**, goddess  
 5 **dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus**, owe, ought  
 16 **decōrus, decōra, decōrum**, fitting, suitable; handsome  
 17 **dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēsus**, defend  
 10 **dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus**, bring away, bring down, offer; report  
 4 **dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvi, dēlētus**, destroy  
 12 **dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus**, select, choose, gather  
 9 **dēmēns, dēmētis**, mad, raving  
 17 **dēnique** (*adv.*), finally, at last  
 15 **dēsīnō, dēsīnere, dēsīi, --**, stop, cease (*frequently with infinitive or ablative*)  
 17 **dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitus**, stop, desist  
 16 **dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, --**, be missing, fail (*often* + *dat.*)  
 17 **dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterrui, dēterritus**, deter, prevent, hinder, keep from  
 4 **deus, dei, M.**, god, deity (*nom. pl. di; gen. pl. deōrum or deum; dat. & abl. pl. dis*)  
 3 **dexter, dextra, dextrum**, right (*as opposed to left*), favorable  
 3 **dextra, dextrae, F.**, right hand; **ad dextram**, to the right  
 6 **dicō, dicere, dixi, dictus**, say, tell, speak  
 8 **diēs, diēi, M.**, day  
 10 **differō, differre, distulī, dilātus**, differ  
 9 **difficilis, difficile**, difficult  
 14 **dignus, digna, dignum**, worthy, deserving, suitable (+ *abl.*)  
 3 **diligentia, diligentiae, F.**, diligence  
 5 **discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessus**, go from, depart, leave  
 16 **discō, discere, didici, --**, learn  
 9 **dissimilis, dissimile, dissimilar**, unlike (+ *gen. or dat.*)

## UNIT

- 6 diū (*adv.*), for a long time  
 diūtius (*adv.*), comparative of diū
- 11 dīvitiae, dīvitiarum, *F. pl.*, riches, wealth
- 1 dō, dare, dedī, datus, give, grant
- 10 doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, teach  
 doctus, -a, -um, learned
- 14 dolor, dolōris, *M.*, pain, grief, sorrow
- 5 dominus, dominī, *M.*, master, lord
- 6; 8 domus, domūs/domī, *F.*, house, home
- 15 dōnec (*conj.*), while, until, as long as
- 1 dōnō (1), give, present, reward
- 3 dōnum, dōnī, *N.*, gift
- 2; 18 dubitō (1), hesitate (*with infinitive*); doubt (*with indirect question or quīn + subjunctive*)
- 17 dubium, dubiī, *N.*, doubt, hesitation
- 17 dubius, dubia, dubium, doubtful
- 4 dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, lead; consider
- 8 dulcis, dulce, sweet, pleasant
- 15 dum (*conj.*), while, until, as long as; if only, provided that
- 15 dummodo (*conj.*), if only, provided that
- 13 duo, duae, duo, two
- 5 dūrus, dūra, dūrum, hard, harsh
- 11 dux, ducis, *M. or F.*, leader, guide

## E

- 1 ē, ex (*prep. + abl.*), out of, from
- 10 efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, carry out; bring forth
- 14 efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus, effect, bring about
- 7 ego, meī (*pron.*), I
- 11 ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, go out, go away
- 18 emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus, buy
- 1 enim (*postpositive conj.*), indeed, of course
- 8 eō, ire, iī (ivī), itus, go
- 10 errō (1), wander, err
- 1 et (*conj.*), and; *adv.* even; et . . . et, both . . . and
- 14 etiam (*adv.*), even
- 15 etsī (*conj.*), although, even if (+ *indicative*)
- ex, see ē
- 6 exemplar, exemplāris, exemplārium, *N.*, copy, model, example
- 6 exemplum, exemplī, *N.*, example

## UNIT

- 15 **exiguus, exigua, exiguum**, small  
 12 **exorior, exoriri, exortus sum**, rise, arise, appear, start  
 2 **expellō, expellere, expuli, expulsus**, push out, drive out  
 11 **exerior, experiri, expertus sum**, try, put to the test, experience  
 12 **expōnō, expōnere, exposui, expositus**, set forth, expose, explain  
 15 **exspectō** (1), wait (for), expect

## F

- 9 **facilis, facile** (*adj.*), easy; **facile** (*adv.*), easily  
 4; 18; 14 **faciō, facere, fēcī, factus**, make, do; *with gen. of indefinite value*  
     reckon, consider; **facere ut**, to see to it that (+ *subjunctive*)  
 4 **factum, facti**, *N.*, deed  
 1 **fāma, fāmae, F.**, talk, report, rumor, fame, reputation  
 11 **familia, familiae, F.**, household, family  
 11 **fateor, fatēri, fassus sum**, confess  
 13 **faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautus**, be favorable, favor (+ *dat.*)  
 8 **fēlix, fēlicis**, happy, fortunate  
 1 **fēmina, fēminae, F.**, woman  
 10 **ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus**, bring, carry, bear, endure  
 5 **ferrum, ferri**, *N.*, iron, sword  
 8 **fidēs, fidei**, *F.*, faith, trust, trustworthiness  
 10 **figūra, figūrae, F.**, figure, form, shape  
 4 **fīlia, fīliae, F.**, daughter  
 4 **fīlius, filiū, M.**, son  
 7 **fīnis, finis, finium, M.**, end, boundary, limit  
 13 **fiō, fieri, factus sum**, be made, be done, happen, become (*serves as the*  
     *passive for faciō, -ere*)  
 5 **flamma, flammae, F.**, flame, fire  
 11 **flūmen, flūminis, N.**, river, running water  
 10 **foedus, foederis, N.**, pact, treaty, agreement  
 15 **fore = futūrus (-a, -um) esse** (*future infinitive of sum*)  
 1 **fōrma, fōrmae, F.**, form, shape, figure, beauty  
 15 **fors, fortis, fortium, F.**, chance  
 8 **fortis, forte**, strong, brave  
 11 **forum, fori, N.**, open space, market place, public square  
 6 **frāter, frātris, M.**, brother  
 8 **frigidus, frīgida, frigidum**, cold  
 8 **fructus, fructūs, M.**, enjoyment; fruit; profit; **fructui esse** to be (for  
     [the purpose of]) a profit, be an asset to (+ *dat.*)  
 16 **frūstrā** (*adv.*), in vain

## UNIT

- 10 **fuga, fugae, F.**, flight  
 10 **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus**, flee  
 8 **fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, --**, flash, shine  
 15 **fulgor, fulgōris, M.**, lightning, flash, brightness

**G**

- Gallus, Gallī, M.**, a Gaul  
 10 **gaudium, gaudiī, N.**, joy  
 10 **gēns, gentis, gentium, F.**, race, people  
 7 **genus, generis, N.**, descent, origin, race, sort  
 3 **gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus**, conduct, manage, wage  
 3 **gladius, gladiī, M.**, sword  
 2 **glōria, glōriae, F.**, glory, renown  
 9 **gracilis, gracile**, slender, unadorned, simple  
 11 **gradior, gradiī, gressus sum**, step, walk  
**Graecus, -a, -um**, Greek  
 15 **grātus, grāta, grātum**, pleasing (+ *dat.*)  
 8 **gravis, grave**, heavy, severe, important

**H**

- 1 **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus**, have, hold, possess, consider  
 13 **heri (adv.)**, yesterday  
 13 **hic (adv.)**, here  
 7 **hic, haec, hoc**, this, the latter  
 6 **homō, hominis, M.**, human being, man  
 4 **honestus, honesta, honestum**, respected, honorable, distinguished  
 18 **honor, honōris, M.**, honor, distinction, office  
 7 **hōra, hōrae, F.**, hour, season  
 12 **horridus, horrida, horridum**, horrible, rough  
 11 **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum**, urge, encourage (+ *ut or nē and sub-junctive*)  
 9 **hospes, hospitī, M.**, guest, host  
 12 **hostilis, hostile**, of an enemy, hostile  
 7 **hostis, hostis, hostium, M.**, enemy, public enemy (the plural is frequently translated collectively as 'enemy')  
 14 **hūc (adv.)**, to this place  
 9 **humilis, humile**, humble, lowly

## UNIT

## I

- 8 **iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus**, throw
- 8 **iactō** (1), throw, scatter, shake; boast
- 10 **iam** (*adv.*), now, by this time, already, soon
- 12 **ibi** (*adv.*), there; then
- 12 **idem, eadem, idem**, same
- 15 **igitur** (*postpositive conj.*), therefore
- 6 **ignis, ignis, ignium**, *M.*, fire (*abl. sing. igne or ignī*)
- 13 **īgnōscō, īgnōscere, īgnōvī, īgnōtus**, be forgiving, forgive, pardon (+ *dat.*)
- 7 **ille, illa, illud**, that, the former
- 13 **illīc** (*adv.*), there
- 14 **illūc** (*adv.*), to that place, up to that time
- 12 **immortālis, immortalē, immortal**, everlasting
- 17 **impediō, impedire, impedīvī (impediū), impedītus**, deter, impede, prevent
- 11 **imperātor, imperātōris**, *M.*, commander, general
- 5 **imperium, imperiū**, *N.*, authority, power, empire
- 5 **imperō** (1), give (an) order(s), give (a) command(s). (*The person ordered is in the dative case; the thing ordered is expressed by ut or nē with the subjunctive.*)
- 5 **impius, impia, impium**, irreverent, wicked, impious
- 1 **impleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus**, fill, fill up
- 1 **in** (*prep. + acc. or abl.*), into, onto (*motion toward—requires accusative*);  
in, on (*place where—requires ablative*)
- 10 **incertus, incerta, incertum**, uncertain, unsure
- 2 **incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus**, begin
- 2 **incola, incolae**, *M.* (*occasionally F.*), inhabitant
- 2 **incolō, incolere, incoluī**, —, inhabit
- 14 **indīgnus, indīgna, indīgnum**, unworthy, unsuitable (+ *abl.*)
- 8 **infēlix, infēlicis**, unhappy, unfortunate
- 10 **inferō, inferre, intulī, illātus**, carry into; inflict
- 16 **infirmus, infirma, infirmum**, weak, unhealthy
- 15 **ingenium, ingenī, N.**, nature, talent, disposition, natural quality
- 8 **ingēns, ingentis**, huge
- 11 **ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum**, go into, enter, advance, begin
- 15 **inimicitia, inimicitiae**, *F.*, hostility
- 4 **inimicus, inimica, inimicum**, unfriendly, hostile (+ *dat.*)
- 2 **insidiae, insidiarum**, *F.* (*used only in pl.*), ambush, plot, treachery
- 16 **īstituō, īstituere, īstituī, īstitūtus**, set (up), establish, arrange
- 1 **īnsula, īnsulae**, *F.*, island



## UNIT

- 4 **intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus**, understand  
 14 **intendō, intendere, intendī, intentus**, stretch out, extend, aim, exert  
 14 **inter** (*prep.* + *acc.*), between, among  
 15 **interdum** (*adv.*), sometimes  
 16 **interest, interesse, interfuit**, —, it is of importance, it concerns, it is of interest  
 5 **interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus**, kill  
 5 **invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus**, go into, invade, attack  
 7 **inveniō, invenire, invēnī, inventus**, come upon, discover, find  
 2 **invidia, invidiae, F.**, envy, jealousy  
 12 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, self, very  
 8 **īra, īrae, F.**, wrath, anger  
 13 **īrātus, īrāta, īrātum**, angry  
 7 **is, ea, id, this, that; he, she, it**  
 12 **iste, ista, istud**, that (of yours), that (*with pejorative sense*)  
 14 **ita** (*adv.*), so, in this way  
 6 **Italia, Italiae, F.**, Italy  
 10 **iter, itineris, N.**, journey, route  
 8 **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus**, order, command (+ *infinitive*, not with an *ut* clause of indirect command)  
 15 **iūdex, iūdicis, M.**, judge, jury  
 15 **iūdicium, iūdicī, N.**, trial, judgment, decision  
 10 **iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iunctus**, join  
 6 **Iūnō, Iūnōnis, F.**, Juno (*sister and wife of Jupiter*)  
 6 **Iuppiter, Iovis, M.**, Jupiter (*god of the sky*)  
 13 **iūs, iūris, N.**, right, law  
 12 **iussum, iussī, N.**, command, order (*the abl. sing. is iussū*, by order)  
 11 **iuvenis, iuvenis, M. or F.** (*not i-stem*), youth, young person

## L

- 16 **lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum**, slip, glide, fall  
 2 **labōrō** (1), work  
 2 **lacrima, lacrimae, F.**, tear  
 3 **laetus, laeta, laetum**, happy  
 9 **laudō** (1), praise  
 9 **laus, laudis, F.**, praise  
 13 **lēgātus, lēgātī, M.**, legate, envoy  
 4 **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus**, choose, select; read  
 16 **lēx, lēgis, F.**, law

## UNIT

- 16 **libenter** (*adv.*), freely, willingly, gladly  
 3 **liber, libera, liberum**, free  
 4 **liber, librī, M.**, book  
 6 **liberō** (1), free  
 8 **libertās, libertātis, F.**, freedom  
 16 **licet, licēre, licuit** (*licitum est*), it is permitted  
 4 **littera, litterae, F.**, letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.* letter (*epistle*)  
 8 **lītus, litoris, N.**, shore, beach  
 7 **locus, locī, M.**, place, spot  
 8 **longus, longa, longum**, long; **longē** (*adv.*), far off, at a distance, far and wide  
 11 **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum**, speak, talk  
 6 **lūmen, lūminis, N.**, light  
 2 **lūna, lūnae, F.**, moon, moonlight  
 8 **lūx, lūcis, F.**, light; **primā lūce**, at the first light, at daybreak

## M

- magis, comparative of magnopere**  
 5 **magister, magistrī, M.**, superior, director, master, teacher  
 9 **magnopere** (*adv.*), greatly  
 3 **magnus, magna, magnum**, large, big, great  
 9 **maior, maius, comparative of magnus, magna, magnum; maiōrēs, maiōrum, M. pl.**, ancestors  
 9 **male** (*adv.*), badly  
 11 **mālō, mälle, mālūī, --**, prefer, choose rather  
 3 **malus, mala, malum**, evil, bad, wicked  
 12 **maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsus**, remain  
 8 **manus, manūs, F.**, hand; band, troop  
 3 **Marcus, Marcī, M.**, Marcus (*proper name*)  
 6 **mare, maris, marium, N.**, sea  
 9 **Mārs, Mārtis, M.**, Mars (*god of war*)  
 6 **māter, mātris, F.**, mother  
**maximus, maxima, maximum, superlative of magnus, magna, magnum**  
 5 **medius, media, medium**, middle of, middle  
**melior, melius, comparative of bonus, bona, bonum**  
 18 **meminī, meminisse** (*defective verb*), remember  
 8 **memor, memoris**, mindful, remembering (+ *gen.*)  
 15 **memoria, memoriae, F.**, memory  
 6 **mēns, mentis, mentium, F.**, mind, disposition, intellect

## UNIT

- 4      **mēnsa**, **mēnsae**, *F.*, table
- 17     **metuō**, **metuere**, **metuī**, --, fear
- 8      **metus**, **metūs**, *M.*, fear, dread
- 7      **meus**, **mea**, **meum**, my, mine, my own
- 6      **mīles**, **mīlitis**, *M.*, soldier
- minimus**, **minima**, **minimum**, *superlative of parvus, parva, parvum*
- 11     **minor**, **minārī**, **minātus sum**, jut forth, threaten
- minor**, **minus**, *comparative of parvus, parva, parvum*
- 13     **mīror**, **mīrārī**, **mīrātus sum**, wonder (at), be amazed (at), admire
- 15     **miscēō**, **miscēre**, **miscuī**, **mixtus**, mix, intermingle, blend
- 3      **miser**, **miserā**, **miserum**, miserable, unhappy, wretched
- 12     **misereor**, **miserērī**, **miseritus sum**, pity (+ *gen.*)
- 16     **miseret**, **miserēre**, **miseruit** (**miseritum est**), it pities, it moves to pity
- 4      **mittō**, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus**, send
- 12     **modus**, **modī**, *M.*, way, manner, limit; kind; **quō modō**, in what way, how
- 14; 15 **modo** (*adv. ; conj.*), only; just, just now; if only, provided that
- 6      **moenia**, **moenium**, *N. pl.*, (city) walls
- 2      **moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus**, warn, remind
- 6      **mōns**, **montis**, **montium**, *M.*, mountain
- 4      **mōnstrō** (1), show, point out, demonstrate
- 2      **mora**, **morae**, *F.*, delay
- 11     **morior**, **morī**, **mortuus sum**, die
- 13     **moror**, **morārī**, **morātus sum**, delay, stay, hinder
- 7      **mors**, **mortis**, **mortium**, *F.*, death
- 10     **mōs**, **mōris**, *M.*, custom; *pl.* character
- 8      **mōtus**, **mōtūs**, *M.*, motion, movement
- 5      **moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, move
- 5      **mox** (*adv.*), soon
- 9      **multum** (*adv.*), much, very
- 3      **multus**, **multa**, **multum**, much, many
- 9      **mūniō**, **mūnīre**, **mūnivī**, **mūnitus**, fortify
- 2      **mūtō** (1), change, exchange

## N

- 9      **nam** (*conj.*), for
- 11     **nāscor**, **nāscī**, **nātus sum**, be born, descend from
- 2      **nātūra**, **nātūrae**, *F.*, nature

## UNIT

- 3 **nātus, nātī, M.**, son, child  
 1 **nauta, nautae, M.**, sailor  
 11 **nāvis, nāvis, nāvium, F.**, ship  
 3; 18 **nē (conj.)**, in order that . . . not; that (*after expressions of fearing*)  
 12; 15 **nē (adv.)**, not; **nē . . . quidem**, not even (*enclosing the word or words they emphasize*)  
 1 **-ne (enclitic)**, added to the first word of an interrogative sentence or clause; it indicates a question  
 12 **-ne . . . an**, whether . . . or  
 12 **-ne . . . an nōn**, whether . . . or not (*in direct double questions*)  
 12 **-ne . . . necne**, whether . . . or not (*in indirect double questions*)  
 16 **necesse (indeclinable adj.)**, necessary  
 12 **necne (conj.)**, or not (*generally used as the second part of a double indirect question, representing an nōn in the direct question*); -- . . . **necne**, whether . . . or not (*in indirect double questions*)  
 11 **neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctus**, disregard, neglect  
 10 **negō (1)**, deny, say no  
 13 **nēmō, nēminis, M. or F.**, no one  
 17 **nemus, nemoris, N.**, grove, wood  
 2 **neque or nec (conj.)**, and not, nor; **neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)**, neither . . . nor  
 12 **nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī (nesciī), nescītus**, not know, be ignorant  
 10 **neuter, neutra, neutrum**, neither  
 2 **nihil or nīl (indeclinable noun)**, nothing  
 18 **nihilum, nihīlī, N.**, nothing  
 2 **nisi (conj.)**, unless, if . . . not; except  
 13 **noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitus**, be harmful, harm (+ *dat.*)  
 11 **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, --**, be unwilling, wish . . . not  
 8 **nōmen, nōminis, N.**, name  
 1; 6 **nōn (adv.)**, not; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also  
 12 **nōnne (adv.)**, in a direct question, anticipates the answer "yes"; if not, whether not (*in an indirect question*)  
 5 **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus**, learn; in perfect know  
 7 **noster, nostra, nostrum**, our, ours, our own  
 14 **nōtus, nōta, nōtum**, known, well-known, customary  
 5 **novus, nova, novum**, new, strange  
 6 **nox, noctis, noctium, F.**, night  
 2 **noxa, noxae, F.**, harm, injury  
 10 **nūllus, nūlla, nūllum**, no, none

## UNIT

- 12 **num** (*adv.*), in a direct question, anticipates the answer "no"; whether (in an indirect question)  
 8 **nūmen, nūminis, N.**, divinity, divine spirit  
 18 **numerus, numeri, M.**, number  
 5 **numquam or nunquam** (*adv.*), never  
 2 **nunc** (*adv.*), now  
 14 **nūntiō** (1), report, announce  
 14 **nūntius, nūntiī, M.**, messenger, message  
 14 **nūper** (*adv.*), recently  
 15 **nusquam** (*adv.*), nowhere  
 15 **nūtrix, nūtrīcis, F.**, nurse

## O

- 8 **ob** (*prep.* + *acc.*), on account of  
 17 **obitus, obitūs, M.**, a going down, setting; downfall, ruin  
 18 **oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblitus sum**, forget  
 17 **obstō, obstāre, obstiti, obstātus**, stand in the way of, hinder (+ *dat.*)  
 15 **occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsus**, fall, set, die  
 12 **occultē** (*adv.*), secretly  
 3 **oculus, oculī, M.**, eye  
 7 **ōdī, ōdisse** (*defective verb lacking in the present system; perfect forms have present meanings*), hate  
 9 **odium, odiī, N.**, hatred  
 10 **offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus**, bring before; offer; expose  
 15 **omnīnō** (*adv.*), all in all, as a whole, entirely  
 8 **omnis, omne**, every, all  
 8 **opīniō, opīniōnis, F.**, opinion  
 16 **oportet, oportēre, oportuit, --**, it is necessary, it is proper  
 4 **oppidum, oppidī, N.**, town  
 7 **opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus**, press upon, overwhelm, suppress, oppress  
 6 **oppūgnō** (1), attack, fight against  
 12 **ops, opis, F.**, power, strength; *pl.* resources, wealth  
**optimus, optima, optimum**, superlative of **bonus, bona, bonum**  
 1 **optō** (1), desire, wish (for), choose  
 7 **opus, operis, N.**, work; **opus est**, there is need of (+ *nom.* or *abl.* [*instrumental*] of thing needed; less frequently *gen.*)  
 13 **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, F.**, oration, speech  
 11 **ōrātor, ōrātōris, M.**, speaker



## UNIT

- 10 **orbis, orbis, orbium**, *M.*, ring, orb, circle; **orbis terrārum**, circle of lands; the world
- 17 **orior, orīrī, ortus sum**, rise, arise, begin
- 3 **ōrō** (1), beg (for)
- 17 **ortus, ortūs**, *M.*, rising, source
- 14 **ōs, ōris**, *N.*, mouth, expression
- 14 **ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus**, show, expose, make plain

## P

- 13 **paene** (*adv.*), almost
- 16 **paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit**, --, it repents
- 13 **parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsus**, be sparing, spare (+ *dat.*)
- 11 **parēns, parentis**, *M. or F.*, parent
- 13 **pāreō, pārere, pārui, pāritus**, be obedient, obey (+ *dat.*)
- 14 **parō** (1), prepare, make ready, provide, get
- 10 **pars, partis, partium**, *F.*, part
- 9 **parum** (*adv. and indeclinable adj.*) too little, not enough
- 9 **parvus, parva, parvum**, little, small
- 6 **pater, patris**, *M.*, father
- 11 **pator, patī, passus sum**, suffer, endure, allow
- 1 **patria, patriae**, *F.*, native land, country
- 12 **paucī, paucae, pauca**, few
- 14 **paulus, paula, paulum**, little, small (compares irregularly: **minor, minus; minimus, -a, -um**)
- 11 **pauper, pauperis**, poor
- 14 **pāx, pācis**, *F.*, peace
- 8 **pectus, pectoris**, *N.*, heart, breast
- 1 **pecūnia, pecūniae**, *F.*, money
- peior, peius**, *comparative of malus*, mala, malum
- 2 **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus**, push, drive (off)
- 2 **per** (*prep. + acc.*), through
- 4 **perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus**, destroy, lose, waste
- 15 **pereō, perire, perii (perivī), peritus**, die, perish
- 7 **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus**, accomplish, complete, finish
- 4 **periculum, periculī**, *N.*, danger
- 13 **persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsī, persuāsus**, be persuasive, persuade (+ *dat.*)
- 17 **pervenio, pervenire, pervēnī, perventus**, arrive (at) (+ *ad*)

## UNIT

- 7     **pēs, pedis, *M.***, foot  
**pessimus, pessima, pessimum**, *superlative of malus, mala, malum*, worst
- 3     **petō, petere, petivī, petītus**, seek (*with ā + abl.*), ask (for)
- 15    **piger, pigra, pigrum**, lazy, slow
- 16    **piget, pigēre, piguit (pigitum est)**, it disgusts
- 5     **pius, pia, pium**, loyal, dutiful, pious
- 7     **placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus**, be pleasing to, please (+ *dat.*)
- 13    **plēbs, plēbis, *F.***, common people  
**plūrimus, plūrima, plūrimum**, *superlative of multus, multa, multum plūs, neuter comparative of multum; pl. plūrēs, plūra*
- 1     **poena, poenae, *F.***, penalty, punishment; **poenās dare**, to pay a penalty
- 1     **poēta, poētae, *M.***, poet
- 14    **polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum**, promise
- 4     **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus**, put, place, set aside
- 5     **populus, populī, *M.***, people
- 1     **porta, portae, *F.***, gate
- 3     **portō (1)**, carry
- 12    **poscō, poscere, poposci, --**, beg, demand
- 5     **possum, posse, potuī, --**, be able, can
- 5     **post (prep. + acc.; adv.)**, after, behind (*prep.*); afterwards, after, behind (*adv.*)
- 5     **postquam (conj.)**, after (+ *indicative*)
- 13    **praeferō, praeferre, praetuli, praelātus**, bring (place) before, prefer
- 13    **praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus**, make before (at the head of), put in command of
- 11    **praemium, praemiī, *N.***, reward
- 13    **praesum, praesesse, praefuī, --**, be before (at the head of), be in command of
- 11    **precor, precārī, precātus sum**, beg, request
- 7     **premō, premere, pressī, pressus**, press, press upon, press hard
- 18    **pretium, pretiī, *N.***, price; value
- 9     **prīmus, prīma, prīmum**, first; **quam prīmum**, as soon as possible
- 9     **prius (adv.)**, before, previously
- 15    **priusquam (conj.)**, before
- 8     **prō (prep. + abl.)**, in front of, for, on behalf of, instead of, in return for
- 11    **proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum**, set forth, set out, start
- 8     **profugus, profuga, profugum**, fugitive, banished, exiled
- 11    **prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum**, go forth, advance, proceed
- 17    **prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus**, keep from, prohibit, prevent

## UNIT

- 9 **prope** (*adv.*), near  
 14 **properō** (1), hasten  
     **propius** (*adv.*), *comparative of prope*  
 10 **propter** (*prep. + acc.*), on account of, because of  
 15 **prōsum**, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, --, be useful, do good, benefit, profit  
     (+ *dat.*)  
 2 **prōvincia**, **prōvinciae**, *F.*, province  
 9 **proximus**, **proxima**, **proximum**, nearest, next  
 8 **pūblicus**, **pūblica**, **pūblicum**, public  
 16 **pudet**, **pudēre**, **puduit** (**puditum est**), it shames  
 2 **puella**, **puellae**, *F.*, girl  
 3 **puer**, **puerī**, *M.*, boy; child  
 18 **pūgna**, **pūgnae**, *F.*, battle, fight  
 3 **pūgnō** (1), fight; (*with cum + abl.*), fight with (*i.e.*, *against*)  
 3 **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum**, beautiful  
 15 **putō** (1), think

## Q

- 8 **quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, look for, search for, seek, ask  
 14 **quālis**, **quāle**, (of) what kind (of)  
 9 **quam** (*conj.*), than (*used in comparisons*)  
 8 **quam ob rem**, on account of which thing, for what reason, why  
 9 **quam primum**, as soon as possible  
 12 **quamdiū** (*adv.*), how long  
 5 **quamquam** (*conj.*), although (+ *indicative*)  
 15 **quamvis** (*conj.*), although (+ *subjunctive*)  
 12 **quandō** (*conj. and adv.*), when; since  
 10 **quantus**, **quanta**, **quantum**, how much, how great  
 12 **quārē** (*adv.*), by what means, why; and therefore  
 15 **quasi** (*adv.*), as if, as it were  
 1 -**que** (*enclitic*), and  
 13 **quī**, **qua**, **quod** (*adj.*), some, any  
 7 **quī**, **quae**, **quod** (*relative pron. and interrogative adj.*) who, which, that  
     (*relative*); which, what (*interrogative*)  
 12 **quia** (*conj.*), because  
 12 **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** (*pron.*), a certain one or thing  
 12 **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam** (*adj.*), certain  
 15 **quidem** (*adv.*), indeed; **nē**...**quidem**, not even (*enclosing the word or words they emphasize*)

## UNIT

- 17 **quīn** (*conj.*), but that, that not (*used after expressions of prevention, negative doubting, etc.*)
- 7 **quīnque** (*indeclinable adj.*), five
- 13 **quīque, quaeque, quodque** (*adj.*), each, every
- 7; 13 **quis, quid** (*interrogative and indefinite pron.*), who, what; someone, something; anyone, anything
- 13 **quisquam, quidquam or quicquam** (*pron.*), someone, anyone, something, anything (*used with a negative or a virtual negative*)
- 13 **quisque, quidque or quicque** (*pron.*), each one, everyone, each thing, everything
- 13 **quō** (*adv.*), (to) where
- 15 **quōad** (*conj.*), as long as, as far as, until (*takes same construction as dum and dōnec*)
- 4; 18 **quod** (*conj.*), because; the fact that; **quod sī**, but if
- 17 **quōminus** (*conj.*), by which the less, that not, from (*used in positive or negative clauses of prevention*)
- 15 **quoniam** (*conj.*), since (+ *indicative*)
- 10 **quot** (*indeclinable adj.*), how many

## R

- 17 **radius, radii, M.**, rod, ray
- 12 **recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus**, take back, regain, recover; **sē recipere**, withdraw, take oneself
- 15 **redeō, redire, rediī, reditus**, return, go back
- 10 **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus**, bring back, report
- 16 **rēfert, rēferre, rētulit**, --, it is of importance
- 1 **rēgīna, rēgīnae, F.**, queen
- 4 **rēgnum, rēgnī, N.**, realm, kingdom
- 6 **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**, rule
- 17 **religiō, religiōnis, F.**, religious awe, reverence, integrity, sanctity
- 17 **relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus**, leave behind, abandon
- 17 **reliquus, reliqua, reliquum**, remaining, rest of
- 12 **remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, remānsus**, remain
- 5 **removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus**, remove, take away, set aside
- 8 **rēs, rei, F.**, thing, matter, affair, situation; **rēs pūblica**, state, republic
- 4 **respondeō, respondere, respondi, respōnsus**, answer
- 17 **retegō, retegere, retēxī, retēctus**, uncover, reveal
- 6 **rēx, rēgis, M.**, king
- 14 **rīdeō, rīdēre, risī, risus**, laugh (at)

## UNIT

- 12 **rogō** (1), ask (for)  
 6 **Rōma, Rōmae, F.**, Rome  
 3 **Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum**, Roman  
 5 **ruīna, ruīnae, F.**, fall, downfall, ruin, destruction  
 6 **rūmor, rūmōris, M.**, rumor, gossip  
 5 **ruō, ruere, ruī, rutilus**, fall, go to ruin, rush  
 6 **rūs, rūris, N.**, country (*as opposed to city*)

## S

- 9 **saepe** (*adv.*), often  
 8 **saevus, saeva, saevum**, cruel  
 7 **salūs, salūtis, F.**, health, safety; **salūtem dicere**, say hello, greet  
 6 **sānus, sāna, sānum**, sound, healthy, sane  
 9 **sapiēns, sapientis**, wise  
 9 **sapientia, sapientiae, F.**, wisdom  
 9 **satis** (*adv. and indeclinable adj.*), enough  
 3 **saxum, saxī, N.**, rock, stone  
 11 **scelus, sceleris, N.**, wicked deed, crime  
 6 **sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus**, know  
 3 **scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus**, write  
 16 **scriptor, scriptōris, M.**, writer  
 1 **sed** (*conj.*), but  
 2 **semper** (*adv.*), always  
 14 **senex, senis**, old  
 8 **sēnsus, sēnsūs, M.**, sensation, feeling  
 2 **sententia, sententiae, F.**, feeling, thought, opinion  
 2 **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, feel, perceive  
 11 **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**, follow  
 9 **serēnus, serēna, serēnum**, serene, calm  
 6 **servitūs, servitūtis, F.**, slavery  
 11 **servō** (1), save, preserve, rescue, keep  
 3 **servus, servī, M.**, slave  
 2 **sī** (*conj.*), if  
 14 **sīc** (*adv.*), so, in this way  
 6 **sīdus, sīderis, N.**, constellation, star; heaven  
 10 **signum, signī, N.**, signal, sign  
 9 **similis, simile**, like, similar (to) (+ *gen. or dat.*)  
 15 **simul ac** (*or atque*) (*conj.*), as soon as (+ *indicative*)  
 5 **sine** (*prep. + abl.*), without



## UNIT

- 5 socius, socia, socium, allied; socius, socii, *M.*, ally  
 10 sōl, sōlis, *M.*, sun  
 11 soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed; be customary  
 13 sollers, sollertis, skilled, expert  
 10 sōlus, sōla, solum, alone, only  
 9 solvō, solvere, solvi, solutus, loosen, free, untie  
 15 somnus, somni, *M.*, sleep, dream  
 6 soror, sororis, *F.*, sister  
 12 sors, sortis, sortium, *F.*, lot, destiny  
 6 spargō, spargere, sparsi, sparsus, scatter, sprinkle, distribute  
 8 speciēs, speciēi, *F.*, appearance  
 3 spectō (1), look at  
 7 spērō (1), hope (for)  
 8 spēs, spei, *F.*, hope  
 11 statua, statuae, *F.*, statue  
 16 stō, stāre, steti, stātus, stand  
 13 studeō, studēre, studui, --, be zealous, study, pay attention to (+ *dat.*)  
 16 studiōsus, studiōsa, studiōsum, fond of, partial to, studious (+ *gen.*)  
 4 studium, studii, *N.*, enthusiasm, zeal  
 2 sub (*prep.* + *acc.*), under (i.e., going to a place under); (*prep.* + *abl.*),  
 under (i.e., at or in a place under)  
 10 sufferō, sufferre, sustuli, sublātus, undergo, endure  
 7 --, sui (*reflexive pron.*), himself, herself, itself, themselves  
 1 sum, esse, fui, futurus, be, exist  
 9 summus, summa, summum, highest, top (of)  
 2 superō (1), overcome, conquer  
 15 supersum, superesse, superfui, --, be left over, survive  
 8 superus, supera, superum, above, upper; superi, superorum, *M. pl.*, the  
 gods above  
 9 supplex, supplicis, suppliant, humble  
 16 sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentus, support, maintain  
 7 suus, sua, suum, his own, her own, its own, their own

## T

- 2 taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitus, be (or keep) silent  
 1 taeda, taedae, *F.*, torch  
 16 taedet, taedēre, taeduit (taesum est), it bores; it disgusts  
 14 tālis, tāle, such, of such a sort; tālis . . . quālis, such . . . as  
 9 tam (*adv.*), so; tam . . . quam, so . . . as, as . . . as

## UNIT

- 5 **tamen** (*adv.*), nevertheless  
 12 **tamquam** (*adv.*), as if, as, as it were  
 12 **tandem** (*adv.*), at last, at length  
 10 **tantus, tanta, tantum**, so much, so great; **tantus . . . quantus or quantus . . . tantus**, as (so) much . . . as; as (so) great . . . as  
 4 **tēctum, tēctī, N.**, roof, house  
 4 **tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus**, cover, conceal  
 14 **tempestās, tempestātis, F.**, weather, storm, season  
 9 **templum, templī, N.**, temple  
 10 **temptō (1)**, try, attempt  
 7 **tempus, temporis, N.**, time, period, season  
 2 **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus**, hold, keep, possess  
 17 **tergum, tergī, N.**, back  
 2 **terra, terrae, F.**, earth, land  
 1 **terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus**, frighten, alarm, terrify  
 1 **timeō, timēre, timuī, —, fear**, be afraid (of)  
 6 **timor, timōris, M.**, fear, dread  
 10 **tot (indeclinable adj.)**, so many; **tot . . . quot or quot . . . tot**, as many . . . as  
 10 **tōtus, tōta, tōtum**, all, whole  
 4 **trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus**, hand over, betray  
 14 **trāns (prep. + acc.)**, across, on the other side of  
 7 **tū, tuī (pron.)**, you  
 14 **tum (adv.)**, then, at that time  
 14 **tunc (adv.)**, then, at that time  
 1 **turba, turbae, F.**, crowd, uproar  
 17 **turpis, turpe**, foul, ugly  
 9 **tūtus, tūta, tūtum**, safe  
 7 **tuus, tua, tuum**, your, yours, your own (*sing.*)

## U

- 12; 15 **ubi (adv.; conj.)**, where, when  
 14 **ubique (adv.)**, everywhere, anywhere, wherever  
 10 **ūllus, ūlla, ūllum**, any  
 4 **umbra, umbrae, F.**, shadow  
 5 **umquam or unquam (adv.)**, ever  
 17 **ūnā (adv.)**, together, at the same time  
 2 **unda, undae, F.**, wave  
 12 **unde (adv.)**, from where  
 10 **ūnus, ūna, ūnum**, one, alone

## UNIT

- 6 **urbs, urbis, urbium, F.**, city  
 4 **urna, urnae, F.**, urn  
 13 **ūsus, ūsus, M.**, use, advantage, enjoyment  
 3; 11 **ut (adv.; conj.)**, as, when (+ *indicative*); in order that (+ *subjunctive in purpose clauses*); that...not (+ *subjunctive after expressions of fearing*); that (+ *subjunctive in result clauses*)  
 10 **uter, utra, utrum**, which (of two)  
 16 **ūtilis, ūtile**, useful, beneficial  
 12 **utinam (adv.)**, I wish! Would that! If only!  
 11 **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum**, use, enjoy, experience (+ *abl.*)  
 12 **utrum (conj.)**, whether  
 12 **utrum...an**, whether...or  
 12 **utrum...an nōn**, whether...or not (*in direct double questions*)  
 12 **utrum...necne**, whether...or not (*in indirect double questions*)

## V

- 3 **validus, valida, validum**, strong, healthy  
 16 **vel (conj.)**, or; **vel...vel**, either...or  
 3 **vēlum, vēlī, N.**, cloth, covering, sail; **vēla dare**, to set sail  
 18 **vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus**, sell  
 3 **venia, veniae, F.**, indulgence, favor, kindness, (obliging) disposition  
 2 **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus**, come  
 17 **vēnor, vēnārī, vēnātus sum**, hunt, go hunting  
 3 **ventus, ventī, M.**, wind  
 3 **verbum, verbī, N.**, word  
 11 **vereor, verērī, veritus sum**, reverence, fear, dread  
 14 **vērītās, vēritātis, F.**, truth  
 8 **vertex, verticis, M.**, head, top, summit; whirlpool, whirlwind  
 17 **vertō, vertere, vertī, versus**, turn  
 4 **vērus, vēra, vērum**, true, real; **vērē or vērō (adv.)**, truly, indeed  
 7 **vester, vestra, vestrum**, your, yours, your own (*pl.*)  
 17 **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus**, forbid  
 16 **vetus, veteris**, old; **veterēs, veterum, M. pl.**, the ancients; **vetera, veterum, N. pl.**, antiquity  
 1 **via, viae, F.**, way, road, path, street  
 1; 4 **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus**, see; *in passive seem as well as be seen*  
 6 **vigor, vigōris, M.**, liveliness, activity, vigor  
 4 **vīlla, villae, F.**, country house, farmhouse  
 14 **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus**, conquer, beat, overcome

## UNIT

- 16 **violō** (1), do violence to, break (an agreement, the law)  
3 **vir, virī, M.**, man  
10 **virtūs, virtūtis, F.**, manliness, courage, excellence, virtue  
6 **vis; pl. vīrēs, vīrium, F.**, force, power; *pl.* strength  
2 **vīta, vītae, F.**, life  
5 **vivō, vivere, vixī, vīctus**, be alive, live  
13 **vix** (*adv.*), hardly, scarcely  
5 **vocō** (1), call  
11 **volō, velle, voluī, --**, wish, want, be willing  
7 **vōx, vōcis, F.**, voice  
18 **vulnerō** (1), wound

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## A

**able:** be able, possum, posse, potuī, --

**about,** dē (*prep.* + *abl.*)

**account:** on account of, propter (*prep.* + *acc.*); ob (*prep.* + *acc.*)

**across,** trāns (*prep.* + *acc.*)

**after,** post (*prep.* + *acc.*; *adv.*); postquam (*conj.*); or use ablative absolute

**aid,** auxilium, -ī, *N.*

**all,** omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um

**ally,** socius, -ī, *M.*

**alone,** sōlus, -a, -um

**already,** iam (*adv.*)

**altar,** āra, -ae, *F.*

**although,** quamquam (*conj.*); etsi (*conj.*); cum (*conj.*); or use ablative absolute

**always,** semper (*adv.*)

**ancient,** antiquus, -a, -um

**and,** et (*conj.*)

**animal,** animal, -ālis, -ium, *N.*

**any,** ūllus, -a, -um

**anyone,** aliquis, aliquid; quis, quid

**appearance,** speciēs, -ēī, *F.*

**approach,** aggredior, -ī, aggressus sum; accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus

**arms,** arma, -ōrum, *N. pl.*

**around,** circum (*prep.* + *acc.*)

**arrive (at),** adveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus (+ad); perveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventus (+ad)

**art,** ars, artis, -ium, *F.*

**as . . . as possible,** quam + *superlative*; **as soon as possible,** quam primum

**ask (for),** petō, -ere, petivī, petitus; quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitus

**ashamed,** use *impersonal verb* pudet, **it shames**

**attack,** oppūgnō (1)

**attempt,** temptō (1); cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum

**author,** auctor, -ōris, *M.*



**B**

- be**, sum, esse, fui, futūrus  
**be in charge of**, praesum, praeesse, -fui, -- (+ *dat.*)  
**bear**, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus  
**beautiful**, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum  
**because**, quod (*conj.*); quia (*conj.*)  
**because of**, propter (*prep.* + *acc.*)  
**beg**, ōrō (1)  
**begin**, incipiō, -ere, incēpi, inceptus  
**believe**, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ *dat.*)  
**betray**, trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditus  
**big**, magnus, -a, -um  
**body**, corpus, corporis, *N.*  
**bold**, audāx, -ācis  
**boldness**, audācia, -ae, *F.*  
**book**, liber, librī, *M.*  
**bore**, *use impersonal verb* taedet, **it bores**  
**both . . . and**, et . . . et  
**boy**, puer, -ī, *M.*  
**brave**, fortis, forte  
**breast**, pectus, pectoris, *N.*  
**bright**, clārus, -a, -um  
**bring (it) about**, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus + ut (+ *subjunctive*)  
**brother**, frāter, frātris, *M.*  
**burn**, ardeō, -ēre, arsi, arsus  
**but**, sed (*conj.*)  
**buy**, emō, -ere, ēmi, ēemptus  
**by**, ā, ab (*prep.* + *abl.*)

**C**

- can**, possum, posse, potui, --  
**capture**, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captus  
**care**, cūra, -ae, *F.*  
**carry**, portō (1); ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus  
**change**, mūtō (1)  
**character**, mōs, mōris, *M. (in pl.)*  
**charge: be in charge of**, praesum, praeesse, -fui, -- (+ *dat.*)  
**child**, nātus, -i, *M.*; puer, puerī, *M.*  
**choose**, optō (1); legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus  
**citizen**, cīvis, cīvis, -ium, *M. or F.*  
**city**, urbs, urbis, -ium, *F.*  
**city walls**, moenia, -ium, *N. pl.*

come, veniō, -ire, vēni, ventus

**command: put (place) in command of**, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

**commander**, imperātor, -ōris, *M.*

**commit**, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus

**complete**, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

**condemn**, dāmnō (1)

**confess**, fateor, fatēri, fassus sum; cōnfiteor, cōnfitēri, cōfessus sum

**conquer**, superō (1); vincō, -ere, vici, victus

**consider**, habeo, -ēre, -ui, -itus; dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus

**constellation**, sidus, sideris, *N.*

**consul**, cōnsul, cōnsulis, *M.*

**country**, patria, -ae, *F.*

**courage**, virtūs, virtūtis, *F.*

**cover**, tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctus

**crime**, scelus, sceleris, *N.*

**crowd**, turba, -ae, *F.*

**crown**, corōnō (1)

**cruel**, saevus, -a, -um; crūdēlis, -e

## D

**danger**, periculum, -i, *N.*

**dare**, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum

**daughter**, filia, -ae, *F.*

**day**, diēs, -ēi, *M.*; (at) **daybreak**, primā lūce

**delay**, moror, -āri, -ātus sum

**demonstrate**, mōnstrō (1)

**desire**, optō (1)

**desirous**, cupidus, -a, -um (+ *gen.*)

**destroy**, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus

**destruction**, ruīna, -ae, *F.*

**die**, morior, mori, mortuus sum; pereō, -ire, -ii (-ivī), -itus

**difficult**, difficilis, -e

**diligence**, diligentia, -ae, *F.*

**disgust**, *use impersonal verb* piget, it disgusts

**distinguished**, honestus, -a, -um

**do**, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; agō, -ere, ēgi, āctus

**doubt**, dubitō (1)

**drive**, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus

**drive back**, repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus

**drive out**, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus

**dutiful**, pius, -a, -um

## E

**each**, quisque, quidque (*pron.*); quique, quaeque, quodque (*adj.*)

**easy**, facilis, -e

**empire**, imperium, -ī, *N.*

**enemy**, inimicus, -ī, *M.*; hostis, hostis, -ium, *M.*

**enter**, ingredior, -ī, ingressus sum

**even**, etiam (*adv.*); et (*adv.*); **not even**, nē... quidem

**everyone**, quisque

**evil** (*adj.*), malus, -a, -um; (*noun*) malum, -ī, *N.*

**explain**, expōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus

**eye**, oculus, -ī, *M.*

## F

**fact: the fact that**, quod

**faith**, fidēs, -eī, *F.*

**fall**, cadō, -ere, cecidi, cāsus

**fame**, fāma, -ae, *F.*

**famous**, clārus, -a, -um

**far and wide**, longē (*adv.*)

**fast**, celeriter (*adv.*)

**father**, pater, patris, *M.*

**fear**, (*verb*) timeō, -ēre, -uī, --; vereor, -ēri, -itus sum; metuō, -ere, metui, --;

(*noun*) timor, timōris, *M.*; metus, -ūs, *M.*

**feel**, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus

**few**, pauci, -ae, -a

**field**, ager, agri, *M.*

**fight**, pūgnō (1); **fight with** (*i.e., against*), pūgnō cum (+ *abl.*)

**fill**, impleō, -ēre, implēvi, implētus

**find**, inveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventus

**fire**, ignis, -ium, *M.* (*abl. sing. igne or igni*)

**five**, quīnque (*indeclinable adj.*)

**flee**, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus

**food**, cibus, -ī, *M.*

**foot**, pēs, pedis, *M.*

**for**, (*on behalf of*) prō (*prep. + abl.*)

**forbid**, vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus

**force**, vis, *F.*

**forget**, obliviscor, obliviscī, oblītus sum (+ *gen.*)

**fortify**, mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus

**forum**, forum, -ī, *N.*

**free**, liber, libera, liberum

**freedom**, libertās, -tātis, *F.*

**friend**, amicus, -i, *M.*

**frighten**, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus

**from**, (*out of*) ē, ex (*prep. + abl.*); (*away*) ā, ab (*prep. + abl.*)

**fugitive**, profugus, -i, *M.*

## G

**gate** (*of a city*), porta, -ae, *F.*

**general**, imperātor, -ōris, *M.*

**get**, parō (1)

**gift**, dōnum, -i, *N.*

**gird**, cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus

**girl**, puella, -ae, *F.*

**give**, dō, dare, dedi, datus; dōnō (1)

**glory**, glōria, -ae, *F.*

**go**, eō, ire, iī (ivī), itus

**god**, deus, -i, *M.*

**golden**, aureus, -a, -um

**good**, bonus, -a, -um

**gossip**, rūmor, rūmōris, *M.*

**great**, magnus, -a, -um; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um

**grievous**, gravis, -e

**guardian**, custōs, custōdis, *M.*

**guest**, hospes, hospitis, *M.*

## H

**hand**, manus, -ūs, *F.*

**handsome**, decōrus, -a, -um

**happen**, fiō, fieri, factus sum

**happy**, laetus, -a, -um

**harm**, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (+ *dat.*)

**hate**, ōdī, ōdisse (*defective verb lacking in the present system; perfect forms have present meanings*)

**have**, habeo, -ēre, -uī, -itus; *or dative of the possessor with sum*

**he**, *supplied by is*

**healthy**, validus, -a, -um; sānus, -a, -um

**hear**, audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus

**heavy**, gravis, -e

**help**, auxilium, -i, *N.*

**her** (*own*), suus, -a, -um

**here**, hīc (*adv.*); **be here**, **be present**, adsum, adesse, adfuī, --

**hide**, cēlō (1)

**his (own)**, suus, -a, -um

**home**, domus, -ūs (-ī), *F.*

**honorable**, honestus, -a, -um

**hope**, (*verb*) spērō (1); (*noun*) spēs, speī, *F.*

**hostile**, inimicus, -a, -um

**house**, tēctum, -ī, *N.*; domus, -ūs (-ī), *F.*; **country house**, villa, -ae, *F.*

**how**, quō modō

**how many**, quot

**humble**, humilis, -e

**hunt**, vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum

**husband**, coniūnx, coniugis, *M.*

## I

**I**, ego; *pl.* nōs

**if**, sī (*conj.*)

**if . . . not**, nisi (*conj.*)

**if only**, utinam (*adv.*)

**impious**, impius, -a, -um

**in**, in (*prep.* + *abl.*)

**indeed**, enim (*postpositive conj.*)

**inhabitant**, incola, -ae, *M.*

**in order (that, to)**, ut (+ *subjunctive*)

**in order not to**, nē (+ *subjunctive*)

**into**, in (*prep.* + *acc.*)

**invade**, invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsus

**island**, insula, -ae, *F.*

**it**, supplied by id

## J

**join**, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūctus

**Juno**, Iūnō, Iūnōnis, *F.*

**Jupiter**, Iuppiter, Iovis, *M.*

## K

**keep from, prevent**, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (+ *infinitive*); dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus  
(+ *subjunctive clause of prevention*)

**kill**, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

**kindness**, venia, -ae, *F.*



**king**, *rēx, rēgis, M.*

**know**, *sciō, -ire, -ivī, -itus*; **not know**, *nesciō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itus*

## L

**land**, *terra, -ae, F.*

**large**, *magnus, -a, -um*

**law**, *lēx, lēgis, F.*

**lead**, *dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus*

**leader**, *dux, ducis, M.*

**learn**, *cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus*; *nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus*; *discō, -ere, didici, --*

**legate**, *lēgātus, -ī, M.*

**liberty**, *libertās, -tātis, F.*

**life**, *vīta, -ae, F.*

**lifetime**, *aetās, -tātis, F.*

**light**, *lūmen, lūminis, N.*; *lūx, lūcis, F.*

**listen (to)**, *audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itus*

**live**, *vīvō, -ere, vixī, victus*

**lofty**, *altus, -a, -um*

**long**, *longus, -a, -um*; **for a long time**, *diū (adv.)*

**look (at)**, *spectō (1)*

**love**, (*verb*) *amō (1)*; (*noun*) *amor, amoris, M.*

## M

**make**, *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus*

**man**, *vir, virī, M.*; *homō, hominis, M.*; **old man**, *senex, senis, M.*; **young man**, *iuvenis, -is, M. (not i-stem)*

**many**, *multus, -a, -um*

**Marcus**, *Marcus, -ī, M.*

**master**, *dominus, -ī, M.*; *magister, magistrī, M.*

**middle (of)**, *medius, -a, -um*

**mindful**, *memor, memoris*

**model**, *exemplar, -āris, -ium, N.*

**money**, *pecūnia, -ae, F.*

**moon**, *lūna, -ae, F.*

**more**, *plūs*

**mother**, *māter, mātris, F.*

**mountain**, *mōns, montis, -ium, M.*

**move**, *moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus*

**much**, *multus, -a, -um*

**must**, *dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus*; *or use passive periphrastic conjugation expressing obligation*

**my**, *meus, -a, -um*

## N

**name**, nōmen, nōminis, *N.*  
**native land**, patria, -ae, *F.*  
**nature**, nātūra, -ae, *F.*  
**neglect**, neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctus  
**neither . . . nor**, neque . . . neque *or* nec . . . nec  
**never**, numquam (*adv.*)  
**nō**, nūllus, -a, -um  
**no one**, nēmō, nēminis, *M. or F.*  
**nor**, nec; neque  
**not**, nōn; nē  
**not even**, nē . . . quidem  
**not only . . . but also**, nōn solum . . . sed etiam  
**now**, nunc (*adv.*)  
**nurse**, nūtrīx, -icis, *F.*

## O

**obey**, pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (+ *dat.*)  
**offer**, offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus  
**old**, senex, senis  
**old man**, senex, senis, *M.*  
**on**, in (*prep.* + *abl.*)  
**only**, sōlus, -a, -um  
**opinion**, sententia, -ae, *F.*; opiniō, -ōnis, *F.*  
**oppress**, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus  
**order**, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus (+ *infinitive*); imperō (1) (+ *ut or nē and the subjunctive*); **in order to**, ut (*conj.*)  
**other**, alius, -a, -ud; **other people's**, aliēnus, -a, -um  
**our**, noster, nostra, nostrum  
**out (of)**, ē, ex (*prep.* + *abl.*)  
**overcome**, superō (1)

## P

**pain**, dolor, dolōris, *M.*  
**pardon**, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus (+ *dat.*)  
**part**, pars, partis, -ium, *F.*  
**peace**, pāx, pācis, *F.*  
**people**, populus, -ī, *M. (use in singular)*  
**place**, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus  
**please**, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (+ *dat.*)  
**poem**, carmen, carminis, *N.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *M.*

possible: it is possible, fieri potest ut (+ noun clause of result)

praise, laudō (1)

prefer, praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus

previously, ante (*adv.*)

price, pretium, -ī, *N.*

profit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, --

prohibit, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus

provided that, dum (*conj.*); dummodo (*conj.*); modo (*conj.*)

province, prōvincia, -ae, *F.*

punishment, poena, -ae, *F.*

put (place) in command (of), praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

## Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *F.*

quick, celer, celeris, celere

## R

raving, dēmēns, dēmentis

read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus

realm, rēgnum, -ī, *N.*

remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus; remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsus

republic, rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, *F.*

reputation, fāma, -ae, *F.*

reveal, retegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus

right: to the right, ad dextram

rock, saxum, -ī, *N.*

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um

Rome, Rōma, -ae, *F.*

ruler, regēs, regentis, *M.* (*present participle of regō, -ere*)

rumor, fāma, -ae, *F.*; rūmor, rūmōris, *M.*

run, currō, -ere, cucurri, cursus

rush, ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus

## S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um

safety, salūs, salūtis, *F.*

sail, vēlum, -ī, *N.*; set sail, vēla dare

sailor, nauta, -ae, *M.*

**sanctity**, religiō, -ōnis, *F.*

**save**, servō (1)

**say**, dicō, -ere, dixi, dictus

**sea**, mare, maris, -ium, *N.*

**see**, videō, -ēre, vidi, visus

**seek**, petō, -ere, petivi, petitus; quaerō, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitus

**sell**, vendō, -ere, vendidi, venditus

**send**, mittō, -ere, misi, missus

**serve (as)**, *use dative of service (purpose) in double dative construction*

**set out**, proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum

**set sail**, vēla dare

**severe**, gravis, grave

**she**, *supplied by ea*

**shine**, fulgeō, -ēre, fulsi, --

**ship**, nāvis, -is, -ium, *F.*

**shore**, litus, litoris, *N.*

**should**, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus; *or use passive periphrastic conjugation expressing obligation*

**shout**, clāmō (1)

**show**, mōnstrō (1)

**silent**: *be or keep silent*, taceō, -ēre, tacui, tacitus

**since**, quoniam (*conj.*); cum (*conj.*); *or use ablative absolute*

**sing (of)**, canō, -ere, cecini, cantus

**sister**, soror, sorōris, *F.*

**skill**, ars, artis, -ium, *F.*

**slave**, servus, -ī, *M.*

**so**, tam (*adv.*); ita (*adv.*); adeō (*adv.*); sic (*adv.*)

**so great**, tantus, -a, -um

**so that**, ut

**soldier**, miles, militis, *M.*

**someone**, aliquis

**soon**, mox (*adv.*); **as soon as possible**, quam primum

**son**, filius, -ī, *M.*; nātus, -ī, *M.*

**sorrow**, dolor, dolōris, *M.*

**sort, kind**, genus, -eris, *N.*

**soul**, anima, -ae, *F.*

**spend (a lifetime)**, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus

**state**, civitās, -tātis, *F.*; rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae, *F.*

**statue**, statua, -ae, *F.*

**stop**, dēsinō, -ere, dēsii, --

**storm**, tempestās, -tātis, *F.*

**street**, via, -ae, *F.*

**strength**, virēs, virium, *F. pl.*

**strong**, validus, -a, -um; fortis, -e

**such**, tālis, -e

**such (so) great**, tantus, -a, -um

**such great** . . . as, tantus . . . quantus

**suffer**, patior, pati, passus sum; sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātus

**summit**, vertex, verticis, *M.*

**sword**, gladius, -ī, *M.*

## T

**tall**, altus, -a, -um

**tear**, lacrima, -ae, *F.*

**tell**, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus

**temple**, templum, -ī, *N.*

**terrify**, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus

**than**, quam (*conj.*)

**that**, ille, illa, illud (*adj.*); is, ea, id (*adj.*); ut (*conj.*; introducing a clause of result)

**their (own)**, suus, -a, -um

**think**, cōgitō (1)

**this**, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id

**threaten**, minor, -ārī, -ātus sum

**through**, per (*prep.* + *acc.*)

**throw**, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus

**time**, tempus, temporis, *N.*; **for a long time**, diū (*adv.*)

**to, toward**, ad (*prep.* + *acc.*)

**torch**, taeda, -ae, *F.*

**town**, oppidum, -ī, *N.*

**treachery**, insidiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*

**treaty**, foedus, foederis, *N.*

**troops**, cōpiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*

**try**, temptō (1)

## U

**understand**, intellegō, -ere, intellēxī, intellēctus

**unfortunate**, infēlix, infēlicis

**unlike**, dissimilis, -e

**urn**, urna, -ae, *F.*

**use**, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ *abl.*)



## V

**value highly**, maximī faciō (-ere, fēcī, factus)

## W

**wage**, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus

**wait (for)**, exspectō (1)

**walk**, ambulō (1)

**walls** (*of a city*), moenia, -ium, *N. pl.*

**want**, volō, velle, voluī, --

**war**, bellum, -i, *N.*

**warn**, moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus

**wealth**, divitiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*

**weapons**, arma, -ōrum, *N. pl.*

**well**, bene (*adv.*)

**what**, quid (*pron.*); quod (*adj.*)

**when**, ubi (*conj.*); cum (*conj.*); *or use ablative absolute*

**where**, ubi (*adv.*); (**to**) **where**, quō (*adv.*)

**whether**, num (*adv.*); utrum (*adv.*); *both can be used as adverbial conjunctions*

**which**, quī, quae, quod (*relative pron.*)

**who**, quī, quae, quod (*relative pron.*)

**whole**, tōtus, -a, -um

**why**, cūr (*adv.*)

**wicked**, malus, -a, -um

**willing**, volēns, volentis (*present participle of volō, velle, voluī, --*)

**wind**, ventus, -i, *M.*

**wish**, optō (1)

**with**, cum (*prep. + abl.*)

**withdraw**, sē recipere (recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus)

**without**, sine (*prep. + abl.*)

**woman**, fēmina, -ae, *F.*

**wonder**, mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum

**word**, verbum, -i, *N.*

**work**, (*verb*) labōrō (1); (*noun*) opus, operis, *N.*

**world**, orbis terrārum (orbis, orbis, -ium, *M.*)

**wound**, vulnerō (1)

**wretched**, miser, misera, miserum

**write**, scrībō, -ere, scripsī, scriptus

## Y

**year**, annus, -i, *M.*

**yesterday**, heri (*adv.*)

**you**, tū (*sing.*); vōs (*pl.*)

**young man**, iuvenis, iuvenis, *M.* (*not i-stem*)

**your**, tuus, -a, -um (*sing.*); vester, vestra, vestrum (*pl.*)

## Z

**zeal**, studium, -ī, *N.*

# INDEX



Abbreviations used in this book, 7

Ablative: definition, 27

absolute, 162–164, 376

of accompaniment, 116, 377

adjectives with, 376

of attendant circumstance, 375

of cause, 164, 375

with certain deponent verbs, 373

of comparison, 152, 374

of degree of difference, 152, 374–375

of description, 165, 374

of manner, 50, 378

of material, 378–379

of means (instrument), 50, 373

**opus est** with, 373–374

of origin, 102, 379

of personal agent, 65, 376

place in which (place where), 103, 377

place from which, 102–103

away from which, 377

down from which, 378

out of which, 377

prepositions with, 376–377

of price, 294, 373

of respect (specification), 128, 375

of route, 373

of separation, 102, 378

of supine, ablative of respect, 281, 396–397

of time when or within which, 116, 374

Accentuation, 3

Accusative: definition, 27

adverbial, 293–294, 372

cognate, 370

direct object, 370

double accusative, 370

of duration of time and extent of space, 116, 371

of exclamation, 252, 371

Greek: accusative of respect, 293, 371

place into which, 372

place to which, 103, 372

prepositions with, 372

of respect, *see under* Accusative, Greek

subject accusative and infinitive, 100–102, 371

after verbs in the middle voice, *see under* Accusative, Greek



Additional rules, 400

# Adjectives

- comparative degree, declension, 150, 323
  - formation, 150
- comparison of, 150–151
  - irregular comparisons, 151
- demonstrative, 110–111
  - hic, haec, hoc**, paradigm, 110, 323–324
  - ille, illa, illud**, paradigm, 110, 323–324
  - is, ea, id**, paradigm, 110, 324
  - iste, -a, -ud**, 206
    - paradigm, 324
- first-second declension, 48
  - paradigm, 48, 321
- with genitive singular in **-ius**, 164
  - paradigm, 164, 322
- idem, eadem, idem**, 205
  - paradigm, 205, 325
- indefinite
  - aliqui, aliqua, aliquod**, 217
    - paradigm, 325
  - qui, qua, quod**, 217
  - quidam, quaedam, quoddam**, 205
  - quique, quaeque, quodque**, 218
- intensive, definition, 16
  - ipse, -a, -um**, 205–206
    - paradigm, 206, 324
- interrogative, 115
  - paradigm, 325
- noun-adjective agreement, 49, 400
- numerical: **duo, duae, duo**, paradigm, 221, 323
- possessive, 113–114
  - in English*, definition, 17
- superlative degree: formation, 150–151
  - quam** plus superlative, 151
- third declension, 126–127
  - of one termination, paradigm, 127, 322–323
  - of three terminations, paradigm, 126, 322
  - of two terminations, paradigm, 127, 322–323
- used as nouns, 49–50

# Adverbs

- comparative: formation, 153
- comparison of, 153
  - irregular comparisons, 153–154
- formation of, 152–153
- superlative: formation, 153

# Agreement, definition, 12

- adjective with noun, 49, 400
- subject with verb, 400

**aliqui, aliqua, aliquod**, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: **aliqui, aliqua, aliquod**  
**aliquis, aliquid**, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **aliquis, aliquid**

# Alphabet, 1–2

# Antecedent, definition, 12

**antequam**, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive

# Apodosis, definition, 12

# Apposition, 363

- definition, 12

# Article, lack of, 10

# Aspect, 21–22

definition, 13  
 frequentative, 15  
 inchoative, 15

Cases, English, 9

Causal clauses, *see under* Clause, causal

Circumstantial clauses, *see under* Clause, circumstantial

Clause, definition, 13

causal, 248–249, 250, 382–383, 392  
 definition, 13

circumstantial, 248, 383, 393  
 definition, 13

concessive, 249, 250, 382, 392–393  
 definition, 13

dependent, definition, 14

of doubting, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: doubting, clauses of

of fearing, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: fearing, clauses of  
 independent, definition, 15

of prevention, 280–281, 395

of proviso, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: proviso, clauses of

purpose, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: purpose, clauses of

of result, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: result

subordinate, definition, 18

temporal, 248, 250, 383–384  
 definition, 13

Comparative degree, definition, 13

Comparison with **quam**, 152

ablative of comparison, 152

Compound words, 296

Concessive clauses, *see under* Clause, concessive

Conditional sentences, 38–39; definition, 14

future, more vivid, 38, 385; less vivid, 38, 391

mixed, 39, 391

simple (general), 38, 385

unreal (contrary-to-fact), present, 39, 391; past, 39, 391

contrafactual, definition, 14

in indirect statement, 397–399

in other subordinate clauses, 399–400

Conjugation, definition, 20

Conjugations, 23

first, paradigm, 327–331

fourth, paradigm, 343–346

second, paradigm, 335–337

third, paradigm, 337–340

i-stem, paradigm, 340–343

of deponent verbs

first, paradigm, 346–348

fourth, paradigm, 348–351

second, paradigm, 348–351

third, paradigm, 348–351

of periphrastics: paradigm, 331–334

Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive, 250–252

coordinating conjunction, definition, 14

subordinating conjunction, definition, 18

Correlatives, definition, 14

**cum**, ‘whenever’, *see under* Indicative, syntax: **cum**, ‘whenever’

**cum** clauses, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: **cum** clauses

**cum** clauses and ablatives absolute, 249–250

- Dative, definition, 26  
 of agent, 88, 369  
 with certain adjectives, 368  
 with certain intransitive verbs, 218–219, 368–369  
 with compound verbs, 220, 369  
 double dative construction, 131  
 ethical, 369  
 indirect object, 368  
 of the possessor, 88, 369  
 of purpose (service), 131, 370  
 of reference, 131, 367–368
- Declension, definition, 26, 27  
 endings, 317
- Declensions  
 fifth, 128  
   paradigm, 128, 321  
 first, 27–28  
   endings, 28  
   paradigm, 28, 318  
 fourth, 128  
   paradigm, 128, 320  
 how distinguished from one another, 27  
 second, 47–48  
   endings, 47  
   paradigms, 48, 318  
 third, 97–99  
   endings, 97  
   i-stems, paradigms, 98, 319–320  
   paradigms, 98, 319–320  
   rules for i-stems, 98–99, 319
- Demonstrative, definition, 14
- Denominative verbs, *see under* Verbs, denominative
- Deponent verbs, *see under* Verbs, deponent
- Diminutives, definition, 14
- dōnec*, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive
- Drills
- |                 |                  |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| Unit 1, 31–32   | Unit 7, 120–121  | Unit 13, 225–226 |
| Unit 2, 43      | Unit 8, 134–135  | Unit 14, 241–243 |
| Unit 3, 55–56   | Unit 9, 157–158  | Unit 15, 257–259 |
| Unit 4, 70–71   | Unit 10, 169–170 | Unit 16, 272–273 |
| Unit 5, 92–94   | Unit 11, 185–186 | Unit 17, 285–286 |
| Unit 6, 105–107 | Unit 12, 210–211 | Unit 18, 298     |
- dum*, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive
- duo*, *duae*, *duo*, *see under* Adjectives, numerical: *duo*, *duae*, *duo*
- Ellipsis, definition, 14
- Enclitic, definition, 14
- Endings  
 personal: present active system, 24, 327  
   perfect active indicative, 35, 327  
     -ēre for -ērunt, 293  
   present passive system, 62, 327
- eō*, *ire*, 129, 354–355
- ēre for -ērunt, *see under* Endings, personal: perfect active indicative, -ēre for -ērunt
- Exercises
- |               |                 |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Unit 1, 33–34 | Unit 4, 72–73   | Unit 7, 121–125 |
| Unit 2, 44–46 | Unit 5, 94–96   | Unit 8, 136–139 |
| Unit 3, 57–58 | Unit 6, 107–109 | Unit 9, 159–161 |

## Exercises, cont.

Unit 10, 171–175

Unit 11, 187–191

Unit 12, 212–216

Unit 13, 226–231

Unit 14, 244–247

Unit 15, 259–264

Unit 16, 274–278

Unit 17, 286–290

Unit 18, 298–307

## Exercises, preliminary

Unit 1 (Sections A–G), 32–33

Unit 2 (Sections A–D), 44

Unit 3 (Sections A–F), 56–57

Unit 4 (Section A), 71

Unit 5 (Sections A–B), 94

Unit 6 (Section A), 107

Unit 7 (Sections A–C), 121

Unit 8 (Sections A–C), 135–136

Unit 9 (Sections A–D), 158

Unit 10 (Sections A–B), 170–171

Unit 11 (Sections A–B), 187

Unit 12 (Sections A–B), 211–212

Unit 13 (Sections A–B), 226

Unit 14 (Sections A–B), 243–244

Unit 15 (Sections A–B), 259

Unit 16 (Sections A–C), 273

Unit 17 (Sections A–B), 286

## Expletive, definition, 15

**ferō** and compounds, 165; paradigm, 355–358**fiō, fieri**, 220–221, 361–362**fore ut**, 291–292

with subjunctive, 389–390

Frequentative verbs, *see under* Verbs, frequentativeFuture imperative, *see under* Imperative, future**futūrum esse ut**, 291–292

## Gender, English, 8–9

of nouns, 26

## Genitive, definition, 26

appositional, 364–365

of description, 165, 364

with expressions of remembering and forgetting, 294, 366

followed by **causā**, 267, 367

of fullness and want, 367

Greek, 367

of indefinite value, 294, 366–367

of material, 364

objective, 178–179, 365–366

with impersonal verbs, 366

partitive (genitive of the whole), 154, 364

of possession, 363–364

predicate (of characteristic), 179, 365

subjective, 178–179, 366

with verbs of accusing and condemning, 39–40, 365

## Gerund, 265–266, 396

definition, 15

## Gerund and gerundive

to express purpose, 266–267

## Gerundive, 266

syntax, 396

## Glossary, 12

## Grammatical review, 8

**hic, haec, hoc**, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: **hic, haec, hoc**

Hypotaxis, definition, 15

**idem, eadem, idem**, *see under* Adjectives, **idem, eadem, idem**

Idiom, definition, 15

**ille, -a, -ud**, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: **ille, -a, -ud**

Imperative, definition, 10, 20, 129

future, 130–131, 362

syntax, 381–382

- negative, 130
- present active, formation, 129–130
  - passive, formation, 130
  - syntax, 381
- Impersonal passives, *see under* Verbs, impersonal: passives
- Impersonal verbs, *see under* Verbs, impersonal
- Inchoative verbs, *see under* Verbs, inchoative
- Indicative, definition, 10, 20
  - syntax, 382–386
    - cum*, ‘whenever’, 249, 385
    - quod*, ‘the fact that’, 294–295, 384–385
- tenses, 20–22
  - chart of uses, 22
  - future, definition, 21
    - active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 61
      - first two conjugations: formation and paradigms, 24–25
    - passive, all conjugations: paradigms, 63–64
  - future perfect, definition, 21
    - active, formation and paradigm, 36
    - passive, formation and paradigm, 65
  - imperfect, definition, 21
    - active, all conjugations, formation and paradigms, 60–61
      - first two conjugations, formation and paradigms, 24
    - passive, all conjugations, paradigms, 63
  - perfect, definition, 21
    - active: endings, 35; formation and paradigm, 35–36
      - stem, formation, 35
      - system of all verbs, 35–36
    - passive: formation and paradigm, 64–65; system, all conjugations, 64
  - pluperfect, definition, 21
    - active: formation and paradigm, 35–36
    - passive: formation and paradigm, 65
- present, definition, 20
  - active: all conjugations, paradigms, 59–60
    - first two conjugations, formation and paradigms, 23–25
    - system of first two conjugations, 23–25
  - passive, all conjugations, paradigms, 62–63
    - system, all conjugations, endings, 62
- primary, 22
- secondary, 22
- Indirect discourse, definition, 16
  - indirect commands, 52–53, 388–389
    - definition, 16
  - indirect questions, 202–204, 390–391
    - definition, 16
  - indirect statement, 100–102
    - conditions in, 397–399
    - definition, 16
    - infinitive in, 101–102, 380
- Indirect object, definition, 15
- Indirect reflexives, *see under* Pronouns, reflexive: indirect
- Infinitives, definition, 16, 22
  - formation, 99–100
  - periphrastic, 100
  - syntax, 379–381
    - complementary, 89, 379–380; definition, 13
    - epexegetical, 381; definition, 15
    - in exclamations, 381



- historical, 292, 381
- in indirect statement, 101–102, 380
- object, 89, 380
- as subject, 179, 380
- Inflection, definition, 10, 16
  - in English, 10–11
  - of nouns, 26
  - of verbs, 20
- interest, *see under* Verbs, impersonal: interest and *rēfert*
- Interrogative, definition, 16
- ipse, -a, -um, *see under* Adjectives, intensive: ipse, -a, -um
- is, ea, id, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: is, ea, id
- iste, -a, -ud, *see under* Adjectives, demonstrative: iste, -a, -ud
- Locative case, 103, 318, 379
- Macron, definition, 16
- mālō, 179–180
  - paradigm, 358–360
- Middle voice, *see under* Accusative, Greek
- Mood, definition, 20
  - in English, 10
- Morphology, definition, 16
- Names, Roman, 401
- Negatives
  - double making affirmative, 400
- “no”, 400
- nōlō, 179–180
  - paradigm, 358–360
- Nominative, definition, 26
  - absolute (in English), 12, 162
  - syntax, 363
- Nouns
  - abstract, definition, 12
    - suffixes, 224–225, 240
  - collective, definition, 13
    - verb with, 400
  - formation of stem, 27
  - suffixes pertaining to, *see under* Suffixes, added to produce; adjectival added to the stems of; noun
- Number, 9, 20
- Numerals, 405–408
- Object, definition, 16
- Paradigm, definition, 17
- Parataxis, definition, 17
- Participles, definition, 17, 83
  - formation, 83–84
    - future active: formation, 84; use, 86
    - passive: formation, 84; use, 86
  - perfect passive: formation, 84; use, 85
  - present active: formation, 83–84; use, 84–85
    - paradigm, 127, 323
  - syntax, 395–396
  - uses, 84–86
- Parts of speech, 8
- Periphrasis, definition, 17

## Periphrastic Conjugations

- active, synopsis, 87
- infinitives, 100
- paradigms, 331–334
- passive, synopsis, 87

## Person, definition, 9, 20

## Phonology, definition, 17

## Phrase, definition, 17

**possum**, 88

- paradigm, 88–89, 351–353

## Postpositive, definition, 30

## Predicate, definition, 17

- predicate adjective, definition, 17
- predicate nominative, definition, 17

## Prefixes

- from prepositions, 255–257
- not from prepositions, 271–272

**priusquam**, *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive

## Pronouns

- indefinite, definition, 15, 217
  - aliquis**, **aliquid**, 217
  - as indefinite, **nescio quis**, **quid**, 400
  - quidam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam**, 205
    - paradigm, 205, 326
  - quis**, **quid**, 217–218
  - quisquam**, **quidquam**, 218
  - quisque**, **quidque**, 218
- interrogative, 115–116
  - paradigm, 115, 326
- personal, 111–113, 325–326
  - ego**, 112
  - tu**, 112
- possessive, *in English*: definition, 17
- reflexive, 112–113
  - definition, 18
  - indirect, 237
  - third person: paradigm, 113, 326
- relative, 114–115
  - definition, 18
  - paradigm, 114

## Protasis, definition, 17

Proviso, definition, 18. *Also see under* Clauses of provisoPurpose, *see under* Gerund and Gerundive, to express purpose; Subjunctive, syntax: purpose, clauses of; Supine, syntax**quam** plus superlative, 151Quantitative rhythm, *see under* Rhythm, quantitative

## Questions

- direct, 201–202
- double, 202
- indirect, 202–204

**quī**, **qua**, **quod**, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: **quī**, **qua**, **quod****quia**, 'because', *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive**quidam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam**, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **quidam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam****quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: **quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam****quique**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, *see under* Adjectives, indefinite: **quique**, **quaeque**, **quodque****quis**, **quid**, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **quis**, **quid****quisquam**, **quidquam**, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **quisquam**, **quidquam****quisque**, **quidque**, *see under* Pronouns, indefinite: **quisque**, **quidque**

**quod**, 'because', *see under* Conjunctions with indicative or subjunctive

**quod**, 'the fact that', *see under* Indicative, **quod**, 'the fact that'

**rēfert**, *see under* Verbs, impersonal: **interest** and **rēfert**

Relative clauses of characteristic (Generic relative clauses), *see under* Subjunctive, syntax:

relative clauses of characteristic (Generic relative clauses)

Relative clauses of purpose, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: relative clauses of purpose

Relative clauses of result, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: relative clauses of result

Result, after **futūrum ut** (**fore**), 291–292. *Also see under* Subjunctive, syntax: result

Review of verb conjugations, 66

Review

Units 1–4, 74–75

5–8, 140–142

9–11, 192–193

12–18, 308–311

Rhythm, quantitative, 401–404

Root, definition, 18

Self Review A

Units 1–4, 75–77

answer key, 77–79

Units 5–8, 142–144

answer key, 144–145

Units 9–11, 193–195

answer key, 195–196

Units 12–18, 312–314

answer key, 314–316

Sentence, definition, 18

complex, definition, 13

compound, definition, 13

Sequence of tenses, *see under* Subjunctive, sequence of tenses

Stem, definition, 18

Subject, definition, 18

verbs with compound, 400

Subjunctive, definition, 10, 20, 36

imperfect active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 36–37

passive, formation, 64

perfect active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 37

passive, formation and paradigm, 65

pluperfect active, all conjugations: formation and paradigms, 37

passive, formation and paradigm, 65

present active, all conjugations, formation and paradigm, 60

first conjugation, formation and paradigm, 36

passive, formation, 64

sequence of tenses, 51, 387

syntax, 386–395

anticipation, 393–394

by attraction, 291, 394

causal clauses, *see under* Clause, causal

circumstantial clauses, *see under* Clause, circumstantial

concessive clauses, *see under* Clause, concessive

conditions, *see under* Conditional sentences

**cum** clauses, 248–250

deliberative, 201, 386

doubting, clauses of, 279–280, 394–395

fearing, clauses of, 279, 390

hortatory, 200, 386

with impersonal verbs, 395

independent uses, 200–201

indirect commands, *see under* Indirect discourse, indirect commands

Self Review B

Units 1–4, 79–80

answer key, 81–82

Units 5–8, 146–147

answer key, 147–149

Units 9–11, 196–197

answer key, 198–199

- indirect questions, *see under* Indirect discourse, indirect questions
- jussive, 200, 386
- optative, 201, 387
- potential, 200, 387
- prevention, clauses of, *see under* Clauses, of prevention
- proviso, clauses of, 252, 394
- purpose, clauses of: definition, 50
  - illustrated, 52, 387–388
  - introduced by adverbs, 236, 388
- relative clauses of, 236, 388
- relative clauses of characteristic (Generic relative clauses), 234–235, 390
- result, 232–233, 389
  - relative clauses of, 235–236, 389
  - substantive clauses of, 233, 389
- in subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 116–117, 391–392
- Substantive, definition, 10, 18
- Substantive clauses of result, *see under* Subjunctive, syntax: result, substantive clauses of
- Suffixes
  - ālis, -āris, -ilis, 185
  - ārium, 240
  - ārius, 240
  - āx, -idus, -ulus, -ivus, 209–210
  - bundus, -cundus, 210
  - eus, -ius, -ānus, -ēnus, -īnus, -ēius, -cus, -ticus, 184
  - fer and -ger, 224
  - ia, -iēs, -tia, -tiēs, -tās, -tūs, -tūdō, 224–225
  - ilis, -bilis, 210
  - iō, -tiō, -tūra, -tus, 240
  - ium and -tium, 225
  - men, -mentum, -mōnium, -mōnia, 240
  - ōsus and -lentus, 224
  - ter, -ester, -timus, -nus, -urnus, -ternus, 185
  - tor, -trix, 183–184
  - tōrium, 240
  - ulus, -a, -um, etc., 184
- abstract noun, 224–225, 240
- added to produce nouns, 240
- adjectival added to the stems of nouns, 184–185; of verbs, 209–210
- noun, 183–184
- sum, complete paradigm, 351–353
  - indicative future, 25
    - imperfect, 25
    - present, 25
  - subjunctive: present, 37
- Superlative degree, definition, 18
- Supine, 281
  - syntax, 281, 396–397
- Syllabification, 2
- Syncopated forms of perfect active system of verbs, 292
- Synopsis, definition, 19, 44, 74
  - illustrated, 44, 75, 142
- Syntax, definition, 19
  - of nouns, review, 363–379
    - ablative, 372–379
    - accusative, 370–372
    - apposition, 363
    - dative, 367–370
    - genitive, 363–367
    - locative, 379

- nominative, 363
  - vocative, 379
- of verbs, review, 379–397
  - gerunds, 396
  - gerundives, 396
  - indicatives, 382–386
  - infinitives, 379–381
  - imperatives, 381–382
  - participles, 395–396
  - subjunctives, 386–395
  - supines, 396–397
- Temporal clauses, *see under* Clause, temporal
- Tense, 9, 20
- Tmesis, 92, 252, 254
- Verbs
  - adjectival suffixes added to the stems of, 209–210
  - denominative, 14, 29, 272
  - deponent, 176–178; semi-deponent, 178
  - finite, definition, 15
  - frequentative, 134, 283–284
  - impersonal, 267–269; definition, 15
    - interest and *rēfert*, 269
  - passives, 219–220, 385–386
  - inchoative, 284–285
  - intransitive, definition, 16
  - personal endings, present active system, 24, 327
    - perfect active indicative, 35, 327
    - ēre* for -*ērunt*, 293
  - present passive system, 62, 327
  - principal parts, 23
  - transitive, definition, 19
- vis*, declension, 102, 320
- Vocabulary
 

Unit 1, 28–29	Unit 6, 103–104	Unit 11, 180–181	Unit 16, 269–270
Unit 2, 40–41	Unit 7, 117–119	Unit 12, 206–208	Unit 17, 281–282
Unit 3, 53–54	Unit 8, 131–133	Unit 13, 221–222	Unit 18, 295
Unit 4, 67–68	Unit 9, 154–155	Unit 14, 237–238	
Unit 5, 89–90	Unit 10, 166–167	Unit 15, 252–254	

  - English to Latin, 435–447
  - Latin to English, 411–433
  - Notes on
 

Unit 1, 29–31	Unit 6, 105	Unit 11, 182–185	Unit 16, 270–272
Unit 2, 41–43	Unit 7, 119–120	Unit 12, 208–210	Unit 17, 282–285
Unit 3, 54–55	Unit 8, 133–134	Unit 13, 222–225	Unit 18, 295–297
Unit 4, 68–70	Unit 9, 156–157	Unit 14, 238–240	
Unit 5, 90–92	Unit 10, 167–168	Unit 15, 254–257	
- Vocative case, 131, 318, 379
- Voice, 9–10, 20
  - Middle, *see under* Accusative, Greek
- volō*, 179–180
  - paradigm, 358–360
- Vowels
  - lengthened before -*ns*, 84
  - long shortened before -*m*, -*t*, -*nt*, 24; before -*r*, -*ntur*, 62
- Word formation, chart, 297
- Word order, 4–6
- “yes”, 400

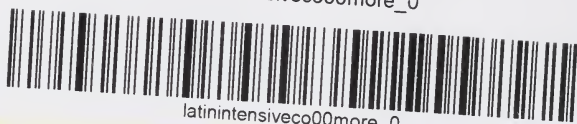






latinintensiveco00more\_0

latinintensiveco00more\_0



latinintensiveco00more\_0



This is a comprehensive introduction to Latin forms and syntax, designed to train the student in reading ancient texts at an early stage. Originally written for the Latin Workshop at Berkeley and the Summer Latin Institute of Brooklyn College, the preliminary edition has been used successfully in intensive, accelerated, and regular courses for several years. The present edition is revised and improved.

All major grammatical constructions are logically explained in eighteen units. For intensive courses, a unit may be covered in one day; for regular courses, a unit may be spread out over a week. The entire Latin verbal system is covered in the first part of the book; the subjunctive is introduced in the second unit; and all four conjugations are discussed in close proximity, so the student can discern the similarities and distinctions among them. Throughout the book related topics are arranged together, such as the independent uses of the subjunctive or the third declension.

Connected readings, illustrating grammatical points, are included in every unit, with accompanying vocabularies. The student is soon introduced to adapted and unadapted selections from Martial, Cicero, Catullus, Seneca, Vergil, and Pliny. Long portions from Book Six of Caesar's *Gallic Wars* comprise the readings for the last two units.

The many sentences for drill and review in each unit will challenge the student and provide variety for the teacher. Separate review sections, with illustrative sentences and two model examinations (with answer keys), are interspersed. Paradigms and examples of the uses of each case and mood are in an appendix. Complete English-Latin and Latin-English vocabularies at the end of the book are keyed to the units where the words are first used.

*"The best Latin text now available and I very much doubt that a better one will appear for a long time."* —Ralph W. Johnson, Cornell University

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA  
Berkeley 94720

